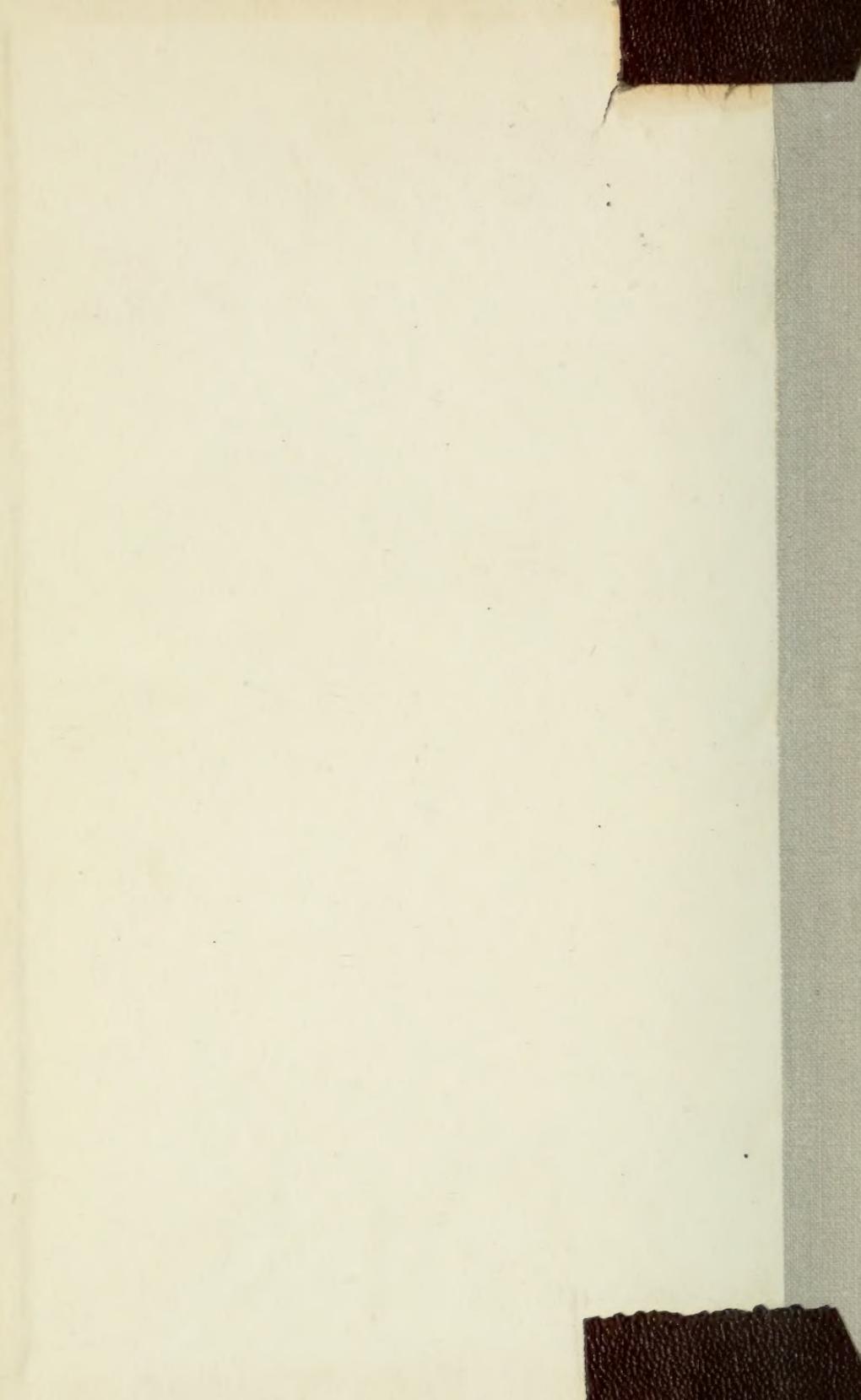
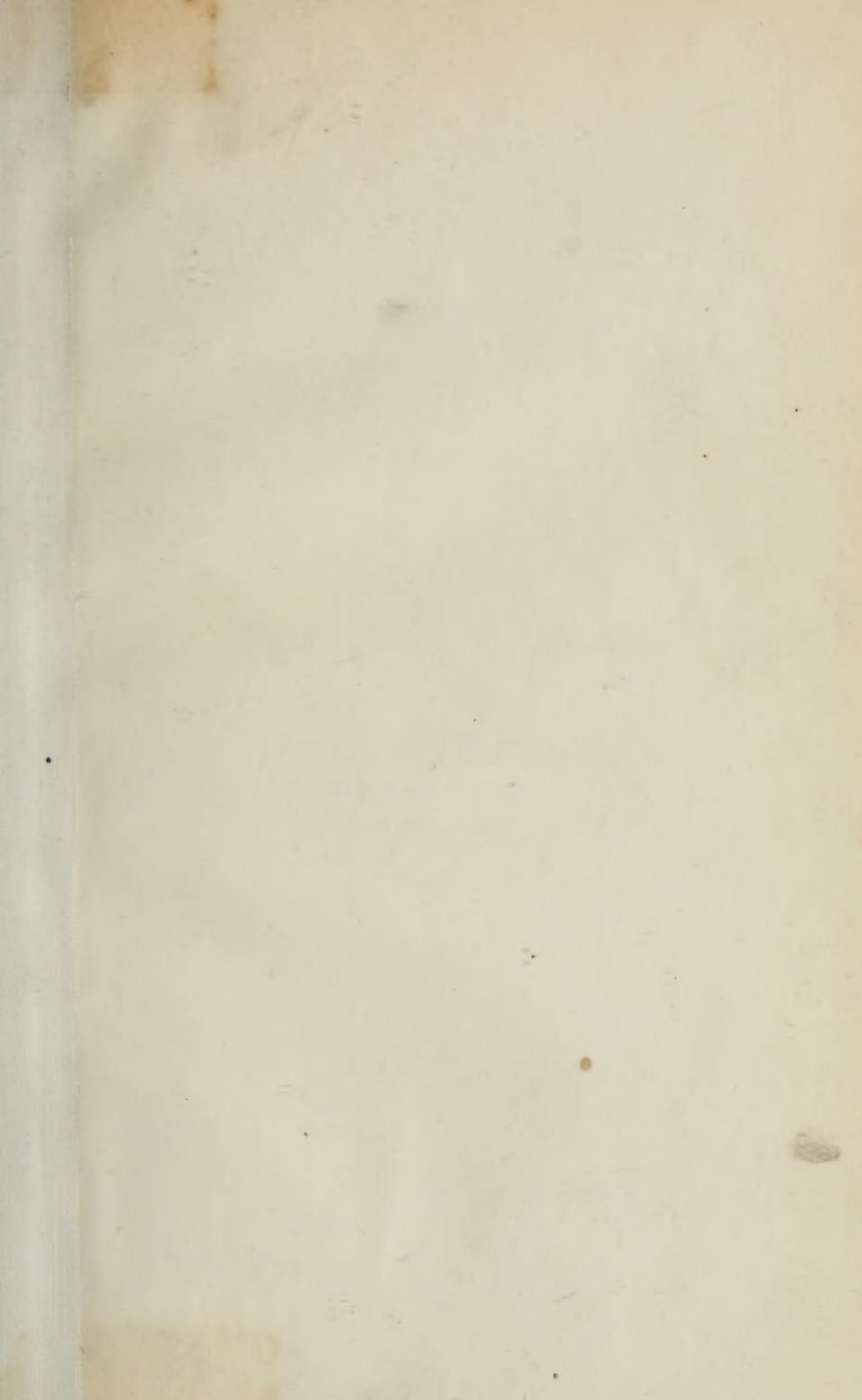


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

A standard linear barcode consisting of vertical black lines of varying widths on a white background.

3 1761 00361174 6







Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

Duke Huon of Buryldeux.

Early English Text Society,

Extra Series, Nos. XLIII, L.

1884, 1887.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK : C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA : J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

41,43,50



*Sir John Bourchier, Knight,
Second Baron Berners (1469-1533)
from a painting by Hans Holbein
now in the possession of the Hon H. Syneville Wilson.*

~~P
25E~~
Early English Text Society
" [Publications]: Extra Series
THE Nos. 41, 43, 50

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

Pts. VIII, IX, XII

The Boke of

Duke Huon of Baudelaux

done into English by

Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. II.

38077
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCLXXXIV, MDCCCLXXXVII.

PR
1119
E5
no. 41,
etc.

Extra Series,
XLIII, L

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE portrait which is prefixed to this volume will, I hope, prove of some general interest. As the work of Holbein, and a memorial of a first discoverer of the capacities of English prose, it deserves a very prominent position among portraits of English men of letters. The original painting is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire. It has been reproduced here for the first time by the kind permission of its owner, the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson. Lord Berners is represented in the robes of the Chancellor of the Exchequer: he holds in his right hand a lemon to protect him (according to a contemporary belief) from the plague, to which his presence in the Exchequer Court frequently exposed him. The picture is described by Mr. Ralph Wornum in his edition of Horace Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting* (i. 82), but Dr. Alfred Woltmann in his elaborate book on Holbein makes no mention of it. The present engraving is the work of Messrs. Dawson of the Typographic Etching Company.

I regret that I have been unable to complete the reprint of this romance in a second part. The tale of Huon's wife, Esclaramonde, and of the treacherous advances made towards her by the Emperor of Germany (*chapters lxxxvi—clvii*), is alone printed here. The concluding portions of Lord Berners' work, relating the wooing and marriage of Huon's daughter, Clariet, the repulsive trials to which Ide, Clariet's daughter, was subjected, and the early fortunes of Croisant, Ide's son (*chapters clviii—clxxxiv*), are reserved for a third part. For that part I am also preparing glossaries of the proper names, places, and obscure words, with appendices on the leading differences in the language of the first and third editions, and on

some of the more curious legends introduced into the story. Lovers of fairy lore may find much to interest them in the pages that follow. Huon's second journey to the East (pp. 361 *et seq.*), to obtain succour in behalf of his wife and child, involves him in more marvellous perils than any he met with in his earlier travels. The descriptions of Judas Iscariot (pp. 363-7) and of Cain are singular examples of the mediæval mythology that grew out of scriptural history. The account of the last days of Oberon (pp. 597-606) is, like many passages in the first part, worthy of notice in future commentaries on Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*.

The length of this romance will doubtless deter all but a very few students from proceeding very far in its perusal. It must in fairness be admitted, too, that the plot works sluggishly, wanting in rapid energy, and abounding in detail, which the modern critic will denounce as superfluous. But such incidents as those to which I have drawn attention effectively relieve the story's prolixity, and the never unmelodious monotony of its language is at times broken, as I have shown before, by tones of the purest beauty. It is moreover in its bulk, as in all other respects, an excellent representative of the popular literature of sixteenth-century England. And let us remember that it is not in effect much longer than an ordinary three-volume novel of our own day, with which in an historical sense it invites comparison. It therefore behoves lovers of the fiction of the present age to treat *Huon of Burdeux*, its author, and those sixteenth-century readers who could eagerly devour its pages, sympathetically: for the judgment that we pass to-day on Lord Berners' book and its first enthusiastic patrons, assuredly awaits three centuries and a half hence whatever may survive of the light literature of our own time, and ourselves, who reward it with a golden homage.

I desire to take this, the first opportunity allowed me, of correcting a misstatement made by Mrs. T. H. Ward in the *Athenæum* (August 18th, 1883), to disprove an assertion of mine that appeared in the same journal five weeks earlier. Mrs. Ward there set among her "facts" the remark that "Lord Berners—unless Mr. Lee has some quite fresh information, in which case I must plead ignorance—

died on March 16th, 1532," and she proceeded to point out, that as I accepted March 10th, 1533, for the date of the completion of an important translation of Lord Berners—"the Golden Boke of Marke Aurelie"—I made "the translation finished nearly a year after the translator's death." If Mrs. Ward had done me the honour of turning to my record of the life of Lord Berners in the Introduction to Part I, published in January last, she might possibly have avoided the frequently repeated error into which she has here fallen. I showed there that notices of the death of Lord Berners in Mr. James Gairdner's *Papers of Henry VIII* (vol. vi, nos. 238 and 239) prove conclusively that, reckoning the new year, as is the modern custom, from the first of January, he died on March 16th, 1533. The makers of biographical dictionaries have, I know, antedated the event by one year in their forgetfulness of the well-known fact that with Lord Berners' contemporaries the twenty-fifth day of March was the first day of a new year. The mistake is one worth correcting permanently, and I hope to be able to do so in the article on Lord Berners that I am writing for Mr. Leslie Stephen's new *Dictionary of National Biography*. As for Lord Berners' relations to so-called Euphuism, which was the original subject of my brief controversy with Mrs. Ward, I am quite ready to admit that Dr. Landmann, in a work privately printed at Giessen in 1881, was the first, as Mrs. Ward has shown, to call attention to the important influence he exerted in the matter; but I do not imagine that Lord Berners' connexion with Euphuism is so thoroughly understood in England as to make such a re-statement of the facts as I intend to give in an appendix wholly a work of supererogation.

S. L. LEE.

26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N.W.

December 26, 1883.

Huon of Burdeux.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon deuysyd with his
knyghtes in his cyte of Mommure in the
4 fayrye of the dedes of Huon of Burdeux, &
of that¹ sholde fall² after to hym.

Ca. lxxxvi.

8 Han kynge Oberon was departyd fro
Burdeux he came to his cyte of Mom-
mure. Than³ he began sore to wepe.
Than Gloryaunt demaundyd of hym
why he made that sorow. ‘Gloryauns,’

Oberon returns to
Mommur and
bewails the sad
fate that is still
in store for Huon.

12 quod Oberon, ‘it is for the vnhappy Huon / he is alone,
and I knowe well here after he shalbe betrayed, and
all for Esclaramonde his wyfe / for though⁴ he haue or⁵
this tyme sufferyd greate trauayle and myche trouble

Esclaramonde will
cause him much
suffering.

16 and pouerte / yet I knowe surely that he shall suffer
more than euer he dyd, & he shal⁶ haue no socoure of
any man lyuyng’ / ‘why, sir,’ quod Gloryauns, ‘how
can that be? / for Huon is a grete lorde, & hath many
20 frendes, and is the moost hardyest knyght now lyuyng /
& he is at accorde with kynge Charlemayn, therfore he
were a greate foole that wolde make hym any warre, &
do hym any dyspleasure’ / ‘well,’ quod Oberon, ‘god
24 ayde hym in all his assayres / for or⁵ it be longe he shall
haue myche to do.’ Thus Oberon entred in to his ryche
palays, & sayd agayne, ‘A, fre⁷ knyght Huon, I know
well ye shalbe betrayed for the loue of your wyfe, who

¹ which. ² happen. ³ and there. ⁴ that. ⁵ ere.
⁶ Fol. lxv. back, col. 1. ⁷ deare.

is fayre and good, and yf ye take not good hede ye shall leue her and your selfe in grete perell of deth / and yf ye scape the deth, yet shall you suffer suche Payne and pouerte that there is no clerke lyuynge so sage that can put it in wrytyng.' 'Syr,' quod Gloryauns / 'me thynke this can not be, seynge the loue that is now betwene hym and Charlemayn.' 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'yet I say agayne to¹ you *that*, or² this 8 yere be passyd, Huon shalbe in such distres, and so hardely kept, that yf he had .x. realmes he wolde gyue them all to be out of that daunger that he shalbe in' / than Gloryauns was pensyue, and sayd / 'A, sir, for 12 goddes sake neuer leue Huon your frende in suche daunger / but rather socoure hym' / 'nay, surely,' quod Oberon, 'that wyll I not doo / syn³ I haue promysyd hym my dygnyte & londe ; he shal not be aydyd 16 nor socouryd by me, for he shalbe closyd in suche a plase *that I wolde not go therther for .x. of the best cytyes of the worlde.*' Now let vs retourne to¹ Huon, beynge in his palays at Burdeux. 20

Nor will Oberon
aid him,

now that Huon
will one day bear
his crown.

¶ How Huon toke homage of his men & chastesyd his rebelles, & of .iii. pylgremes, by whom myche yll fell ⁴after, as ye shall here.

Ca. lxxxvii. 24



The lords of
Bordeaux do
homage to Huon.

Fter that kynge Charlemayn was departyd fro Burdeux & that Huon was retournyd, he assambled all his barons, to whom he made good chere, 28 and there they toke there londes & fees of hym & made there homage.

Than he toke a .M. chosyn knyghtes with hym, & rode in his londes & tooke possessyon of townes & castelles, 32 & was obeyed in euery place except of one Named

¹ vnto.

² before.

³ seeing.

⁴ Fol. lxv. back, col. 2.

Angelars, who was cosyn germane to Amaury, whom Angelars, a relative of the Earl Amaury,
 Huon had slayne before at Parys before themperour
 Charlemayn for y^e loue of Charlot / this Angelars was
 4 false & a traytoure, & he had a stonge castell with / in
 a¹.iii legges of Burdeux / he wolde not holde of Huon resists Huon's authority.
 nor obey hym, tho he was his lege man / whan Huon
 saw that he wolde not holde of hym nor do hym
 8 homage, he was sore dyspleasyd, and made promyse that,
 yf that he myght gette hym parforce, he wolde surely
 hange hym vp & ²as many as were in the castell.³ than
 Huon assayld y^e castell, & they within defendyd
 12 them⁴ valyauntly / so that many were hurt and slayne
 of⁵ both partes / Huon was there .viii. dayes & coude
 not wyn y^e castell / than Huon ordenyd before the
 place a payre of galowes, & on⁶ y^e .ix. day he made a
 16 freshe assault by suche force⁷ that he wan y^e castell
 & entred parforce. Angelars was taken & .lx.⁸ men
 with hym, & they were al hangyd on y^e galowes. Than
 Huon gaue the castell to⁹ one of his knyghtes /¹⁰ than
 20 he departyd & went to the castell of Blay, where as he
 was receyued with gret ioy / and the fayre Esclaramonde
 was in her¹¹ palays at Burdeux well accompenyd with
 ladyes & dameselles / & as they were deuysyne to-
 24 gyther, there entred into y^e palays .iii. pylgremes who
 ryght humbly salutyd the lady Esclaramonde. ‘Syrs,’
 quod y^e lady, ‘I pray you shew me out of what countre
 ye are come’ / ‘dame,’¹² quod one of them, ‘know for
 28 trouth that we are come fro Ierusalem, & haue made
 our offerynge to the holy sepulture. we haue sufferyd
 myche pouertie in oure iurnay, wherfore, lady, we
 requyre you humbly for the loue of our lorde Jesu
 32 Cryst to gyue vs sum meet.’ ‘Syrs,’ quod she, ‘ye
 shall haue ynough’ / & than she commaundyd two of

Huon marches to take his castle,

which falls after nine days' siege.

Angelars and his men are taken and hanged.

Three pilgrims visit Esclaramonde at Bordeaux.

They say they are journeying from the Holy Land.

¹ omitted. ² Fol. lxvi, col. 1. ³ with him. ⁴ selues.
⁵ on. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ strength. ⁸ Fortie. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ the. ¹² Madame.

They are well
entertained,

her knyghtes to se¹ y^e pylgremes sholde haue meet and drynke / & so they were set at y^e end of the hall, & a table coueryd for them, & thereon brede & fleshe & wyne / they were well serued. Than the duches Esclarmonde went to vysyt them, & demauyd where they were borne & whether they wolde go. ‘Dame,’ quod they, ‘we be all .iii. borne at Vyene, & thether we wolde retourne’ / ‘syrs, god be your gyde,’ quod the lady, & she gaue them .x. Florenee, wherof they had grete ioy & thankyd y^e duches. ³Alas ! that gyft was yll imployed,⁴ as ye shal here ⁵after. They departyd & toke ther way, & trauayled so longe that on a twes-

but soon set out
for Vienna.

On their way they
meet Duke Raoul,
who was
hawking.

12 daye ⁶they aryued halfe a legge fro Vyene / & ther they met duke Raoull, who was goynge a hawkynge / he was a grete & puyssaunt lord of londes & seynories, & hardy in dedes of armes. grete domage ⁷ it was that he was such a traytoure, for a more subtylman coude not be knownen / for all the dayes of his lyfe he was euer a mouer of warre & stryfe & to do treason, without hauyng regard other to kynne or other / god con-

He is a traitor

and a mover of
war.

20 founde hym / for by hym & hys cause Huon sufferyd so myche yll that it cannot be recountyd. This duke Raoull was to mary / thus as he was in the feldes a hawkynge, & .xx. knyghtes with hym, he met the sayd thre pylgremes, & anone he knew them. Than he rode to them & sayd, ‘syrs, ye be welcom home’ / they were

He welcomes the
pilgrims,

28 ioyfull, whan they saw the duke, there lord, salute them so humbly, & for ioy therof they shewed hym such newes that by y^e occasyon therof .xx. M knyghtes lost after theyr lyues, & Raoull hymselfe receyued y^e deth / & Huon had suche trouble that he had neuer none suche before, as ye shall here ⁵after. Than the duke sayd to the pylgremes / ‘frendes, I pray you shew me by what countrees ye haue passyd to com hether.’

and asks how
they have fared.

¹ that.

² Madame.

³ but.

⁴ bestowed.

⁵ here.

⁶ Fol. lxvi. col. 2.

⁷ pittie.

'Syr,' quod they, 'we haue passyd by Fraunce, & fyrst
we were at Burdeux, & there we founde y^e duches
Esclaramonde, wyfe to Huon of Burdeux, of whom ye
4 haue herd so myche spekynge of.¹ she is so fayre &
so well fourmyd,² so swete, pleasaunt, & gracyous as can
be deuysyd. she is daughter to the admyrall Gaudys,
whom Huon hath slayne, & taken her to his wyfe /
8 grete domage³ is it that Huon sholde haue such a
wyfe / for she were meter to be wyfe to a pusaunt
kinge, for who so euer had such a wyfe to lye by
myght wel say that there were none lyke her in all y^e
12 worlde / wolde to our lorde god, sir / that she were
your wyfe' / whan the duke herde that, he chaungyd
coloure & greatly couertyd the lady in his herte / so
that he was stryken with⁴ such⁵ sparke of that for the⁵
16 byrnyng loue that he had to the lady Esclaramonde,⁶
he promysed & sware that he wolde haue her, who so
euer sayd the contrary, & sayd howe⁷ he wolde slee
Huon, & than haue Esclaramonde to his wyfe. Thus
20 duke Raoull sware the deth of Huon /⁸ than he departyd
fro the pylgremes. yll was employed⁹ the almes that
Esclaramonde had gyuen them.

They tell him how
Esclaramonde
received them at
Bordeaux,
and how fair
she is,

and how worthy
to be the wife of a
greater prince
than Huon—even
of Raoul himself.

The Duke swears
that he will wed
Esclaramonde.



¶ How duke Raoull of Astrych, by the
24 reporte of the pylgremes, was amourous of
the fayre Esclaramonde / and of the tornay
that was cryed,¹⁰ to thentent to haue slayne
Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxviii.

¹ for. ² fauoured. ³ pittie.

⁴ Fol. lxvi. back, col. 1. ^{5—5} violent and. ⁶ as.
⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ bestowed. ¹⁰ proclaimed.



Duke Raoull announces his intention to visit his uncle the Emperor of Almayne, and secretly resolves to hold a great tournament, to which Huon is to be induced to come to meet his death.

A messenger is sent to the Emperor asking him to arrange the tournament at Mayence,

and he does as he is requested.

Raoul assembles his barons and makes them swear to compass the death of Huon,

Hus duke Raoull retournyd to the cyte of Vyen ryght pensyue, and sent for his preuey counsell, & than he commaundyd them to assamble as myche¹ 4 people as they coude, by cause he sayde that he wolde goo to his vncle themperour of Almayne / to whom he sent a secret message that he shold cause the tourney to be cryed² in 8 sum conuenyent place, to thentent that the knyghtes of Almayne and of other countrees sholde assemble there. The false traytoure dyd it for a craft, to thentent that Huon by his prowes and hardenes sholde 12 come to that tourney. The messenger rode forth tyll³ he came to Strabrouge, where as he founde themperour, who was vncle to Raoull, for he was themperours brothers sonne / whan themperour herde the message he 16 was ioyfull / ⁴whan he herd those⁴ newes fro his neuewe duke Raoull, whom he loued entyerly / and to do hym pleasure he sent to all londes vnder his obey-saunce, to all knyghtes and ⁵squyers suche as of custome 20 were wont to iust and tourney, desyryng them to come at a day assygnyd to the cyte of Mayence, for there he wolde kepe open courte. ⁶themperour knewe not for what entent his neuew Raoull had deuysyd that 24 tourney. Alas ! he dyd it⁷ to fynde⁸ place to slee Huon, to thentent to haue his wyfe Esclaramonde. Than duke Raoull on a day assembled his barons, specyally suche as he had parfyte trust in / he shewed them at 28 length⁹ y^e cause why he had assembled all that⁸ people / to go to the tourney. ‘ Therfore, syrs,¹⁰ I wyll that ye sware to me the deth of Huon of Burdeux / for I wyll that ye & I togyther¹¹ put¹² to our Payne¹² to slee hym / 32

¹ many. ² proclaimed. ³ vntill.

⁴⁻⁴ and not a little pleased to heare such.

⁵ Fol. lxvi. back, col. 2. ⁶ Now. ⁷ but. ⁸ the.

⁹ large. ¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ omitted.

¹²⁻¹² all our vttermost.

& than I wyll wed his wyfe, of whom I am so amourous that I can not slepe nor take any rest' / y^e same tyme that they thus made promyse & sware y^e deth of

and to aid him in his quest of Esclarmonde.

4 Huon, There was amonge them a varlet with duke Raoull who in his yougth had serued Huon of Burdeux / and¹ whan he vnderstode² yf Huon came to the tourney, howe³ he sholde be murderyd / as preuely as he coude /

One of the Duke's servants had of old served Huon,

8 he departyd fro Vyene, & neuer restyd tyll⁴ he came to the cite of Burdeux, where as he founde duke Huon in his palays with his lordes, who had been⁵ aduertesyd that there sholde be⁶ a great tourney at Mayence in

and goes to Bordeaux to warn him of the plot against his life.

12 Almayne / and he deuysyd with his lordes⁷ to go thether. The same tyme thether came⁸ the varlet,⁸ who⁹ humbly salutyd duke Huon, who sayd to hym, 'frend, where hast thou ben so longe?' 'Syr,' quod the varlet,

Huon contemplates going to Mayence when the man arrives,

16 'I come now fro Viene in Austrych, and¹⁰ duke Raoull who is lorde there¹¹ hathe cryed¹² a tourney in euery countre, and,¹³ syr, yf ye go thether ye shalbe slayne / for thys tourney is deuysyd for none other entent / for¹⁴

and reveals the danger which threatens his old master.

20 by cause it is¹⁵ well knownen that there can be no hye dedes of armes done in any place / but that ye wyll be¹⁶ at it. and whan they haue slayne you y^e duke Raoull wyll haue¹⁷ the duches your wyfe in mariage ;

24 therfore, syr, for goddes sake aduyse you well that ye come not there, in as moch as ye loue your lyfe / for ye can not scape / there be a .xx. M men that hath sworne your deth ;¹⁸ yf ye enter in to the tornay ye can

Huon swears to make Raoul own his treachery.

28 neuer scape the deth / and I haue herde duke Raoull swere that when he hath slayne you he wyll kepe all your londes.' When duke Huon hadde herd the verlet / he sware by god and made¹⁹ promyse that

32 duke Raoull sholde derely by his fals treason. Then

¹ now. ² that. ³ there. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ before.

⁶ held. ⁷ how. ⁸⁻⁹ after time. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ where.

¹¹ of. ¹² proclaymed. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ too.

¹⁶ present. ¹⁷ Fol. lxvii. col. 1. ¹⁸ therefore.

¹⁹ a solemn.

Esclarmonde
begs her husband
not to go from
Bordeaux.

But Huon is deaf
to her entreaties,
and declares he
will set out at
once to slay the
traitor.

Esclarmonde
begs him to take
many armed men
with him,

and offers to go
with him herself.

the duches Esclarmonde kneled downe before Huon & sayd, ‘¹A, syr,¹ I desyre you to forbere your goyng thyther at this tyme / for I haue herd often reputed² that this duke Raoull is pusant & hath grate londes, &³ 4 is nephew to the imperour of Almayne / and also I haue herde saye that a falser traytoure there is none lyuyng in this worlde.’ ‘Dame,’⁴ quod Huon, ‘I haue well herd you / but by y^e lorde that fourmed me to his 8 ymage, though I sholde lose halfe my londes I wyll go⁵ se y^e traytoure / what weneth⁶ he to abasshe me with his thretnynges? / yf I may mete hym in⁷ the tornay, or in ony other place where so euer it be, though he 12 had with him .x. M men of armes, and that I had but alone my swerde in my hande, I shall sle him what so euer sholde fall therof, and let oure lorde god do with me as it shall please hym; ⁸nor⁸ I shall neuer 16 haue ioye at my herte tyll I haue slayne hym.’ When the duches herde Huon, how he wolde do none other wyse, & that she coulde not let him of his enterpryce, she was sorowfull, and sayde, ‘Syr, syn⁹ it is your plea- 20 sure / reason it is that I muste be content / but yet, syr, I desyre you to take with you .x.M. men well armyd, to thentent that ye be not founde vnprouyded, so that yf ye be assayled¹⁰ ye may be of¹¹ pusaunce to 24 resyste your enemyes / & also⁸ that it¹² may be youre pleasure that I may¹² go with you; & I wyll¹³ be armed with¹⁴ shelde⁸ & helme⁸ & swerde by my syde, & yf I may mete duke Raoul, I shall gyue hym suche a buffet 28 that I shall stryke hym from his horse, &¹⁵ I am so dyspleased with hym that there is no membre¹⁶ in me but that trembleth for angre /¹⁷ I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I be reuenged of hym.’ When Huon 32

¹⁻¹ Deare Lord. ² repeated. ³ besides.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ to. ⁶ thinketh. ⁷ at. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ sufficient.

¹²⁻¹² will please you to suffer me to. ¹³ Fol. lxvii. col. 2.

¹⁴ my. ¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ ioynt. ¹⁷ and.

herde the duches his wyfe he was wel comforted, & began to laugh, & sayde, ‘ fayre ladye, I can¹ you grete thanke for your wordes, but ye are to farre gone with 4 chyld to ryde armed ; it is a seuen monethes past syn ye were fyrist with chylde’ / then Huon made to be cryed² in all his londes that every man sholde be redy to go with hym to the tornay at Mayence. The dukes 8 entent was anone knownen through³ all the countre, so that it⁴ spred a brode that⁵ the brute therof came to the herynge of duke Raoull / and, when he herd that Huon wold come to the tornay, he was⁶ ioyfull therof / then 12 he sware that he wolde go and se Esclaramonde in the guyse of a pylgreme⁷ then he toke⁸ on a beggers garment and⁹ a staffe & a wallet / he shewed his entent to them of his preuey counsell. they wold haue stopped 16 his goynge, but they coude not / thus he appareled him selfe lyke a begger / and with an herbe rubbed so¹⁰ his face and handles that suche as hadde not sene hym¹¹ appareled coulde not haue knownen hym, he was so 20 foule and blacke.¹² he desyred his men to kepe secret his enterpryce. Then he departyd fro Vyen, & neuer rested tyll he came to the cyte of Burdeux, and so wente to¹³ the palays &¹⁴ founde Huon amonge his barons, 24 makyngre grete chere and feest, for to¹³ hym was come dyuers lordes and knyghtes, deuysyngre of the tornay that shold be holden at Mayence. Thus Raoull came before Huon, & desyred hym for the honoure of our 28 lorde god to gyue hym some mete & almes. ‘ Frende,’ quod Huon, ‘ thou shalt haue ynough / but I pray the tell me¹⁵ fro whens thou comest, and whyther thou wylt go, & of what countre thou arte of¹⁵ / ‘ sir,’ quod Raoul, 32 ‘ I am¹⁶ borne of the countre of Berry, but it is .xx. yere

Huon tells her
that her health
will not allow
her to bear him
company.

Proclamation is
made throughout
Bordeaux bidding
all knights
accompany Huon
to Mayence.

Raoul hears of
Huon's intention,

and disguising
himself like a
pilgrim, desires to
visit
Esclaramonde.

He leaves Vienna
and arrives at
Bordeaux.

He sees Huon
among his barons,

and begs for
sustenance.

¹ giue. ² proclaimed. ³ out. ⁴ being. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ not a little. ⁷ and. ⁸ putte. ⁹ tooke. ¹⁰ on.

¹¹ otherwise. ¹² then. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ where he.

¹⁵ Fol. lxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ was.

He tells a lying
story of his
pilgrimage and
previous life.

Huon receives
him kindly.

passed syn I was there. when I departed thens I was but yonge, for yf I sawe ¹nowe before me¹ my father or mother, I shold not know them; &, syr, I come fro beyonde y^e see, where as I haue ben prysoner amone 4 y^e sarazyns y^e space of .xiiii. yeres in a stronge castell, where I haue suffred moche dysease of hungre & colde, & at² last I scaped by reason of a yonge man to whome I promysed,³ yf he coude brynge me to Acre in saue 8 garde, that I wolde then gyue hym twenty ducates of golde / the yong man was couetous to haue the money, and founde the meanes that he brought me to Acre, where as I founde a kynnesman of myn who payed the 12 yonge man⁴ that I⁵ promysyd⁶ hym / and also he gaue me .xv. ducates, the whiche I haue spent with comyng hyther.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye to⁶ god to ayde the, for yf thou were not soo yll appareld thou 16 sholdest seme a man of a hye lygnage / for it semeth to me, yf thou were wel armyd and wepened, and were in some bysenes, thou were lyke ynough to be fered.'

¶ How after that duke Raoull had ben at 20 Burdeux in the guyse of a pylgreme to se the fayre lady Esclaramonde, he retournyd agayne to Vyen. Capitulo .lxxxix.

Raoull in his
disguise dines
with Huon and
Esclaramonde.



Fter that Huon had longe deuysed 24 with Raoull / he wasshed & sate downe to dynner, & the duches his wyfe by him / then Huon commaunded that at the ende of the table, ryght before 28 his table, Raoull the pylgreme to be set, &⁷ was well serued / but Raoull hadde lytell care other of mete ⁸or drynke, for his thought was of another

¹⁻¹ after mother. ² the. ³ that.

⁴ the money the which I had. ⁵ had. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ there he. ⁸ Fol. lxvii. back, col. 2.

mater wherupon he sore studyed / for before him he
 saw the noble duches Esclaramonde, of whom he was
 so amourous that he coude not withdraw his eyen fro
 4 her / for the more he beheld her the more he was
 embrased with¹ loue / he thought he never sawe before
 His love for the
 fair lady grows
 apace,
 soo fayre a lady in all his lyfe / so that for the grete
 beaute that was in her / he chaunged often tymes his
 8 coloure, but it coude not be perceyued by cause he was
 so blacke & foule with rubbyng of certeyn herbes / &
 he sayd to² him selfe / that who so euer had suche a
 lady to his wyfe myght wel make auaunt to be the
 12 happyest man of y^e worlde,³ that myght⁴ haue his
 pastyme with so fayre a lady / & sayd,⁵ by the lorde
 that fourmed him / though he sholde be dampned in
 hell for euer / he wold slee Huon & haue his wyfe in
 16 maryage, & all Huons londes to be his for euer. Alas,
 that it had not pleased our lord god that at that⁶ houre
 Huon might haue knownen the treason of Raoull / he
 sholde then haue bought it ful derely. When y^e
 20 traytour had eten and made good chere / Huon gaue
 hym⁷ gowne / shyrte / hosen & shoes / & money for
 his dyspence / Raoull toke it, he durst not refuse it,
 but thanked Huon / & so toke his leue & departed, he
 24 durst no lenger tary for fere of knowlege / & as soone
 as he coude he departed out of the towne / of his
 iourneys I wyll make no longe rehersall / but he
 laboured so longe that he aryued at Vien ; then he
 28 went to his palays, where as he was well receyued of
 his lordes / & they laughed when they sawe hym in
 that apparell / then within a whyle after he made hym
 redy, & his men, who were a grete nombre, & so
 32 departyd fro Vyen, & toke the way to Mayence.
 When his vngle, the emperoure of almayne, was aduer-
 tysed of his comynge / he wente & met hym without

and he swears to
 slay Huon and
 make her his own
 wife.

Huon, however,
 gives him
 clothing and
 money,

and he journeys
 back to Vienna.

Soon afterwards
 he leaves Vienna
 for Mayence.

¹ her. ² within. ³ euen he. ⁴ but. ⁵ swore.
⁶ this. ⁷ a.

His uncle, the Emperor of Germany, welcomes him warmly.

A tournament is arranged.

y^e towne to do hym the more honour, & when he saw hym he was ioyefull, & kyssed hym & sayd, ‘fayre nephew, I am glad of your ¹comynge; I haue longe desyred to se you.’ y^e good emperour knew nothyng 4 of y^e treason that his nephew had purchased agaynst Huon of Burdeux / for yf he had knownen it / to haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to that treason. thus hande in hande thempour & his 8 nephew Raoull entred with grete ioye in to y^e cyte of Mayence, where as they were hyghly receyued / grete ioy was made at theyr comynge; moch people were in the towne, come thyder to iust & tourney, and 12 many other to beholde the tryumphe. Now let vs speke of Huon of Burdeux.

¶ How duke Huon toke leue of the duches his wyfe, & how he aryued at Mayence & 16 went to the palays. Capitulo .lxxxx.

Huon leaves Bordeaux for the tournament at Mayence.



Hen Huon saw his tyme to departe fro Burdeux to go to y^e turney to ² Mayence, he made redy his trayn, & toke with 20 him .x.M. men of armes for the garde of his parson of ³the best horse men in all his countre / then he toke his leue of y^e fayre Esclarmonde his wyfe, who began sore to wepe when she saw 24 his departure / ryght swetly they kyssed togyther at theyr departyng / then he toke his hors & he & his company departed fro Burdeux / & rested not tyll ⁴ he cam to Coleyn on y^e ryne, ther he taryed .ii. dayes to 28 refresshe him, & on ⁵ y^e .iii. day he armed him ⁶ & called his company before him, & said, ‘syrs, I wyl take leue of you al, for none of you shal go with me. be nothinge abasshed / for he that alwayes hath sauued me 32

He is strongly guarded at his departure,

but he leaves his companions at Cologne, and proceeds alone.

¹ Fol. lxviii. col. 1. ² at. ³ Fol. lxviii. col. 2.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ vpon.

⁶ selfe.

out of all perelles wyll not forsake me at this tyme' /
when his men herde him they had grete meruayle /
that he wolde take his vyage alone, & he said to¹ them,
4 ' syrs, haue no doute of me that² I shal³ dye tyll⁴ myn
houre be come' / they of Coleyn enquyred nothynge of
theyr estate, for as then there was no warre, & they
byleued that they wolde go to the tourney / whien his
8 lordes saw he wold⁵ go alone,⁵ they were sory that he
wold go to the tourney alone, and sayd one to another,
' we fere gretly he shall neuer returne agayne / & we
shall neuer haue suche another mayster agayne' / ' syrs,'
12 quod Huon, ' ye shall not nede to take ony sorowe
for me / for certaynly I knowe well yf ony peryllous
besynes sholde come to me, that I shold be ayded by
kyng Oberon' / but he neded not to haue sayd so, for
16 when kyng Oberon departed fro him, he bad him not
to trust vpon ony ayde fro him, & therfore Huon was a
fole, & yll aduysed to truste theron, or to vndertake so
peryllous an enterpryce as he dyde, wherby he was in
20 grete peryll of dethe, as ye shall here⁶ after.

Huon's men-at-arms marvel at his resolve.

Huon puts vain trust in king Oberon.

¶ When Huon was redy he lepte on⁷ his horse
without ony styrrop, clene armed as he was, & after
stretched him so in his styrropes that y^e lethers
24 streyned out thre fyngers ; he was apusaunte knyght,
armed or vnarmed, & gretly to be fered / he toke leue
of his men & left them wepynge in y^e cite of Coleyn /
then he rode towards y^e cite⁸ of Mayence ;¹⁰ so longe
28 he rode that he had a syght of the cyte, & then he sawe
aboue in the medow many tentes & ryche pauylions,
pyght vp with pomelles of fyne golde shynyng agaynst
the sonne / Huon behelde them well, & so passed forth
32 & entred in to the eite, where as he sawe euery stret full
of knyghtes & squyvers abydynge¹¹ y^e daye of¹² turney

The knight rides on to Mayence,

¹ vnto. ² for. ³ not. ⁴ vntill. ⁵⁻⁵ thus depart.
⁶ here. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ that. ⁹ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 1.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ there vntill. ¹² the.

and arrives at the
palace where the
Emperor and his
nephew are
staying.

Huon passed forth tyl¹ he came to y^e palays, where as he founde themperour & his nephew raoul, whom Huon loued but lytel, as he shewyd wel shortly after, as ye shal here / when Huon was come before the palays he 4 sawe themperour & Raoull his nephew goynge vp y^e stayres, then Huon met with a gret almayn, & sayd to him, ‘frende, I pray thee shew me what be yonder two prynces *that goth vp y^e stayres*, & that so moch 8 honour is done to them.’ / ‘sir,’ quod he, ‘y^e fyrst is themperour, & he *that foloweth* is his nephew, duke Raoull / he was sone to themperours brother / the tourney 12 *that shall be made* is done for the loue of him, & at his request, & after the tourney he thynketh to mary a grete lady, whose name shall not be knownen till the turney be done’ / when Huon herde *that he blusshed* in the face for the gret yre *that he was in*, for he knew 16 wel *that Raoull*, if he coude fynde y^e meanes, ²he wyll² haue fro him his wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde / but he promysed in his mynde that fyrst he sholde derely by her / ‘frende,’ quod Huon, ‘I desyre you³ do so 20 moche for me as to holde my horse tyl¹ I returne agayne out of the hal, & *that I haue spoken with y^e emperour & with his lordes* / ‘syr,’ quod the squyer with a good wyll, ‘I shall here holde your hors tyl¹ ye 24 come’ / now god ayde Huon, for or⁴ he myght retourne he was in grete peryll of deth, as ye shall here.

Huon knows of
his design on his
wife,

and enters the
hall of the palace.

¶ How Huon slew duke Raoul in the presence of themperour sytting at his 28 table / and of the meruayles ⁵*that he dyd*, & how in the chase that was made after him he strake downe themperour and wanne his good horse. Capitulo lxxxxi. 32

¹ vntill. ²⁻⁵ would. ³ to. ⁴ ere.

⁵ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2.



Uon, who was full of yre & dys-
plesure, went vp in to the palays &
came in to y^e hall, where as he founde
moche¹ peple; there was themperour,
who had² wasshed his handes, &
was set at the table / Huon preased
forth before the table with his swerde in his hande, &
sayd, ‘noble emperoure, I coniure the by y^e grete vertu
deuyne, & by your³ parte of paradyce, &⁴ that your
soule⁵ to be dampned yf case be that ye say not the
trouth & gyue trewe iugement with out falshode, nor
to spare to say the trouth for no man lyuynge, though
he be your nere⁶ parent’ / ‘frende,’ quod themperour,
‘say your pleasure, & I shall answere you’ / ‘sir,’
quod Huon, ‘yf ye had⁷ weddyd a lady, & loue her
derely, & that she be fayre / good / swete / & sage / &
replete with all good vertues / & that ye knowe surely
that she loueth you entyrelly as a good true wyfe ought
to loue her lord & husbonde, & then a traytoure
pryuely to purchase your deth for loue of your wyfe /
& yf by aduenture after ye fynde him in y^e felde /
or in towne, medowe / or wood / in palays / or in hall,
& that ye myght accomplysshe your thought & your
desyre agaynst the same traytour who dyd purchase
the sayd treason agaynst you / I demaunde then of you
yf ye wolde slee him or not?’ / ‘frende,’ quod
themperour, ‘ye haue coniured me; I shall answere you
to the trouthe / not for y^e valewe of x cytes I wyll not
lye /⁸ knowe for trouth yf I had a wyfe, such⁹ one as
ye speke of / adorned with such fayre vertues,¹⁰ wherof
there be many suche / how be it, yf I had suche one as
ye resyte, & that I knewe surely that she loued me
enterly / then¹¹ yf I knewe any man lyuynge that wolde

Huon lays his
case before
the Emperor,
although he omits
all names.

The Emperor
declares that any
traitor pursuing
a wife who dearly
loves, and is
dearly loved by
her husband, is
worthy of death
wheresoever he
may be found.

¹ many. ² newly. ³ hopefull. ⁴ or. ⁵ is.
⁶ neerest. ⁷ haue. ⁸ therefore. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ and.
¹¹ Fol. lxviii. col. 1 (this should be lxix, lxviii repeated).

purchase me suche a treason / though he were my nere
 parent, yf I myght fynde him, in what soeuer place it
 were ¹in¹, and though I shold be slayne in the quarell,
 there shold nother² chyrche,³ aultre, ¹nor cruceyfx¹ 4
 that sholde sauе his lyfe / but that with my two handes
 I shold slee him ; and also my herte sholde serue me
 further / that after I hadde slayne hym / I wolde
 drawe out his herte out of his body, and ete it for 8
 dyspyte.' When Huon herde the emperour, he sayd /
 'o, ryght noble and vertuous emperoure / iust and
 trewe iugement ye haue gyuen / the which I repeale
 not / but I shall shewe you what hath moued me to 12
 demaunde of you this iugement / yf suche a case sholde
 a⁴ fallen to⁵ you / and, syr, to y^e entent that ye shall
 know y^e trouth what hath me moued thus to do / ¹syr,¹
 ye may se here before you he that wolde do⁶ lyke case 16
 agaynst me, which is your neuewe Raoul / who hath
 purchased my deth lyke a cruell and a false traytoure,
 to the entent to haue Esclaramonde my wyfe, and all
 myne herytages / the iugement that ye haue gyuen is 20
 iust and trewe / ye shall neuer be blamed in any
 courte / but ye shall therin be named a noble prynce /
 and therfore, syr,⁷ I haue founde⁷ so nere me ¹he¹ that
 purchaseth⁸ my dethe & shame / I sholde neuer be 24
 worthy to appere in any prynces courte without I were
 reuenged of hym / and I had rather dye then to forbere
 him any lenger' / ther with he drew his swerde /⁹ when
 Raoull sawe the clerenes of the swerde he was a frayde, 28
 bycause he was vnarmyd / how be it, he thought that
 Huon wolde not haue ben so hardy as to do hym any
 hurte in the presence of his vncle the emperoure ; but
 when he sawe that Huon dyde lyft vp his swerde to 32
 stryke hym, he was in greate fere, and fledde to the
 Emperoure to sauе his lyfe / but Huon parceyued hym

Huon then
accuses Raoul of
working evil
against him and
his wife,

and drawing his
sword, cuts off
Raoul's head.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² be. ³ nor. ⁴ haue. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ in. ⁷⁻⁷ hauing found him. ⁸ for. ⁹ and.

so quyc¹kely that he strake hym with a reuerse² in
suche wyse that he strake of his heed from his sholders,
and the body fell downe before the Emperoure / and
4 the heed fell on³ the table in the dysshe before the
Emperoure, wherof he hadde great doloure / ‘god gyue
me good lucke,’ quod Huon ; ‘this traytoure shall neuer
be amourous of my wyfe,⁴ I am sure ynough of hym.’

8 The emperoure, who satte at the table, hadde grete
sorowe at his herte when he sawe his neuewe deed
before hym / then he cryed alowde and sayde, ‘Syrs,
ye my barons, loke that this knyght scape you not ; I
12 shall neuer ete nor drynke tyll⁵ I se hym hanged. I
sholde haue greate sorowe at my herte yf he sholde
escape.’

Huon vnderstode him wel, and fered hym but lytell /
16 but with his swerde he layde on rounde aboute hym
and strake of armes, handes, and legges, so that there
was none so hardy that durst approche nere to hym ; he
slewe so many that it was ferefyll to beholde liym /

20 within a shorte space he hadde slayne mo then eyght
and twenty / and the emperoure was in suche fere that
he wyst not how to saue himselfe for the grete
meruayles that he sawe Huon doo / he douted bycause
24 he was vnarmed / and Huon cryed & sayd, ‘traytours,
I doute you nothyng.’ then on all partyes Almayns
& Bauyers assayled Huon / but he defended hym⁶ by
suche force and puyssance, that by the murder that

28 he made the bloode ranne vpon y^e pauement lyke a
ryuer / Huon might haue taryed to longe, for the
emperoure and his men wente and armed theym / and
Huon, who sawe well that he coulde not longe endure
32 without⁷ paryll of dethe / strykynge with his swerde
rounde aboute hym / he withdrew backe downe the
stayres of the palayes, and none durst approche nere

The Emperor is
greatly grieved to
see his nephew
slain,

and bids his
guards seize
Huon.

Huon is furious,
and slays twenty-
eight of the men
who lay hands on
him.

After much
bloodshed, Huon
makes his escape.

¹ Fol. lxviii, col. 2. ² stroke. ³ vpon. ⁴ for now.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ himself. ⁷ great.

A cousin of
Raoul challenges
him on leaving
the palace.

They fight
together fiercely,

but the German
falls from his
saddle, and is
killed.

Huon is beset on
all sides,

and does marvels
with his sword.

him bycause they were vnarmed, and for feere of him. Huon, by his hye prowes for al his ¹enemyes, came to² his horse and mountyd on³ hym, and so yssued out / and there was a knyght called Galeram, who was cosyn ⁴ germanay to duke Raoul, and he was clene armed and mounted on a good horse / and he folowed Huon, and sayde, ‘⁴horeson and thefe,⁴ thou hast slain duke Raoull, my cosyn ; without thou tourne to² me I shall 8 stryke the behynde.’ When Huon herde hym he sware he had rather dye then to refuse too tourne too² hym / soo⁵ he tourned, and they couched theyr speres / and mette so fyersly togider that they gaue eche other 12 meruaylous⁶ strokes / Galerames spere brake all to peces / and Huon, who had employed all his force and vertu, strake Galeram on³ the shelde with his spere / the whiche was bygge and stronge / soo that Galeram 16 fell out of the⁷ saddle so rudely that in the fall he brake his necke, and so lay deed on³ the erth ; & Huon, who thought he had not ben deed, returned agayne to hym / but when he sawe that he stered not / he departed 20 thense / but he taryed very longe / for he sawe well he was closed in rounde aboute, and sawe wel without god had pyte of hym he was not lyke to scape without deth or taken prysoner / they cast on hym dartes and 24 swerde ; one with a sharpe swerde cam to² hym and gaue hym a grete stroke / but his ⁸harneys⁸ sauued his lyfe, for all the strokes that he⁹ receyued he neuer remoued out of his sadell. Whan Huon saw in what 28 daunger he was in¹⁰ / he called vpon oure¹¹ lorde god, humbly prayenge hym to delyuer hym out of that paryll / with his swerde he dyde meruayles / he slewe and claue hedes to the brayne ;¹² he semed rather a 32

¹ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 1. ² vnto. ³ vpon.
⁴⁻⁴ Abide, Villaine. ⁵ then. ⁶ great. ⁷ his.
⁸⁻⁸ good armour. ⁹ had. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ the. ¹² that.

spyryte of hell then a man, for he that had sene hym
wolde haue sayde that he had ben noo mortall man / he
sawe passe by hym a knyght of Almayne / called syr
4 Hans Sperguer / as he passed by / Huon gaue hym
suche a stroke that he claue hym¹ to the gyrdell, wherof
the Almaynes were so abasshed that none durst
approche nere to hym, they fered him so² sore. Alas
8 that his men at Coleyne had not knownen what case he
was in / they were to³ farre of / Huon, who fared lyke
a wylde boore ; he layde on rounde aboute hym so that
his swerde was all bloody of y^e men that he had slayne
12 and maymed / they cast darteres at him, so that at last
his horse was slayne vnder hym, wher of he was sorow-
full ; how be it, lyke a coragyous knyght, with his
swerde he⁴ foughte valyauntly with his enemyes /⁵ he
16 sawe where the erle of Seyne com to hym to haue
stryken hym with his swerde, but Huon mette with²
hym so hastily that he had no layser to stryke hym,
and Huon gaue hym suche a stroke that his helme
20 coulde not sauе his lyfe / for Huons swerde entred in
to his brayne, and so fell downe deed amonge the horse
fete / Huon, who was quycke and experte, toke the deed
knygghtes horse and lept vpon hym / and when he sawe
24 that he was new horsed agayne he was ioyfull, and
then he was able to departe in the spyte of all² his
enemies / but themperour, who had gret sorow at his
herte for the deth of his neuew Raoull, made grete
28 haste after Huon with .x. thousande men with hym,
and so came fro Mayence⁶ on the sporres, desyryng to
overtake Huon / and so rode on before his men, for his
horse was so good that he wold rynne as fast as a
32 bynde coude flye / in al y^e world there was no horse
lyke to² hym / the emperoure on this horse folowed
Huon / & as he rode he sawe all the waye deed men lye

He attacks his
enemies like a
wild boar,

but his horse
is killed under
him.

He soon obtains
another horse,

and rides away.

The Emperor
pursues with ten
thousand men,

and follows as
fast as a bird
flies.

¹ Fol. lxviii. baek, col. 2. ² omitted. ³ so.

⁴ still. ⁵ and. ⁶ all.

Huon is overtaken,

and the Emperor vows his death.

The knight turns to fight with his enemy.

The Emperor is stricken to earth,

and Huon, seizing his swift horse, takes to flight.

The Germans find their sovereign like to die,

that Huon had slayne / he sporr'd his horse that anone
 he ouer toke Huon, and sayd / 'thou traytoure, tourne
 thy shelde towardes me, or elles my spere shall go
 through thy body, for y^e sorowe that lyeth at my herte 4
 for loue of my neuewe, whom thou hast slayne, con-
 strayneth me to make hast to be reuenged ¹vpon² thee,
 nor I shal neuer haue ioy at my hert tyl³ I haue slayne
 the / moche it greueth me that I am constrainyd to 8
 slee the with my spere, for I had rather hange the.'
 When Huon herde themperour, who was so nere hym,
 and saw howe he was mounted on so good a horse / he
 called vpon our lorde god, and desyred hym of hys 12
 grace to ayde hym to conquere that horse / and when
 he sawe that the emperour was farre before his men /
 he tourned his horse heed towardes the emperoure,
 and couched his spere / and the emperour came agaynst 16
 hym lyke the tempest / and they mette togyder so
 rudely that theyr sheldes⁴ were persed, so that the
 emperours spere brake all to shyuers / and Huons spere,
 which⁵ was⁶ rude and stronge,⁷ strake the emperour 20
 with suche puyssance that he was stryken fro his
 horse to the erth sore astonyed, so that he wyst not
 where he was / and Huon, who had greate desyre to
 haue the emperours horse, alyghtyd quyclye fro his 24
 owne horse, and toke the emperours horse and mounted
 on hym, and was therof ryght ioyous / then he sayde
 to hymselfe that he douted not them all / he strake the
 good horse with the spores, and founde hym quycke 28
 and lyght vnder hym / then he lefte the emperoure
 lyenge on the erth, and⁸ was not⁹ contente that he was
 soo soone socoured / for yf the Almaynes hadde not
 quyclye come Huon had slayne him /¹⁰ when the 32
 Almayns cam to theyr lord, and founde hym lyeng on

¹ Fol. lxix, col. 1. ² of. ³ vntill. ⁴ speares.

⁵ omitted.

⁶ so.

⁷ that he.

⁸ who.

⁹ a little.

¹⁰ but.

the erth, they beleued¹ he had ben deed / they began
 to make grete sorow, and the emperor, who was come but he revives,
 agayne to hym selfe, sayde / 'syrs, thanked be god I
 4 fele no hurte but I maye well ryde / but I haue grete
 sorowe at my herte that Huon hath thus ledde awaye and grieves for
 my good horse, and is scaped awaye, and also hathe
 slayne my two neuewes / but, syrs, I counsell you
 8 that none folowe hym, for it shall be but a loste ²tyme
 for the good horse that is vnder hym, and he that is on
 hym is³ valyaunt in armes / ⁴he is gretely to be douted /
 therfore I counsell let vs retourne backe agayne / for
 12 we may lose more then we shall wynne / but by the
 grace of god, or⁵ it be thre monethes past, I shall
 assemble suche a nombre of men that the valays and
 mountaynes shall be full of men / then wyll I goo to
 16 the cyte of Burdeux, and wyll not departe thens tyll I
 haue wonne it, and yf I may gette Huon I shall make
 hym dye of an yll⁶ deth, & shall take and wast all
 his londes.'

The Emperor
 declares that
 within three
 months Bordeaux
 will be in his
 hands.

* * * * *

20 ¶ How Huon, after⁷ he was mounted on⁸ the
 emperours good horse, he aryued at Coleyne,
 where as⁹ he founde his men, and how he
 departyd thense / and of the emperoure
 24 who lay ¹⁰in a busshement¹⁰ in a wode,
 abydynge¹¹ to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxii. [= xcii.]

¹ verily. ² Fol. lxix, col. 2. ³ so. ⁴ that.
⁵ ere. ⁶ euill. ⁷ that. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enambushed ¹¹ there.



Hus as ye haue herde, Huon departed
with y^e emperours good horse and lefte
the emperour lyenge on the erth, who
commaunded his barons to returne 4
backe & not to folowe Huon any
further / ther with there cam to the
emperour a knyght called Godun, he was borne at
Norembrege, & he sayde / ‘syr, yf ye wyll beleue me 8
& do after my counsell ye shall do otherwyse / ye shall
retourne to Mayence this night & ordayne foure C¹ of
suche men as ye haue here / & sende them with in two
legees of Coleyn, on y^e hye way in to Fraunce, & there 12
ye shall fynde a lytell wood, ²and there lette them lye
³in a busshemente³ tyll Huon passe by them / for I
knowe well he wyll go strayte to Coleyne this nyght, &
lodge in a frenche mans house that dwelleth there / 16
and in the mornynge surely he wyll departe thens and
so passe by the said busshement, so that it shall not be
possyble to sauе hym selfe alone / but other he shalbe
slayne or taken.’ When the emperoure herde Godun, 20
he sayde / ‘syr, ye haue gyuen me good counsell, and
this is lykely to be done / but it were conuenyent to
sende mo then foure thousande / for the grete desyre
that I haue to gete hym in to my handes constreyneth 24
me to cause hym to be taken, to the entent to be
reuenged of hym / therfore I wolde go myselfe and
take with me x thousande men, and shall goo and lye
in the place that ye haue apoynted / for I shall neuer 28
haue parfyte ioye at my herte as longe as Huon is
alyue / for he hath caused moch sorowe at my herte for
the deth of my two neuewes, whom so pyteously he
hath slayne. let vs take oure waye a⁴ two legees besyde 32
Coleyne, nerer we wyll not approche, too the entent
that our comyng be not knownen’ / then he chase out

A knight proposes
that an ambush
shall be prepare¹
in a little wood
near Cologne,

and that Huon be
there slain on his
journey.

The Emperor
rejoices in this
counsel,

and declares that
he, with ten
thousand men,
will carry out the
plan.

¹ Thousand. ² Fol. lxix. back, col. 1.
³⁻³ enambushed. ⁴ about.

.x. thouſande of the moost valyauntes men in his company, & the rest he ſent backe to Mayence. Thus the emperor rode forth and rode ſo longe that daye & 4 nyghte / that an houre, or it was daye, he came to the ſaid wode, & there layde his buſhement.¹ And Huon rode² after he was departed fro themperour that late in the eueninge he came to Coleyne, wher as he was 8 receyued of his men with grete ioye / then Gerames ſaid, ‘ſyr, I requyre you ſhewe vs of your aduentures’ / then Huon ſhewed them euery thynge, & the maner how he had ſlayn duke Raoull, & how he departed fro 12 Mayenee, & how he was pursued / and how he wanne themperours good horſe / then³ Gerames & all the other had gret ioye, and ⁴thanked god of his fayre aduenture, & had grete meruayle howe he ſcaped / but they knewe 16 nothyng what the emperor was aboue to do, nor that he was in the woode abydynge⁵ for Huon / that nyght Huon and his company were at Coleyne makynge good chere /⁶ the nexte mornynge they herd masse⁷ / then 20 they mounted on theyr horſes and yſſued out of the towne ; they were to y^e nombre of .xiii. M. hardy fyghtynge men. and, when they were out in the feldes, Huon, lyke a good man of warre, ſayd / ‘ſyrs, I desyre you 24 let vs kepe togyther and ryde lyke men of warre, to the entent that we be not ſodeynly taken ;’ and ſo they dyde / the daye was fayre & clere ; they myght well be parceyued a farre of / as they were by the emperor of 28 Almain, who lay⁸ in a buſhement⁸ for Huon. the emperor ſpyed them fyrt, and ſayd to his company / ‘ſyrs, yonder⁹ I ſe moche¹⁰ people comynge¹¹ to vs warde¹¹ / they ſeme¹² men well experte in armes ; neuer 32 byleue me but they be frenche men, and he that is theyr

The Emperor reaches the little wood near Cologne, and lies in ambush.

Huon meets his companions again at Cologne,

and tells them his adventures.

The following morning Huon, with thirteen thousand men, leaves the city.

The Emperor sees them from afar approaching the wood,

¹ ambush. ² ſo. ³ wherat. ⁴ Fol. lxix. back, col. 2.
⁵ there. ⁶ and. ⁷ ſeruice. ⁸⁻⁸ enambushed.
⁹ a farre off. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹⁻¹¹ towarde vs.
¹² vnto me.

and marvels at
the number of
armed men.

He fears to do
battle with Huon
and his troops,

but urges his own
men to bear
themselves
bravely.

captayne is Huon of Burdeux / he is not come hyther
lyke a small parsonage, but he is hyghly accompanied
lyke a grete and a myghty prynce. I se well he is
valyaunt by that he hathe doone ; he is so noble and 4
hardy that none may be compared to hym. ye haue
well sene howe *that* he all alone came in to my palayes,
and there slewe my neuewe duke Raoull, wher with my
herte is in grete dyspleasure / he is gretely to be 8
douted, for without god helpe vs we shall haue ynough
to doo with hym / wolde to god that he and I were at
accordement & agreed / for he is so noble and so
valyaunt that he fereth no man / ye haue well sene syn 12
he departed fro Mayence he hathe slayne mo then .xl.
of my men, and hath borne me to the erthe / and he
hath taken fro me my good horse, wherby he maye be
well assured *that* there is no man shall take hym yf he 16
¹be on² his backe / how be it, we must set on² hym,
for my herte shall neuer be in ease as long as he lyueth /
therfore, *sirs*, I desyre you euery man this day shewe
the loue that ye bere to³ me & the saue garde of youre 20
lyues / for to flye away auayleth not / therfore, syrs,
set on togyther, and do so that we may haue the fyrst
crye.⁴



¶ Of the gret batayle within two legees of 24
Coleyne bytwene the emperor of Almайн
& Huon of Burdeux, & of the trewes that
was taken bytwene them.

Ca. .lxxxiii. [= xciii.] 28

¹ Fol. lxx. col. 1. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ aduantage.



Von, who rode before his barons
deuysyng with olde Gerames, re-
garded on his ryght hande towards
the lytel wood ;¹ he sawe in the
wood grete clerenesse by reason of
the sonne shynyng on the helmes

Huon perceives
his foemen in the
wood,

and on the spere poyntes, wherby he pareeyued clerely²
that ther was moch people hyden in the wood / he
shewed them to³ Gerames and to his other company /
and sayd, ‘syrs, be in a suerte *that* without batayle we
can not scape / here is themperour who lyeth in awyte

and prepares his
army for battle.

12 for vs. I desyre you let vs do so that he shall haue no
cause too make ony auaunt of vs / yonder ye may se
them how they set them selfe *in* ordre to abyde vs,
therfore let vs quyckly set on them’ / & soo they dyd
16 in suche wyse that with⁴ rynnyng of theyr horses y^e
erth trymbled, & the sonne lost his lyght by reason of
the pouder that rose vp in to the ayre on⁵ both partes /
Huon, who ranne before on his pusaunt horse / behelde

20 Godun, who was formost of⁶ his company ; he ranne at
hym with a strong spere, so that he ran hym clene
through the body so that he fel downe deed⁷ to the
erth / & with the same spere Huon met Crassyn

Huon made the
first onset, and
slew many valiant
officers.

24 polynger who bare themperours baner / Huon strake him
so fyersly that he bare horse & man & baner al to the
erth,⁸ wheroft the almayns and Bauyers were sorowfull /
Huon dyde soo moche or⁹ his spere was broken that he
28 fyrst bare fyue to the erth so that they hadde no power
after to releue them selfe / ther were many speres
broken, and many a knyghte borne to the erth that¹
there dyed among y^e hors fete / for the father coude
32 not helpe the sone / nor the sone coude not helpe the
father / and many an horse ranne a brode in the felde

¹ and. ² plainly. ³ Fol. lxx. col. 2.

⁴ the very. ⁵ from. ⁶ in. ⁷ omitted.
⁸ ground. ⁹ ere.

and theyr maysters lyeng deed in the bloode and myre.
 Huon, who rode aboute in the batayle sleynge and
 woundynge his enemyes, behelde on his ryghte syde
 and sawe the erle Sauary sleyng many of them of 4
 Burdeux. ‘A, good lorde,’ quod Huon, ‘yf yonder
 knyght reygne longe / he shall do me grete domage.’
 Then he rode to hym / & gaue hym suche a stroke
 with his swerde so that he strake of his shulder and 8
 arme so rudely that it fell vpon the erthe / so that for
 the greate Payne that the erle Sauary endured he fell
 from his horse / ^{1&} there was slayne amonge the hors
 feete, wherof themperour, who was therby, was² ryght 12
 sorowfull when he saw another of his nephewes slain /
 & sayd, ‘a, Huon, of god be thou cursed, syn thou hast
 taken³ so many of my frendes ; I shall neuer haue ioye
 in my hert tyl I haue the in my handes to hange the’ / 16
 ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘or⁴ ye haue taken me, ye are lyke to
 lese mo of your frendes, & beware of your selfe that ye
 come not in⁵ my handes / by youre nephewe Raoull ye
 haue all this domage, who by his falsenes thoughte to 20
 haue betrayed me & to haue had my wyfe / yf I haue
 slayne your nephewes and your men, I haue done it in
 defendyng myn owne body ; I say to you yf ye be not
 wel ware of me I shall bryng you to that poynt that 24
 it shall be harde for you to be caryed awaye in a lytter.’
 ‘Huon,’ quod the emperoure, ‘the grete hate that I
 haue to the for the dethe of my nephewes, ⁶wherby I⁶
 fele suche⁷ doloure at my herte that I had rather dye 28
 then that I sholde not be reuenged of the / therfore
 beware⁸ of me, for I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll I
 haue the other quycke or deed’ / then they two wente
 backe to take theyr course togyther / but or⁴ they met 32
 y^e almayns came rynnynge thyther for⁹ fere that they
 hadde of lesynge of² theyr emperoure / and on the other

¹ Fol. lxx. back, col. 1. ² omitted. ³ slaine. ⁴ ere.
⁵ to. ⁶⁻⁶ makes me. ⁷ much. ⁸ thou. ⁹ the.

The Earl Savary
works much
havoc among the
men of Bordeaux,

but Huon gives
him a fatal
wound.

Huon and the
Emperor meet on
the field of battle,

and bitterly
reproach each
other.

parte came thyther y^e olde Gerames, who fought so
fyersly that whom soo euer he strake with a full stroke
hadde no nede of ony surgyon ; and his company fayled

Old Gerames
fights with
youthful vigour.

4 not for theyr partes / and Huon with his good swerde
opened the thycke prese, soo that the almayns¹ douted
hym. Huon with his noble chyualry caused his enemyes
to recule backe halfe a bowe shotte / then there was a
8 knyght of almayn sawe well that without some remedy
were founde / the emperor & his company were lyke
to be slayne ; he went out of the batayle as preuely as
coude, and ronne on y^e sporres & rested not ²tyll he cam

A German, in
fear for the
Emperor's safety,

12 to Coleyne / then³ incontynent he rode to the prouostes
house, & founde him in his house newly come fro
masse / then y^e knight sayd to him / 'syr proust, yf
euer ye wyll se the emperor a lyue, cause the comons

goes to the
provost of
Cologne, and begs
him arm the
burghers.

16 of this cyte to be armed, & come, & socoure themperour
hastely / for when I cam from hym he had gret nede of
ayde / ther is Huon of Burdeux, who hath slayn thre of
his nephewes, & this other day he was lodged in this
20 cite. the emperor knoweth well ye knewe nothyng
therof / for Huon had lodged his men in the suburbes,
& in other lytell houses, bycause he wolde not be
perceyued / syr proust, make hast in this besynes' /

24 when the proust herd what daunger themperoure was
in, he sowned⁴ the watch belle & made to be cryed in
euyer strete that euyer man that was able to bere her-
neys⁵ sholde arme them / & to⁶ go out in to the felde

The watch bell
at Cologne is
sounded.

28 to socoure themperoure, who was in grete daunger of
his lyfe / when the burgesses of the towne herde that
crye euyer man armed them as well as they coude / some
were harneysed behynde, & some in a Jacke all smoked,

The burghers arm
in haste and leave
the city, twenty
thousand strong.

32 and with staues & other wepons / what a fote & a
horse backe, there went out of y^e cyte a⁶ .xx. M. men /
yf ye had sene y^e horsemen, ye wolde haue laughed at

¹ greatly. ² Fol. lxx. back, col. 2. ³ where.

⁴ sounded. ⁵ armes. ⁶ omitted.

Very rude is their equipment.
 them, for it semed they were set a¹ horse backe in dyspyte / there was neuer sene so rude ^{2&} & foule a sorte² / it was no meruayle / for they ³hadde not ben³ accustomed to ryde in harneys / the prouost rode⁴ before, and exorted theym to do theyr deuours, so they toke the⁵ way to come to the batayle, where as Huon & his company dyde parte of theyr wylles. ⁶the emperour seynge that he began to lese his men and place, he rode ⁸ serchyng in the batayle for duke Huon / where as he founde by aduenture Huon, who had⁷ newly slain⁸ the Emperoures seneschall. When that the Emperoure sawe hym slayne, he was ryght sorowful, & in⁹ grete ¹² rage, then¹⁰ cryed to ¹¹Huon, and said / ‘thou knyghte that neuer arte satysfyed to shedde the bloode of my men to abate my lygnage and force, I pray the turne thy shelde to¹² me, for yf thou knewest the grete hate that ¹⁶ I ¹³haue to¹³ the thou woldest neuer appere before me.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I ¹⁴haue grete¹⁴ meruayle that ye so sore hate me & haue taryed so long¹⁵ to be reuenged¹⁵ / therfore, ¹⁴sir,¹⁴ beware ¹⁴of me¹⁴ / for yf I may¹⁶ I ²⁰ shal¹⁷ sende you after your nephewes, whom ye say that ye loue so wel’ / they toke their cours with grete & rude speres / & so cam togyther lyke y^e tempest, & met so rudely that y^e buckles of theyr harneys¹⁸ al to brast; ¹⁹ ²⁴ themperoure spere brake all too peces / but Huons spere was bygge & rude²⁰ / ²¹he strake the emperour therwith¹⁴ by²² such pusaunce that the²³ spere ranne through his shoulder / so that themperoure fell to the ²⁸ erth so rudely that with the fall he brake the bone of his thygh / wherby he was in suche doloure that he sowned / and when Huon sawe hym lye on the grounde

¹ on. ²⁻² a company. ³⁻³ were not. ⁴ went.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ then. ⁸ by aduenture. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ he.
¹¹ Fol. lxxii, col. 1 (this should be lxxi, which is omitted).
¹² vnto. ¹³⁻¹³ beare. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ for reuenge.
¹⁶ can. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ Armour. ¹⁹ and. ²⁰ stronge.
²¹ and therewith. ²² with. ²³ his.

The Emperor,
after losing
nearly all his men
in the battle,

seeks out Huon,

and challenges
him.

The duel begins.

The Emperor is
flung heavily to
the earth, and
lies in a swoon.

he cam to hym with his swerde in his hande, and
had¹ slayne him yf he had not ben socoured / but
there came so many almayns, that whether Huon wolde
4 or not, they toke² and bare³ the emperoure³ out of the
felde, & layde hym in the wode, &⁴ demaundered of him
how he dyd / ‘syrs,’ quod he, ‘I am sore hurte / for
my thygh is broken, wherby I endure⁵ as moch doloure
8 as⁵ I can abyde / but⁶ I trust as for deth I shall scape
by the grace of god⁶ / when they herde that they were⁷
ioyfull, and said, ‘syr, knowe for trouth⁸ youre men
are sore abasshed⁹ / for they be so¹⁰ opprest by Huon
12 and his men / that we fere all your men shal¹¹ be
slayne / we shall¹¹ go agayne to the batayle & leue some
with you to¹² kepe your body¹² / ‘syrs,’¹³ quod the
emperour,¹⁴ your force nor your defence can¹⁵ auayle
16 you nothyng¹⁶ agaynste Huon / nor agaynst his men.
But I shall shewe you what ye shall do¹⁷ sende quycly
to Huon and desyre¹⁸ of¹⁸ hym in my name to¹⁹ sease
²⁰ fyghtynge,²⁰ and¹⁸ desyre hym¹⁸ that there maye be a
20 truse hadde bytwene hym and me for the space of halfe
a yere / ²¹in *that* space I trust²¹ to fynde some other
treaty / ¹⁸so¹⁸ that he and I myghte be frendes / and yf he
refuse this,²² I se none other remedy but that we shall
24 be all slayne or taken, and then he wyll cause me to dye
in some²³ pryson.’ ‘Syr,’ quod his knyghtes, ‘we shall
doo your commaundement / but we fere sore that we
shall not be herde.’ ‘Syrs,’ quod the emperoure, ‘go
28 to hym and do the best ye can.’ Then they returned
to y^e batayle, where as they founde there company redy

Huon would have
slain the
Emperor, had not
the Germans come
to his aid.

The Emperor
bids his men beg
of Huon a truce
for half a year.

¹ would haue. ² the Emperour. ³⁻³ him.

⁴ then. ⁵⁻⁵ more greefe than.

⁶⁻⁶ but, as for death, I trust by the grace of god, I shall
escape it.

⁷ all. ⁸ that. ⁹ discomfited. ¹⁰ sore. ¹¹ will.

¹²⁻¹² looke vnto your Maiestie. ¹³ Well. ¹⁴ but.

¹⁵ cannot. ¹⁶ anything. ¹⁷ ye shall. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ Fol. lxxii. col. 2. ²⁰⁻²⁰ slaying of my men.

²¹⁻²¹ for within that time I hope. ²² then. ²³ noysome.

Messengers set
out to beg the
truce.

Huon willingly
accedes to the
request.

But, had he
continued the
murderous attack,
all his enemies
would have been
slain, and he
would have been
spared much
future trouble.

to fle awaye / for they were nere all slayne and taken /
the knyghtes fro themperoure came to Huon and desyred
hym in the name of the emperoure that he wolde sease
the batayle and ¹blowe the retreyte,¹ and they sholde² 4
do lykewyse in the same maner / and that there myght
be a ferme truse bytwene them for halfe a yere / and
in that season they trusted *that* some good wayes
sholde² be founde that the emperoure and he myght be 8
good frendes togyther. ‘Syrs,’ quod Huon / ‘if the
emperour your mayster hadde me in that daunger /
that³ he is in / he wolde not suffre me to scape a lyue
for all y^e golde in the worlde / how be it, I am content 12
that he haue truse for halfe a yere / the which I shall
surely kepe on my parte / and yf I be assayled I shall
defende me / and yf so be that he come to Burdeux to
assayle me / by the helpe of god and my good frendes, 16
I shal doo the best that I can / But yf he wyll haue
peace with me & pardon me his dyspleasure / for the
dethe of his nephewes, I shall be redy to make peace /
and I shal make amendes for all wronges, though I was 20
not the begynner.’ Then Huon caused the retreyt to
be blownen,⁴ and in lykewyse so dyde the almayns
who had therof grete ioye ; it came to them at a good
poynt / for or⁵ elles all hadde ben slayne or⁶ folye⁷ 24
when he had the ouer⁸ hande⁹ that he pursued not¹⁰
his chase, for then he myghte haue hal an ende of
that warre, and nother shelde nor spere more broken /
where as after many a man was slayne, and was the 28
cause that the cyte of Burdeux was lost & the fayre
Esclaramond taken & sette in pryon in the cyte
of Mayence, and Huon suffred so moche payn and
trouble / that no mortall man can shewe it / thus as ye 32
haue herde Huon graunted the trewes, and soo bothe

¹⁻¹ sound the treatie. ² would. ³ which.

⁴ sounded. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. lxxii. back, col. 1.
⁷ foyled. ⁸ vpper. ⁹ now. ¹⁰ still.

partes withdrew / wherof themperour and his company
were ryght ioyfull. Then Huon called his company /
and shewed Gerames and his lordes how he had
 4 graunted trewes to the Emperour for halfe a yere / ‘and
therfore I charge you al not to breke the peace’ / the
Emperoure was glad when he herde it / for he knewe
well that¹ he was² scaped a greate daunger. Then he
 8 charged all his men on Payne of deth that they sholde
not breke the trewes. ‘And, syrs,’ quod he, ‘I pray
you make redy a lytter that I myght³ be caryed to
Coleyne / for the Payne that I fele in my legge causeth
 12 all my body to trymble / and when I come there
I wyll tary tyll I be hole.’ ‘Syr,’ quod his lordes,
‘your commaundement shall be done’ / then they layde
the Emperoure in a lytter, sore complaynyng the losse
 16 and dethe of his nephewes and lordes that were slayne,
and his legge greued hym sore. Then Huon said
to Gerames, ‘syr, thanked be god we haue vaynquysshed
the Emperoure & slayne many of his men / therfore it
 20 is good that we now returne to Burdeux. I haue gret
desyre to se my wyfe Esclaromonde / who thynketh⁴
longe for my comynge; I am sure she is sorowfull that
I haue taryed thus⁵ long.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘yf ye
 24 haue grete desyre to returne, so hath all other of youre
seruantes; they wold gladly se theyr wyues and
chylldren, and some to⁶ se theyr louers.’

Huon tells his
company how the
truce is made.

The Emperor is
borne in a litter
to Cologne.

Huon longs to see
Esclaromonde
again.

7 ¶ How Huon graunted the trewes to the
28 emperour, & how the prouost of Coleyne
came and assayled Huon, not knowinge of
ony peace taken.

Capitulo lxxxiiii.⁸ [= xciv.]

¹ omitted. ² had. ³ may. ⁴ thinking. ⁵ so.
⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. lxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ lxxxiiii in text.



Huon sees the burghers of Cologne ad-
vancing towards him,

and suspects the Emperor of
treachery.

The provost of Cologne exhorts
the men to fight well.

Hen Huon vnderstode y^e olde Gerames,
he hadde grete ioy / then he sounded
the trompettes with suche brute *that*
meruayle it was to here, and com- 4
maunded euery man to set forwarde

towarde Burdeux. Then he behelde on his ryght
hande and saw them of Coleyne comynge in¹ grete
nombre / they were well a² twenty thousande bur- 8
gesses and other / they came with baners dysplayde
redy to fyght. When Huon sawe them, he had grete
meruayle fro whens they sholde come so hastely. Then
he sayde to his men / ‘syrs, I parceyue clerely we be 12
betrayde, for yf I had wold³ the Emperour nor his
men coude not haue scaped / he hath falsely betrayed
me, syn vnder y^e colour of ⁴trewes they⁵ to set newly
vpon me.’ Thus Huon sayde by themperour without 16
cause, for he knew no thynge thereof, nor that any
socoures sholde haue come to hym. ‘Syrs,’ quod
Huon, ‘lette vs rest here and tarye tyll they come
nerer to vs / than let vs sette on them with suche hast
that they shall not know what to do.’ ‘Syr,’ quod
his men, ‘haue no dought we shall not fayle you for
fere of any deth / we trust to slee so many that the
erth shalbe couered with the deed bodyes of your 24
enemyes’ / Huon ordred his batayle, and the prouost of
Coleyne comfortyd his men, saynge, ‘syrs, our em-
perour is dyscomfytyd by Huon and his men,⁶ who be
yonder abydynge before vs / they wene⁷ to departe in 28
sauē garde / but they haue no power so to do / for the
moost parte of them are sore hurt, and there horses
sore trauaylled, wherfore they shall the sooner be
dyscomfytyd.’ Than the prouost and his men ranne 32
quyckely vpon Huon and his men / there began a feerse
bataylle, wherin many a valyaunt man lay on the erth

¹ a. ² nere. ³ pleased. ⁴ Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.
⁵ come. ⁶ compagnie. ⁷ thinke.

deed / and at the¹ fyrist brunt ther wer so many slayne
that y^e² felde was coueryd with deed & hurte³ men ;
 sum were ouerthrownen without any hurte,⁴ and yet
 4 they conde neuer asyse bycause of the⁵ prese of the
 horses that ranne⁶ ouer them. Huon, who was¹ full of
 yre bycause he⁷ thought that vnder the colore of trewes
 he was assayld / he ran⁸ at a knyght who had done
 8 gret damage⁹ among his men ; it was he *that went to*

The attack is
made, and the
fight begins.

Coleyne for that socoures / and Huon strake hym clene
 throw the bodeye with his spere, so that he fell downe
 deel to the erth. Than Huon cryed his crye to gader¹⁰
 12 his men togyther / he layde on the ryght syde and on
 the lyft / so that he cut of armes and legges, and rasyd
 helmes fro y^e hedes / he semyd rather a man of y^e fayrye
 than a mortall man. But he had myche to do / for his

Huon slays the
knight who had
summoned this
new army,

16 men, who had fought all y^e day, were sore trauayld &
 wary ; how¹¹ be it, they defendyd them selues ryght
 valyauntly, & they¹² slew so many of the comons of
 Coleyne *that* y^e blode ran on the grounde in grete
 20 stremes / and themperour, who was issued out of the

The Emperor,

wood in his lytter, whan he came in to the felde / he
 herde the brute & crye of the batayle, wherwith he
 was sore abasshed. Than he demaundyd what noyse it

hearing the noise,
is brought into
the field,

24 myght be. ‘Syr,’ quod a knyght, ‘it is the good
 prouost of Coleyne, who hath brought with him the
 commons of the citie of Coleyne to ayde and socoure
 you.’ ‘Syr,’ quod themperour, ‘and he shal derely

and is very
wrathful with the
provost of
Cologne.

28 albye¹³ it / how be it, I thynke he knoweth not of the
 trewes that we haue taken with Huon / for and¹⁴ I knew
 that he was aduertesyd therof, I shode cause hym to
 dye an yll deth. Go to hym and commaunde hym that
 32 incontynent he goo to Huon too make amendes for his

¹ verie. ² whole. ³ maimed. ⁴ at all.

⁵ great. ⁶ did runne. ⁷ had. ⁸ fiercely.

⁹⁻¹⁰ verie great hurt. ¹⁰ call. ¹¹ Fol. lxxiii. col. 2.

¹² omitted. ¹³ buy. ¹⁴ if.

trespas / and yf he wyll not do it I charge you incontynent¹ sle hym.' Whan themperour had made his commaundement to one of his knyghtes / he ro le as fast as he myght to the prouost, who was ryght sorow- 4 full for that he hadde lost foure .M. of his comons, and the knyght slayne that came to hym. Than themperours knyght sayd, 'Syr prouost, ye haue done ryght yll / syn² ye haue broken the trewes that was made 8 betwen hym and Huon / yf the emperor may gette you ye shall neuer se fayre day more / without incontynent ye go to Huon and dele so with hym that he be content, so that no reproche be layde to the em- 12 perour' / whan the prouost and his company herde themperours commaundement, they were sore abasshed, and reculed backe. And the prouost, who was in grete fere for that he had done / and desyryng to accom- 16 plysshe themperours commaundement, strake his horse with the sporres, and restyd not tyll he had founde out duke Huon. Than he lyghtyd a fote, and toke his sworde, and sayd, 'A, ryght noble and vertues prynce, I 20 3 desyre the, in the honour of Jesu Cryst, haue pyte of⁴ me, and pardon me the iniurye *that* I haue done⁵ without the knowlege or lycence of themperour, who wyll cause me to dye a shamfull deth without ye pardone 24 me / for all I knew not of y^e trewes betwen you and y^e emperour / for I thought he was⁶ deed / syr, that⁷ I haue done was to thentent to rescue my ryghtfull lorde, and therby I haue lost this day moo then .iiii .M. 28 burghesses and comons of the cyte of Coleyne, and y^e most parte of my best frendes, and therfore, syr, I pray you haue pyte of⁴ me, elles themperour wyll sle me or set me in perpetuall prysyon.'

32

The provost
laments the losses
his men meet
with.

A knight, sent by
the Emperor, bids
him make amends
to Huon for
breaking the
truce.

The provost,
much abashed,
seeks out Huon,

and begs him
have mercy upon
him, for he knew
nought of the
truce.

¹ to. ² seeing ³ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁴ on.
⁵ against you. ⁶ had beene. ⁷ which.

¶ How Huon aryued at Burdeux, and of the counsell of the iayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, the whiche he wolde not beleue nor
4 follow.

Capitulo lxxxxv.

Han Huon vnderstode y^e prouost / he
had gret pyte, & thought that he
ought lyghtly¹ to pardon hym, seyng
that that he had done was in a iust
cause, syn² he was not aduertesyd of³
trewes taken between themperour and hym. Than
Huon aproched to the prouost, and sayd, ‘frende, aryse
12 vp, I pardon you; this trespass that ye haue done for ^{and pardons him.}
your lorde is⁴ reasonable / syn ye knew no thyng of y^e
trewes / ye haue done as a trew subjet ought to do to
his lorde / I can not be angrye with you for it.’⁵ Than
16 the prouost toke leue of Huon, & retournyd to them-
perour, who as than was nere to Coleyne /⁶ Huon rode
forth towardes burdeux, and so on a wednesday to⁷
dyner he entred in to Burdeux, where as he was
20 receyued ⁸with grete solempnyte of the Burgesses, & of
all the clergye of y^e cyte. Than he alyghtyd at his
palays, where as he was by the duches Esclaramonde
well receyued with grete ioy, and she demaundyd of
24 hym yf he were hole and in good poynt.⁹ ‘Fayre
ladye,’ quod Huon, ‘thanked be our lord god, I am in
good helth.’ ‘Syr,’ quod she, ‘of your comynge I am
ryght ioyous / & I desyre you to shew me of your
28 aduentures.’ ‘Dame,’¹⁰ quod Huon, ‘know for trouthe
I haue ben at Mayence, whereas I founde themperour,
and with hym was duke Roaull his neuew, who had
cryed¹¹ a tourney; & bycause he was aduertesyd of my
32 commynge, his entencyone was that yf he had founde me

Huon has pity
on the provost,

Huon rides to
Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde
welcomes him
warmly,

and he relates
to her his
adventures.

¹ in reason. ² and that. ³ the. ⁴ but. ⁵ the same.

⁶ and. ⁷ about. ⁸ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2.

⁹ estate. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ proclaimed.

Huon continues
his narration.

there, He was¹ concludyd with his men to haue slayne me / but by the grace of god I haue done so myche, that in the presence of themperour his vncle, and before² all them that were there present, I strake of his hede / 4 bycause he made his auauant that as soone as he had slayne me he wolde haue you to his wyfe / & also² all myn herytage / & whan I had slayne hym I departyd in hast fro³ Mayence / and it was not longe after but 8 that themperour folowed me with all his men, mountyd vp on the good horse that ye haue sene, who is so good that I beleue surely there is not suche another in all² the worlde / and themperour, who had grete desyre to 12 reuenge the deth of his neuew duke Raoull, auaunsyd hym selfe a bowe shote before his companye, and cryed after me with many iniuryous wordes. And whan I saw that he was far of fro his men I tournyd towardes 16 hym, & ranne & bare hym to the erth / than I toke the good horse and mountyd on hym, and lete myne owne goo / and whan his men saw hym lyeng on the erthe, they feryd lest he hal been deed / they assem- 20 bled about hym, & tooke no hede to folow me, by cause they knew well it was but a folye to folow me, ⁴syn⁵ I was mountyd on themperours good horse. Thus I departyd fro them, and went and lay all that nyght at 24 Coleyne, wher as I founde my men whom I had left there whan I went to themperours courte all alone / the next day I departyd / but I was not gone farre out of Coleyne whan themperour and .x M. men met 28 me in the way, where as they had lyene in a lytell wood in awayte for me. Than they ranne at me & at my men / there was a grete batayle on both partes, and many slayne & woundyd. But I dyd so myche by the 32 grace of god & my good company / that I ouercame them, and I slew two of his neuewes, and I bare

¹ had. ² omitted. ³ to. ⁴ Fol. lxxiiii, col. 1.
⁵ seeing.

themperour to the erth / and whan he sawe that the losse of the batayle ran on his syde, he sent to me than a messenger to haue trewes for halfe a yere / 4 the whiche I grauntyd bycause I thought I had done hym dysplesure ynough as in sleyng of thre of his neuwes. Thus we departyd, & as I¹ retournyd I met y^e prouost of Coleyne, who brought with hym .xx M. 8 men to haue resened themperour, & so we fought togyther. But as soone as themperour was aduertysed therof / he sende & commaundyd hym that he sholde no more fyght with me. Than the prouost came to me 12 & cryed me mercy for *that*² he had done, excusynge hym selfe *that* he knew nothyng of y^e trewes. Than we made to sounde the retrayte of both partes. ³Thus we departyd without any moo strokes gyuyng, wherof 16 I thanke god *that* I am thus scapyd.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye ought to thanke god *that* he hathe sent you *that* grace / for I haue herde say that themperour⁴ whom ye haue slayne his two neuwes is greate / 20 puyssaunt / and a ryche pryncie, ryght sage and experte in the warre, wherefore it is to be feeryd that he wyll not let the mater thus to rest.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon, 'I know well this that ye say is trew; I thynke well 24 he be dys⁶pleasyd with me for y^e deth of his neuwes and many other of his kyn / thus, as I haue sayd, I iustyd with hym two tymes / & at the seconde tyme I strake hym to the erthe in such wyse that he brake 28 his thyne, so that he was constreynyd to be borne⁷ in a lytter / and it hath ben shewed⁸ me syn / that y^e losse of his good horse greuyth hym more than the losse of all⁹ his men. Lady, to shew you the parelles and 32 aduentures that I haue founde¹⁰ syn I departyd fro you, it sholde¹¹ be to longe to shew you. But surely I

Esclaramonde
fears that the
Emperor will
pursue the strife.

Huon knows that
the Emperor is
sore distressed
by his escape

and the loss of
his own horse,

¹ he. ² which. ³ and. ⁴ of. ⁵ Madame.

⁶ Fol. lxxiiii. col. 2. ⁷ thence. ⁸ told.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had. ¹¹ would.

and he has heard
how the Emperor
has vowed to
destroy the city of
Bordeaux.

Esclarmonde
says that her
brother will lead
a hundred
thousand men
to his assistance.

He has been a
christian for five
years past.

She desires Huon
to visit him,

thynke as soone as the trewes be¹ expyryd, but² that³
thumperour with all his puyssance wyl come and
besuge me here in Burdeux, for it hath ben shewed
me of trouthe that³ thumperour hath so made his oth⁴
and promyse / and hath sworne by his crowne imperyal
that he wyl not departe hense tyll he haue taken and
dystroyed this⁴ cyte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclarmonde, 'yf
ye wyl beleue me / ye shall⁵ well resyte⁵ this, and I⁸
shall tell you how / ye know well I haue a brother
called kynge Salybraunt, who is kynge of Bougye, the
whiche extendyth on the one syde nere too Mombrant,
and on the other syde nere to Trypoley in Barbarye / 12
he may lede in batayle a .C.M. men / and, syr, surely
he is a good crysten man² how be it, ther be⁶ but few
that knoweth it / ⁷this .v. yere he hathe surely⁷ beleued
on Jesu Cryst / and, syr, yf ye wyl go to hym, and 16
desyre his ayde by the same token *that*, whan ye were
prisoner in Babylone, I dyscoueryd the secretnes⁸ of
my mynde to hym, and shewed hym of y^e loue betwen
you and me / and how ye sholde⁹ lede me in to Fraunce, 20
wheroft he was ioyfull, and desyred me affectuously
that I sholde doo so myche to you / that we myght
come and se hym in his owne realme. But the aduen-
ture fell so that our departynge was¹⁰ other wyse than 24
we had deuysyd / he was there & saw how my father
was slayne, & all suche¹¹ as were with hym / than for
fere he ranne away, & dyd hyde hym in a garden
behind the palays, and there taryed tyll it was nyght / 28
and than he stalle away, and went in to his owne
realme / there shall ye fynde hym yf ye wyl goo
thyther / I know surely¹² he wyl make you¹³ good
chere / and wyl not refuse¹⁴ to¹⁵ socoure you, ¹⁶ the 32

¹ is. ² omitted. ³ then. ⁴ the. ⁵⁻⁵ resist.

⁶ are. ⁷⁻⁷ verily he hath. ⁸ secrets. ⁹ would.

¹⁰ fell. ¹¹ Fol. lxxiiii. back, col. 1. ¹² that.

¹³ exceeding great. ¹⁴ for. ¹⁵ ayde and.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ for hee will bee so exceeding puissaunt and mightie.

whiche shalbe so grete and puyssaunt¹⁶ that he wyll
brynge with hym moo than a .C. M. sarazyns / &,¹ syr,
I wolde counsell² you to take³ with you a⁴ .v. or .vi.
4 prestes⁵ furnysshdyd with oyle and creme / for, as soone
as he hath his men oute of his owne countre, he wyll
cause them to be crystenyd, and suche as wyll not he
wyll cause them to dye an yll deth. Syr, I requyre
8 you beleue my counsell at this tyme / for ye know
well⁶ out of Fraunce ye⁷ get no socoure / for yf sum
wolde they dare not, for dought of kyng Charlemayne ;
the hate *that* he hath to you is not yet quenched for
12 the deth of his sonne Charlotte, he wyll neuer forget it⁸ /
and, syr, yf ye go not to my brother for socoure ye may
happe to repent it, and peraduenture it may be to late /
and do as he doth that closyth⁹ the stable dore whan
16 the horse is stollen.' Thus the fayre¹⁰ esclaramonde
exortyd duke Huon her husbonde, whom she loued
entyerly.

¶ How Huon had grete ioye for the byrth of
20 Claryet his daughter. Capitulo .lxxxvi.

Huan Huon had well herd his wyfe he
sayd, 'my ryght dere lady and com-
panyon, ryght well I know the grete
loue that ye bere to me, the whiche
hathe constreynyd you to say thus,
wherof I thanke you. ¹²By the lorde that on y^e crosse
dyed¹³ to redeeme humayne lynage, I wyll go to no place
28 nor sende for any socoures / tyll¹⁴ I se them befor my
cyte, and that I haue cause to purchace¹⁵ for socoures,
nor tyll¹⁴ I fele the strokes of y^e Almayns and bauyers
that they can gyue whan they be out of there owne

and to take with
him priests to
christen his men,
who are still
Saracens.

Huon can expect
no aid from
France.

Huon thanks his
wife for her good
counsel, but

refuses to set out
for the East
before Bordeaux
is in positive
danger.

¹ also. ² and aduise. ³ along. ⁴ some. ⁵ well.
⁶ that. ⁷ shall. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shutteth. ¹⁰ Ladie.

¹¹ Fol. lxxiiii. back, col. 2. ¹² But. ¹³ for.

¹⁴ yntill, ¹⁵ labour.

country / nor as longe as my shylde is hole¹ fyrste, I
thynde they shall fele the sharpnes of my spere hede
and good sworde /² by goddes grace I shall not abandone

He would be reproached for departing now.

you nor leue my cyte and good burgesses /³ it myght 4
greatly be layde to my reproche, yf I sholde thus goo

away.' 'A, syr,' quod Esclarounde, 'ye may well
know that this that I haue sayd is for the fere that I
haue of you / for I haue ben well aduertesyd that 8

thumperour sore hateth you, and not without cause, for
his neuewes and lordes that ye haue slain, and ther-
fore, sir, yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall ⁴haue men to
defende you brought hyther by the kyng my brother / 12

so that whan the emperour is come in to your londe, it
shall lye in you other to make peace or warre at your
wyll / reason it were that ye made hym sum amendes
for the hurtes that ye haue done to⁵ hym / and on the 16
other parte, yf he wyll haue no peace / than it shall lye
in you to make hym suche warre so that he shall not
departe without your agreement and to his great losse.

syr, the fere that I haue to lese you constreyneth me 20
thus to say / I haue herd often tymes sayd / that the

entre into warre is large / but the issuynge out ther of
is very strayte / nor ther is no warre but it causeth
pouerte. But syn⁶ it is your pleasure not to beleue me, 24

it is reason that I must be content that your pleasure
be fulfylled.' Than they entred in to other deuyse /
gret ioye and feest was made in the palayes at Burdeux

betwene Huon and the lordes of the country. at last 28
the fayre Esclaromond, who was grete with chylde, fell
vpon trauelynge, and she prayed to god⁸ and to oure

ladye for ayde & helpe. she was in her chambre,
whereas she⁹ sufferyd gret Payne / wher of Huon had 32

grete pyte whan he herd ther of / for ⁹there was grete

Esclaromonde becomes a mother.

¹ and sound. ² and yet. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁹ for helpe. and.

⁹—⁹ the loue betweene them was exceeding great.

lone betwen them⁹ / at last y^e ladye was brought to bed
 of a fayre doughter / wher of Huon thanked god / than
 entred in to the ladyes chambre a greate nombre of the
 4 ladyes of the fayrye / & came to Esclaramondys bed
 and sayd, ‘Lady, ye ought well to thanke god / for ye
 haue brought forth y^e¹ moost¹ fayrest and best creature
 that as now is in the worlde, and to whom oure lord
 8 god hath grauntyd moost graces at her byrth / for
²more fayrer / nor more sage / nor courteys² hath not
 be borne this .C. yeres past / for she shall haue such
 desteney and happe³ in this worlde / that of the realme
 12 of Arogone she shalbe quene crownyd, and she shall soo
 gouerne her selfe that she ⁴shalbe⁵ a seint in paradice.
 At Tortouse ther is the chyrche where ¹as yet¹ she is
 honouryd / the whiche is foundyd in her name, and is
 16 namyd saynt Clare.’ Esclaramonde was ioyfull of the
 wordes of these ladyes of the fayrye. ⁶grete ioy⁷ was
 made ⁸in the chambre⁸ for the byrth of this chylde /
 who was gretly regardyd of the ladyes of the fayry, and
 20 they sayd eche to other that this chyld was the fayrest
 creature of ⁹the world / they toke this chyld echo after
 other and blyssyd it thre times, and than¹⁰ layde it
 doune and departyd sodenly so that no man wyst
 24 where they were become, wherof all the ladyes & other
 hed grete meruayle. This tydynge was brought to
 Huon, he was ryght ioyfull, and sayd / ‘A, syr¹¹ kynge
 Oberon, I beleue surely that as yet ye haue not forgoten
 28 me. Now I dought no thyng themperour nor all his
 puissaunce syn¹² ye haue remembraunce of me.’ Than
 Huon cam in to the hall, and thyder his doughter was
 brought to¹³ hym to se / he toke her in his armes and
 32 shewed her to his lordes, who were¹⁴ ioyfull to se her.

Ladies of
fairyland attend
the birth of her
daughter,

and declare her to
be the fairest and
best creature born
in a hundred
years.

The fairies thrice
bless the child.

Huon thinks
that king Oberon
is still mindful of
him.

¹⁻¹ omitted.

²⁻² a more faire, modest, wise, and courteous. ³ fortune.

⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 2. ⁵ accounted of as if she were.

⁶ and. ⁷ and feasting. ⁸⁻⁸ everywhere. ⁹ in all.

¹⁰ they. ¹¹ worthy. ¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ very.

The babe is
christened
Clariette.

Than she was borne to chyrche and with grete solempnyte crystenyd / and named Claryet, because she was soo fayre and clere to beholde. Than she was brought to the duches, who had of her gret ioy / whan the 4 duches had kept her chambre a moneth, than she was chyrychyd, wher of all the courte was ioyfull, and such feest was made that yf I sholde shew you the ryches and noblesse that was there shewed, it sholde be ouer 8 longe to reherse. Therfore I¹ leue spekyng therof at this tyme tyll² another season.

¶ Howe themperour assembled a grete hoste
and came to Burdeux. Capitulo .lxxxxvii. 12

3 E haue well⁴ herde here before the maner & cause why this warre was mouyd betwene y^e emperour of Almayne & Huon, duke of Burdeux, the 16 whiche, after the trewes was expiryd, and that the emperour was hole of his thygh that Huon had broken, he publysshed the warre⁵ / and sent ouer all his empyre / that every duke / erle / baron / 20 knyght / and squyer shold com to hym, and sowdeours fro all partes, and that within a moneth they to be at the cyte of Mayence, to thentent too make warre vpon Huon of Burdeux / this commaundement was pub- 24 lysshed / and suche delygence was made that by the day apoyntyd euery man was com to the cyte of Mayence, and lodgyd in the cyte and in pauylions about the cyte / there were assembled no than .lx. M.⁶ men, 28 well aparelyd⁷ for the warre. whan this emperour, who was named Tyrrey, saw them he was⁸ ioyfull / & sore thretened Huon, and made promyse before⁹ all his barons that he wolde neuer retourne in to his owne 32

¹ will. ² vntill. ³ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1.
⁴ at large. ⁵ againe. ⁶ and all. ⁷ appointed.
⁸ verie. ⁹ to.

The Emperor of
Germany
assembles his
men at Mayence

to make war upon
Huon.

Sixty thousand
men are collected
together.



countre tyll he had fyrist slayne Huon, who had done
hym so great damage. Than he commaundyd his con-
stables & marshalles to be redy to departe the next
4 day, & to take the way towardes Coleyne with al his
artylerey and caryage, the which was done. The next
day themperour entred in to the felde and so rode
towardes Coleyne / and whan themperour was within a
8 legge than there met with hym the olde Sauary hys
brother, who was father to duke Raoull, slayne by
Huon. whan these two brethern met togyther there
was great ioy made.¹

They prepare to
march to Cologne.

On the way the
Emperor, whose
name was Thierry,
met his brother
Savary, father of
duke Raoul.

12 ¶ But than duke Sauory began to wepe, & sayd to
his brother themperoure, 'Syr, of your cominge I am
ryght ioyfull. But when the pyteous deth of my dere
beloued sonn your neuew Raoull cometh to my mynde /
16 there is no membre on me / but for doloure ²and dys-
pleasure trymbleth / nor I can neuer haue parfyte ioy
at my herte as longe as he that hath done me thys
dyspleasure ³be alyue.'³ This duke Sauary was a noble
20 man / but betwene hym and his sonne Raoull was
great dyffERENCE, for this⁴ duke Raoull was the un-
trewest traytoure that euer lyued: the which ylnes⁵ pro-
cedyd by y^e duches his mother / who was daughter to
24 Hurdowyn of Fraunce, the moost untrewest and falsest
traytour that as than lyued in the worlde / whan them-
perour herde his brother speke the water⁶ fell ⁷out of⁷
his eyen, & ⁸embracyd hym, and sayd, 'My ryght dere
28 brother, your doloure⁹ dyspleaseth me / for your doloure
is myne,¹⁰ therof I wyll haue my¹¹ parte / and yf ye haue
⁹ ioy my parte shal¹² be therin. But it is not possyble
for vs / to haue hym agayne for whom we make this
32 sorowe' / god ayde Huon fro his enemyes, for they
greatly desyryd his deth; yet often tymes they that

Duke Savary
weeps for the loss
of his son.

He is not an
untrue traitor,
like duke Raoul.

The Emperor
consoles his
brother.

¹ betwene them. ² Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2. ³⁻³ liueth.

⁴ the. ⁵ wickedness. ⁶ tears. ⁷⁻⁷ from. ⁸ he.

⁹ much. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ a. ¹² likewise.

The army is well received in Cologne.

It was a great host with long lines of artillery,

and passed over the Rhone into the country of Bordeaux.

Huon orders all his men to be ready in arms, and to come to Bordeaux, when he heard of the Emperor's protest.

The town is well fortified and furnished with food and guns.

desyre another mans deth auaunseth there owne. Thus, as ye haue herde, themperour and duke Sauary entred in to the cyte of Coleyne, where as they were reseyued with great ioy / and so rode to y^e palayes : ¹there they 4 souppyd. I wyl make no longe rehersall of y^e good chere that they made there. Than after soupper they went to there rest, and the next mornynge rose and herde masse,² and tooke a soppe in wyne,¹ Than departyd 8 out of Coleyne. It was a goodly host to beholde, they & theyr caryage / &³ artelyrey strechyd foure legges of lenght. Thus they all had sworne y^e deth of Huon ! they passyd by hye Borgoyn and by Dolpheurey,⁴ and 12 so passyd the ryuer of Rone, and so in to the countre of Burdeux. Nowe I wyll leue spekyng of them tyll another season.

¶ How themperoure Tyrrey of Almayne 16 beseged the cyte of Burdeux / and howe Huon made hym redy to fyght with his enemyes. Capitulo .lxxxviii.



Hus ye haue well⁶ herde here before 20 the deuises that the duches Esclarmond had made to her husbonde Huon ; who as soone as she was chyrched, Huon sent his commaunde- 24 ment throw al his countre euery man to be redy in armes and to come to Burdeux, bycause he was aduertysed of y^e cominge of his enemyes / the messengers made such delygence that in⁷ .xv. dayes 28 after euery man was come to Burdeux / and the⁸ duke Huon reseyued them with great ioy. Than he repayryd the cyte and the toures and walles, and it was well furnysshed with vytaylles and artelery, as in suche a 32

¹ and. ² seruice. ³ their. ⁴ Dolphinne.

⁵ Fol. lxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ within. ⁸ there.

case it¹ aparteynyd. ²At that tyme y^e cyte of Burdeux was not so strong as it is now / whan duke Huon saw his cyte so well garnyshed with men and vytaylle / ⁴ he was ryght ioyfull. ³Than he called to hym the olde Gerames, & sayd / ‘my ryght dere frende, ye se well this warre ⁴that is apparent betwene themperour and me, & nowe we be well aduertysed of his comynge, who is ⁸ redye to come with all his host to besiege this oure cyte / & therfore, my hertye⁵ frende, who hath aydyd me in so many besynesses, I pray you counsell and ayde me now; for⁶ all the condute of my warre / I wyll”

¹² ye haue the charge, & that ye wyll comforte my men ⁸to do⁸ well, so that of vs there be none ⁹yll songe⁹ made, and that our enemyes haue no cause to prayse y^e warre that they haue agaynst vs / nor that whan they ¹⁶ be retournyed in to there countres that they make not there auauentes amounghe theyr wenches and¹⁰ louers.’

‘Syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘I thanke you of the honoure and gret trust that ye haue in me / how be it, ye haue ²⁰ many other more sage and hardy than I am, too whom this¹¹ charge sholde better aperteyne than to me. But, sir, as for me, I shall so aquyte me that I trust I shall not be reprehendyd.’ Thus, as ye haue herde, Huon ²⁴ made his deuyses amounghe all his barons / and made all his ordynaunces for the defence of the cyte and the maner of theyr yssues,¹² and apoynyd men for theyr rescue in reculynge. And themperour was entred in to ²⁸ the countre of Burdeux with a ¹³ grete puyssaunce,¹³ byrnyng and dystroyenge the countre, wher of the poore peple were sore abasshed, bycause they neuer had warre before / ³thus themperour neuer restyd ³² exilynge¹⁴ & destroyenge the countre tyll they came

Huon begs the aid
of Gerames in the
conduct of the
war.

Gerames, in spite
of his age,

promises to do all
he can.

The Emperor,
burns and
destroys all the
country he passes
through,

¹ well. ² for. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. lxxvi. col. 2.

⁵ deere. ⁶ in. ⁷ that. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹⁻⁹ euill report. ¹⁰ their. ¹¹ great. ¹² issuing.

¹³⁻¹³ mightie armie. ¹⁴ wasting.

until he arrives
before the city of
Bordeaux,
and there
encamps.

Huon prepares his
men for a sortie.

Twenty thousand
are ordered to
follow him.

Esclarmonde
prays for their
safety.

before the cite of Burdeux and theyr he pyght vp hys tentes and paulylyons / and themperoure lay on the waye ledynge to Parys / on the other parte duke Sauarey, fatherto Raoull, was lodgyd by themperours marshalles / 4 so that all the cyte was closyd rownde aboue. Huon, who was within the cyte, behelde theyr countenaunces and maner of theyr lodgynge. He commaundyd that all his men sholde be redy to yssue out vpon ¹there 8 enemyes / the whiche they dyd. Than Huon armed hym² rychely / and mountyd vpon his good horse, the whiche was the emperours / and sware that, or³ he returnyed agayne, he wolde shew his enemyes what 12 they of Burdeux coude do / whan he was mountyd on his good horse he cam in to the cyte, and founde the old Gerames redy aparelyd and⁴ all his company. Than he ordaynyd⁵ .v. M. men to kepe the cyte, & 16 .xx. M.⁶ to go with hym / thus duke Huon made his ordenaunces. ye may well know⁷ that the sorow was great that Esclaramonde made for the duke her husbonde / she was ryght sage.⁸ she feryd to lese hym, 20 bycause she knew hym so aduenturus / and that his enemyes were of so grete nombre / ⁹ryght peteously wepynge she made her prayers to our¹⁰ lorde god deuoutly that he wolde kepe, and defende Huon, her 24 husbonde, & all hys men fro daunger & losse, & to sende hym peace.¹¹

¶ Of the grete batayle that was before Burdeux, where as Huon had grete losse & the 28 olde Gerames taken. Capitulo .lxxxix.

¹ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 1. ² selfe verie. ³ ere.
⁴ with. ⁵ appoynted. ⁶ men. ⁷ imagine.
⁸ wise. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ the. ¹¹ with his enemies.

1 
 Hus, as he hauie herde, Burdeux was beseged by themperour of² hye Almaynes,
 & by hys brother the duke Sauary, with
 a grete nombre of men. Than Huon
 yssuyd out, and whan he was past the
 porte, he made haste, to thentent to surpryce his
 enemyes, for at that tyme themperour was set at dyner.
 4
 8 Than Huon & his company all at ones dasht in amonge
 the tentes and pauylyons / and bet them downe to y^e
 erthe, so that they that were within were sore³ abasshed,
 for they had⁴ thought⁵ that Huon durst neuer a⁶
 12 yssued out of the cyte agaynst hym, and the great
 nombre that he was of. Huon layde on rounde aboute
 hym so that who so euer met with hym had no nede of
 7 leche⁷ craft. Also the olde Gerames dyd meruaylles,
 16 and so dyd the Burdeloys. many a ryche tent and
 pauylyon was beten downe⁴ to y^e erthe,⁸ and they within
 slayne and all to hewyn. ⁹Huon, who was mountyd on
 his¹⁰ good horse, met with⁴ a knyght of themperours
 20 house, and he gaue hym suche a stroke with his sword
 that he claue his hede to the teth / and than¹¹ strake
 another that his hede / helme & al, flew to the erth. they
 that sawe that stroke was sore abasshed. Themperoures
 24 men assembled togyther by heepes. But by the hye¹²
 prowess of Huon anone they were agayne departyd /
 13 he was so doughtyd and feryd that none was so hardy
 to aproche nere⁴ to⁴ hym. The crye and noyee mountyd
 28 so hye that the emperour, who was⁴ as than⁴ at⁴ hys⁴
 dyner, whan he herde the¹⁴ crye he rose fro the table,
 and demaundyd what noyse it was. 'Syr,' quod a
 knyght, who was fled and sore hurt / 'sir, know for
 32 trouth that your enemye Huon is issuyd oute of Bur-

Huon and his company take the besiegers by surprise,

and fight with vigour.

The tents were beaten down, and their inmates slain.

The Emperor is roused from dinner,

and learns the cause of the disturbance that he hears from afar.

¹ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 2. ² the. ³ much.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ verily. ⁶ hauie. ⁷—⁷ a leches.

⁸ ground. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ he.

¹² mightie. ¹³ for. ¹⁴ them.

deux, and hath done so myche¹ that he hath slayne a quarter of ²all² your hoost, and without that ye doo rescue your men³ shortly, your losse is lyke to be ryght⁴ grete, ⁵ for I haue sene Huon your enemy mountyd ⁴vpon your good hors, wheron he doth gret meruaylles / for there is none *that meteth ²with² hym but ²that²*
⁶is slayne, he is so cruell and hardy.' whan themperour herde the knyght he swet for displeasure ; ⁷incontynent ⁸he armed hym / and issued out of his tent and mountyd on his horse / and founde his men redy. Than he saw Huon mountyd on his good horse / than⁸ he sayd to his men, 'Syrs, I requyre you at this tyme put to your ¹² paynes that I may be reuengyd of myne enemye, who before my face yonder sleeth⁹ my men. he is so valyaunt that whom so euer he stryketh with a full stroke is but deed / gret damage it was whan he slew ¹⁶ my neuew.¹⁰ who so euer can delyuer hym to me quycke or deed shalbe my frende for euer, and I shall¹¹ shew hym y^e courtesy / that Esclaramond, who is so fayre, I shall gyue her to¹² hym in maryage, & all the ²⁰ countrie¹³ of Burdeux.'

He promises that Huon's wife and land shall be given to the warrior who slays the knight.

There is much rivalry for the promised gifts.

¶ Than suche as herde his promyse made them redy for ¹⁴couytes¹⁴ of that gyft. But sum hastyd so myche to accomlysh themperours wyll that it was to ²⁴ late after for them to repent. It is a¹⁵ saynge that an yll haste is not good / sum hastyd so sore¹⁶ that after¹⁷ bought it full¹⁸ dere, as ye shall¹⁹ here. after these wordes spoken by the emperor, suche as desyryed ²⁸ to accomlyshe his wyll ran in all togyther in to the batayle agaynst the Burdeloys / there was grete occysyon²⁰ on both partes. Huon, who had grete desyre in his hert to slee his enemyes / dyd so myche by hys ³²

¹ hurt. ²⁻² omitted. ³ verie. ⁴ exceeding.

⁵ Fol. lxxvii. col. 1. ⁶ he. ⁷ and. ⁸ whereon,
⁹ killeth. ¹⁰ nephewes. ¹¹ will. ¹² vnto. ¹³ Court.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ the couetousness. ¹⁵ au old. ¹⁶ much.
¹⁷ afterwardes. ¹⁸ too. ¹⁹ heare. ²⁰ slaughter made.

prowes that he reculyd his enemyes to theyr tentes /
& it had been yll with them, &¹ duke Sauary had not
rescued them / he with his grete prowes made them to
4 recouer agayne the felde / ²there was a sore batayle on
both partes. The olde Gerames that day slewe many a
man. But he aduenturyd hym selfe so far forth
amonge his enemyes / that his horse was slayne vnder
8 hym / so that he was ³constreynyd to fall to the erth /
and there⁴ he was taken & led to themperours tent, and
gret fetters set⁵ on⁶ his legges. Alas that Huon had
not knownen therof ; if he had, he shold not haue ben
12 led away without grete losse. But he was in y^e batayle
doyng meruiles in armes. he helde his sworde in his
hande tayntyd with blood and braynes of men that he
had slayne / there was none so hardy that durst aproch
16 nere to⁷ hym / he cryed⁸ ‘ Burdeux ’ to draw his men
togther / and dashct in to y^e greatest prease, & strake
on al partes in suche wyse that his enemyes⁸ gaue hym
place, for none durst abyde his strokes / ⁹the prease
20 was so grete of the men of duke Sauareys that he had
gret Payne to breke in among them. he fought so
that he semyd rather a man of the fayrye or a speryt
than a mortall man / euery man had grete meruayle of
24 the prowes that he shewed¹⁰ & his company. Than cam
agaynst hym y^e olde duke Sauary, with a byrnynge
desyre too be reuenged for the deth of his son Raoull ;
and Huon parseyued hym well, and made suche hast
28 that the duke had no leyser to gyue the fyrt stroke /
for Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his sworde
that he cut clene of a quarter of his shylde, & y^e stroke
gleynt¹¹ to the horse necke by suche vertue that it strake
32 of clene the horse hede / so that there by the duke fell
to the erth / and yf he hadde not ben well socouryd he

but Huon is as
mighty as ever.

Old Gerames also
fights with
strength,

although his
horse is killed
under him,

and he is taken
prisoner.

Huon is to be
found wherever
the fight is
hottest.

His prowess is
marvellous.

He unhorses at
one blow Duke
Savary, who
desires vengeance
for his son's
death.

¹ if. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxvii. col. 2. ⁴ then.
⁵ clapt. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ still. ⁹ Now.
¹⁰ shewed after company. ¹¹ glyded.

He would have
been slain, had
he not been
succoured by his
men.

Huon perceives
that his men are
outnumbered,

and retires to
Bordeaux.

Sixteen thousand
of his soldiers
were left dead
upon the field.

While retreating,
Huon kills a
cousin of the
Emperor, and
four German
knights.

The Emperor
with his barons
attacks him,

had been slayne / but there came to hym so many men,
that whether Huon wolde or not he was socouryd / and
mountyd vpon a new horse / whan Huon sawe that he
was scapyd, he called vpon our lorde god, and sayd, 4
'A, good lorde, yf I tary here longe I se well that my
force shall but lytell profyte me, for there be .xx.
agaynst one.' Than he called certen of his lordes that
were aboue hym, & sayd, 'Syr, I perseyue well our 8
force can not longe contynew¹ / therfore it is better²
departe betymes than to ³tary to longe.' 'Syr,' quod
they, 'as it shall please you' / ⁴than they tournyd them
towardes Burdeux a soft pace / and Huon dyd / as the 12
sheparde doth go behynde his shepe / so wente he with
his sworde in his hande / defending his company fro
his enemyes, ⁵sorowfull & angry for the losse that he
had that day, for in the mornynge whan he departyd 16
from Burdeux he had a .xx. M. of good fyghtinge men,
& at his retourne he saw well he had not past⁶ .iiii. M.,
wherwith he was sore displeasyd / & often tymes by
the way turnyd & returnyd to his enemyes. At last he 20
met with a knyght named Jozerane, & gaue hym suche
a stroke *that* he fell downe deed to y^e erth, wherof
themperour Tyrrey was sore dyspleasyd / for he was his
cosyn germane; & after⁷ he slew other .iiii. knyghtes 24
of Almayne. Than he returnyd agayne after hys men,
& so led them forth⁸ as the shepharde doth his shepe /
& often tymes tournyd & retournyd vpon his enemyes,
so *that* there was none so hardy *that* durst aproche nere 28
hym / therwith thyther came themperour rychely armed
with y^e ⁹ armes imiveryall,¹⁰ mountyd vpon a puyssaunt
horse. Than he cryed, 'on forth, my barons / take
hede *that* this traytoure Huon scape not away / yf I 32
maye haue hym in my handes / all the golde in the

¹ endure. ² to. ³ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 1. ⁴ so.

⁵ right. ⁶ abone. ⁷ that. ⁸ still.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ and.

worlde shall not redeme hym fro hanginge.' Huon,
who herd the emperour, sayd, 'A, false olde lepar,¹
thou lyest falsly, I was neuer traytour.' Than them-
perour ranne at Huon, & strake hym on the shylde, and
strake it clene throwe, and the spere brake all to peces.
And Huon with his sworde strake themperour on the
helme, so that the serkell set with stone & perle was
betten to the erth. ²yf the horse had not swaruyd,
themperour had neuer³ scapyd alyue; neuertheles, the
stroke lyght so on his shulder that y^e sword persyd the
mayle and gaue hym a depe wounde; & forther, y^e
12 sworde dissendyd to y^e arson⁴ of the sadell, so that the
hors⁵ was stryken nye a sounder in two peces / ²so
that⁶ themperour & the horse fell downe⁷ togyther⁸ to
y^e erth⁹ / so that &⁹ he had not ben rescued by y^e
16 Almayns he had ben slayn. Huon was sorie when he
saw the Emperour so scapyd with his life; than he
tournyd and rode towardes Burdeaux after his men, who
tarryed still for hym, and Huon dyd so myche by hys
20 prowes that for all themperour & his men he entred in
to his cyte of Burdeux. But as than he knew not *that*
the olde Gerames was taken prisoner. ¹⁰Thus, as ye
haue herd, duke Huon entred in to Burdeux with
24 .iii. M. men, of whome y^e moost parte were sore hurte /
he rode to the palays & there alyghtyd. Than he lokyd
aboute hym, & was sore abasshed whan he saw not
Gerames by hym / than he demaundyd yf any man
28 knew where he was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght named
Gallerance, 'knew for trouthe¹¹ he is taken prysoner, &
is in the handes of your enemyes / for to haue aydyd
hym I was woundyd in thre places, & nerehande
32 slayne. I employed my force to haue socouryd hym,
but I coude fynde no remedy' / whan Huon herd that /

and is sore
wounded by
Huon.

Under Huon's
protecting care,
his men reach
Bordeaux in
safety.

He is saddened
to hear of
Gerames' fate,

¹ dotard. ² and. ³ not. ⁴ bow.
⁵ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ the. ⁷ to the ground.
⁸⁻⁹ omitted. ⁹ if. ¹⁰ so. ¹¹ that.

he prasyd gretly Gerames force & vertue, & gretly compleynyd & sayd, ‘alas that I had not knownen of his takynge, or¹ I had² returnyd I wolde soner haue dyed / but at the leest I wold haue taken sum man suffecyent ⁴

and piteous is his
SORROW.

to a³ redemyd hym agayne out of daunger.’ A pyteous⁴

thyngē it was to here duke Huon what sorow he made for his frende Gerames / but his compleyntes coude not auayle hym / his lordes sayd, ‘syr,⁵ with goddes grace⁶ 8 ye shal haue hym agayne sauē & alyue.’ ‘Syrs,’ quod Huon, ‘it shall be a grete aduenture without they put hym to deth.’ Than Huon mountyd vp to the palays, where as he met Esclaramond his wyfe / whom 12 he kyssyd & embraced many tymes. ‘Syr,’ quod ye lady, ‘I pray you shew me of your newes.’ ‘Lady,’ quod Huon, ‘they be but pore & dolowrus, for of .xx. M. men that I had with me ⁶out of this cyte, I haue 16 brought home alyue but .iiii. M., and yet the moost parte of them is⁷ sore woundyd / and besyde that,² the olde Gerames is taken prisoner, who hath suffred before this tyme so many paynes & trauaylles for my sake.’ ‘A,⁸ 20

syr,’ quod ye lady, sore wepynge / ‘I had rather ye had beleued me, and that ye had gone and sought for socoure of my brother / who wolde not a³ faylled you / he⁹ wolde a³ come with you with so myche people and 24 puyssaunce that themperour sholde not a³ durst to³ abyden you.’ ‘Dame,’¹⁰ quod Huon, ‘speke no more

She begs him
seek succour from
her brother,

therof / for the losse of as myche as .x. cytyes be in valure I wolde not haue gone thether nor too none 28 other parte for any socoure, nor yet wyll not tyll I see me sorer¹¹ oppressyd than I am as yet / I myght well be reputyd for a coward and recreaut thus to aban-done my cyte / I had rather be dysmembred in to peces 32 than for fere I sholde leue you / it sholde¹² be gretly to

¹ ere. ² omitted. ³ haue. ⁴ lamentable.

⁵⁻⁶ by the grace of god. ⁶ Fol. lxxviii, col. 1. ⁷ be.

⁸ Alas. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ more. ¹² would.

my reproche in the courtes of hye prynces, and whan I
 com there to be markyd with the fynger for that grete
 defaulte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'your pleasure is
4 myne, syn¹ ye wyll haue it so / but I am ryght sory²
 for the olde Gerames, who is prysoner in y^e tentes of
 your enemyes / who hath suffred for your sake many
 grete paynes & pouertyes. I cannot be but sory whan
8 I remembre hym.' 'Dame,'³ quod Huon, 'as yet
 Gerames is not deed. I hope, by the grace of our lorde
 god, that we shall haue hym agayne alyue.' 'Syr,'
 quod she, 'I pray to god¹ it may be so.' Now let vs
12 leue spekyng of Huon, and speke of themperour, who
 lay sore hurt on the erth.

Huon hopes to
rescue Gerames.

¶ How theimperour reasyd vp a payre of
 galowes to hang vp the olde Gerames and
16 all the Burdeloys that were taken prisoners.

Capitulo .C.


4 E haue well⁵ herde here before
 recountyd how Huon entred in to Bur-
 deux after he hadde betten downe
 themperour Tyrrey, whom he left
 lyenge on⁶ y^e erth, and had ben slayne
 and⁷ his men had not quyckely rescued hym. ⁸his
20 men were sorowfull,⁹ they feryd he had ben deed, &
 vnlasyd his helme, & was ryght ioyfull whan they
 founde hym alyue. Than they demaundyd & sayd,
 'sir, we desyre you shew vs what case ye fele yourself
28 in.' 'Syrs,' quod he, 'I am sore hurt, wherby I fele
 gret Payne; this enemye Huon hath brought me in this
 case. I was foolishly counselled whan I cam hyther to
 seke for hym, for yf I had taryed styl at Mayence, I

The Germans
find the Emperor
sore wounded,

and he regrets
his departure
from Mayence.

¹ that. ² sorrowful. ³ Madame.

⁴ Fol. lxxviii. col. 2. ⁵ alredy. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ if.

⁸ now. ⁹ for.

beleue to do me displeasure he wolde haue come
thether / syrs, I praye you bere me in to my tent *that*
my wounde may be serchyd' / than he was borne in to
his tent & vnarmed / & layd on¹ his bed, & he sownyd 4
thryse for paine of his hurt. And whan he cam to
hym selfe, & his woundes² serchyd by his surgyons /
he demaundyd where y^e knyghtes of Burdeux were *that*
were taken in y^e batayle, & commaundyd³ *that* they 8
sholde be brought to his presence / Gerames was
brought before hym, who was gret & puyssaunt, with a
berde as whyte as snow ; he was a fayre olde knyght to
 beholde / his vysage playne & smylynge, he semyd to 12
be a man of hye affayres / whan y^e emperour saw hym /
he sayd, 'thou old catyue, shew me what thou art /
beware,⁴ shewe me the trouthe' / 'sir,' quod Gerames,
'know well *that* for fere of any deth I wyll⁵ not spare 16
to say y^e trouthe / syn ye wyl⁶ know what I am, I am
named Gerames, & am Huons seruaunt, whom I loue
naturally, & also I am his parent,⁷ wherby I haue y^e
more cause to loue hym / & I haue slayne dyuers of 20
your men.' 'Well,' quod the emperour, 'I repute the
for a foole to gyue me thys knowlege / for, by the
grace of⁸ our lord Jesu Cryst,⁸ tomorrow erlye, or⁹ I ete
or¹⁰ drynke, thou shalt be drawen and hangyd / and 24
.lx. of thy company *that* were taken with thee in the
batayle.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'of this *that* y^e shew me
I can¹¹ you no thanke for it / but I hope, by the ayde
of¹² our lorde¹² Jesu Cryst, that I shall do you¹² yet¹² 28
more damage or⁹ I dye.' 'A, velayne,' quod themperour,
'gret meruayle I haue of the that thus before me¹² &
my barons¹² thou dost vse¹³ thretnynges / and yet thou
seest¹² clerely¹² how thou art my prysoner, and that it 32

¹ vpon. ² were. ³ demaunded. ⁴ and.

⁵ shall. ⁶ needs. ⁷ kinsman. ⁸⁻⁸ God. ⁹ ere.

¹⁰ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ giue. ¹²⁻¹² omitted.

¹³ these.

His wound
causes him much
dolour.

The knights
taken in battle
are ordered into
his presence.

Gerames comes
before him and
tells his condition.

The Emperor bids
him be hanged
early the next
morning, with
sixty of his
company.

Gerames defies his
captor.

lyeth in me to put the to what deth it please me /
 know for trouth, &¹ it were not so late of y^e day as it
 is, I wolde not suffer the to lyue one houre. But or² I
 4 slepe I shall cause³ gybettes and³ galowes to be made
 where as thou and thy company shalbe hanged / and I
 shall cause the to be hangyd so nere to the cyte / that
 yf Huon be so nere a kynne to the as thou sayest, he
 8 wyll shew how well he loueth the / he maye haue grete
 doloure whan before his iyen he shall se his cosyn and
 his men hanged / and than after⁴ I wyll assayle the
 cyte / and take it parforce, so that than Huon in any
 12 wyse shall not scape out of my handes, & so to be
 hanged with other / and the fayre Esclaramonde shalbe
 brynt or condempynd to pryson / and than I wyll
 byrne all the cyte and dystroy it clene.' 'Syr,' quod
 16 Gerames, 'ye may say your pleasure, but in the
 doyng is all the mater' / ⁵whan themperour saw that
 Gerames doughtyd not the deth, he was sore abasshed.
 Than he commaundyd incontynent galowes to be reysyd
 20 vp so gret to hange theron the .lx.⁶ prisoners, and to
 be set on a lytell rocke nere to the cyte of Burdeux,
 to thentent that Huon and his men myght se them
 playne / therby to abasshe them / the whiche was
 24 done / so the mater restyd tyll⁷ the next day in the
 mornynge. And whan it was day Huon within y^e cyte
 rose and came to hys palays, and regardyd out at the
 wyndowes to se and beholde the ⁸host of his enemyes /
 28 and as he stode he spyeid the new galowes stondynge
 on y^e rocke. Than he callyd his lordes, and sayd /
 'Syrs, neuer beleue / but yonder galowes that I se new
 reysyd is for none other entent but⁹ to hang theron
 32 my men that be taken, & my¹⁰ frende Gerames, wherof
 I am¹¹ sorowfull. Therfore, syrs, quykely make you redy

Directions for
 setting up the
 gallows near the
 city are straight-
 way given.

The Emperor
 vows to destroy
 Huon and his
 wife, and to burn
 Bordeaux.

The gallows
 are set up,

and Huon espies
 them from his
 palace.

He points them
 out to his lords,

¹ if. ² ere. ³⁻³ a. ⁴ wardes. ⁵ &. ⁶ fortie. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 2.
⁹ for. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ verie.

and urges them
to follow him to
the rescue.

Seven thousand
men are armed.

and mount on¹ your horses / for or² they be hangyd
we wyll proue our selfe against them / loke³ to the host
warde³ & se whan they be commynge⁴ to y^e galowes
warde⁴ / & whan ye se them be redy on horsbacke, & 4
y^e gate open, that we may issue out all at ones / & let
vs neuer thynke to returne tyll⁵ we haue rescued our
men / for I thynke⁶ neuer to returne in to this cyte tyll⁵
I haue delyueryd them out of y^e handes of our enemyes.⁷ 8
Than they armed them a⁷ vii. M. by tale of good men
of armes, well horsyd, redy at y^e gate to departe whan
tyme cam. Now we wyl leue spekinge of Huon / &
speke of themperour.

12

¶ How Huon issued out of Burdeux & rescued
the old Gerames and his company, whom
themperour wolde haue hanged.

Capt. .Ci. 16

The condemned
knights are tied
together in
couples on the
following day.



Hemperour, who had grete desyre that
Gerames & his company were hanged /
caused them to be brought forth by
couples, one fast tyed to another, and 20
Gerames⁹ the formest / who then ryght
tenderly began to wepe when he saw
hymselfe in that case / ‘A, good lord,’ quod he, ‘I
requyre the haue mercy on our soules, & kepe & 24
defende my good lord duke Huon / who by y^e com-
maundement of kyng Oberon shold gyue me his duchy,
and he to haue kyng Oberons dygnyte of y^e fayre after
foure yere passed / I can not say what fortune wyl fal / 28
but I may wel say that I shall neuer come to greter
honour / yet I am comforted in that I am so olde¹⁰ &
hoore;¹⁰ it is good reason that I be content to haue lyued

¹ vppon. ² ere. ³⁻³ towardes the Hoaste.
⁴⁻⁴ toward the gallows. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ purpose. ⁷ aboute.
⁸ Fol. lxxix. col. 1. ⁹ was. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

so longe / it is now ¹good¹ tyme that I departe out of
this worlde.' Then themperour called to ² hym a
knyght / & sayd, 'sir Othon, I wyl that incontynent ye
4 take thre .M. men, & take these pryoners & hange them
vp all vpon the galowes that were made yester nyght
late / & if it be so that Huon yssue out, loke that ye
quyte your selfe valyauntly / & yf ye³ nede of ony
8 ayde, take my horne and blowe it, for I haue redy a
poynted .x. M. men to socoure you yf nede be' / when
Othon herde themperour he was ryght sory to haue that
⁴commission⁴ / for in his youth he was brought vp in
12 the house of duke Seuyn, father to Huon, & som what
he was of his kyn, but as then he had slayne a man,
wherfore he fled fro Burdeux, & came & serued them-
perour at Mayence / wherfore he was ⁵wo and ⁵sorowfull
16 to haue that commyssyon. Then he sayd to themperour,
'syr, me thynke ye do yll to cause them to dye so
hastly, better it were to abyde to se what ende your
warre wyl come vnto / and also yf it fortune that any of
20 your lordes to be taken here after / for one of theym ye
myght recouer hym agayne / and yf ye slee theym / and⁶
yf ony of ⁷youre barons happe to be taken, they shall
dye of lyke deth / and therfore, syr, yf ye wyl byleue
24 me ye shall forbere sleynge of them at this tyme / and,
syr, yf ye wyll gyue me lysence / I shall doo so moche to
duke Huon / that for the offence that he hath done to²
you he shall make⁸ amedes at youre⁹ pleasure, and he
28 shal go to² some holy pylgrymage to praye for the soules
of your nephewes and other of youre lordes that he hathe
slayne / and he to haue with hym two hondred men
in theyr shyrtes, and so to go to the holy sepulture at
32 his owne charge and coste / and he to holde of you all
his londes, and to doo you homage.' Then the lordes

The Emperor bids
Sir Otho direct
the hanging, with
three thousand
men.

Sir Otho was of
distant kin to
Huon, and
regrets such a
commission.

He pleads with
the Emperor for
delay,

and promises that
Huon will make
him amends for
the death of his
nephews.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² vnto. ³ haue. ⁴⁻⁴ euill office.
⁵⁻⁵ right. ⁶ then. ⁷ Fol. lxxix. col. 2. ⁸ you.
⁹ owne.

The Emperor's
lords approve
Sir Otho's
counsel;

but the Emperor
bursts into a rage,

and swears all
who plead for a
respite of the
lives of Huon's
men shall die
forthwith.

Otho is again
ordered to
despatch Gerames
and the rest,

and he departs
to work the
Emperor's will.

that were there present all with one voyce said to¹ the emperour, ‘Syr, the counsell that syr Othon hath gyuen¹ you is worthy to be byleued; we al agree ther to, and desyre you so to doo,’² when the emperoure herde theym⁴ he was sorowfull and sore dyspleased. ‘Syr,’ quod Othon, ‘ye may surely knowe yf ye hange any of them that be taken / yf Huon happe to take any of your men, he shal neuer scape vnhangyd and drawnen.’ When the emperour hadde herde Othon speke he was soo troubled, & angry that it semed by his face that for³ pure yre³ he was nye⁴ in a rage, and sayd / ‘beholde, syrs, this foole, who wolde let me to take vengeance on them¹² that so sore hath troubled me / he hath herde me or⁵ this tyme swere and make solempne promyse that I wold neuer returne in to my countre tyll I hadde hanged and drawnen Huon of Burdeux / for, by the lorde that made me to his semylytude, I knowe noo man this day, though he were neuer so nere a kynne to me, excepte myne owne brother / but I shal make hym to be slayne yf he speke any more to me for respytyng²⁰ of theyr lyues / nor I shall neuer loue hym / for I make a vowe to oure lorde god that I wyll neuer returne in to my countre tyll⁶ I haue taken⁷ this cite parforce.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Othon, ‘syn⁸ it is your pleasure,²⁴ I shall speke no more therof / but I byleue it wyll be longe here after or⁹ ye fynde ony that wyll be glad to do youre pleasure.’ ‘Othon,’ quod themperour / ‘dyspatch the mater and reuenge me vpon the old Gerames²⁸ and vpon all his company’ / ‘syr,’ quod Othon, ‘it is conuenyent that I doo it, syn⁸ it is your pleasure’ / then without ony more wordes he departed & toke Gerames & the other prysioners, and wente with them towards³² the galowes. Gerames went before with the halter

¹ vnto. ² but. ³⁻³ verie anger. ⁴ neerehand.
⁵ ere. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. lxxix, back, col. 1.
⁸ seeing. ⁹ before.

about his necke, sore wepynge, and all his company
after hym; so at the last they came to the place of
execucion / then¹ y^e ladders were set vp / ²then the
4 hangman came to³ Gerames, & sayd / ‘come on, thou
olde dottarde, thou hast lyued longe ynough / thou
shalt no more se hym whom thou louest so well / but²
I hope shortly he shall bere the company wauyng in
8 the wynde’ / when Gerames herde hym / he behelde
hym fyersly, and sayd, ‘A, thou vnhappy vyllayne, yf
one of my handis were lose thou sholdest neuer se fayre
day more / how arte thou so hardy to say or to thinke
12 so⁴ vylayn wordes⁴ of the best and moost valyauntes
knyght that is now lyuyng?’ / then Othon came to
them / and⁵ herde how the hangman⁵ reuiled Gerames /
&⁶ sayd, ‘a, thou⁷ false rybaude,⁷ thynkest thou not that
16 this knyght hathe ynough to suffre / though thou doest
not reuyle him? / yf thou⁸ were in that poynt⁹ that they
be in, and they in the cyte of Burdeux, thou woldest
soone repente thy¹⁰ wordes’ / & therwith he lyfte vp a
20 staffe that he had in his hande, and strake the hang
man ther with that he fell downe to the erthe, and¹¹
sayd, ‘A, thou false thefe, do thyne offyce, and speke no
wordes’ / then¹² the hangman durst speke no more;¹³
24 then he toke Gerames by y^e halter that was about his
necke, & so mounted vpon the ladder, and Gerames
after hym / who¹⁴ made pyteous complayntes for Huon
his good lorde / the same tyme that Gerames mounted
28 vpon the fyrist steppe of the ladder, they within the
cyte vpon the walles perceyued it, & sawe clerely¹⁵ that
without the prysioners were shortly¹⁶ rescued / theyr
lyues were lost. then they sayd to Huon / ‘syr, yf ye
32 tary any lenger your men shall be all hanged, for

The hangman
rudely accosts
the old Gerames.

Otho reproaches
the fellow with
his wickedness,

and strikes him
sorely.

Gerames mounts
the ladder with a
halter about his
neck.

Huon's lords
perceive him
from the city
walls,

¹ where. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ villainous a word.

⁵⁻⁵ hearing the hangman how he. ⁶ he.

⁷⁻⁷ base slaye. ⁸ thyselfe. ⁹ case. ¹⁰ saucie.

¹¹ then he. ¹² whereupon. ¹³ but.

¹⁴ Fol. lxxix. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ euidently. ¹⁶ speedily.

and Huon
recognizes his old
friend in direst
peril.

He bids his lords
follow him to the
rescue,

and seven
thousand fighting
men issue from
the city gates.

Huon slays the
hangman at one
blow.

Geromes leaves
the ladder.

A fierce battle
takes place.

yonder we se one of them is mountyd vpon the ladder,
who hath a berd as whyte as¹ snow.' when Huon herd
that he was sore dyspleased, & sayd / 'a, good lord, I
knowe suerly² it is my true frende Gerames whom 4
they wolde fyrst put to dethe / therfore, syrs,³ quyckly
let vs yssu out at the gate / for, yf Gerames be not
quyckly⁴ socoured, the traytours wyll put hym to deth ;
but, yf² I may come tyme ynough, it⁵ shall be derely 8
solde to them therwith.' ⁶Huon, with .vii. M. fyght-
ynge men yssued out at the gate so fyersly that the
erthe seemed to synke⁷ vnder them / theyr horses
made such brute⁸ / and so within a shorte space by a 12
preuy⁹ way they cam to the place where as the galowes
were¹⁰ / Huon was the fyrst that aryued there / ¹¹he
aduysed¹¹ well the hangman that sholde haue hanged
Gerames / he¹² gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere 16
that he ran hym¹³ clene¹³ through, so that he fell of¹⁴
the ladder¹³ starke¹³ deed ; so was Gerames reuenged of
the inurye that he had done to hym before. then Huon
sayd, 'Gerames, come¹⁵ of the ladder and arme you in 20
some harneys¹⁶ of them that shall be here slayne' /
Gerames thanked our lorde god & cam downe the
ladder, and then thyder came Huons company, who
untyed all the other prysoneers / then¹³ there¹³ began a 24
sore batayle / the Almaynes wolde not flye / ¹⁷Huon¹⁷
cryed to them, & said, 'ye false traytours, youre dethes
is¹⁸ Juged ; dere shall be solde to you the offence that ye
haue done to¹⁹ me when ye wolde slee thus my men with 28
so vylayne²⁰ a dethe / better it had ben for you to haue
ben at Mayence²¹ hyden in the lappes of your wenches²²
and louers.' when they vnderstode Huon, anone they

¹ the. ² that. ³ I requyre you. ⁴ presently.

⁵ his perill. ⁶ Hereupon. ⁷ groane. ⁸ a thundering.

⁹ secret. ¹⁰ stood. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and he marked. ¹² and.

¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹⁴ from. ¹⁵ downe. ¹⁶ armour.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ the which Huon seeing. ¹⁸ are. ¹⁹ vnto.

²⁰ villainous. ²¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 1. ²² mothers.

knewe hym, wherof they were sore abasshed / then
 Huon mette with a knyght of Almayn, and ranne hym Huon fights with his customary vigour.
 clene through, and so he serued thre other / then he
 4 drewe his swerde wher with he dyd grete meruayles /
 for or¹ he ceased he slewe .xiiii. and also his men dyd
 meruaylles in armes / so that within a shorte space the
 Almaynes were dyscomfyted, so that none scaped a
 8 waye a lyue excepte syr Othon, who valyauntly de-
 fended hymselfe / but, when he sawe *that* his force
 wolde not helpe hym, he yelded hym selfe to Huon,
 and gaue hym his swerde, and cryed hym mercy, and
 12 sayde / ‘syr, I requyre² you slee me not, but haue
 pyte of³ me / for⁴ I promyse you faythfully that
 agaynst my wyll I came hyther, but I was forced so
 to do by the emperour; and, fyrst, I desyred respyte
 16⁵ for them,⁵ so moche that the emperour was sore dys-
 pleased with me. I entreated for a peace to haue ben
 had⁷ bytwene you and hym, but my wordes coude not
 profyte.⁸ syr, I am your kynsman, and was brought
 20 vp in duke Seuyn, your faders house, and there I
 serued a mayster who dyd bete me, and when I felte my
 selfe stronge and of age, I was dyspleased that he dyde
 bete me⁹ without¹⁰ cause / * I slew hym and fledle
 24 away, and came to Mayence, & euer syn I haue serued
 the emperoure who is come hyther to besyge you.’
 ‘Frende,’ quod Huon, ‘fere not your deth, but I pray
 you fro hens forth ayde and serue me as ye ought to do
 28 to your carnall¹¹ frende’ / ‘syr,’ quod Othon, ‘god
 shame me yf I do *the* contrary / but I shall serue you
 truly as longe as lyfe is in my body’ / then Huon came
 to y^e fote of y^e ladder, where as he founde Gerames as
 32 then not vntyed / Huon kyssed and embrased hym
 oftentymes, and sayd, ‘ryght dere frende, I am ryght

¹ ere. ² beseech. ³ on. ⁴ and. ⁵⁻⁶ omitted.

⁶ In. ⁷ made. ⁸ preuaile. ⁹ so.
¹⁰ a. ¹¹ louing.

Of all the Germans there, only Sir Otho escaped alive.

He begs Huon have mercy upon him.

He claims kinship with him.

Huon promises him pardon if he will join him for the future.

Sir Otho consents to serve Huon for all time.

Huon congratulates Gerames on his escape,

and bids all the prisoners, whom he frees, to arm themselves with the weapons of the Germans he has slain.

A second band of Germans attack the French while retiring to Bordeaux.

They turn about and give battle.

Huon spares none within his reach.

Sir Otho fights nobly.

glad at my herte when I se you ¹hole of body' / then he wente to the other, and lossed them, and vnbounde theyr eyen, and sayd, 'Syr, arme ²you all² with the harneys of them that be deed / for a man that is armed hath³ ⁴ adua[n]tage afore⁴ other that be not so⁵ / it was nedeful for them to be armed, god defende them from yll⁶ / for anone after they had so meruaylous a renounter that they had neuer⁷ none suche⁷ before / for the other .x. 8 thousande men came to reuenge them *that* were deed / they wente⁸ to haue come tyme ynough / but they fayled, for they came to late / for⁹ Huon had taken of all them theyr truage. When Huon saw that he had 12 done that¹⁰ he came for / he returned hym towards the cyte / but he was soo pursued that he was nere surpryed and stopped fro entrynge in to the cyte / when Huon saw his enemyes comyng he cryed a hye¹¹ to his 16 men, ¹²and sayde,¹² 'Syr, let vs turne vpon them that cometh¹³ to vs warde¹³ / to y^e entent that they shall not make theyr auautes that they haue caused vs to flye awaye before them' / then he and all his men returned 20 agaynst theyr enemyes with a¹⁴ valyaunt corage / ¹⁵at that metynge many speres were broken on bothe partes, & many a knyght borne to the erth / that had neuer³ power after to releue theym selfe / there was suche 24 occysyon¹⁶ on both partyes that pyte it was to se it¹⁷ / ¹⁵grete meruayle it was to se Huon how he bett downe his enemies, and claue helmes and rased them fro the hedes of his enemyes. he delte in suche wyse that 28 none¹⁸ Almayne durst abyde his strokes, he was so douted and fered ; he made the thycke prese to breke a sonder and flye awaye before him ; and by him was syr Othon, who that dyd many a noble dede 32

¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 2. ²⁻² yourselves. ³ the. ⁴ of.

⁵ armed. ⁶ euill. ⁷⁻⁷ the like. ⁸ hoped.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ which. ¹¹ aloud. ¹²⁻¹² saying.

¹³⁻¹³ toward vs. ¹⁴ most. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ a slaughter.

¹⁷ them. ¹⁸ no.

of armes / for next Huon aboue all other that day he bare the pryce / fynally, Huon and Othon and his other men dyd so moche that the Almayns were chasyd to
 4 theyr tentes, & many slayne¹ in the chase and sore hurte
 so that they neuer rode on horse backe after / some tyme it fortuneth *that* it is foly to aduenture to moche forward / and to late to repent ofter² / I say this for
 8 Huon and his company, who were gone so moche forwarde that in great daunger they returned to the cyte / for y^e almayns, who were thyrtty thousande men redy before theyr tentes / when they sawe Huon & his men
 12 chase theyr company, they set forth agaynst Huon.

The Germans are chased back to their tents.

³ When Huon sawe them / he sayd to⁴ his men / ' syrs,
 it is good that we⁵ recule to⁵ our cyte / for yonder I se comyng mo then thyrtty thousande almayns as fast

A third band of Germans now threaten Huon's company.

16 as they can' / ⁶when Huons company sawe them, they douted gretely, and not without cause / for they had ben before at two grete skyrmysshess, wherby they and theyr horses were wery and sore trauayled, the whiche

His men, wearied with the two skirmishes, grow faint-hearted.

20 was no meruayle / ⁶by the counsell of Huon they returnyd a fause galop towards theyr cyte / and y^e Almayns were at theyr backe, and chased them so quickly that more then ffeue Hundred Almaynes entred

They gallop back to Bordeaux with the Germans in pursuit, and five hundred enter the city before the gates are closed,

24 in to the cyte with them of Burdeux / but they that kept the gates that daye were sage⁷ and dyscrete, for as soone as they perceyued that Huon and his company were entred / and with them a⁸ fyue hondred of theyr

but the French have arrived in safety.

28 enemyes / they wolde kepe theyr gates no lenger open, for fere that theyr enemyes shold haue entred with to grete a nombre, so⁹ for hast they cut a sonder the corde that helde vp the pureoloys, the whiche fell downe by 32 suche force that it fell on¹⁰ the horse of an Almayn that was vnder,¹¹ the whiche horse was cut clene a sonder,

¹ Fol. lxxx. baek, col. 1. ² afterward. ³ and.
⁴ vnto. ⁵⁻⁶ recoil into. ⁶ so. ⁷ wise. ⁸ abouete.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ it.

soo that the man and the fore parte of the horse fell within the gate, and the hynder parte of the horse fell without / wherof y^e Almains that folowed after were sorowfull and angry that they had not come thyder 4 soner / then they returned to theyr tentes, complaynyng for the grete losse and¹ damage that they had² that daye by the hye prowess of Huon & his men / and also they that were entred in to the cyte were sore 8 abasshed when they saw themself closed³ within the cyte. When Huon perccyued it, he had grete meruayle / that they were soo entred in amonge his men / for he knewe not therof, and yet he⁴ was the last that entred / 12 then he sayde, ‘A, ye false traytours, ye shall al dye an yll deth’ / ⁵then he sayd to his men, ‘syrs, slee them all’ / then incontynente they alighted and kneled downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, 16 & pyte of theym / as to sauе theyr lyues / ‘and put vs in pryson / ⁶we be all men of a noble lygnage / & it maye so be that by vs ye may haue peace with the emperour.’ Then Gerames sayd to Huon / ‘syr, I requyre 20 you to haue pyte of them, and put them not to deth, for so it may be that by them ye may haue peace.’⁷ ‘Frende,’ quod Huon, ‘I am content to do at your pleasure as ye wyll haue me do’ / then he commaunded 24 they sholde al be vnarmed / then they al made promyse to Huon not to departe without lycence / ‘Gerames,’ quod Huon, ‘I wyll that these prysoner be brought vp in to the borow & there departed,⁸ and set in⁹ dyuers 28 houses that be sure, and let them haue all thynges necessary for theyr lyuyng / then Gerames delyuered theym to the kepynge of suche as he trusted / and so eche of them was kepte in a courtoyse pryson. Now 32

The Germans
retire to their
tents.

Huon orders the
five hundred of
them who have
entered the city
to be slain
forthwith.
They pray for
mercy.

Gerames supports
their prayer,

and Huon yields
to him.

Huon bids them
be all unarmed

and sent to
divers houses on
parole.

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 2. ² sustained. ³ encloased.

⁴ himselfe. ⁵ and. ⁶ quoth they.

⁷ with the Emperour. ⁸ parted. ⁹ to.

let vs leue to speke of Huon and of his prysoneſ, and
¹ ſpeke of¹ the emperoure.

H Howe the Emperoure assayled the cyte of
 4 Burdeux two tymes, where as he lost many
 of his men. Capitulo .C.ii.

S ye haue herde here before how
 Huon chaceſ his enemyeſ to theyr
 tenteſ / and how it was tyme for
 hym to returne to his cyte, & how
 he was ſo pursued by the Almayns
 that more then fyue hondred of them

12 entred in to y^e cyte, and were closed with in it, and
 the reſidue returned to theyr tenteſ ſorowfull & angry
 for y^e grete losſe that they had. ² When they were
 returned y^e Emperoure demaunded what tydylnges, &

16 how they had ſped / & yf they had³ taken Huon
 quycke or deed. ‘Syr,’ quod a knyght, ‘it is folye for
 you to ſpeke thus / for Huon is no man ſo lyghtly to
 be taken / for the .lx.⁴ men that ye ſent to haue ben
 20 hanged be reſcueſ by Huon, and the thre .M. men
 that ye ſent with them are all ſlayne, & dyuers other
 ſore hurt,⁵ in peryll of dethe, and besyde that, fyue .C.
 men of y^e best of your frendeſ are entred in to

24 Burdeux / for we ſo haſtily pursued Huon & his men /
 that entrynge in to the cyte fyue .C. of our men entred
 in to the cyte, entermeddeled with Huons men, & theyr
 they be incloſed in⁶ / therfore, sir, we alow⁷ &
 28 couneſ you that ye agree with Huon / ⁸yf ye do not
 ye shall loſe⁹ youre men / for Huon is ſo fell & cruell /
 that he wyll¹⁰ hange vp your men as ye had thought too
 haue done his, of whom one of them was his cosyn /

When the
 Germans returned
 to their tents, the
 Emperor inquired
 of their fortunes.

They tell him of
 the reſcue of their
 priſoneſ,
 and of the proweſſ
 of Huon.

They advise him
 to make peace
 with Huon.

¹⁻¹ returne to. ² ſo. ³ not. ⁴ fiftie. ⁵ and.

⁶ within. ⁷ aduife. ⁸ for. ⁹ all.

¹⁰ Fol. lxxxi. col. 2.

ye may do as it please you.' when themperour herd his barons what counsell they gaue hym, he was¹ sorowfull, and sayd, 'syrs, ye do me grete wronge to requyre me to make ony peace with Huon / syn ye ⁴ knowe well what othe & promys I haue made *that I wyll neuer be at peace with hym / and to y^e entent*

that ye shal speke no more therof / knowe for trouthe that tho² .x.M. of my nexte³ frendes were taken by ⁸

Huon, I wolde rather suffre them to ⁴be slayne of⁴ a shameful deth then to agree to any peace with Huon till I haue slayne hym / and his cyte ⁵brynt⁵ & dystroyed.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn⁶ it is youre pleasure ¹²

ye may do as ye thynke best.' 'Syrs,' quod the emperour,

'I wyll that ye assemble all myn hoost, and sende to my broder that he bryngē all his men / and then with all our puyssaunce⁷ assayle the cyte / and ¹⁶ that none be so hardy⁸ to recule backe tyl⁹ y^e cyte be taken' / this was proclaymed through the hoost / & euery man¹⁰ redy to assayle the cyte; and y^e chefe captayne was duke Sauarey, who brought all his men ²⁰ in good ordre to the dykes, well furnysshed with ladders & other necessary thynge parteynyng to assaulte.

The same tyme Huon and his men were

vnarmed and goynge to dyner / ¹¹*when he herde the* ²⁴

noyse and crye without / he toke a sop in wyne, and

armyd hym and all his men / and euery man went

to the walles to theyr defenses / and Huon and ¹²*the* ¹²

olde Gerames / Othon / and Barnarde, a valyaunt knyght, ²⁸

mountyd on the toure ouer y^e gate, and the Almayns

on euery parte entred in to the dykes, and raysed vp

many a¹³ ladder to the wall; and ¹¹*they with in caste¹⁴*

downe ¹²*agayne theyr ladders, so that they that were* ³²

on them fell downe in to the dykes, ¹²*soo that they had*

¹ verie. ² if. ³ nearest. ⁴⁻⁴ die. ⁵⁻⁵ be burnt.

⁶ seeing. ⁷ we will. ⁸ as. ⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ was.

¹¹ but. ¹²⁻¹² omitted. ¹³ scaling. ¹¹ them.

The Germans set ladders against the walls, but the French overturn them.

The Emperor will not listen to their counsel.

He bids all his host assemble, and sends to his brothers for further aid.

Huon perceives by its noise the attacking force approach the city.

no power to releue vp agayn / for there was caste
 downe on them erthe and ¹tymbre & stones, ²so that
 they coude not aryse² / fyserse was y^e assaulte *that y^e*
 4 Almayns made, & they within made goodly³ defence,
 for ²they slew with bowes & crosbowes / *that* pyte it
 was to see the deed & hurt men *that* lay on the erth² /
 Huon & Gerames shotte so with theyr crosbowes /
 8 that at euery shotte they slew some man, or sore
 wounded hym / ⁴longe enduryd this assault / so that
 fynally the Almayns were constrainyd to recule back a
 bowe shotte / whereof they within were⁵ ioyfull. Then
 12 themperour Tyrrey, beyng sorowful and full of yre⁶ /
 came to his men, & rebuked them shamefully / com-
 maundlynge them that incontynent they shold returne
 agayn to assayle the cyte / sayenge *that* ²yf they wolle
 16 quyckely assayle y^e cyte agayne² they sholde not fayle
 to winne it. Then the Almayns, to please theyr lorde,
 returned in gret hast with theyr ladders & pyrkes / &
 came in to the dykes / where as then there was no
 20 water, & reysed⁷ vp ²theyr ladders² to y^e walles / but
 they were no soner vp / but they within bete them
 downe agayne / ⁸so that they *that* were vpon them
 were⁸ in daunger of theyr liues / for they ²within² caste
 24 downe tymbre &² stones & fagottes, with fyre & hote
 oyle & leade⁹ / *so that* y^e assaylauntes were fayne
 parforce to recule¹⁰ backe / & they within shot arrowes
 so thycke / *that* it semed lyke snow. themperour was
 28 sore dyspleased, & duke Sauarey / when they saw none
 other remedy. many were slayne and sore hurt /¹¹
 themperour & Sauarey his broder, seyng *that* they
 coude nothyng profyte, sowned y^e retrayt / & so
 32 returned to theyr tentes, sore dyspleased for y^e gret
 losse *that* they had / ¹²they lost *that* daye mo then

Both besiegers
and besieged fight
valorously,

but the Germans
at length retire.

The Emperor is
wroth with his
men,

and they return
to the attack.

But a second time
they are repulsed,

and the retreat is
sounded.

¹ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 1. ²⁻² omitted. ³ noble.
⁴ and. ⁵ very. ⁶ rage. ⁷ them. ⁸⁻⁸ and put them.
⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ recoile. ¹¹ and. ¹² for.

Two thousand Germans were slain and three thousand wounded.

The Duke Savary, the Emperor's brother, thinks the city impregnable,

but the Emperor resolves to continue the siege.

Huon thanks God for his success,

and bids his men be wary in the future,

but his losses have been very heavy.

.ii. M. men lyenge deed in y^e felde & in y^e dykes / & mo then .iii. M. sore hurt / then duke sauary sayd to themperour / ‘sir, methynke it is but foly to assayle thes cite / it is stronge & wel furnysshed with men & 4 good knyghtes to defende it / wherfore we may wel perceyue that with out gret damage we can not wynne it / without it be ¹by famyne / ²he that is lorde therof is hardy & cruell / & to be fered & douted / for he is 8 experte in armes / wherfore it is impossible to take y^e cyte perforce.’ When themperour vnderstode him, he was right sorowful, & made agayn new promys not to departe thens / tyll³ he had Huon at his pleasure. Huon, 12 who lytel set by y^e thretnynges of themperour, went in to his palais, & sayd to his men / ‘syrs, we ought gretely to thanke god for y^e defence of our cyte / many Almayns be slayne & herte / I doute them nothyng / 16 for our cyte is stronge / or⁴ it be lost it wyll cost many men theyr lyues / I desyre you all take good hede that we be not begyled.’ ‘Syr,’ quod they, ‘we shall take good hede therof / as well for you as for y^e sauegarde 20 of our lyues.’ Thus Huon & his men deuysed togyder / how be it, they were sore apayred⁵ / for at y^e beginnyng they were a⁶ .xx. M. men / & then they were not past⁷ .vi. M. Now let vs leue spekyng of them & 24 speke of themperour, who was ryght sorowful for his losse.



¶ Howe Huon sent Habourey his messenger to themperour to requyre peace / & of his 28 answerē.

Ca. Ciii.

¹ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 2. ² for. ³ vntill.
⁴ and before. ⁵ greeued. ⁶ about. ⁷ aboue.



Hen themperour had herd duke Sauerey
his broder speke / he made a solempne
othe / *that* what so euer fortune sholde
fall / he wolde not departe thens,
wynter nor somer, tyll he had won y^e

The Emperor
summons new
forces.

4 cyte / then he sent for his rerebande / as farre as his
empyre stretched, commaundyng euyer man to come to

8 him, all excuses layde a parte / & so they dyd / ¹of
theyr commynge by the way I make no mencyon, but
so longe they traunayled *that* they came with in a leuge
of Burdeux.² When themperour knew therof he had

From the furthest
parts of his
empire do they
come.

12 gret ioye, & mounted on his horse with other lordes with
him / & rode ³& met them, & spake to them, & made
them good chere. Thus his force encreased, & Huons
minysshed ⁴ dayly / often tymes Huon ⁵wolde yssue ⁵

Meanwhile
Huon's forces are
diminishing,

16 out on ⁶ his hors called Amphage / and made dayly
many grete skyrmysshess / somm tyme he wan / &
some tyme he lost / he slewe many Almayns / so *that*
they all fered him / for there was none *that* durst

but the Germans
are much afraid
of him.

20 abyde him / his hors was so delyuer⁷ *that* none durst
aproche nere hym without he were slayne / & Huons
men ⁸dyd acquyte⁸ them valyauntly / so *that* yf they
lost at one tyme / they wanne .iii. tymes for it / but

He makes
skirmishes daily,
and if he loses
once, he wins
thrice;

24 theyr force coude not longe endure / ⁹theyr enemies
were so many & they so fewe, for² they had made so
many issues ¹⁰out¹⁰ *that* they had lost many of theyr
company / for of .xx.M. they were lefte but .v.C.¹¹ /

but his men
dwindle rapidly to
five hundred.

28 & a .C. archers / and a .C. crosbowes to kepe theyr
towne with all¹⁰ / wherof Huon was ¹⁰ryght¹⁰ sorowfull /
¹when he sawe that he had but .v. C. men / he called
to hym Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Richar,
32 ¹²they were all of his kynne and he sayd to them¹² /
' syrs, I se ¹⁰well¹⁰ that euyer daye we do minysshe¹³ /

Huon calls his
chief lords
together,

¹ Now. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1. ⁴ diminished.
⁵⁻⁵ issued. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ cruell. ⁸⁻⁸ quit. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ men. ¹²⁻¹² saying. ¹³ diminish.

and advises that a messenger be sent to sue for peace.

Harboureys
despatched on the
embassy,

and Huon bids
him promise all
possible
reparation to the
Emperor.

Harboureys
departs,
and arrives at the
Emperor's tent.

He delivers
Huon's message.

wherfore¹ at length² we can not³ endure agaynst the emperoures force / therfore I thynke that it were good / that we sente to themperour to knowe yf he wyll here spekyng of ony peace.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we thynke⁴ your aduyse ryght good / ³it were good too knowe yf he wyll agree therto or not' / then Huon called Haboureys his messenger, and commaunded him that incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, & say vnto⁸ hym 'that yf it be his pleasure to here spekyng of any peace, I shall⁴ condyscende therto / and too make hym amendes at his pleasure / for y^e wronge and domage that I haue done⁵ him and my⁶ men. Also shewe¹² hym how⁷ I wyll become his man, and do hym homage for all the landes^{that} I haue / the whiche I was wonte to holde of the kyng of Fraunce / but syn⁸ I haue no socoure fro hym / I am dry⁹uen parforce to purchase¹⁶ for my profite in some other place / & besyde^{that}, shewe hym / *that* the v. C. pryoners that I haue of his men / I shall deliuer them quyte without any raunsome payenge / & also when lent cometh / I & a C. knyghtes²⁰ with me at my coste and charge / shall passee the see and go to y^e holy sepulture / to pray for the soules of his newewes that I haue slayn / & for all other as hath ben slayne by occasyon of this warre.' 'Syr,' quod the messenger, 'I am redy to fulfyll your commaundement, what so euer fall ther of' / and so¹⁰ departed, & went to themperours host, and entred in to the ryche tent / and then he kneled downe before themperour, & sayde,²⁸ 'The puyssaunt¹¹ god, who on a¹² crosse dyed to sauie all humayne lygnage,¹³ kepe & defende from all yll / themperoure & all his barony. syr, duke Huon of Burdeux sendeth to you salutacion and good amyte,³² requyrynge you, in the honour of¹⁴ our lorde Iesu cryst,¹⁴

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² long. ³ and. ⁴ quoth he. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ his. ⁷ that. ⁸ seeing. ⁹ Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.

¹⁰ hee. ¹¹ almighty. ¹² the. ¹³ kinde. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ god.

that he may haue peace with you / by *that* he will
 become your lege man / & do you homage, & holde his
 landes of you / and wyl delyuer quyte y^e. v. C. men of
 4 yours that he hath in pryon in the cyte / & more ouer,
 he offereþ hymself and a .C. knyghtes to passe the see
 this nexte lent and to go to the holy sepulture to pray
 to our lorde god for the soules of your neuewes that he
 8 deed, & for other *that* by hym and¹ his meanes hath
 ben slayn in this warre / syr, yf it well² please you
 this to do / ye shall do a gret almes dede / for lyfe can
 not be had agayne to them that be deed.' When
 12 themperour Tyrrey had well herd Haboureys, y^e
 messenger / he became as reed as a bronde of fyre / and
 regarded the messenger fyersly, and sayd, 'A voyde
 my syght, thou fals gloton³ / but *that* I doute to be
 16 reprouned, I shold cause *thee* to be hewen ⁴al to⁴ peces,
 but a messenger oughte not to be touched for any
 wordes that he can speke / but saye to thy lord / *that*
 by him & by his cause⁵ I haue⁶ ⁷had slayne⁷ mo then
 20 xx.M. men, besyde my thre neuewes and my yonger
 brother ; but by that⁸ lorde *that* dyed on a⁸ crosse to
 redeme vs all, I wyll neuer haue peace with hym tyll I
 haue hym at my pleasure / nor neuer returne agayne
 24 hidre to me nor none other vpon any such message.'

When Haboureys the messenger herde the emperour,
 he was in grete fere, and wolde gladly he had ben in
 Burdeux / then he departed without any mo wordes⁴
 28 spekyng, and rested not tyll he came to Burdeux / ⁹he
 wente to the palays, where as he founde duke Huon /
 then he sayd, 'Syr, I haue ben with themperour / and
 shewed hym at length¹⁰ all youre message / but his
 32 answeare wyll not serue to your demaunde / for he sayd
 to me / that he wyl haue no peace with you tyl he haue

The Emperor
rages against the
envoy,
and threatens
him.

He refuses to
make peace,

and Harbonrey
takes his leave.

He repeats to
Huon the
Emperor's
answer.

¹ by. ² omitted. ³ varlet. ⁴⁻⁴ in. ⁵ meanes.

⁶ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1. ⁷⁻⁷ lost. ⁸ the.

⁹ where. ¹⁰ full.

you at his pleasure / to do with you what he wyl / and thus I departed from hym, and lefte hym syttinge at his table at dyner.'

¶ Howe Huon yesued out of Burdeux & came 4
to the tentes & fought with themperour.

Cap. C.iiii.

Huon is sore displeased,

and gives order for a sudden sortie.



¹ Hen Huon vnderstode y^e messenger he was full of yre and dyspleasure, and 8 sayd / 'syrs, I commaunde you al in hast go and arme you / for, or² euer y^e Almayns be rysyn fro theyr dyneres, and armed I shall make them so sorowfull that they 12 shall curse the houre that euer they were borne / for I had rather dye then to leue them in this poynt, for I wyl go serue them of theyr fyrist messe.' then euery man armed hym / and Huon lept on³ his good horse 16 Amphage / then he toke⁴ leue of the fayre Esclaramonde hys wyfe, an so departed out of Burdeux with his company, and rode towardes themperours tentes / the same tyme themperour was rysyn fro his table / and he 20 had ordeyned .iii. hondred men on horse backe to kepe y^e tentes whyles he was at dyner / then Huon and his company came so quyckly that he was amonge them, or² they perceyued any thynge, & he cryed 'Burdeux,' & 24 strake a knyghte with his spere clene through the body, so that he fell deed to the erth / then he ran at a nother and serued him in lyke wyse, & so he slew iiiii or⁵ his spere brake / then he drew his swerde 28 & bette downe men & horses / & brake the thykest presse, so that euery man gaue hym way / and Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Rycher,⁶ & all his company dyde meruayles in armes / ⁷so moche they 32

The Germans are dining, and do not perceive the approach of the French.

Huon and his companions fight wildly, and hew down their foemen.

¹ Fol. lxxxii, back, col. 2. ² ere. ³ vpon. ⁴ his.

⁵ before. ⁶ Rychard, always so written in 1601 ed.

⁷ and.

dyd that within a shorte space the thre .C. Almayns
that were set to kepe y^e tentes were all slayne / then
Huon & his company entred in amone y^e tentes &
4 pauylyons;¹ they bete downe² tentes, & suche as they
met were slayne / then y^e almayns on all partes armed
them / & themperour sowned his trompettes, & armed
him / he was so sorowful & angry with y^e trauel &
8 damage he was put to by Huon / that he enraged & was
nere out of his wyt / for nyght & day he coulde take
no rest. When he was armed, he mounted on his
horse, & xx .M. Almayns with him, & they all sware the
12 deth³ of Huon / whom god defende, for, yf he longe
taryed there, he sholde be in daunger of his lyfe / but
he was wyse and sage⁴ in feates of armes;⁵ he loked
towardes the emperours tente and sawe wel twenty
16 thousande men redy to come vpon hym / then he sayd
to his men / 'syr, it is tyme that we recule⁶ to oure
cyte / we may wel now go without blame / ⁷we may
noo lenger tary here without grete daunger' / 'syr,'
20 quod Gerames, 'we be redy to do your commaundement'
/ then they toke the way to returne to the cyte /
but the emperour, who desyred gretly the deth of Huon,
he and his men pursued Huon as faste as theyr horses
24 wolde⁸ go / and when the emperour was nere to Huon,
he sayd, 'A, thou fals traytoure, so many tymes thou
haste troubled & angred me that lenger I wyll not
suffre the to lyue / turne towarde me, for with the
28 I wyll iust, or elles I shall slee the flyenge / I hadde
rather⁹ dye then not to take of the vengeance for the
hurtes that thou haste done to me' / when Huon herde
how the emperour called him traytour, he was sore
32 dyspleased, & turned his horse towarde the emperour,
and sayd, 'A, false olde churle, where as thou sayest I
am a traytoure / I shall shewe the how thou lyest

The guards about
the tents are all
slain,

and the French-
men make havoc
among them.

The Emperor is
well-nigh
distracted.

With twenty
thousand men he
moves to the
attack.

Huon orders his
men to retreat.

The Emperor
pursues them,
and, coming up
with Huon,
insults him
loudly.

Huon turns to do
battle with him,

¹ where. ² the. ³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ discreet.
⁵ and. ⁶ retire. ⁷ for. ⁸ could. ⁹ to.

falsely' / then they ranne eche at other with theyr speres in theyr restes, so that they met so rudely and strake eche other on theyr sheldes by suche force *that* theyr sheldes brast¹ a sonder / themperoure was a 4 puyssaunt prynce, so *that* his spere brast¹ all to peces / but Huons spere was stronge & helde, wherwith he gaue the emperoure suche a stroke *that* shelde nor haubert coulde not warraunt hym, but *that* y^e spere entred in to 8 themperours syde / so that yf he had not swarued a syde, he had not scaped y^e deth / *that* stroke was so sore that themperour fell to y^e erth in such wyse *that* nere hande he hadde broken his necke with y^e fal, & so 12 lay in a swone. Huon, seyng themperour lyenge on y^e erth, ³ in grete yre⁴ & dyspleasure⁵ desyred to haue slayne themperour / then he drewe out his good² swerde, & turned to ⁶him to haue stryken⁶ of his heed / 16 the whiche he had done, yf he had not ben quyckely² rescued / but the Almaynes fro all partes cam thyther / so that they rescued themperour fro deth, and set hym on a hors with moche payne / then he thanked our 20 lorde god *that* he was so⁷ scaped, and made auowe to god *that* he wolde neuer more fyght with Huon hande to hande / but he wolde pursue hym to the deth, yf he coude.

Huon would have
cut off his head,
but the Germans
rescue their
sovereign.

The Emperor is
filled with a
longing for
vengeance.

24



¶ How Huon made another issue out of Burdeux, and toke away al the bestes that were in the pasturs without the towne pertaynyng to themperours hoost. 28

Cap. C.v.

¹ burst. ² omitted. ³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. ⁴ rage.
⁵ he. ⁶⁻⁶ strike. ⁷ well.



Huon saw that he coude do no more at *that tyme*, and *that y^e* Almayns encreased in grete nombre to haue assayled hym / then he sporred his good horse Amphage, who made suchē Huon flees from the enemy at a flying pace.

lepes that it semed he had flownen in the ayre / he had his swerde in *his* hande, and strake therwith so gret 8 strokes that none durst approche nere hym / thus he rode after his men and led them towardes the cyte as y^e shepherde doth his shepe, for as soone as *his* enemies approached nere hym, he shewed theym his 12 shelde and spere poynt / and as he rode there came a yonge knyght named Gerard / ryghte hardy and valyaunt in armes; he was bastarde sone to the emperoure / who desyred greatly to wynne honoure

Gerard, a bastard son of the Emperor, pursues and defies him.

16 and prayse / he sawe Huon on his good horse, and sawe¹ *that* no man durst approche nere² him / ³cam after him & cryed, 'A, thou fals traytour, to flye awaye⁴ shall not auayle⁵ the, for I bryngē thy dethe in the 20 poynt of my spere, with y^e whiche I shall slee the fleyngē without thou turne to me, for or⁶ thou scape me I shall cause the to be hanged in the syght of them within Burdeux' / when Huon vnderstode the knyght, 24 and saw the grete hate and yre⁷ that he was in, and herynge howe he called hym traytoure / he thought and sayd to hymselfe / that he had rather dye then he that had sayd these wordes shold⁸ departe⁸ without 28 felyngē the sharpenesse of his spere / the whiche he couched in the rest and sporred his horse, who ranne lyke the thonder / ⁹he gaue the knyght suchē an horrable stroke / that¹⁰ his shelde nor¹¹ armure coude 32 sauē his lyfe / for his spere persed through bothe his sydes, and³ was clene borne ouer his hors croupe starke

Huon turns again and rushes upon him, so that he kills him.

¹ likewise. ² vnto. ³ hee. ⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. lxxxiii, back, col. 1. ⁶ ere. ⁷ rage.
⁸⁻⁹ haue departed. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ neither. ¹¹ his.

deed / ‘go thy waye,’ quod Huon, ‘thou shalte neuer haue power to do any man dyspleasure¹ more’ / ²then he drewe his swerde, wherwith he delte suche dys-

All the Germans flee before him in fear.

4 Almayns that all fled before hym. Gerames / Othon / and Bernarde & Rychar employed

But he loses many men at every onset,

theyr forces and vertues ryght valyauntly / but the Almayns dyd so moche that Huon lost parte of his men, and the rest he ledde with him / oftentimes he 8 turned and returned agaynst his enemyes / but what so euer force or prowes he shewed, yf he had not in hast

and is in great peril.

gone away / he nor neuer³ one of his men hadde scaped without deth / for mo then .xxx. M. Almayns were

He was fighting with thirty thousand Germans,

12 nere hym, and all they⁴ desyred his deth / but god dyd hym that grace / that he and the small nombre that

but he returns at length to the city in safety.

he had lefte entred with hym in to the cyte, and y^e gates⁵ closed / and themperour in grete dyspleasure

16 retourned to his tent / and by the waye he founde his bastarde sone deed / for whcm he made suche sorowe that his lordes nor his broder coude not apease hym ; and so he caused hym to be borne to the tentes, 20 and was gretely complayned of all the barons / ⁶for he was lyke to haue ben a⁷ noble man. And Huon went to his palayes, where he founde the fayre Esclaramonde, who demaunded how he dyde. ‘Ryght well, lady,’ 24

Huon begins to despair of his fortune.

quod Huon ; ‘thanked be god I am returned in sauе garde, but I haue lost many of my men ;’ and therwith he wepte, and the lady comforted hym as moche as she

The Emperor moves his host nearer to the walls,

28 myghte / then themperour, beyng in his hoost, knowynge for trouth that Huon had but a small company in the cyte and *that* he thought he coude do

him but small damage fro thensforth / dyslodged and cam and lay nerer to y^e cyte, and dressed vp his engyns 32 and montons⁸ to breke the walles, and made euery daye

¹ any. ² and. ³ a. ⁴ those. ⁵ were.

⁶ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁷ verie.

⁸ mountains.

betynge¹ at the walles ; and they within defended them
valyauntly² with theyr erosbowes ; many men, bothe
within and without, were slayne / this syege endured
4 fro the begynnaynge of August vnto³ Eester after /
wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and⁴ complayned for
the losse of his noble barons / and⁵ men that he had
lost. Also he sawe his tours and gates sore⁶ beaten,
8 and his enemyes⁷ before his⁸ cyte / and loked for no
socours fro any parte / and⁹ he had with hym¹⁰ but¹⁰
thre hondred knyghtes and a hondred men to kepe the
cyte with all / then he called Esclaramonde his wyfe,
12 and sayd, ‘ Dame,¹¹ I knowe well ye endure trouble and
dyspleasure ynough / and therfore I pray you & ye can
gyue me any good counsell, gyue it me¹² / for the yre¹³
& dyspleasure that I haue at my herte troubleth so myne
16 vnderstondynge that I can not tell what to do / &¹² on
y^e other parte I se my cyte besyeged & my men slayn,
nor I can gete¹⁴ none apoyntment¹⁴ with themperour,
who¹⁵ is so¹⁶ sore dysplesed with me that I can neuer
20 haue his loue / he hath slayne my men, wherof I am so
sorowfull that my herte nere fayleth me’ / ‘ sir,’ quod
Esclaramonde, ‘ ye do grete wronge to say these wordes
before me or¹⁷ to complayn your domages / if ye wold a¹⁸
24 beleued me¹⁹ ²⁰ye hal gone to my brother for socoure,
who wold haue come with you & brought²¹ such²²
nombre of men that themperour durst not¹⁸ abyden
you, & also to haue made ther by my brother a crysten
28 man, for he hath byleued in our lorde god this seuen
yere past’ / ‘ dame,’²³ quod Huon, ‘ all that ye say
myght well haue ben,²⁴ but I had leuer²⁵ haue lost thre

and assaults the
city more
violently than
before.

From August to
Easter does the
siege continue.

Only three
hundred men are
now with Huon,

and he, not
knowing what to
do, asks
Esclaramonde to
give him counsel.

She repeats her
advice that he
should go to her
brother for aid.

¹ battering. ² for. ³ to the. ⁴ verie much.

⁵ other good. ⁶ so. ⁷ lying. ⁸ the. ⁹ that.

¹⁰⁻¹⁹ not above. ¹¹ Madame. ¹² now. ¹³ rage.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ no agreement. ¹⁵ for he is. ¹⁶ omitted.

¹⁷ in this sort. ¹⁸ haue. ¹⁹ then.

²⁰ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ²¹ you. ²² a. ²³ Madame.

²⁴ done. ²⁵ rather.

such eytes as this is¹ then to haue lefste you, & my lordes,
& good burgesses, whom I loue so faythfully. yf I
had but a .M. knighting to defende my cyte / with an
yll wyll I shall² departe fro you, for I am³ in certayne³ 4
that yf I go and seke for socours I shall haue Payne
ynough, & ye that shall abyde here are lyke to haue
more.⁴ I know wel *that* thempour, who⁵ hateth vs,⁶
setteth all his entent to haue vs / & yf he take you, ye 8
shall be in grete paryll / & yf I tary here with you, &
go for no socour / thiſ cyte wyl be taken &⁷ famisshed /
& both you, & I⁸ distroyed / for thempour, who
loueth vs but⁹ lytell, and not with out a cause, yf he 12
may take me I shall dye of¹ a shamefull dethe / it is
no meruayle though¹⁰ he be displeased with me / for I
haue slayn his sones & neuewes, & many of his best
frendes; yf he maye take me I shall haue no pyte 16
shewed to¹ me / & I know well with out I haue some
socours myne ende is at hande / wherfore, dame,¹¹ I
thynde it best that I go to your brother for socours /
for I¹² haue taryed ouer long' / 'syr,' quod Esclaramond, 20
'ye speke it¹³ very late / for now ye know well that all
our brede and wyne / and flesshe / & fyssh / begyn to
fayle vs, and all¹⁴ other vytale / wherfore it shall¹⁵ not
be longe after your departure but that this cyte shall¹⁶ 24
be taken and dystroyed / and the men within slayne /
and I ledde in to grete mysery / yet for all *that* I wold
not counseyle you to abyde here / but I pray you make
hast to departe.' When Huon herde her, he began to 28
wepe / and abasshed¹⁷ his chere to the erth, and studyed¹⁸
a lytell, and¹⁹ sayd, 'Dame,¹¹ I thynde vpon²⁰ one
thyng / the whiche to you shall¹⁶ be ryght¹ profytable /
wherby ye shall haue vytayle ynoughe to lyue by¹ an 32

Huon still
hesitates to
abandon his wife
and friends in so
great a danger,

but he knows, if
he has no succour,
his city and
himself and his
men will fall into
the Emperor's
hands.

He therefore
determines to
seek out his
brother-in-law.

Esclaramonde
fears that the city
must fall in his
absence,

but nevertheless
bids him depart
at once.

Huon tells her of
a device whereby
the town may be
victualled.

¹ omitted. ² should. ³⁻³ assured. ⁴ for. ⁵ so.
⁶ as he. ⁷ or. ⁸ be. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ if. ¹¹ Madame.

¹² see that I. ¹³ of this. ¹⁴ our. ¹⁵ cannot.

¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ abashing. ¹⁸ studying. ¹⁹ he.

²⁰ Fol. lxxxivii, col. 2.

hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of that I thanke god, yf it may so come to passe.' 'Dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall tell you how this cyte may be reuytayled without² grete
 4 losse of any men / trewe it is³ here without in the
 medowe there are two hondred men set there by the
 Emperoure to kepe y^e beestes pertaynyng to his hoost,
 the whiche are without nombre / what in beefes /
 8 keen / and hogges / and mo then x thousande shepe /
 the⁴ whiche beestes⁵ by the grace of Iesu, or⁵ I slepe I
 wyll brynge them⁴ in to this cyte / and than ye may slee
 them and pouder theym in salte, soo that ye shall haue
 12 no famyn for a hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I pray to⁶
 god ye may brynge it⁷ to passe.' thus they taryed tyll⁸
 souper tyme / and after when it was nyght / & that
 they thought that they of y^e hoost were a slepe / and
 16 sawe that the wether was troublous⁹ as they wolde
 desyre it, he armed hym and all his men / he¹⁰ set men
 at the gate to defende hym at his reculynge.¹¹ Then he
 mounted on¹² his good horse / then¹⁰ he opened the gate,
 20 and yssued out as preuely as he myght / and tooke the
 way to the medowe and came thyder / and Huon then
 cryed, and sayd / 'a, ye vyllaynes, this pasturage is
 myn / I come to chalenge it / in an yll¹³ hour ye put
 24 your beestes here to pasture; ye shall make me
 amendes / for¹⁴ the beestes that I fynde here in my
 pasture I wyll goo and pounde theym / and yf the
 emperoure wyll haue theym he must bye them and
 28 make amendes for theyr forfeyt, & ye that be the
 kepers shall derely a bye it.'

The Emperor
has much cattle
for his host.

and these he will
bring into the
city.

Huon arms his
men for the
adventure,
and leaves the
city by night.

He challenges the
keepers of the
cattle to surrender
them to him.

¹ Madame. ² any. ³ that. ⁴ omitted. ^{5—6} ere.

⁶ vnto. ⁷ well. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ euuen. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ recoiling. ¹² vpon. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ all.

They prepare to
fight,

but Huon slays
very many of
them forthwith.

He and his
companions kill
all the two
hundred keepers,
save one, who
escapes to warn
the Emperor.

The Emperor
rushes forth with
his men, but the
cattle had already
entered the city.

Huon and his
men turn upon
the Germans who
were in pursuit of
them,

and kills many of
them with his
own hand.



Hen the kepers herd Huon speke they
had grete fere / ²they thought to haue
gon and taken theyr horses, & ³to haue
defended them selfe, but Huon & his 4
company gaue them no layser so to
doo / then⁴ Huon with his spere strake one starke
deed, & after he slew y^e seconde / ⁵the thyrde / &
fourth / & so slewe many as long as his spere helde ; 8
then he set his hande on his swerde, wherwith he claue
a sonder helmes and sheldes and bette downe men on
euery syde, & Gerames / Othon / & Rycher / dyd⁶
valyauntly. ²so moche dyd Huon and his men within a 12
shorte space that the two hondred men *that* kept the
beestes were all slayne except one, who scaped & ran to
thumperours hoost ; then⁷ he shewed thumperour how
Huon & his men were yssued out of the cyte, and that 16
all the kepers of the beestes were all⁸ slayne, and
y^e beestes taken and dryuen in to y^e cyte / when
thumperoure herde these tydynge he was ryght
sorrowfull, and armed hym & his men, & lept on theyr 20
horses & ranne towardes the cyte to stoppe Huon fro
entrynge in to y^e cyte / but or⁹ they came thyder al y^e
beestes were entred in to y^e cyte / &¹⁰ when Huon saw
thumperour comyng, he sayde to¹¹ his men, ‘syrs, 24
I requyre you let vs turne vpon oure enemyes who
cometh after vs / for I wold fayne shewe them how
men that cometh fro foraging can rynne with theyr
speres.’ then they turned agaynst the Almayns so that 28
eche of them bare a man to the erth, & they drew
theyr swerdes / & slew men rounde aboute them / and
Huon vpon his good hors Amphage held his swerde in his
hande all¹² be spent¹² with y^e bloode of his enemyes, 32
wherwith he cutte of armes, legges, & handes / he was

¹ Fol. lxxxiiii. back, col. 1. ² and. ³ so. ⁴ for.
⁵ then. ⁶ verie. ⁷ where. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ before.
¹⁰ Now. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹² to be sprinkled.

more douted then the deuyll / for by his prowes he dyd
so moche that his enemyes fled before hym and made
hym ¹way, so that in ²the spyte ²of al the Almayns,
4 after that he and his men had slayne fourre M. of his
enemyes / he entred into the cite with all the pray of
his beestes / wherwith thempour & his men that
folowed were sore dyspleased for the losse that they
8 had,³ & for that Huon was so seaped fro theyr handes /
and *that* he had taken away there beestes and slayne
his men / thus as ye haue herde Huon entred into the
eyte of Burdeux with all his praye.

Four thousand
men lie dead on
the field.

The Emperor is
sore distressed.

12 ¶ How Huon of Burdeux made hym redy to
go to seke for some socours, & of the sorowe
that the duches his wyfe made. Ca. c.vi.

16  Fter that Huon was entred in to the
eyte, he wente to his palays, & there
founde the duches Esclaramonde,
who vnlasted his helme & clypped &
kyssed him, & said, ‘sir, I pray you,
how haue ye done?’ ‘fayre lady,’

Huon tells
Esclaramonde of
the success of the
adventure.

20 quod he, ‘we haue slayn many an Almayn, & haue
brought away y^e pray / for in ⁴all the emperours host
we haue not left nother porke / kyne / nor moton : we

24 haue broughte all into this citye, thanked be god / so
now I shall leue you in more suertye in myne absence /
for ye haue nowe wytayle ynoughe for a hole yere.

Nowe I wyll go to your brother / & yf I fynde that
28 he wyl be chrysened, I shall bryng hym with me / yf
not, I shall defye hym and slee hym without he wyll
beleue on Iesu chrysste, what so euer fortune fall.’

He will depart at
once on his
mission to her
brother,
but if he will not
be converted, he
will slay him.

‘Syr,’ quod Esclaramonde, sore wepynge, ‘haue no
32 dought⁵ / for it is more then .vii. yeres syns he desyred

¹ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ²⁻² despite. ³ received.

⁴ Fol. lxxxv. col. 1. ⁵ of that.

to be chrystenyd, wherfore, syr, I requyre you loue my brother' / 'dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall do your pleasure' / then he called to hym hys preuy frendes, and sayd / 'syrs, ye knowe wel what daunger and parell we 4 be in: and by-cause in all thyngys nedefull² oughte to be made prouysyon with delygens / this citye is nowe well prouyded of vytayle, wherfore ye shal not nede to make enye issuunge out without ye se ³a³ great adwan- 8 tage: and as for assawlt, yf ye defende it well it is inpreyngnable for our enemyes to wyn it⁴ / yf ye be to yeld it vp, beware what ye do / for the great hate *that* the emperour hathe agaynst vs paraduenture wyl con- 12 strayne hym to breke his promys: yf ye be taken by force, or by this meanes, ye shall all dye myserably, & my wyfe⁵ murdred ³vp³ in pryson, or elles myserably to fynshe her dayes / and my lytell daughter, Claryet, 16 whome I loue so derely,⁶ shalbe lost, and my citye dys- troyed and brought to vtter ruyn / wherfore I com- maunde⁷ vnto you my wyfe & my daughter and all the rest ⁸tyl my⁸ returne agayne, the whiche shalbe shortlye 20 yf I may / and I shall bryngue with me suche socoure that ye shall al be ioyfull therof' / ⁹'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'god gyue grace to sende you agayne in sanegard / ye knowe wel¹⁰ ye leue vs in great pouerte and fere, wher- 24 fore we al desyre you not to forget vs,' and therwith they al wepte / then Huon sayd, 'I praye you make no suche sorowe for my departyng: for¹¹ knowe the busyn- nes that causeth me to departe: for without I go for 28 some socoure ye know well we ar but dede / &, Gerames, I gyue you the kepynge of my wyfe and chyld / ye ar bounde to serue me trewely / for in you I haue my parfyght trust.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'haue ye no 32

Huon calls his friends together, and informs them of his purpose.

He bids them remain quietly within the city in his absence,

and warns them of their danger.

He entrusts to them the keeping of his wife and daughter.

Gerames and his companions weep on hearing Huon's words,

¹ Madame. ² there. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ but.

⁵ bee. ⁶ shee. ⁷ commend. ⁸⁻⁸ vntill I.

⁹ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ yee.

doughte but *that* as longe as I haue lyfe in my body, I
shal not fayle them in lyfe nor dethe.'

but Gerames promises to protect Esclaramonde and Clariet, so long as he lives.

¶ When Huon hard Gerames say so, he began sore
4 to wepe / and the fayre lady Esclaramonde be gan to
make suche sorowe that¹ pety it was to see;² she
wrangle hyr handes and tare hyr here, and made suche
cryes³ that euery man had pety of hyr / ⁴they comforted
8 hyr as moche as they myght: she had great cause to
wepe and to be sorowfull / for⁵ or euer⁵ Huon returned
to Burdeaux she and all they that were with her suf-
feryd so moche Payne and pouerte that to shewe it wold
12 cause a harde harte to wepe for petye. And after that
Huon had thus spoke to his compayne, he entered in
to his chapell, & was confessyd of the bysshop of the
citye,⁶ and was hoselyd.⁶ Then the bysshop gaue to
16 Huon a stoole that was halowed and of great vertue, &
sayde, 'syr, I requyre you, for y^e loue of our lorde Iesu
chryst / kepe well this stoole, for such an owre maye
falle that it wyl stand you in good stede.' Huon ryght
20 humbly toke it, and thankyd the bysshope. It dyd
hym good seruyse after⁷ / for on a daye as he passed
he / ⁸had therof so great nede that he wolde not a for-
borne it for .xiiii. good cities, as ye shall here⁹ after.

Esclaramonde is sorely grieved when Huon takes leave of her.

Huon is confessed by the bishop of the city, who gives him a halowed stool,

which should stand him in good stead.

24 ¶ How Huon departed fro the cytye of Bur-
deaux, and sayled tyl¹⁰ he came into the
hye see, & had manye great fortunes.

Ca. .cvii.

28 Hen Huon had taken the halowed
stoole, he delyuered it to his chapleine,
who was a wyse man and of a holy
lyfe, and commaundyd hym to kepe it
well. Then he toke .v. knyghtes to
32

Huon takes with him five knights,

¹ great. ² her. ³ out-cries. ⁴ yet. ⁵⁻⁶ before.

⁶⁻⁶ and received the Sacrement. ⁷ afterward.

⁸ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 1. ⁹ more heereafter. ¹⁰ vntill.

and a chaplain
and a clerk.

Huon finally bids
his wife farewell
amid her tears.

He and his
company embark
in a ship moored
on the Garonne,
and sail away.

Huon weeps at
the thought of
having left his
wife and
daughter.

The ship enters
the high sea.

haue with hym, and his chappleyn and a clarke to serue hym. Then Huon went to his wyfe, and kyssyd her at hys departyng, and she fell in a swoone in his armys, & Huon sore wepynge releuyd her, and sayd / 4
'fayre ladye, I requyre you forbere makyng of this sorow.' 'A,¹ syr,' quod she, 'well I ought to be dolent,² syn ye le,³ ue me me besegyd with them that desyretethe your deth / 'dame,'⁴ quod Huon, 'dyscomfort you 8 not / for by the grace of god I shall make a shorte retourne.' Then he clypped and kyssed her, recommaundyng her to our lorde Iesu chryst. Then Huon and such as were appoyneted to go with hym departed 12 out of the palays, and went to a backe posterne vpon the ryuer of Geround, where there was a shyp redy and rychely garnyshyd with all thynges conuenyente / then⁵ Huon clene⁶ armyd & his men enterid into the 16 shyp & had no hors with them / when Huon departed, he delyuered his good hors to the kepyng of syr Barnarde his cosyn / and toke his leue of Gerames and of all his other companye / and so lyfte⁷ vp sayle, and 20 so⁸ or⁹ it was day in the mornynge he was more then .ii. leges fro Burdeaux. Then Huon regarded y^e citye, and sore wepynge dyd recommaunde it to our lorde Iesu chryste, humblye requyryng hym to haue in his sau- 24 garde his citye / wyfe / and chylde, & al other that were within it. Thus duke Huon sayled a long the ryuer of Gerounde, petyously complaynyng for his wyfe, the fayre Esclaramonde, & for his fayre daughter, 28 Claryet / whom he coude not forget / for he had so great dought to lese them that when he rememberyd them he wepte. ¹⁰So long they sayled¹⁰ that they enteryd in to the hyghe see / ¹¹he had good cause to wepe and 32 to make¹² sorow : for he neuer entered agayne in to

¹ good. ² sorrowfull. ³ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2.
⁴ Madame. ⁵ there. ⁶ being. ⁷ hoysed. ⁸ so omitted.
⁹ ere. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ They sayled so long. ¹¹ and. ¹² great.

Burdeaux tyll¹ the emperour had taken it, who hated duke Huon mortally. Huon beynge in his shyp thought in hymself, that² his harte gaue hym or³ he returned to the cytē of Burdeaux, that⁴ the citye shuld be taken and his wyfe⁵ led away / wherfore⁶ he determinyd in his corage, that if it so / ⁷fortuned, and if euer he returned agayn, what so euer ende came therof,

8 he wolde sle the emperoure Thyrry, & that castell nor towne shulde not saue hym. There was a notable knyght with Huon who sayd:⁸ ‘syr, leue your musyng and set⁹ your hope¹⁰ in god. he shall ayde you &

12 socoure you in all your affayres¹¹ / he shall¹² helpe your wyfe and kepe your citye tyll¹ ye returne / discomforste your selfe no further.¹³ thynke of god / and praye to¹⁴ hym to geue you the grace to accomlyshe your vyage /

16 the whiche I hope ye shall¹⁵ do¹⁵ yf ye thus do’ / when Huon harde hym he was¹⁶ confortyd, and thanked the knyght: and so sayled forthe tyll¹ they were far on¹⁷ the see & loste theyr ryght way / for the shyp turned

20 on the ryght hand and loste the waye that they shulde haue sayled / and saylyd in to places not knownen to enye of the maryners / wherof the patron was sore abasshed in hym selfe, without makyng eny knowleg

24 therof / ²so longe they sayled with wynd and wether that they aryued at a porte where as they founde many botes / then¹⁸ they caste theyr ancre and went a lond to refresshe them¹⁹ / then Huon called to hym the mayster

28 of the shyp and demaundyd of hym yf he coud sayle to y^e realme of Aufamie / ‘syr,’ quod y^e mayster, ‘I was neuer there nor I haue no wyll²⁰ to go thither / it were a folye for me to take on¹⁷ me to sayle thither,

Huon fears that the Emperor will take the city while he is away.

A knight offers him consolation.

They sail onwards and lose their way.

They arrive at a port, where they find many boats.

¹ vntill. ² and. ³ that before. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ the faire Escleremond. ⁶ therefore. ⁷ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.

⁸ vnto him. ⁹ put. ¹⁰ trust. ¹¹ enterprizes.

¹² will. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ vnto. ^{15—15} not faile of.

¹⁶ much. ¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ there. ¹⁹ themselues.

²⁰ minde.

The pilot of the vessel does not know in what direction to sail,

and a new pilot is sought and found.

He warns Huon that the voyage to Aufamie, the realm of his brother-in-law, is long and perilous.

Huon is sad at the thought that a whole year must pass ere he can return to Bordeaux.

Huon and his company move into a new ship.

syn¹ I had neuer no knowlege to sayle by that straynge see. But I counsayle you² here in this porte where as ye ar nowe to hyer a nother patron that can bryngē you thether.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye you to do so moche as to gette me one' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do that³ I can' / then he and Huon serchyd fro shyppe to shyppe and fro bote to bote to get a pelot / at laste they⁴ came to an aunsyent man / who sayd that he coude well bryngē them thether / and sayd how he had bene there before that tyme. 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'yf ye wyll bringē me to the realme of Aufamie I shall geue you gold and syluer plente' / 'syr,' quod the olde patron, 'I shall do your pleasure / but, syr, one⁵ I say to you / knowe for trouthe the vyage is⁶ ryghte perelous & dangerous⁶ to passe and a⁷ long vyage.⁸ it wyll be halfe a yeere or⁹ ye can com thether / and besyde that we muste pas by a perelous Goulfe / the whiche is reputed to be one of the mouthes of hel / for¹⁰ if by aduenture by¹¹ fortune of the wynde that we be blowen nere to¹² it we shal neuer departe / but be loste for euer.' when Huon hard the pylot, he began to wepe and complayne for hys wyfe and his dere daughter whome he had lefte in the citye of Burdeaux in great dought¹³ to be taken. For he saw well then² he coud not returne¹⁴ of a hole yere with eny socours / how be it, he lefte not his vyage / then he commaundyd his seruantis to dyscharge all his baggage and vytayles out of the one shyp in to the other / ¹⁵when the new shyp with y^e new patron was redy in all thynges Huon entered into it. Then the newe patron demaunded of the olde maryner the cause why thei came thether and fro whence they came. 'Syr,' quod he, 'trew it is we

¹ seeing. ² that. ³ what. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2.
⁵ thing. ⁶⁻⁶ very daungerous for. ⁷ verie. ⁸ for.
⁹ ere. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ or. ¹² vnto. ¹³ daunger.
¹⁴ for the space. ¹⁵ and.

came fro the citye of Burdeaux / the whiche stondethe
vpon a notable ryuer, and when we were entered in to
the see / a sore wynde rose vpon vs in suche wyse that
 4 we were constrainyd to abandon our shype to the wynde,
and wether, and fortune of the sec / the whiche hath
brought vs hether' / 'frend,' quod the new patron /
'as sone as ye were out of the ryuer of Gerounde, yf ye
 8 had turned your ¹sterne towardes the sirode,² ye hadde
neuer comen hether, and within a moneth ye shulde
haue com to the realme of Aufamie, where as now ye
be³ far of' / when Huon vnderstode the cause of theyr
 12 comynge thether, he was ryght sorrowfull and sore dys-
pleased yf he coude haue amendyd it. But his dys-
pleasure coude not ayde⁴ him: but rather hynder hym /
therfore he let it pas, and so toke leue of hys fyrist
 16 patron, and lyfte vp theyr aneres and sayles: and when
they were in the see the wynde arose / and encreased
more and more ⁵in suche wyse that they were more
then⁵ .vi. wekys that y^e wynde chaungyd not, so that
 20 yf god had sufferyd the wynd to haue continued one
monethe or .vi. wekys lenger, they had com to the
place where as they wolde haue bene. But or⁶ they
came there, they sufferyd moche Payne / for there rose
 24 vpon them suche a wynde⁷ that they were forsed to
awayle theyr sayles. The heuen waxed darke, the mone
was couerid / the tourment was great and maruaylous,⁸
the waues of the se were of a great heyghte and orryble⁹
 28 to beholde / whereby, whether they wolde or not, they
were constreynd to go as the wynde wolde lede them /
theyr fortune was so¹⁰ terryble / that there was neuer
sene suche a¹¹ storme before / wherof Huon and his men
 32 and his patron were ¹²sore abasshed,¹² and specyally the

The old mariner
tells the new
pilot of the
previous voyage,

and the latter
shows how their
old ship came to
stray from the
right course.

Huon sets forth
again in his new
ship,

and encounters
mighty storms.

¹ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1. ² sea roade. ³ verie.
⁴ helpe. ⁵⁻⁵ for the space of. ⁶ ere. ⁷ and tempest.
⁸ daungerous. ⁹ terrible. ¹⁰ great and.
¹¹ mightie. ¹²⁻¹² greatly afraide.

The pilot is
sorely discomfited,

and knows not
whither he is
going.

At length the sun
appears,

and the winds
abate.

The ship goes
with the wind,
as none knows in
what direction to
guide her.

patron more then Huon was / he was sore dyscomforted / and peteouslyle he called on our lorde Iesu chrysste / requyrnge hym to bryng them to a good porte / there was nother maryner nor patron but *that*¹ 4 were sore abasshyd,² nor they wiste not where they were. They were in this tourmente³ the space of .x. dayes, In¹ the whiche tyme they neuer saw the ⁴clerenes of the sonne: for the darkenesse that was there as 8 then / the which⁵ greatly anoyed⁶ them. And when it came to the xi day, and that the tourment and wynd began to abate and the see⁷ pesable and stylly / where with⁸ Huon and his compayne were well comforted : 12

the heuen clerid vp and the⁹ sonne cast out his rayes alonge vpon the see / then¹⁰ when the master¹¹ sawe the fortune of the see, and the great tourment began to sease, he caused one of the maryners to mounte vp into 16 the toppe to se yf he myght se¹² any lond / but he coude se none, wherof the patron was sore¹³ abasshyed & sayd how¹⁴ he knew not¹⁵ wher¹⁵ he was, for he neuer saylyd in that¹⁶ partyes / and sayd to Huon, ‘syr, it is fyfty 20 yeres syn¹⁴ I fyrske vsed the see / but yet I neuer sayled in these partyes, wherof I haue great maruayle’ / when Huon harde that he was sore dyspleasyd and sayd / ‘syr, let vs take the aduantage of the wynde and let 24 our shyppe dryue vnder the conducte of our lord Iesu chrysst. I hope that our lorde god wyll not suffer vs to be pershysshed in this se.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the patron, ‘I¹⁷ agre well to your sayinge, and so let vs do’ / then 28 they turned theyr helme and toke the wynd in to theyr ful sayle / the wynde was good and fresshe and the see¹⁸ meke & pesable / so that within a shorte tyme¹⁹ they had sayled a great iourney. Then Huon called on²⁰ our 32

¹ all. ² afraide. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁵ did verie. ⁶ annoy. ⁷ waxed. ⁸ therewith.

⁹ glorious. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ of the shippe. ¹² discrie.

¹³ greatly. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ in what country.

¹⁶ those. ¹⁷ do. ¹⁸ very. ¹⁹ space. ²⁰ vpon.

lord god and helde vp his handes towardes the¹ heuen,
& sayd / ² very god, who in this ³worlde transetory
woldeste³ wochesaue to be borne in the wombe of a
4 maid, and after ⁴here reygned⁴ .xxxii. yeres, and then
⁵reseyuyd⁵ deth and passyon vpon a frydaye / and after
⁶rose⁶ from deth to lyfe and wente into hell and drewe
out ¹the¹ sowles / out of ¹the¹ paynes infernall⁷ / syr,¹
8 ⁸as I beleue that this is trewe, I requyre the to haue
petye and compassyon of⁹ vs & gyue vs grace ¹⁰to scape
safely¹⁰ out of this perelous see / and to kepe and saue
my ryght dere¹¹ wyfe Esclaramonde & my chylde : and
12 my noble lordes whome I haue lefte in Burdeaux in
great perell of theyr lyues, and gyue me that¹² grace
that I may bryng with me suche socours and ayde that
thereby to¹³ bryng them out of the daunger that they
16 be in.⁹

Huon puts his trust in Christ.

¶ How Huon aryued on the perelous Goulf,
wher as he spake with Iudas, and howe he
aryued at the porte of the Adamant.

20

Ca. .Cviii.

24



Hen Huon had made his prayers to
god / he behelde in to the see and sawe
a farre of / lyke a great pese of can-
was / and therby he harde as ¹⁴great a
noyse as thoughe there had ben a
thowsande smethes and a thowsande carpenters and a
thowsande great rynnyng riuers to gether,¹⁵ betynge
28 and labouryng.¹⁶ ¹⁷ Huon, who harde this great noyse :
hadde great fere therof, so that he wiste not what to do,

Huon looks ahead.

He hears a thunderous roar,

and grows fearful.

¹ omitted. ² Thou. ³⁻³ transitorie world diddest.

⁴⁻⁴ afterwards diddest raigne heere vpon earth.

⁵⁻⁵. didst suffer. ⁶⁻⁶ that didst rise. ⁷ Even so.

⁸ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ that we may safely escape. ¹¹ and louing. ¹² the.

¹³ I may. ¹⁴ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2. ¹⁵ all.

¹⁶ (tabouryng in original.) ¹⁷ to gether.

and so were al tho¹ that were in his compayne / the patron commaunded a maryner to mounte vp into the toppe² to se what thynge it was that made all that noyse / and so he dyd,³ and behelde that waye / and at 4 last he parseyued the daungerous Goulfe, wherof he had harde often tymes spoken⁴ of⁴ / wherof⁵ he had suche fere that nere hand he had fallen downe into the see / he came downe and sayd to⁶ the patron, ‘Syr, we be al 8 in the way to be lost, for we be nere one of the Goulfes of hel’ / wherof Huon and the patron and all other had suche fere that they⁷ trymbelyd. ‘Syr,’ quod the patron, ‘knowe for trougthe it is impossyble to scape 12 out of this perelous Gulfe / for all y^e sees and waters and ryuers there assemblethe to gether / and perforce we muste passe that waye’ / when Huon harde that,⁸ he began petyously to complayne and sayd / ‘a, swete⁹ 16 wyfe Esclaramonde, I se nowe clerely that our loues must departe / the beaute and y^e bounte that is in you I can not forget. Alas! I shall neuer se you.¹⁰ I praye to our lorde Iesu christ to gyue you that grace to 20 be agreyde with the emperoure Therry to the entente that in peas and reste ye maye vse the reseedewe of your lyfe / for as for me I shall neuer bryngye you eny socours or ayde.’ Then he studyed a season and then sayd,¹¹ 24 ‘good lorde, I thanke the, syn it pleaseth the that I shall pas out of this worlde, I humbely requyre the to receyue my sowle into thyne han^{12/des.} as for the¹³ body and lyfe I care lytell for / synne¹⁴ it pleaseth the 28 that I shal thus ende my dayes.¹⁵ Then Huon lefte his wepynge and the wynde seasyd and the sayle abated: yet neuer the lesse, the shyppe styl went forth a lone in such wyse as though he had floweren on 32

The ship approaches the gulf, that forms one of the gates of Hell.

The pilot fears that they will not pass that way in safety.

Huon addresses his wife,

and prepares himself for death.

The ship goes nearer to the perilous waters.

¹ those. ² of the mast. ³ and looked round about him.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ and thereof. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ all.

⁸ then. ⁹ and louing. ¹⁰ more. ¹¹ againe.

¹² Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 1. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ seeing,

¹⁵ and depart this life.

y^e see / 'Syr,' quod the mayster,¹ 'ye maye se clerely²
that we nede not to trawaile our selfe to gyde our
shyppe / for the Goulfe that is so nere vs drawethe the
4 shipp to³ hym in suche haste as ye maye see. ⁴Anone

The gulf draws
her towards the
danger.

ye shall se that we shall tounble therin' / 'mayster,'
quod Huon, 'it is conuenyente⁵ that we abyde the
aduenture and fortune of the see, such as our lorde god
8 wyll sende. lette vs truste in hym, and desyre hym
that his pleasure be fulfylled: ⁴more I can not⁶ saye,
for agaynste hym we can not⁶ stryue.' Then Huons
chapelayne confessen them one after another.⁴ Then

12 incontynent the great noyse seasyd. For⁷ they came
thether at a good poynte / for the⁸ same tyme as theyr⁹
fortune was y^e gulfe was full and playne / so that a
shyppe myght pas ouer it without daunger as well as

Happily the gulf
was very full, so
that ships might
pass near it in
safety.

16 in a nother place of the see / ⁴when the patron sawe
that, he sayde to Huon, 'Syr, we oughte greatly to
thanke our lorde god / for we ar nowe come at suche
a tyme that the Goulfe is full and playne, so that we

20 maye passe ouer suerly withoute any daunger' / when
Huon harde *that*, he was ryght Ioyfull and all wepynge
he knelyd downe and so dyd all the compayne, and
dewoutly they thanked our lord god that he had sent

Huon and his
company kneel
and thank God
for their
salvation.

24 them that⁹ grace. Then Huon rose vp and saw besyde
hym a great pese of canwasse. And the waues of the
see / betynge agaynste it with great vylence / wherof
he hadde great marueyle. For the waues of the see
28 bet¹⁰ so sore agaynste the clothe and with so great
vylens: that they reculed backe / & for all the
betynge of the see agaynste the canuas yet it brake not.

A piece of canvas
is seen above the
waves,

Then Huon harde a woyse cryenge on hye,¹¹ petuously¹¹
32 complaynyng, saynge, 'O, very god, in an yll oure I
was borne when I soldē the pusuant god who ded me

and a piteous
voice is heard,
complaining of
much evil
fortune.

¹ of the shippe. ² euidently. ³ vnto. ⁴ and.

⁵ now. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ But. ⁸ verie. ⁹ good.

¹⁰ Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and pitifully.

that grace¹ as to take me as one of hys dyceypples & apostelles / and for the goodnes that he dyd me I renderyd hym an yll² rewarde for the dewyll: the enemye of all humayne lynage enteryd into my body, y^e whiche 4 was ful of synne / and exortyd me to selle my god & good lorde / for .xxx. pens of money that was then corante in the countre of Iudee / and, vnhappy that I was, yf I had trusted in his great marce all the trespasses 8 that I had done had bene forgeuen me. But pryme and mysbeleue and wanhope³ that was in me with the deuyll: who blyndyd myne vnderstondynge,⁴ wolde not suffer me to haue enye hope of grace or pardon for 12 my trespasses. For of my synne I neuer had repentaunce. And the deuyll doughtyng to haue loste me put me in to dysparasyon, wherby I loste⁵ goddes grace.⁵ For yf I wolde haue axed marcy of my lord god he wolde 16 haue pardoned me of all the trespasses that I had commytted agaynst hym. Alas!⁶ caytyue that I am, fro hense shall I neuer departe.⁷ ¶ when the mayster of the shyppe harde this woyce / he demaunded of hym 20 and sayd / ‘what arte thou that thus peteously complayneth? I commaunde the to shewe me⁸ yf⁹ there be any man leuyng in this worlde that can ayde and socoure the, and caste the out of the⁹ payne that thou arte 24 in:’ when the voice hard hym, he spake no mo wordes nor gaue¹⁰ none awurde.¹¹ Then Huon¹² awaunsed hymselfe to the bourde of the shyppe,¹³ desyrous to know what thynge it was that made that peteous¹⁴ complaynte, 28 and sayde, ‘Thou that so sore doste complayne,¹⁵ I coniure the in the name of our lorde Iesu chrysste and by all his powre, and by the gloryous¹⁶ vyrgyn saynt Mary

¹ fauour. ² euill. ³ false hope. ⁴ and.
^{5—5} the grace of god. ⁶ poore.

⁷ but alwaies to remaine in this torment and paine.

^{8—8} and whether. ⁹ torment and. ¹⁰ made,

¹¹ at all. ¹² Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. ¹³ being. ¹⁴ pitifull.
¹⁵ and mourne. ¹⁶ blessed.

It tells how
Jesus was sinfully
sold for thirty
pence,

and how he who
did the deed was
blinded by the
devil.

The pilot asks
who it is that
makes the pitiful
complaint,

but no answer is
vouchsafed.

Then Huon
repeats the
question.

his mother / and by all the sayntes & holy aungelles
and arcangelles: that are in y^e realme of paradyse /
and by all that euer god¹ made¹ in heuen and in erthe /
4 that thou answere and shewe me what man thou arte,
and who hath put the here² / and wherfore thou art
here: and wether thou mayste come to vs or not: &
what is thy name: and why that this canwas is here
8 set / wherfore it serueth: ³and yf euer it may be put
fro the.³ And also shew me yf euer thou shalte
departe⁴ hens or not.

¶ When this woyse had harde Huon coniure hym
12 in such wyse, it answered hym shortly and sayde:

'O thou mortall man that haste coniured me so sore:
and ⁵a⁵ desyryd⁶ to know my name, I shall shewe ⁷the;
know⁷ for sartayne that my name is Iudas, &⁸ am the⁹
16 same man that solde¹⁰ Iesu Chryste to the Iues for
.xxx. pens than beyng corante¹¹ in the countree of
Iudee / & deliueryd into theyr handes my ryght dere
lorde and mayster, who so moche¹² honoure had done to¹²
20 me, as to¹³ holde me with hym¹³ as one of his apostelles,
and by a false and faynte loue I kyssed hym on the
mouthe⁶ to shewe the Iues wiche he¹⁴ was. And after
I saw hym beten and yll intretyd as ye may here¹⁵ in
24 the holy scryptures & Ewangelystes: who ¹⁶of his
passyon hath made mensyon¹⁶ / and when I sawe how
I had betrayed my mayster, I was sorowfull¹⁷ and sore
dyspleasyd¹⁸ but I neuer durst cry hym marcy / wh[e]rein
28 I dyd¹⁹ great foly / for he was so petuous²⁰ and full
of marcy,²¹ yf I had cryed hym marcy he wolde²² afor-
geven me / but the dewyll, whiche is ennemye to all

The reply comes
that it is Judas
Iscariot who is
speaking.

He recites how
he grieved to see
his Master injured
after he had
betrayed Him,

but dared not ask
Him for mercy.

¹⁻¹ hath made and created. ² in this miserie.

²⁻³ omitted. ⁴ from. ⁵⁻⁵ also hast. ⁶ for.

⁷⁻⁷ vnto the. ⁸ I. ⁹ selfe. ¹⁰ our lord. ¹¹ money.

¹²⁻¹² honoured. ¹³⁻¹³ account. ¹⁴ he he *in original.*

¹⁵ read. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ therein haue made mention of his passion.

¹⁷ at my hart. ¹⁸ Fol. lxxxviii, col. 2. ¹⁹ commit.

²⁰ pitifull. ²¹ that. ²² haue.

He strangled
himself upon a
tree,

and his soul was
set in this place
to remain there
for ever.

Tormented unto
death, Judas
cannot die.

The canvas, on
which he lies, was
given him by God
to save him from
the wind on the
right side,
because he once
gave away such a
canvas in charity
for the love of
God.

Huon advises
Judas to ask for
God's mercy even
yet.

vmayne creatures, wold not suffre me to do it. But I went and strangelyd and hangyd my selfe on a tree.¹ when I was dede my sowle was taken and set in the plase where as ye see me now: and here I shall be² for euer 4 in tourmente and ³in³ Payne / for neuer shall I departe from hens: for nowe it is to late to call for grace, for ⁴y^e dome⁴ is geuen vpon me: wherfore I do and muste suffer this tourmen & Payne :⁵ for all the waters and ryuers of 8 y^e world dotin assemble together here, there⁶ as I am in this Goulfe / wher I am so⁷ beten and tourmented by the great waues and course of the great ryuers. Thus I am tourmented and can not⁸ dye, nor neuer come out 12 of this tourmente nor Payne / this Canwas that ye demaunde wherto it ⁹dothe serue,⁹ and whye¹⁰ it is here set, know for¹¹ trouthe, that on a day I gaue it for the loue of god / nor I neuer gaue after eny thyng for goddes 16 sake, as longe as I leuyde / and therfore when I was set here, our lorde god wolde *that* the good dede that I had done in geuyng this canwas for his sake, shulde not be vnrewardyd: therfor our lorde god wold that 20 this Canwas shulde be set on my ryght syde, to the entente¹² to saue me from the wynde, and from the great waues of the see that¹³ cometh so boysteously a gaynst me / as ye haue sene how they bete agaynst 24 this Canwas / I had no grace to aske marcy of our lorde god for my trespass, the deuyll was so great with me / wherfore let euery man take ensaple by me, and aske marcy while he haue space.¹ ¹⁴Thus I haue 28 shewed you all my dede.¹⁵ ‘Iudas,’ quod Huon, ‘I belyue yf that *thou* wilte yet crye to god for marcy he wyll haue marcy and pety of¹⁶ the.’ ‘Nay, nay,’ quod Iudas, ‘to praye can not awayle me, for I am damped 32

¹ and. ² remaine. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴⁻⁴ judgement.

⁵ continually. ⁶ heire euuen. ⁷ sore. ⁸ by no meanes.

⁹⁻⁹ serueth. ¹⁰ wherefore. ¹¹ a. ¹² for. ¹³ here

¹⁴ Fol. Ixxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ state. ¹⁶ on.

for euer / and yf ye wyll beleue me be ware,¹ tary not here to long, for yf ye do ye shall neuer departe hense for the Goulf,² the² whiche is nowe full and playne,
 4 it wyll not reste³ long but *that y^e* see wyll issue out, & all the ryuers with in it / ye were happy that ye came at the owre that ye dyd. For anone the waters wyll Issue out with suche a bowndaunce / that the waues
 8 that wyll ryse shall seme lyke hye mountaynes : it is more then two hondred yeres synne there passyn any shyppe this way / but that men, shyppe and all, were swallowed in to the Goulf / wherfore, Huon, I counsayle
 12 the that incontynente thou departe hense / without thou wylte be lost for euer ; it is tyme that thou depart hens whyles the Goulf is full / it will not longe rest, but that the waters wyll Issue out with suche brute
 16 and noyse, that yf ye be .xv. leges of ye shall well here the tourmente that it wyll make. If ye had comen but halfe an owre soner then y^e dyd ye had neuer scaped the daunger therof.'

20 ¶ When Huon vnderstode Iudas, he hadde great maruayle / he¹ loyned his handys towarde the heuen : thankyng god of the grace that he had sente hym / Then Huon desyred y^e patron that they myght departe
 24 thense in hast. 'Syr,' quod he, 'it shall be done.' Then they drewe vp theyr sayles, and so departyd / they hadde not sayled a leuge but that they sawe a farre of great brondis of fyre brynnynge⁴ Issuyng out of y^e Goulf so
 28 longe and so hye that they had nere hande come to
⁵ theyr shyppe. And the waues that Issued out of y^e Goulf were as hye as mountaynes, and they aproched so nere⁶ theyr shyppe that they⁷ were nye⁷ perysshyd for
 32 theyr shyppe was nere hand full of water, so that they had moche to do to lade out the water, and were fayne

Judas declares
that he is for ever
damned,

and urges Huon,
as he loves life,
to hasten away
from the perilous
gulf.

The pilot hurries
the ship away,
and sees behind
him burning fires
issuing from
the gulf.

¹ and. ²⁻² omitted. ³ continue. ⁴ burning.

⁵ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vnto.
⁷⁻⁷ had like to haue.

At a great pace
they passed on,
for the water
drove them
onwards.

No land is in
sight for many
weeks.

At length a high
rock with a thick
wood,
and a white
house upon it, is
seen afar off.

They sail in that
direction,

to abate theyr sayle. For¹ the water that Issuyd out of the Goulfe draue them so rudely² that a byrde coude fleye no faster then they wente. In that case they were a monethe, and durste neuer hoyse vp sayle / 4
³Thus they draue a greate season without seyght⁴ of any londe / then Huon called vpon god, and sayde / ‘A, verey god, I hadde rather haue taryed styll in myne own countre, and haue taken suche fortune as it shulde / 8 a⁵ pleased the to sende me : then here to be loste in this straunge see. A, lady Esclaramond, I pray to⁶ god⁷ kepe you and Claryet, my doughter / 8 I thynke I shal neuer se you more.’ Thus Huon complayned 12 saylyng in the see in fere of his lyfe.¹ Thus they were in the daunger of this Goulfe .v. wekys, and neuer coude se londe, wher of they were in great fere / often times they prayed to our lorde to haue petye of them. 16 Then Huon desyred the patron to mounte vp to y^e maste / to se yf he myght se any londe.¹ The patron, who greatly desyryd so to do, anone he mounted vp and regardyd on all partyes to se yf he myght spye any 20 londe. at last he sawe afarre of an hye rocke / and on y^e heyght therof they sawe a thicke wode, and at the enter of the wode he sawe a lytell howse / wheroft he thankyd god, and descendyd downe and shewyd Huon 24 what he had sene, and sayde / ‘syr, yonder, a far of, I haue sene a great rocke, & on y^e heyght therof a great thycke wode, & therin I haue sene a lytel house, or hermy⁹tage ; the howse is whyght, I can not tel 28 what yt is³ / by the grace of god or¹⁰ yt be nyght we shall take⁷ londe there and refresshe vs¹¹ / when Huon hard that he was ryght ioyfull, and thankyd god. Then they drewe to that parte, and had good wynde and a 32 fresshe / wenynge to haue come thether the same

¹ and. ² swiftly. ³ but. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ haue.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ to. ⁸ for. ⁹ Fol. lxxxix. col. 1.
¹⁰ ere. ¹¹ our selves.

nyght, but they sayled .iii. dayes and .iii. nyghtes,
and coude come no nerer to the woode then they were
before, wherof they had marueyle / it semed to them

but it seems to
receive before
them.

4 euer that the wode and the howse rose vp hygher and
hygher / ¹then they coud not tell whether they went /
yf they had knownen they weld not haue gone therethen
for all the golde of² the worlde / for yf god had not
8 had petye of them they were all lykely to haue ben
lost / for the plase that they sawe a farre of was a
castell, and therin closyd the rock of the Adamant :
the which castell was daungerous to aproche / for yf

They little knew
that they were
approaching the
rock of the
Adamant, which
is very dangerous.

12 enye shyppe come nere it and haue any Iron nayles
within it, and³ a shyppe come within the syght therof,
the Adamant wyll drawe the shyppe to⁴ hym. And
therfore in those partyes the shyppes that sayleth by
16 that see ar made and pynned with wooden nayles, and
without any maner of Iron, otherwyse they be loste
and perysshdyd. For the properte of the Adamant is
to drawe Iron to hym / thus Huon and his company

It draws towards
it all ships with
iron nails in it.

20 were there the space of .vi. dayes, goyng and saylynge
abougt the rocke of the castell of the Adamant. But
yf they had had a good wynde the fyrt daye, they had
aryued euen at the whyghte howse, that they sawe

Therefore ships
sailing in that sea
should be made
with wooden
nails.

24 fyrtle in the woode / the which was the fayrest and most
rycheste howse in y^e worlde, within the whiche was so
moch golde and rychesse that no man leuinge ⁵coude
esteme the value therof / for the pyllers within that
28 howse were of Casselony / and the walles and towres of
whyghte Alabaster. There was neuer dyscryued
in[s]cripture nor hystory the beauty of such a castell as
this was, for whenne the sonne cast his rayes on it it
32 semyd a far of to be of fyne christal, it was so clere
shynyng. In this castell was nother man nor woman :
but dede mennes bones lyenge at the gate of this

The white house
or castle, how-
ever, is full of
fine gold,
and very beauti-
fully wrought.

But only dead
men's bones lie
within it.

¹ and. ² in. ³ that. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

castell / at the porte there lay many shypes, so that theyr mastes semyd a far of to be a great foreste.

¶ How Huon deuyseyd with his patron in regardyng of the castell of the Adamat. 4

Ca. .C.ix.



The castle is impregnabla.

The thick wood which the mariners thought they saw from afar, was made of the masts of ships attracted by the Adamant, and wrecked.

Huon's ship strikes her sails,

but she approaches the rock at a swift pace, and the sailors cannot turn her course aside.

His castel was set on a rocke of the Adamant stone: for¹ the eest to the weest was not so stronge a castell / 8 for yf al the worlde had come before it, and men within to defend it, coude neuer be won by eny mortall men:

the forest that² semyd to them a far of were y^e mastes 12 of ³the³ shypes that had bene there aryued by constrainste of the Adamant / but for all y^e shypes that were there / there was no ⁴leuyng man / but⁴ there lay ³the³ bones of them⁵ that had dyed by famyne 16 & rage / Huon and his company had great maruayle / for when they aproched nere to y^e castell, they were forsyd to stryke sayle / for the Adamant drewe the shyp so sore that, yf they had not quickely stricken 20 theyr sayle, the⁶ shyp had broken all to peses, & they all⁷ drowned in the see. The shyppe wente so faste that it was maruayle⁸ to consider it.⁹ Then the patron of the shyp, who was wyse & sage,¹⁰ 24 knew anone how¹¹they were nere to the castell of the Adamant, because theyr shyppe went so fast without sayle thetherward / faster then yf they had had a full wynd in all theyr sayles / nor⁹ they coude not tourne 28 theyr shyppe no¹² way fro that part,¹³ they wold gladly haue returned ³yf they had coude,³ but it wold not be

¹ from. ² so. ³ ³ omitted.

⁴⁻⁵ man living therein, yet. ⁵ men. ⁶ their.

⁷ been. ⁸ marnailous. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ discreet.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxix, back, col. 1. ¹² any. ¹³ for.

bycause the Adamant drew¹ so sore the Iron¹ to hym
by nature; when the patron sawe that clerely² they
shold³ aryue there, he began peteously to wepe,⁴ and
4 sayde to Huon / 'syr, our lorde god hathe created vs in
this worlde to lyue and to dye / and there is none but
⁵ that⁵ muste passe the passage of this, and bycause we
knowe suerly that no creature can scape that / wher-
8 fore⁶ we ought to be contente with that⁷ can be none
otherwyse / syr I say this that⁵deth to abyde, we
must be comforted, for here⁵ we muste all dye' / when
Huon harde the patron, he had great maruayle, and
12 sayde / 'patron, I praye you shewe me the cause why
ye say thus? / in this castell that we se before vs, is⁸
there⁹ Sarasyns within it, or spyrytes of hell that hathe
sworne our deth / suerly I dought them not, make good
16 chere, be nothyng abashed, take¹⁰ corage in you,¹⁰
for by the ayde of our lorde Iesu chrys, and by the
forse of myne armes and good sword, if ther be eny
man within the castell that wyll resyste agaynste vs, I
20 assure you I shall sone delyuer¹¹ hym. Anone ye shall
se what I can do / I neuer saw in all my lyfe so fayre
a castell / I cannot tell yf¹² they within wyll defend vs
the entre in to the porte¹³; yf they wyll haue any
24 trybute of me, I shall gladly pay it, so they demaund
no thynge elles / and yf I se¹⁴ they wyll demaund eny
thynge elles,¹⁵ I shall shewe them how my sword can
cut¹⁶ / for I had¹⁷ rather¹⁸ dye then in any prynces
28 courte it shulde be layde to my reproche¹⁹ that for eny
man I shulde recule²⁰ backe one fote, for fere or dought
of⁹ deth / for I wyll neuer be taken alyue, therby to
dye in pryon' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'your forse

The pilot warns
Huon that he
must now be
prepared to die.

The knight does
not understand
the sailor's words,

and longs to
attack the little
castle.

He promises to
fight with any
that hold it to the
death, if they bar
his entrance.

1-1 the yron so sore. 2 needles. 3 must. 4 lament.
 5-5 omitted. 6 therefore. 7 which. 8 are.
 9 any. 10-10 good courage and ioy. 11 you from.
 12 whether. 13 or not. 14 that. 15 of mee.
 16 answare it. 17 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 18 to.
 19 and shame. 20 retire.

The pilot replies
that human
prowess is of no
avail,

and tells him of
the fatal rock.

Huon is filled
with grief, and
weeps piteously.

He prays to God
to receive his soul
into paradise,
and to save his
wife and child.

His ship enters
the port about the
rocks,
and breaks many
rotten vessels
fixed to the
Adamant stone,
as she runs in
among them.

and great prowes can nothyng profyghte¹ you / for ye² were as strong & as great as euer was Sampson / it shuld no thyng awauntage you ; I shall shewe you the cause wye / the castell that ye se yonder before you is⁴ the most fayrest and stron[g]este castell of³ the worlde / it is set and compassed⁴ a bought with a rocke of Adamantis stones / the whiche naturally drawethe⁵ to⁶ it all maner of Iron / as ye maye well se by our shyppe⁸ that gothe so faste with out any sayle : the Adamant drawethe⁵ it bycause of the ancles and nayles that be in our shyppe / the woode that semethe to be a forest ar the mastes of suche shyppes as hath there aryued,⁷ 12 drawne thether by the Adamant.'

¶ When Huon vnderstode the patron, he was⁸ sorowfull, and no maruayle / then peteously he complayned for his wyfe &⁹ his child / for he saw wel¹⁰ he 16 coud not scape the deth, nor neuer depart¹¹ thens. then he wepte peteously, and sayd,¹² 'a, very god,¹² who in this worlde haste fourmyd me / I require thy grase / that this¹³ pouer synner that I am, enclyned to all 20 myssesfortunes, that it maye please the to reseyue my sowle into paradyse ; as for my lyfe¹⁴ none accounte therof. But I praye the, good lorde, to sauе my wyfe and chylde, whome I haue lefte in daunger of deth, or 24 elles¹⁵ wylayne pryson.¹⁵ And with thos wordes the shypentered in to the porte with such a force & pusaunce that it ran¹⁶ In amonge the other shyppes, so that yf the shype had not ben stronge, and y^e other shyppes 28 rotten, Huons shype had bene broken all to peses / ⁹it ranne vnder the water .iii. or .iiii. of the other old shippes / ¹⁷when Huon sawe that hys shyppe was not

¹ auaile. ² we. ³ in all. ⁴ round.

⁵ doth draw. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ and are. ⁸ right. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ from. ¹²⁻¹² ah, good Lord. ¹³ thus.

¹⁴ I make. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ in shameful imprisonment.

¹⁶ Fol. lxxxx, col. 1.

¹⁷ 17 and was not broken, thanked be almighty God.

broken he thanked god.¹⁷ Than he loked into the hauen, and sawe so many shypes that he had¹ maruayle therof / and he was sore² abasshed in that he sawe
 4 nother man³ nor³ woman⁴ sterynge abrode. Also he
⁵ regardyd⁵ the castell, the which was so fayre and riche
 that there was none suche in⁶ the worlde. Then he
 thought to sende thether one of his compayne⁷ to knowe
 8 what people were with in the castell / he sawe well⁸
 there was no waye to enter / but by a a strayte waye of
 C.C.C. and .lxxx. greses of heyght: y^e way was so
 strayte⁹ that no man but one at ones coude mounte vp
 12 the grees,¹⁰ he had great maruayle¹¹ when he sawe no
 man comynge fro the castel. Then he called one of his
 knyghtes, and sayde, ‘Syr Arnolde, I wyll¹² that ye go
 vp to this castell to see what people be within,¹³ other¹⁴
 16 sarasyns or paynymes; knowe who is lorde there,¹⁵ and
 saye howe⁸ I greatly desyre to be aqueynted withe
 hym; yf ye can do so moch that I myght¹⁶ be aqueynted
 withe hym: then I & my men wyll mount vp to gether
 20 tyll¹⁷ some good aduenture fall: for I haue hope in
¹⁸ god yet¹⁸ we shall skape this daunger.’ ‘Syr,’ quod
 Arnolde, ‘I shall do¹⁹ your pleasure’¹⁹ / then he departed,
 and went fro one shyppe to another tyll¹⁷ he came to the
 24 londe / ²⁰then he went to the rocke and founde the grees²¹
 and mounted vp. But or²² he came to the castell gate
 he rested hymselfe .iii. tymes,²⁰ when he came to the
 gate he rested hym he was so wery: and beheld the
 28 gate, the²³ whiche semyd to²⁴ hym meruelusly fayre;²⁵
 then he began to crye and calle to the entent that some
 man shuld come²⁰ to speke with hym; ²⁰when he saw

No man or
woman is visible.

The approach to
the castle is by
three hundred
and eighty steep
narrow steps.

Huon bids Sir
Arnold, a knight,
climb up to the
castle and bring
word what
people live there.

Sir Arnold
departs,
and mounts up
the steps.

The gate of the
castle is
marvellously fair.

He calls out for a
man to speak
with,

¹ great. ² dismayed and. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ nor Child.

⁵⁻⁶ looked about him and beheld. ⁶ throughout all.

⁷ for. ⁸ that. ⁹ and narrow. ¹⁰ degraees.

¹¹ & was sore troubled in mind. ¹² and command.

¹³ it. ¹⁴ either. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ maye. ¹⁷ vntill

¹⁸⁻¹⁹ our lord that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ as you haue commaunded me.

²⁰ and. ²¹ degrees. ²² before. ²³ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.

²⁴ vnto. ²⁵ and rich.

but no one replies *that* none dyd speke, he stode & harkened yf any parson were comynge to open the gate; but none apered / ¹then he knockyd and called a gayn, & sayd,

'porter *that* art within, com and open the gate, that² 4

cursed be thou of god.' this Arnolde had a good occupacion to crye³ and call, for within was nother man nor⁴ woman⁵ that wold open the gate / when he

saw that he was nye⁶ gruged for⁶ dyspleasure / & loked 8

downe vnder the gate to knowe yf he myght se⁷ other man or woman to speke to⁸ / then he⁹ loked on the

ryght hand of the hal dore,⁹ and there he saw an orryble serpent / the whiche kept the castell and 12

palays / it was a marueylous great serpent / heyer then any hors, his eyen lyke .ii. torches brynnynge¹⁰ / when

Arnolde saw hym he was¹¹ sorowful and sore dys-

pleasyde, and when the serpent harde y^e knockyng 16

and¹² noyse at the gate, brayenge & cryenge, he came

¹³to the gate warde¹³ / ¹when Arnold saw the serpent¹⁴

aprochygng to the gate, he fled a way in so great hast

that he had¹⁴ nere hand¹⁵ fallen¹⁵ downe the steyres : 20

he rested not tyl¹⁶ he come to y^e shyp wher¹⁷ Huon was,

& sayde, 'syr, I haue bene aboue at the gate of the castell, and cried and knocked therat more then the

space of an owre: but there was nother man nor⁴ 24

woman⁵ *that* dyd apere, & when I saw *that* I leyde me

downe to loke vnder the gate, to know yf I myght se

other man or woman to speke vnto / but I coud neuer

se eny creature / but a great and a orryble serpent, 28

hygher then a great hors, with eyen redder then fyer,

with maruelous great talons and tayle / there was neuer

man saw a fowler fygure of a best.' ¹⁸'alas,' quod

¹ and, ² or elles. ³ knocke. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ nor Child. ⁶⁻⁶ angry with. ⁷ espie. ⁸ vnto.

⁹⁻⁹ turned him round about. ¹⁰ burning. ¹¹ right.

¹² great. ¹³⁻¹³ towards the gate. ¹⁴ with great furie.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ (with verie feare) fell. ¹⁶ vntill. ¹⁷ whereas.

¹⁸ Fol. lxxxx. back, col. 1.

for neither man
nor woman is
within.

On the right of
the hall door he
sees a serpent
higher than a
horse, with eyes
gleaming like
torches.

The noise of Sir
Arnold's shouting
reuses the
serpent;
it approaches the
gate.
The knight is
filled with alarm,
and hurries back
to the ship.

He tells Huon of
the horrible
serpent.

Huon, 'nowe I see well¹ we be all but dede / for we
haue no thynge to ete nor drynke, wherfore we shal
dye for famyne and rage. But yf I maye enter in to
the castell, I shall gyue that serpent such a stroke that
he shall neuer more hurte enye man leuyng. Alas,
what haue I sayde, my hardynesse nor² prowes³ nor a
wauntyng⁴ can not helpe me / for I se well that I and
all you muste dye, for it is impossible for vs to departe⁵
hens.' Than the patron sayd to Huon, sore wepynge,
'syr, it behoueth vs to depart⁶ our wytayle : yf ye
wyll sustayne the ryght & customes of the see / when
men comethe to suchie a case that there is no remedye
to gette any fresshe vytayle / then it is a reason that
the lorde and capetayne⁷ haue the one halfe to his parte
and the other parte egally to be delyuered⁸ amonge his
men.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'ye maye do your
pleasure, do as ye shall thinke best.' Then the patron
caused al theyr vytayles to be brought forth, and then
it was deuyded / the patron was a wyse man / when
Huon saw that, he began to wepe, he dyd eate but lytell
at every meale by cause his vytayle sholde endure the
lenger / howbeit all that but lytell awayed, for or⁹ xv.
dayes were passyd / all theyr vytayles were expyred¹⁰
excepte Huons parte of the whiche he gaue every man
parte, & kepte for hym selfe no more then other men
had. And as they were in this daunger tliy saw a
galyot¹¹ wherin were .xxx. men, sarasyns, ¹and¹² theues
and pyraottes of the see / they come and aryuede nere
to the shyppe where as Huon was in / not knowyng
what plase they were in / when they aryued it was in a
darke nyght / they hadde¹³ meruayle of Huons shyppe
wherein they sawe great lyght /¹⁴ then they sayd one
to another / 'it is happye for vs that we haue founde

Huon complains
that his men have
nought to eat or
drink.

He longs to fight
with the serpent.

The pilot advises
the men to divide
such food as is
still left them.

One half should
be given to their
lord and captain,
and the rest
equally divided
among themselves.

Huon bids him do
as he thinks fit.

After fifteen days
the men's food is
all consumed,

and Huon divides
with them his
own portion.

A pirate ship
comes alongside
of Huon's vessel,
and threatens it.

¹ omitted. ² my. ³ from. ⁴ part. ⁵ to,

⁶ deuided. ⁷ before. ⁸ spent. ⁹ galley.

¹⁰ great. ¹¹ and. ¹² Fol. lxxxx, back, col. 2.

here this fayre shyppe / it can not be but it is rych
and full of goodes : they shall not scape vs : but it
shalbe owrs, for therin ar but fewe men to defende the
shyppe.'

4

¶ Howe a galey withe sarasyns came and
assayled Huon, who were all slayne, and
also all Huons men ; and how Huon went
to the castel of the Adamant & slewe the 8
great serpent, and of the merueilles that he
founde there.

Ca. .cx.



Hen Huon sawe the galey aryue, and
goynge to his shyppe he had great 12
maruayle what men they were / then
he alyghtyd a torche & toke it in his
hande, and came a borde on the shyppe,
and sayd / 'syrs of this galy, ye ar wel aryued here ; 16
¹ye be welcome ;¹ we haue great ioy of your companye' /
when the sarasyns hard Huon, they ¹well¹ perseyuyd by
his language that he and his company were chrysten
men / then eche of them behelde other smylyng for 20
ioye / one of them turned his speche and spake good
spanysshe, and sayde to Huon / 'felowe, it is no nede
for vs to hyde what we be : al we that thou seest here
be sarasyns, and ye be chrystened / wherfore we wyl 24
haue all the rychesse that is yn your shyppe / and
besyde that, all your hedes shall be streken of and your
bodys cast into the see.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'or²
thou haste our shyp at thy commaundement, fyrste 28
thou shalte bye it derely.' Then Huon cryyd to his
men that they sholde arme themselfe to defend them
fro the paynymes / ³the which they dyd dyligently.
And Huon, who was redy armed, and by that tyme the 32

Huon joyfully
welcomes the
men in the
galley,

but they, speak-
ing in Spanish,
declare them-
selves Saracens,

and threaten
Huon and his
company with
death.

Huon bids his
companions arm
themselves,

¹ ¹ omitted.

² ere.

³ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.

Sarasyns were enteryd into the shyp. Huon was redy before them with his sworde in his handes, wherwith he stroke the fyrrst that he met withall in such wyse
 4 that his hede flew fro his shulders. Then he strake another and clae hym to the throte / and so the thyrde and the fourthe were shortlye slayne / he layd on so rounde a boughte hym that his enemyes were
 8 afraied to beholde hym. Then the chefe mayster of ye theues came and rebuked his men bycause they had sufferyd Huon to do them so moche hurte and damage / he approchid to Huon to haue stryken hym / but Huon,
 12 who was lyght and expert in dedes of armes, awoydyd his stroke, and strake the Sarasyn with a reuerset that his hede flewe fro the body a great waye of. Then Huon cryed ' Burdeaux ' / to reioyse his men and to geue them
 16 corage. Also Arnolde, who had sene the serpente in the castell, dyd marueylles, & bet downe his enemyes, whereof Huon ¹toke great pleasure.¹ And there was a great myghty Sarasyn / who cam behi[n]d this knyght
 20 Arnold as he fought with a nother Sarasyn, and he gaue Arnolde with an axe such a great stroke that he clae his hede to the tethe / whereof Huon was ryght sorrowfull, and sayd he had rather dye then the deth of
 24 Arnolde shulde not be reuenged. Then he aprochyd² to the same paynyme and lyfste³ vp is sword with bothe his handes, ⁴and⁴ he stroke the sarasyn on the shulder that y^e sworde entered in to the breste. And
 28 the patron of Huons shyppe vnarmyd came to⁵ the batayle with a great staffe in his handes, wherwith he layd on y^e sarasyns in suche wyse that suche as he stroke ⁶ne ⁷dyd⁶ after no sorgyon. Then a Sarasyn
 32 aduisyd hym, and came and gaue the patron suche a stroke with a sword on the hede that his hede

and fights himself with his wonted boldness.

He slays the captain of the ship;
and cheers on his men.

But Arnold, the knight who had seen the serpent in the castle, is killed, and Huon swears vengeance upon his murderer.

The captain of Huon's ship is likewise slain.

¹⁻¹ had great ioy. ² neere vnto. ³ listing.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ into. ⁶⁻⁶ needed.

⁷ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2.

was clouen to the brayne, wherwith Huon was ryghte sorowfull.¹ But it was not long or² he reuengyd his dethe / for he strake the sarasyne suche a stroke *that* he clauē hym to the brest / ³when the patrons seruauntes ⁴sawē⁴ theyr mayster⁵ slayne, they⁶ made great sorowe / and disarmyd as they were, they came⁷ to the batayle with great staunes in theyr handys / and fought with them fersly. But y^e sarasyns who were⁶ armyd had ⁸anone slayne them all, wheroft Huon was sory,⁸ for he had then with hym lefte a lyue no mo but .iii. men of defence. And the Sarasyns, who in y^e begynnyng were .xxx., were all slayne excepte .vii. parsones / they⁹ ¹²feryd Huon / for they saw wel none coude endure agaynste his strokys / *then* they fled out of Huons shyp and enteryd in to theyr owne galey. But Huon and his .iii. knyghtes that were with hym folowed them ¹⁶and¹⁰ slew them all, and caste them into the see. Then Huon and the .iii. knyghtes that were *with* hym toke all y^e flesshe / bread / and wyne that was in the galey and bare it into theyr shyp, wherby they leuyd more ²⁰then .vii. monethes. And then when theyr vytales began to fayle them¹¹ they were¹² sorowful / they had no vitayle to leue by longe, and yet they dyd ete but lytell; so they became¹³ pale & lene for¹⁴ famyne / ²⁴peteously Huon complayned and sayd / ‘O ye, my ¹⁵ryghte¹⁵ dere and trewe frendis, who for my loue haue left your londes, your wyues, and chyldren. Now I perseyeue ye must nedys dey for the rage of famyne : ²⁸ alas,¹⁶ catyue that I am, I shal not long lyue after you :’ great petye it was to here the complayntes *that*¹⁷ Huon made, who sawe¹⁵ his men dye before his face / and also

At length Huon has only four men left alive with him, while seven Saracens are still uninjured.

Nevertheless, all the Saracens are at length slain,

and Huon's knights seize the victuals in their ship.

For seven months they live upon them, and then food fails them.

Huon tells his companions that death alone lies before them all.

¹ and sore displeased. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ that.

⁵ was. ⁶ all. ⁷ and entred into.

⁸ right sorrowfull and angry. ⁹ greatly.

¹⁰ so fast that they. ¹¹ then. ¹² right. ¹³ beganne to be.

¹⁴ through. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ poor.

¹⁷ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 1.

he saw¹⁵ that he must folowe the same daunce. Then he sayde, ‘a, lady Esclaramonde, I shall never see you more; I praye our lord god that he wyll comforte you

He prays to God
to protect his
wife.

4 in all your affayres / as for me,¹ it is impossyble to lyue .iii. dayes lenger.’ After that he hadde made this petyous² complaynte he behelde his³ .iii. knyghtes, who renderyd vp theyr sowles and dyed for⁴ hunger. The 8 petefull complayntes then that⁵ he made was petye to here / he hadde no hope to be aydyd by any man mortall,⁶ wherfore he knewe suerly⁷ he coude not lyue 8 past .iii.⁸ dayes lenger. Then all wepynge he wente fro 12 his knyghtes that lay⁹ dede and wente to the boord of his shyp and lokyd in to y^e see yf he coude¹⁰ spye any maner of shyp comynge thether. For he thoughte that yf any shyp came thether of the sarasins, he wolde 16 haue some vytales or elles to dye in the quarel / thus Huon was there¹¹ all¹¹ alone without¹² compayne.¹³

Huon looks out in
vain for a passing
vessel.

¶ When Huon saw that no maner of shyp was comynge thether, he was¹⁴ sorowfull. Then he turned 20 hym and regardyd the castell, the which semyd to¹⁵ hym maruaylously fayre and great, and sayd / ‘a, good lorde, how cane it be that this fayre and rych castell shuld be voyde without man or woman; I haue great 24 maruayle of that syr Arnolde shewyd me / for he shewyd me that within the castell was nother man nor woman, and howe that there shulde be a great serpente. I cannot tell yf¹⁶ it be trewe or not, and¹⁷ whether he 28 speake it for sere / but by the grace of god, though I shulde¹⁸ dye in the quarell, I wyll knowe the trouth / for I were as good to dye by the¹⁹ serpent as to dye for hunger’ / then he²⁰ toke his sworde and dyd²¹ on his

He surveys the
castle on the rock
again,

I and resolves to
visit it,
although he may
die in the
endeavour.

¹ poore soule. ² pitifull. ³ the. ⁴ through.
⁵ that then. ⁶ mortall man. ⁷ that. ⁸⁻⁸ aboue twoo.
⁹ there. ¹⁰ might. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² any.
¹³ sore weeping and almost dead through famine. ¹⁴ right.
¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ whether. ¹⁷ or. ¹⁸ shall.
¹⁹ horrible. ²⁰ Fol. lxxxxi. back, col. 2. ²¹ put.

He mounts the steps, and reaches the fair castle.

He admires the alabaster and the fine gold of which it is built.

But on examining the curiously-wrought gate, he sees an inscription saying that the castle is only to be entered by the worthiest of all knights,

for the serpent can overthrow all of small prowess:

but on the right side of the gate hangs a purse with a key within it.

Huon trusts in God to aid him.

helme, & toke his shelde, and dyd so moche withe goyng
fro shyp to shyp tyll¹ he came to the² londe. And
then with moche payne he mounted vp the degrees / and
so came to ³y^e gate of ³y^e castell / ⁴then he sate downe ⁴
and rested hym / & beheld the fayre castel; he thought
he neuer saw no⁵ such before, for the walles and
toures were of fyne alabaster clere shynyng, and the
townes rychely coueryd with fyne golde of Arabe; ⁸
when the sun cast his rayes⁶ ther on⁷ it caste so great⁸
lyght *that* it gaue lyght⁸ far of / ⁴when he had longe
behelde it⁹ he saw the gate, the whiche was fayre and
rych, that great beaute it was to behold it: for the .ii. 12
leuys of the gate were coueryd with fyne gold inter-
medelyd with other rych oueragis. And on his ryght
syde he saw by the gate a wyndowe, and ouer the same
there was wryten in letters of golde, saynge: Let any 16
man be ware how he entereth in to this castel, without
he be the worthyest knyght of all other, or elles it were
folys to assaye it. For he shall fynde there such
aduenture / ¹⁰if his body were harder than a stethy of 20
stele yet he shuld be but dede and loste without he be
of *that* pusaunce to resyste agaynst the great serpente,
& vanquesshe hym / many men haue assayed that
neuer coude sped / & he that wyll enter in to the 24
castell beholde a lytell purse *that* hangeth on the ryght
hand of the gate, where he shall fynde y^e keye for to
open the gate / when Huon had red the writynge, he
began sore to muse in hym selfe, and said, ¹¹‘ very god,¹¹ 28
syn thou haste sauyd me from so many parelles in tyme
paste, I humbly requyre the at this tyme to ayde¹² me;
and to geue me y^e grace that I maye vanquesshe this
orryble serpent & bryng hym to the deth / ¹³for I had 32

¹ vntill. ² gate of the. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.

⁵ none. ⁶ and spheares. ⁷ thereupon.

⁸ a. ⁹ at his pleasure. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹⁻¹¹ good Lord.
¹² and succour. ¹³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.

rather dye in fyghtynge lyke a valyaunte knyght /
 then to dye for famyne.' Then Huon rose vp and went
 to the purse, & toke out the keye and opened the gate
 4 and enteryd, and closyd the gate agayne after hym.
 He finds the key,
 and passes
 through the gate.

¶ How Huon of Burdeux fought with the
 orryble serpent, and slew hym, within the
 castell of the Adamant.

Ca. .cxi.

8 Hen Huon was enterid into the castell,
 he sawe before the hall dore the
 orrible serpent, who was resyn vp :
 his skyn was of dyuers colours, and it
 was so barde that no Iron nor steele
 coude enter in to it / when Huon saw the best so great
 he doughtyd hymselfe, and callyd vpon Iesu Chryst
 requiryng hym to haue petye vpon hym & to geue hym
 16 that¹ grace to sle that dredefull best / when the beest
 sawe Huon, he had great marueyle / for he had bene
 there a longe space that neuer man came there /
 he strechyd² out his clawes and cast his tayle round
 20 abought hym, and came hastely agaynst Huon / who,
 when he sawe the beest aproche nere to hym, he made
 the sygne of y^e crosse on³ his forhede, recommandynge
 hymselfe to god ; with his sworde in his hande and his
 24 sheld before hym and he fersly marchyd towardes the
 serpent / he was so hydeous and ferfull to behold that
 the beest semyd rather an enemye of hel then any other
 beest / his body was marueylous great, with an vgelye
 28 hede with .ii. eyen bygger then .ii. basyns ful of
 brynnyngh⁴ fyre / when he cam nere to⁵ Huon he lyfte
 vp one of his pawes thinkynge to haue drawen downe
 Huon to the erth / he strake on³ Huons shyld by⁶
 32 such force that he pullyd it fro his sholder / lether nor

The horrible
 serpent is before
 the door of the
 hall.

Huon doubts
 his power to
 resist it.

The serpent
 advances towards
 him,

and Huon
 prepares to meet
 him.

The beast pulls
 his shield from
 his shoulder,

¹ the. ² Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. ³ vpon. ⁴ burning.⁵ unto. ⁶ with.

and his sword
cannot hurt it.

buckyll coude not resyst it / & then with his teth & nayles he tare the shylde all to peses / Huon, who was lyger and light, lept by the syde of the serpent and gaue hym a great stroke with hys sworde on¹ the ere, 4 that he thought to haue clouen asonder his hede. But he coude do it no more hurte then yf he had streken on¹ a stethy / so that his sword reboundyd agayne / wherof Huon was² sorowfull, and sayd / ‘a, good lord, 8 now I se well that my dayes ar at an end: A,³ lady Esclaramonde, I praye our lord god to sauе you & my doughter Claryet / for this daye ye shall lese me.’ Then he auansyd hym to the serpent, and gaue hym a 12 great stroke on¹ the haunce be hynde / & yf he dyd but lytell with his fyrist stroke he dyd lesse hurt with that stroke / for he coude in no wyse cut through y^e serpentis skyn: wherfore he was in great fere; and 16 ⁴the serpent, when he felte hymselfe stryken, cast his tayle rounde abought Huon by⁵ suche forse that Huon⁶ ouerthrew⁷ to y^e erthe and⁸ quyclye releuyd agayne.

Huon sees a spear
by the gate with a
broad head,
and seizes it with
both hands.

Then he saw by the gate a great square spere with 20 a sharpe, brode hede / ⁹then he put vp his sworde and toke the spere in bothe his handys, and came¹⁰ agaynste y^e serpent, who came and encouteryd hym with the open mouthe to haue swallowed Huon / but Huon, 24 who was stronge and lyght, toke the spere and layde it on his arme, & saw the serpent with his mouth open / he strake the spere into the mouth of the serpent so depe that with the hede of y^e spere he cut his hart 28 a sonder / when the serpente felte hymselfe hurte to the dethe, he caste out a terryble crye, so that all the palays¹¹ sowned,⁹ so that the noyse myght be harde a leage of. Thus the orryble serpente was slayne / when 32 Huon sawe that he was dede, he knelyd downe & lyfte

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ faire. ⁴ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1.
⁵ with. ⁶ he. ⁷ Huon. ⁸ hee. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ with all his force and strength. ¹¹ place.

The serpent
opens his mouth
to attack Huon,
but the knight
thrusts the spear
down its throat,
and reaches its
heart.

vp his handys to the heuen, thankyng our lorde god
of¹ his grace. Then he rose and wente to the serpent,
and regardyd² hym, for he was hedyous and ferfull to

When the serpent
was slain, Huon
knels down and
thanks God for
His grace.

4 beholde / he was .xviii. fote longe ; when Huon had
well regardyd² hym he went and sate downe to rest
hym ³ by the hall dore³ / for he was so wery and faynt
with the blud that he had lost, and with swete, that he

Huon is faint
with hunger,

8 Lal moche Payne to draw his breth / the whiche was
no maruayle, for he had nother eten nor dronken of all
that daye / when he had well restyd hym then he rose
vp desyryng⁴ to know whether any man or woman

and goes through
the castle in
search of man or
woman.

12 were within y^e castell or not, to speke vnto them / he
enteryd into the hall, the whiche he marueylously
regardyd : it was so fayre and ryche to beholde that
there is no clarke in the worlde can dyscryue the beaute

16 & rychesse therof ; the ryche chambers that were on
the syde of the hall were al composyd and made
of whyght marbyll polysshed / the postes were coueryd
with fyne golde / at the ende of the hall there was a

The hall is
constructed of
precious metal
and rich stones.

20 chameney, wherof the two pillers that susteynyd the
mantell tree were of fyne Iaspar / and the mantell was
of a ryche Calsedony / and the Lyntell was made of
fyne Emeradis traylyd with a wyng of fyne golde / and

24 the Grapys of fine Saphers. This chemeny was so ryche
that none such coude be founde. And all the pyllers
in the hall were of ⁶a⁶ red Calsedony / ⁷the pavement⁸
was of fyne Ambre.

28 ¶ when Huon had well aduysyd² this hall, he
lokyd towardleys the chaumbers, and ouer the dorys of
euerie chaumber was written in letters of gold, the
which shewyd where the keyes were of euerie chambre.

Inscriptions
over the doors of
the chambers
leading from the
hall tell Huon
where the keys of
each may be
found.

32 Huon, who coude well rede the letters / and vnderstonde
it / he founde a purse wherin were the keyes of euerie

¹ for. ² behelde. ³⁻³ before to rest him.

⁴ as desirous. ⁵ Fol. lxxxii. back. col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

⁷ and. ⁸ pavement.

He enters one of them,
and wonders at its rich furniture.

He opens the door of another chamber,
and finds great quantity of jewels and gold.

A third chamber is still more richly equipped,

and in it are presses filled with gowns of fine gold and rich mantles of sable.

chambre, all of fyne gold ; he toke one of the keyes and opened one of the chambres¹ / and enteryd into ²it.² Then he lokyd all abouthe the chambre / and sawe it garnysshed and hangyd with the moste rycheste ⁴ clothes that euer were sene / the benches & bedstedes were all of whyght Iuory, so rychely entraylyd & wrought and garnysshed with presuous stonys / that no mannes tonge coude dyscryue the beaute and rychesse ⁸ therof / all was made by enchauntement. This palays was³ great and large, and well garnysshed with chambres. ¶ When Huon had well regardyd⁴ this chambre he was⁵ abasshed that he coude nother se man ¹² nor woman. Then he lokid ouer ⁶the dore of another chambre,⁶ where there was also ⁷wryten in letters of golde⁸ as there⁹ was¹⁰ ouer the fyrst dore. Then Huon toke the key and openyd the¹¹ dore, and enteryd in to ¹⁶ that chambre¹² / and there he founde great quantyte of gold & rychesse and¹³ iouelles, with¹⁴ precyous stones, *that* great beaute it was¹⁵ to beholde / ‘a, good lord,’ quod Huon, ‘I wolde¹⁶ haue byleuyd that in all the world ²⁰ there had¹⁷ not¹⁷ bene so moch ryches as I se here’¹⁸ / then anone he sawe a nother chambre, and toke the key & enteryd,¹⁹ & for all the ryches that he²⁰ had sene²⁰ before, there he found moch more / there were presses ²⁴ made of fyne Iuory²¹ rychely wrought & entayled, so that there was no beast nor byrd but there it was²² wrought ; in the whiche presses were gownes and robes of²³ fyne golde, and²³ ryche mantelles furryd with ²⁸ sabyls, and all other thynges²⁴ apartaynynge to the aparel of mankynde / and the beddys so rychly coueryd *that*

¹ doores. ²⁻² the chamber. ³ exceeding.

⁴ beheld. ⁵ greatly. ⁶⁻⁶ another chamber doore.

⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1. ⁸ according. ⁹ it. ¹⁰ written.

¹¹ another. ¹² also. ¹³ rich. ¹⁴ other most.

¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ neuer. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

¹⁸ present before me. ¹⁹ therin. ²⁰⁻²⁰ sawe. ²¹ very.

²² most cunningly. ²³ most. ²⁴ the which were.

it ¹coude not¹ be dyscryuyd² / thys chambre was so fayre and rych that Huon coude not³ be satysfyed with regardyng⁴ therof / ther were wyndows⁵ rychely

Glass windows from it open upon a garden filled with fair flowers, and trees, and fruits.

⁴ glasyd openyng vpon a gardeyne side, the whiche⁶ was so fayre and so well garnysshed with flowres⁷ swete smellynge, and⁸ al maner of trees chargyd with frewtis so good & so delysyous to etc / ⁹so⁹ that the

⁸ smelle of them wold haue satysfyed a mannes apetyte.

Huon, who sawe this fayre gardyn, desyred greatly to enter into it to gather some of the¹⁰ frute / he lokyd ouer the dore and founde the ¹¹key, and went to the ¹²purse and toke the key, and¹¹ openyd the dore, and enteryd¹² into y^e gardeyne and gatheryd of the frute at his pleasure, & dyd etc therof, for he had¹³ great apetyte¹⁴ to etc / he thought the frute maruaylous

Huon enters the garden, and eats the fruit.

¹⁶ good. yf I wolde shew or dyscryue the beaute of this gardayn,¹⁵ it shuld¹⁶ be ouer long to resyte, there wer so many sondry frutys so fayre and so swete of smellyng, that a syke man of any infyrmyte shuld¹⁶ sone

The beauty of the spot cannot be described.

²⁰ ¹⁷recouer¹⁷ helth. Also there were herbys and flowres so swete¹⁸ that all the gardayne semyd¹⁹ full of balme / when Huon had bene there a good space and had well eten of the frute at his pleasure / he returnyd in to the

Huon returns to the chamber,

²⁴ chambre that he came fro, and then²⁰ vnarmyd hym and dyd²¹ of all his clothes, & toke out of y^e presse a fyne shyrte and dobelet / hosyd and shone / gowne / cote and cappe / such as he wold chose / for there was

and takes from the presses some rich clothes.

²⁸ no man to saye hym naye / when he was thus newly areyd,²² there coude not be founde a more goodlyer man / acordynge as the cronycle saythe / I byleue he

¹ ¹ was impossible to. ² by anie mortall man.

³ neuer. ⁴ beholding and viewing. ⁵ very. ⁶ garden.

⁷ most precious. ⁸ of. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹⁻¹¹ purse with the key therin, and then he. ¹² went.

¹³ a. ¹⁴ desire. ¹⁵ Fol. lxxxiii, col. 2. ¹⁶ would.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ haue recouered his. ¹⁸ and delightfull. ¹⁹ to be.

²⁰ he. ²¹ putte. ²² arriued.

was borne by the fayrey / as then there coude not be
founde so goodly a man leuynge / when he was thus
apareylyd he went fro chambre to chambre / alwayes
harkenenge yf¹ he myght² here the woyse other of man 4
or woman / but as long as he was³ there he coud here
no thynge, wherof he was⁴ sory⁴; there he was⁵ viii.
dayes without etyngē of any thynge sauing of y^e frutis
of the gardayne / wherby he waxed feyll and faynt, 8
the which was no meruayle, for he had bene there .viii.
dayes without etyngē other brede or flesshe / he was so
feyll *that* he thought he coude not longe endure there
without dethē. Then he prayed⁶ our lorde god to 12
comforte⁷ hym out of that daunger; ⁸ petyously he
complaynyd for his wyfe and chylde, saynge: ‘A, my
dere wyfe, god⁹ socoure you in all your affayres / for ye
shall neuer haue¹⁰ socoure¹¹ of me¹² / for I tary but for 16
the oure of¹³ dethē, the whyche is¹⁴ nere¹⁵ aprochynge
to me / for I am so sore¹⁶ beten with famyne *that*
I haue moche¹⁷ payne to sustayne myselfe.’ Thus Huon
was .viii. dayes in the castell of the Adamant / euery 20
day etyngē of the frutys of the gardayne / and at
nyght he lay euer in the best bed in the chambre.
Nowe let vs leue spekyngē of hym, and let vs retourne¹⁸
to the duchesse Esclaramonde, who was besegyd within 24
y^e citye of Burdeaux, where as she was in great
dyspleasure, and not without a cause / for she sufferyd
moche payne and trobyll.

¹ whether. ² cond. ³ continued.

⁴⁻⁴ right sorowfull. ⁵ continued. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ and strengthen. ⁸ most. ⁹ ayde and. ¹⁰ any.

¹¹ and ayde. ¹² more. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ nowe.

¹⁵ at hand. ¹⁶ and grieuously.

¹⁷ Fol. lxxxiii, back, col. I. ¹⁸ turne.

But he seeks in
vain for any
human being.

Eight days he
tarries in the
castle, eating of
the fruits alone,
and he grows
feeble and faint.

He prays to God
to have mercy on
his wife and
child.

¶ How after that Huon was departyd fro Burdeaux the Emperour made dyuers assaultys to the cety / but he coude not
 4 wyn yt for the defence of the good cheualry that was in¹ yt / and of the busshement² that was layd by the counsell of duke Sauary, wherby the citye was taken &
 8 wonne.

Ca. .cxii.

e haue harde before howe duke Huon departyd from his citye of Burdeux, where as he lefte the duches his wyfe / who was in great displeasure when she sawe the departyng of her husband.
 12

Esclaramonde was sorely grieved by her husband's departure.

She greatly complaynid and sayd : 'a, my ryght dere lord, your departyng ought greatly to greue me. I
 16 fere ye shall not come in tyme to socour and to bryng me out of³ daunger that I am in / for it is impossible for vs long to endure agaynst this emperour. Alas ! I haue more sorowe for my doughter then for my selfe :
 20 and I am sorrowful for my lordis and knyghtis who for the loue of you and me are in parell of theyr lyues. It She regrets that
 had bene better for vs to haue taryed ⁴styll in Babylon she ever left
 then to come hether to suffer all this tourmentis / Babylon.
 24 paynes / and pouertyes / and at laste paynfull deth' / with sayenge of these wordes y^e duches she⁵ fell in a
 traunce amonge her lordys. Then Gerames releuyd her Gerames
 and sayd / 'lady,⁵ dyscomforde you nothyng,⁶ but take endeavours to
 28 good corage and comforte your men, who hathe great console her.
 desyre to defende this citye for the sauergarde of their
 owne bodyes and lyues / thus to make sorow ye can
 wyn no thyng therby, but lese more to more : haue
 32 no dought that Huon your husbonde wyll leue you at

¹ with in. ² ambushment. ³ the.

⁴ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ not.

this poynte. he is gone to your brother for socoure / he wyll not long tary / and he wyll brynge you suche socoure that y^e emperour nor the Almayns shall haue no leysour to graunt hym the vyctory.' Thus Gerames 4 comfortyd the duches, who was glade¹ to here Gerames.

On hearing of
Huon's setting
out for succour,
the Emperor
addresses his
barons, in
council
assembled;

Thus as they deuyse to gether, the Emperoure, who was aduerteysyd of Huons departyng and howe he was gone for socoure / he assembelyd his counseyle in to 8 his tent, and there he shewyd and declaryd the great losses that he had sufferyd as wel of the dethe of his nepheus as of other of his frendis and kynne / and the great damage that by Huon he had sufferyd, and sayde / 12 'syrs, all this ye knowe well / his aquayntaunce hathe cost vs derely. Ye haue all harde how he is departyd to seke for socours / but I can not tell to what parte he is gone. As for the realme of fraunce, I know well he 16

he does not
know whither
Huon has gone.

shall haue no socoure there / for as it hathe bene shewyd me of late / that the ryght noble and vyctoryous prynce Charlemayne is dede / who louyd Huon but lytell by cause of his sone Charlot whome Huon slewe / 20 and Charlemayne hathe lefte be² hynde hym but one sone namyd Lowis, who is but of a yonge age:³ I beleue yf he were of full age that he wolde rather come to socour me then Huon, who slewe Charlotte his bro- 24 ther / therfore it canne be none other wyse but that he is gone in to some far countre for socours; therefore I thynke it best that in the mene tyme, or⁴ he retourne / that on all sides let vs contynually assayle the citye / 28 and let euyer man do theyr Payne to be reuengyd for the dethe of theyr frendys whiche are⁵ slayne by them within the citye.'

It is clear, says
the Emperor, that
the knight has
gone on a long
journey for
succour, and that
it is their part
to assail and
take the city
before his return.

'¶ when the lordis harde the emperoure, all with one woyse answeryd and sayd, 'Syr, the 32 reason that⁶ ye haue shewyd vnto vs is to be kepte and done / and we shall go arme vs and make vs redy, to

¹ for.

² Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1.

³ and.

⁴ ere.

⁵ heere.

⁶ which.

All his host is of
his opinion.

the entente to come to your entencyon, the whiche is¹ reasonable.' Then they sownyd theyr hornes and busyns, and euer man² armyd hym³ / and came with 4⁴ standarde⁴ dysplayed to assayle the citye, and they that were within as well as they coude they defendyd the citye : they⁵ without reryd vp ladders agaynst the wallys⁶ by great⁶ strengthe / but they⁵ withe in dyd 8 bette them downe into the dykis, and then they cast vpon them hote lede and boylynge oyle / and quycke Lyme / and great stonis, & fagottis brynnynge,⁷ so that they that⁸ were downe in the dykes had no powre⁹ 12 to releue¹⁰ agayne ; but there myserably dyed vnder the laddlers. There was on bothe partyes¹¹ great shotyng with crosebowes and slyngyng of stonys, so thycke that it semyd¹² snowe fleyng in the ayre / marueyle it 16 was to regarde¹³ the olde Gerames / how he exortyd his company to do wel / and also the duches Esclaramonde, with her daughter in her armes, cryeng to¹⁴ her men and 15 sayd, ' ye, my dere lordys and knyghtys, fyght lustily : 20 put¹⁶ to your Payne⁹ to defend your bodyes and your lyues / your wyues and¹⁷ chyldren / to the entente that the Almayns make not theyr¹⁸ auauante of the¹⁸ wynnynge of this¹⁹ noble citye by²⁰ assaulte / the whyche is 24 so godly and ryche / for, syrs, I knowe well ye shall not²¹ be in this Payne²¹ no longe season / for duke Huon, your ryghtfull lorde, shall²² shortly²³ sucoure vs all.' Then²⁴ the noble barons, knyghtis, and burgesses / 28 herynge the²⁵ comforde of the noble²⁶ lady the duches Esclaramonde, with a maruaylous²⁷ corage²⁸ they came to

A fierce assault upon Bordeaux is forthwith prepared, but the defenders of the city make a fierce resistance.

Gerames and Esclaramonde exhort Huon's men to fight lustily.

Very valiant is their defence,

¹ verie good and. ² speedily. ³ selfe.

⁴⁻⁴ Ensigne displayde. ⁵ which were. ⁶⁻⁶ with myghte.

⁷ burning. ⁸ which. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ themselves.

¹¹ exceeding. ¹² like vnto. ¹³ beholde. ¹⁴ vnto.

¹⁵ Fol. lxxxviii. col. 2. ¹⁶ but. ¹⁷ your.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ bragges and vauntes of theyr. ¹⁹ most. ²⁰ theyr.

²¹⁻²¹ abide this trouble for. ²² will. ²³ ayde and.

²⁴ all. ²⁵ exceeding great. ²⁶ and vertuous.

²⁷ great. ²⁸ and valour.

and the Germans
are forced to
retire.

the¹ defences / and dyd² so valyauntly that theyr
enemyes were fayne³ to recule⁴ backe with great losse
& damage / wherof the emperor and his lordys were
ryghte sorowfull / and they within the citye ryght⁴
ioyous⁵ of the⁶ victory that god had geuen them that
day. Then euer man⁷ drew to theyr⁷ logyng and
made great ioy / and the emperoure and his men with-
drew⁸ in great dysp[1]easure for theyr⁹ losse. ¶ when⁸
y^e emperour was vnarmyd, and had refresshed hymself,¹⁰
Then he sayd to his lordis / ‘ syrs, we haue ben a longe
season before this citye and haue had¹¹ many losses :
therfore, syrs, I requyre you to counseyle me what is¹²
best to do / this citye, is stronge & wel furnysshed with
knygthts and men to defende it / by vs it wyl never be
wone, without vytaylis fayle them / but I thinke they
haue but small store of vytayle : therfore I desyre you¹⁶
to shewe me your aduyse whether we shall departe fro
this citye without more doyng, or elles abyde here vpon
suche fortune as god wyll send vs⁷ / when y^e emperour
had sayd as moch as¹² pleasyd him,¹³ then the duke²⁰
Sauary, his brother, rose vp & said / ‘ syr, me thynke yf
I may be byleuyd,¹⁴ that this citye can not long endure :
and y^e cause why I shall shew you / ye know well that
Huon theyr lorde is gone to seke for socours / on the²⁴
other syde, they with in the citye haue but fewe men
and but yll furnysshdyd of vytayles / within the citye
there is an olde knyghte who is a valyant and a hardy
knyght / and therfore it were profytable to study howe²⁸
he myghte be taken, or elles slayne / this shulde greatly
auaunce your enterpryse / of the whyche ye can not
fayle yf ye wyll byleue my counseyle, as I shal shew
you. Trewe it is this day we haue had grete losse and³²

but declares it
necessary to
capture Geromes.

¹ theyr. ² behaued themselves. ³ forced. ⁴ retyre.
⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ great. ⁷⁻⁷ went vnto his. ⁸ themselues.
⁹ his. ¹⁰ selfe. ¹¹ sustained. ¹² he. ¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 1.

receyuyd great domage, wheroft they within ar Ioyfull /
 wherefore it were good to sende sartayne motouns and
 beestys in the nyght tyme with a fewe kepars: sende
 4 them into the medowe nere to¹ the citye / and I am
 sure² when the olde knyght knowe therof, the whiche
 he shall knowe by the wachmen on the toures and
 walles / then incontynent he wyll issue out with suche
 8 power as he hath to take the bestes & to bryng them
 into the citye. And to the entente that they shall
 never retourne agayne into the citye incontynente or³
 the mone ⁴dothe⁴ aryse, sende a goo[d] nombre of
 12 beses / and motons to the medowe. Then haue redy
 armyd .x. thousande men, and send them to the lytell
 mountayne, where as the galowes were⁵ reysyd / and
 when they parseyue that they within the citye be
 16 issyuyd out to feche the praye / then let the .x. thou-
 sande men drawe nere to the gate of the citye / to the
 enttent that they without shall not enter agayne, but
 to theyr great losse. And yf ye wyll thus do, I put no
 20 dought but that or⁶ it be mydnyght they shall be all
 taken or slayne / and the mater may so come to pas
 that⁷ ye shall enter into the citye at your pleasure.
 ¶ Thus I haue shewed you as I thynke best / yf any man
 24 knowe any better waye, let hym speke' / Then euyer
 man regardlyd the Emperoure and seyde, 'syr, the
 counsayle that duke Sauary your brother ⁴hathe geuyn
 you we thynke all⁴ that a more noble counsayle coude⁸
 28 not be geuyn to any prynce.' when the emperoure
 vnderstode the counsayle of his brother duke Sauary,
 and that all his lordys dyd alowe y^e same / he was
 ryght Ioyfull, and sayde² it shuld so be⁹ done. Then
 32 he callyd his marshall and commaundyd that it shulde
 be done¹⁰ as his brother had deuysid it before / the

He suggests a device to induce Gerames to put himself in peril. Herds of cattle should be sent under the city's wall,

and when Gerames and his men issue out to seize them, a large force of Germans should be set in ambush to seize or slay them.

All the Germans approve duke Savary's counsel,

and the Emperor gives directions for putting it into effect.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ ere. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ is.

⁶ before. ⁷ Fol. lxxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ can.

⁹ bee so. ¹⁰ according.

The night is
dark, and the
men of Bordeaux
are in great
danger.

whiche was done¹ dylygently, and sente² .xl.³ men
with .vi. hondred motons and two hondred beestes
nere to⁴ the citye / and⁵ layde theyr enbusshement of
.x. thousande men by the lytell mountayne. It was 4
darke nyght, & the mone was not rysyn / wherby they
within coude not parsayue them / the whiche turnyd
to theyr great losse and damage / for all those that
issuyd out of the citye of Burdeaux were slain and 8
taken, as ye shall here after.⁶

¶ Of the dethe of the olde Gerames and of the
takynge of the citye of Burdeaux, and of
commonyng⁷ of the duches with the 12
Emperoure, & of the delyuerynge⁸ of the
Castell to the Emperoure. Ca. .cxiii.



After their success
over the Germans,
Gerames called
his men together,
and thanked God
for their victory.

e haue hard here before how the Emperoure assaylyd the citye of Burdeux, 16
and of the great losse that he receyuyd¹⁰ / wherof Gerames and they
within the citye were ryght ioyous,¹¹
and made great feast, and thonkyd our lord god. Then 20
after sopper Gerames callyd all the knyghtes and other
together and sayde, ‘Syrs, ye haue sene this daye the
great assaulte that the Emperoure and his men hathe
made to this cytye / but, thonkid be god, the losse is 24
returned to them / for there are dede and woundyd a
great nombre of them / and many of them are sore
weryed¹² of trauaylynge,¹² & thynkethe nowe to reste
themselfe / and nowe is theyr owre that they be sette 28
at supper, and custumably they sytte euer longe at
theyr table / far lenger then frenche men dothe / wher-
fore I wold thynke beste that incontynente without de-

¹ verie. ² with him. ³ fiftie. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ then.

⁶ hereafter. ⁷ the comming. ⁸ vp.

⁹ Fol. lxxxv, col. 1. ¹⁰ sustained. ¹¹ ioyfull.

¹²⁻¹² with trauaile.

laye¹ to arme vs all¹ and to² issue out of the citye and go to theyr tentys and arayse them / and then let vs do there as good³ knyghtys ought to do, to the entente
 4 that good songs maye be made of vs. And that the Almaynes haue no cause to say but that we be as good men as they be.' 'Syr,' quod Othon and Bararde, 'we be redy thus to do.' 'Syrs,' quod Gerames,
 8 'let vs make hast, that we may retourne agayne or⁴ the mone rysethe.' Then they armyd themselfe. Alas, what an yll aduenture came to them that⁵ nyght / for y^e moste parte of tho that issuyd out were taken and
 12 slayne. A, good lorde, what a losse fell to the good² citye of Burdeaux. A, noble lady Esclaramonde / ye may wel wepe and complayne. ⁶your dayes of⁷ sorowe and² payne and doloure aprocheth nere, wherby ye ar
 16 lyke to bere such dyseases and pouertye that no man lyuyng canne recounte it / nor ye shall neuer issue out of that daunger and sorowe⁸ tyll ye be delyueryd by the good duke Huon your husbande / when Gerames
 20 and his compayne were redy, they mountyd on theyr horses / they⁹ issuyd out at the gate as preuely as they coude / so that they were not parseyuyd by them that were set to watche for them, nor they hard not when
 24 they were in the felde / they rode a fawse galope to the tentys, y^e which they myght well se clerely by the lyghte that were in the tentys / when they came nere, they dasshed theyr sporys to theyr horses and cryed
 28 'Burdeaux' / and strake and cut asonder the cordys and stayes so that many tentis fell to the erth / & suche as came out were slayne / great noyse & cry began to ryse in the host, & euery man ran to theyr harnase¹⁰ /
 32 and Gerames & his compayne slew many of theyr enemyes, and made them to fle before them / it was

so that their
valiant deeds
might be
remembered in
song.

All agree with
Gerames,

and preparations
are made, but
ill fortune is
awaiting their
sortie.

Huon's men
approach the
German tents,

and dash upon
them.

¹⁻¹ we should arme ourselues. ² omitted.

³ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2. ⁴ ere. ⁵ at. ⁶ all.
 7 for. 8 trouble. 9 and. 10 armour.

But the Emperor
and his host are
ready to meet
them,

and Gerames
advises a retreat.

The Germans
overtake them
in vast numbers.

Gerames works
mighty havoc
among them,

but his forces are
surrounded on
every side.

Gerames calls
upon Jesus Christ
for aid,

dreful to beholde the damage that they dyd there. But fynally the losse fell ¹vpon them / for the Emperoure and all his men were redy / when Gerames sawe howe all the hoost was mouyd / then he sayd to his companye, ‘Syrs, it is tyme to recule² backe / for we maye tary here to longe / yonder cometh the emperoure with a ³great pusaunce³ to close vs in / it is nede⁴ for vs to make hast that we may go⁵ in sauetye.’ Then all to ⁸ gether in one company⁶ retournyd, and went the way towardes Burdeaux. But they had not gone fare or⁷ that they were ouertaken by the almaynes / and they layde on on all partyes with theyr speris and swordys.⁸ ¹² Then Gerames turnyd hym to an almayne / and with his spere ranne hym clene thrugh / and in drawyng out his spere he fell downe dede to the erth / and then⁹ strake another, whome also he slew. He dyd such ¹⁶ dedes of armys that or⁷ his spere brake he slewe .v. of his enemyes / wherof the Almayns were sore abasshid. He brake the prese in suche wyse *that* none durst aproche nere¹⁰ hym / ryght wel dyd Othon and Bar- ²⁰ narde and such as was¹¹ with them.¹² But then the duke Sauary, who with .x. thousande men laye in the busshemente nere to¹⁰ the citye / when he¹³ hard the¹⁴ noyse and crye, he¹⁵ thought wel¹⁵ that they within the citye ²⁴ were Issuyd out / when Gerames and his companye sawe how they were enclosyd bothe before and behynde, they were sore abasshed. ¶ when Gerames saw that theyr forse and proues¹⁶ coud not auayle them, but *that* other they must be taken or slayn, Then swetely¹⁷ he callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chrysste / requyrynge hym to saue¹⁸ his good lorde, duke Huon of Burdeux, and the duches Esclarmond his wyfe. Then he cryed to his ³²

¹ Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 1. ² retire. ³⁻³ mightie armie.

⁴ needfull. ⁵ away. ⁶ they. ⁷ ere.

⁸ swords & spears. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ were.

¹² him. ¹³ had heard. ¹⁴ great. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ supposed.

¹⁶ powers. ¹⁷ earnestly. ¹⁸ and defend.

companye, & sayd, 'Syr, I pray you hartely at this tyme¹ shewe forthe your prouesses, and ²do so² that this emperoure & Almaynes haue no cause to make ³and urges on his men to show all their prowess.

⁴ theyr auauentes that they haue founde vs as men dysmayde,³ and⁴ let vs shew them how our swordys can cut.' Then all together⁵ set on⁵ theyr enemyes in suchे wyse that at the fyrske brounte the Almaynes were ⁶At their first charge, the Germans recoil;

⁸ constrainyd to recule⁶ abacke. Gerames dyd such delys that none durste aproche nere hym. Then the duke Sauary weth .x. thousande men came vpon them solaynely / the whiche was none egall partye / and ¹² also the emperoure with his great batayle came also vpon⁷ Gerames and his company, who had gotten themselfes in to the subbarbes of the cyte and a great⁸ wall behynde them at theyr backes, where as they stode⁹ at ¹⁶ a baye agaynst the almaynes / ¹⁰for as the wyld bore doth kepe a baye agaynst the mastyues and bayynge houndes, so dyd they of Burdeaux agaynst the almayns.¹⁰ ¹⁰and Gerames' men set themselves before the walls of the city and fight like wild boars at bay.

Gerames was in the myddys of them, and vnder¹¹ his ²⁰ helme aperyd his long whyght berde / and y^e emperour who had great shame that so fewe men in nombre shuld kepe a baye ¹⁰in that moner¹⁰ agaynst his pusaunce¹² & do to¹³ his men so great domage / he parseyuyd where ²⁴ the olde Gerames was / who had often tymys slayne manye of his men and done hym suche damagys that he thought he coulde never¹⁴ have amendys¹⁴ therof suffycyent / and thought that yf he shuld haue scapyd them ²⁸a lyue / that he wolde do hym moch more hurte and dyspleasure¹⁵ after / and sayd to hymselfe that he had rather dye incontinent then he shulde not as then be reuengyd vpon hym / & therwith incontynent he

The Emperor
vows that
Gerames shall
die,

¹ Fol. lxxxv, back, col. 2.

²⁻² behaue your selues so valiantly. ³ amazed. ⁴ but.

⁵⁻⁶ they assayled. ⁶ retyre. ⁷ old. ⁸ mightie.

⁹ did stand. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vnderneath.

¹² highnesse. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ be reuenged.

¹⁵ damage.

and running upon
him, kills him.

The men of
Bordeaux had
good cause to
weep for the loss
of their leader,

and soon all
his companions,
except one knight,
Barnard, are
slain.

Barnard was
nearly as brave
as Huon,
and he is mounted
on the swift horse
Amphage.

He alone returns
to Bordeaux,

and tells the
burgesses the evil
fate of all his
company.

couchyd his spere / and ranne at¹ Gerames on the one
syde or² he was ware, so that³ the emperour ran hym
clene thorowe y^e body / so⁴ this⁴ ientyll knyght Gerames
fell to the erthe and dyed incontynente. great damage 4
fell that daye to Huon of Burdeaux / for he loste the
treweste and best frynde that he had. Alas, for that
petuous iourney that fell that daye to them of Bur-
deaux. They had good cause⁵ to wepe / alas, good 8
duches Esclariamond, what losse haue ye receyuyd to
lese hym who was your chefe conforte and refuge /
ye myght haue called hym more then fater. A, ryght
noble lady / there neuer came to you a greater mys- 12
chefe than ye haue by the dethe of Gerames / who
lyeth dede⁶ among his enemyes / when the Almaynes
sawe that Gerames was dede / then they fought so that
within a short space all they⁷ of Burdeaux were slayne 16
and not one scapyd alyue / excepte Barnarde, who was
on y^e pusaunt hors Amphage : for the gambaudes and
worke that he made, none⁸ Almayne durste aproche
nere hym / for Barnard nexte⁹ Huon was the moste 20
valyaunt knyght of his body that was as then leuynge /
for when the almaynes sawe hym on¹⁰ that horse / they
chasyd hym no further, then¹¹ they wente to theyr
tentes, and Barnarde seysyd not tyll he came to⁹ the 24
gate of the citye / the whiche was openyd / when he
was enteryd and the gate agayne closyd¹² / the burgesses
and comunaltye sawe how Barnarde came in all alone /
they demaundyd of hym and sayd / ‘syr, where is 28
your capetayne, the olde Gerames?’ Then sore
wepyng he shewyd them at lenghth the petuous and
dolorous aduenture, y^e whiche, when they hard that,¹³
they made suche cryes and wepyng that petye it was⁵ 32
to here and to se them / the brute and noyse was so

¹ old. ² ere. ³ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1. ⁴⁻⁴ that the.

⁵ for. ⁶ euen now. ⁷ them. ⁸ not an. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ but. ¹² closed againe. ¹³ omitted.

greate and lowde, that the ¹lady Esclaramond harde it / wherof² she ³had maruayle³ and was⁴ in great fere / Therwith syr Barnarde enteryd in to⁵ the castel gate
 4 and so mountyd into the hall, where as he founde the duches Esclaramonde / who was sore abasshyde when she sawe syr Barnarde come alone / who shewyd her the great losse that she had receyuid⁶ that day / wher
 8 with for inward sorow she fell downe in a swoone, and so lay a longe space as thoughe she had bene dede. Then the ladyes and damoyselles sore wepyng releuyd her / then she cast out a great crye, wryngynge her
 12 handes and terynge her here, and sayde, 'A, Huon, my ryght dere lorde, this day ye haue loste your moste sorrowfull and dolorous wyfe and welbelouyd doughter.'

¶ Then⁷ ladyes and damoyselles & other wyues who
 16 had loste theyr husbandys / fathers / and bretherne came in to the castell and made suche cryes and sorowes that the noyse therof was harde into the emperours hoste without / and it was shewed the emperour that
 20 y^e noyse and brute that was made within the citye and castell was for the losse they had receyuid that daye. And then they sayde it shulde be good that the nexte mornynge euery man shulde be redy to go and assayle
 24 the citye, and sayde that yf euer they shulde⁸ wynne it the owre then was comen. ¶ when the emperour⁹ harde that reason, he sayde that the aduyce was very good / and¹⁰ he wolde it shuld so be done / he gaue the
 28 charg ther of to his constable and marshalles. thus¹¹ the nexte mornynge the¹² host was redy, & the emperoure commaundyd to set forward / and so¹³ they came before the citye garnysshed with all thynges nedefull
 32 and necessarye for assawlte / then¹⁴ they¹⁵ marched

Esclaramonde is
sore distressed at
his sad news,

and swoons as
though she were
dead.

Loud are the
lamentations of
the women
throughout the
city.

The Emperor
resolves to enter
Bordeaux on the
following day.

¹ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2. ² wherat. ³⁻³ maruailed.

⁴ stood. ⁵ at. ⁶ sustained. ⁷ the. ⁸ would.

⁹ had. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ & so. ¹² his. ¹³ then.

¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1.

Only merchants
and burgesses
remained to
defend the city,

and Bordeaux
falls before its
assailants.

The Emperor
and all his men
make entry
within the walls,

but he forbids
his men to
violate the
women, or the
churches.

Little injury is
done to the noble
city.

forwarde and aproched the cytē / and when they came there they gaue a great crye, and enteryd into the dykys and reryd vp theyr ladders to the walles in dyuers places / so that they that were within were sore 4 abasshyde¹ / For within were but burgesses and marchauntys, who coude lytel skyll of ²the² warre / how be it, they mountyd vpon the walles to ³defend³ theyr citye. But the citye was so sore assayld on all partyes / 8 that the defendauntys wiste not where to make resystence / the shot of them without flewe so thycke that none within durste appere vpon the walles, wherby they enterid perforce into the citye and slewē as many 12 as they met withall in theyr enteryng. And then they went to⁴ the gate and openyd it / so that the emperour and all his lordys enteryd into the citye. Then euery man wente abrode in the stretis to take prisoners and 16 to spoyle mennes houses. ¶ when the emperour sawe how he was lorde of the citye / he ⁵made it to be cryed⁵ in euere strete that no man ²shulde be so hardy² on Payne of dethe / ⁶to vyolat⁶ any woman, or deflowre 20 any mayd / nor to breke any church, nor to set any hous a fyre / and also all suche as were in any churche for sauegarde / that they shulde go at theyr pleasure without any trouble or daunger⁷ of body or goodys / 24 ⁸the emperour, who was a wyse prince, thought in hym selfe that great damage and petye it shulde⁹ be to dystroy and put to ruyne such a noble¹⁰ citye / so stronge and so² well furnysshē with burgesses & marchauntes. 28 When suche as were fled vnto strong places for refuge vnderstode y^e emperours commaundement, euery man & woman retourned to theyr owne houses, so that there was but lytell damage ¹¹done / and that was by them 32

¹ afryad. ²⁻² omitted. ³⁻³ and defended. ⁴ vnto.

⁵⁻⁵ caused it to be proclaimed. ⁶⁻⁶ should wronge.

⁷ either. ⁸ for. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ famous.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxvi, back, col. 2.

that enteryd fyrst. ¶ when the lady Esclaramond
 sawe howe the citye was taken / ye may be sure she
¹had great dolour,¹ for fyrste she sawe her citye taken
 4 by ²her enemyes,² and her selfe closed within the castel
 yll furnysshed with wytayles / and moche people with
 her / wher by she sawe clerely without god dyd ayde
 her that her dethe aprochyd nere. Then peteuously she
 8 complayned to god and sayd, 'Very god, on whome I
 beleue fermely, and for whos sake I haue lefte my fyrste
 mysbeleue & forsake my parentis and frendys to take
 to my husbonde a chrysten man / to y^e entent to reseyue
 12 thy law / syr,³ I requyre the of thy grace to haue petye
 of me, pouer, desolate creature / and to kepe & defende
 my dere chyde⁴ from all yll encumberaunce / for yf it
 be thy pleasure to sauе my chyld I am content to abyde
 16 such⁵ fortune as⁶ it shall please the to send me, and
 besyde that, I requyre thy grace to sauе and kepe Huon
 my dere lorde and husbonde.' Then all wepynge, she
 called to⁷ her syr Barnard, and sayd, 'ryght dere frend,
 20 I can take no counsayle now but of you / ye se well
 how our dethes aprocheth / and how⁸ it is impossyble
 for vs to kepe and defende this castell agaynst the
 emperoure, who hathe won the citye, and I dought yf
 24 he enter into this castell parforse, we shall be the fyrste
 that shall receyue dethe / and by cause I see wel I
 cannot scape from hense, I require you, my dere
 frende, and by the trouth that ye bere to⁷ Huon, my
 28 lord and yours, *that incontynent ye take my dere*
doughter Claryet, whome I holde here in myne armes /
and fynde some meanes that ye maye departe out of
this citye, and bere hyr strayght to the abbey of Clune,
 32 *the ⁹which is in Borgoyne / and delyuer her into the*
kepynge of the abbot there. and recommaunde me to⁷

Esclaramonde
 fears that, unless
 God aid her, she
 will surely die.

Piteously she
 prays to Heaven
 for help.

She petitions for
 the life of her
 child.

Calling Barnard
 to her, she begs
 him protect
 Clariet,

and bear her to a
 neighbouring
 abbey.

¹⁻¹ was ryght sorrowfull. ²⁻² the enemie. ³ O God.
⁴ cl.ildren. ⁵ what. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ that.

⁹ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.

hym. he is vncle to my husbande Huon, great vncle
 Barnard sees that to my chyld.' 'Lady,' quod Barnard, 'I know well yf
 his strength is I be taken here I shall be¹ slain. Howe be it, yf I
 now of no avail,
 coude se or knowe that my abydynge here coude ayde ⁴
 or socour you, bothe for myne honour and for the loue
 of my² lorde³ Huon, I wolde neuer depart hense fro
 you / but my resystence and force is but of small
 valeue / and by cause I wolde serue you as I am bound ⁸
 to do / I am redy aparayled⁴ to take on⁵ me that
 aduenture as to bere your chyld awaye and to set her
 in sauergard by the grace of ⁶god.⁶ when the duches
 vnderstode Barnarde, she was well comfortyd / and as ¹²
 for her selfe, she regardyd nother her lyf nor dethe /
 when she knewe that her chylde shulde be sauyd.
 Then she delyueryd her chylde to⁷ Barnarde / to the
 entent that in the nyght time he shuld issu out. Then ¹⁶
 the emperor and his lordis came before the castel.
 when the duches knewe that / she came to the gate,
 and at a wyndowe she desyryd to speke with y^e
 emperoure / who was there redy present, and sayde / ²⁰
 'dame,⁸ say what ye wyll to me at your pleasure' /
⁹when she sawe the emperoure, she sayd / 'syr, I knowe
 well ye are the hede and chefe¹⁰ of all crystendome,¹¹ &
 noblest / wherby ye ar bounde to defend and kepe from ²⁴
 yll all noble men & women / I that am the daughter of
 an hye and myghty emperoure / and that for y^e loue
 of¹² Iesu chryst haue forsaken myne owne false byleue /
 to byleue on⁵ y^e christen faythe / syr, I requyre ¹³you¹³ ²⁸
 haue pety¹⁴ of me and of all thos that be here with me,
 as⁹ to respyte our lyues / and to put fro¹⁵ all rancoure,
 & malyce, and pardon them ¹⁶that no thyng had to do

¹ vtterly. ² good. ³ and Maister. ⁴ founished.

⁵ vpon. ⁶⁻⁶ our Lord and Sauiour Iesus Christ.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ cheefest.

¹¹ the christened. ¹² my good Lord and Sauioure.

¹³⁻¹³ (for his sake that made and created you) to.

¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ you. ¹⁶ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2.

The Emperor
 and his army
 come before the
 castle.
 Esclarmonde
 desires to speak
 with the
 Emperor,

and urges him to
 have mercy upon
 her.

with the begynnnyng of this warre' / when the emperour¹ harde the resonable request of this lady, he cast
 fro hym all the mortall hate that he had to² her and to
 4 them that were within with her. Then he, mouyd
 with pety and compassyon of the noble lady, answerid
 and sayd / 'dame,³ for the loue of our lord Iesu chryst
 I repele fro me all my dyspleasure / so that ye render
 8 to² me this castell and to put it vnder myne obeysance
 to vse it at my pleasure / & to yelde your body as my
 prisoner, and all tho that be within, and thus ye shall
 haue all your lyues sauyd.' 'Syr,' quod the duches,
 12 'laude and prayes be⁴ to our lorde god⁵ for this grace
 that ye shewe vnto me and to my compayne.' Then
 the emperour wente backe, and made expresse com-
 maundement thrughe out the citye / that no man
 16 shulde be so hardy as to do any hurte or iniury to any
 maner of parsonе within the citye; but to suffer euery
 man to abyde in theyr owne howses peasyblly without
 pyllynge⁶ / wherof the burgesses and comunalte of the
 20 citye were ryght ioyefull. Thus, as ye haue harde, the
 citye of Burdeaux was taken by the emperour who was
 chosyn in Almayne, & comytyd by the emperour
 Charlemayn tyll⁷ his sone Loys shulde be of full age
 24 and able to kepe⁸ the empyre.

The Emperor
feels pity for her,

and promises
her protection,
if she yield the
castle to him,

and herself as
prisoner.

The Emperor
orders no man
to be injured,

and suffers all to
remain in their
houses, which
none are to
pillage.

¶ How the duches Esclaramond deliueryd
 her daughter Claret to Barnarde to bere
 to² the abbot of Cluny / of whome the
 28 abbot was ioyfull. Ca. C.xxiiii [= Cxiv].

¹ had. ² vnto. ³ Madamo. ⁴ giuen.

⁵ Iesus Christ. ⁶ killinge. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ rule.



Esclarmonde
tells her com-
panions of the
conditions of the
surrender of the
town.

Her daughter she
entrusts to
Barnard;

who promises to
deliver her to the
abbot of Cluny,
her great uncle.

All night Barnard
rides to fulfil his
promise.

He was not
mounted on
Huon's swift
horse, Amphage,

e haue harde the peteous² taking of the
citle of Burdeaux, and of y^e trete and
apoyntment that the duches Esclaramonde had made with the emperour / 4
³ when she had made her apointment /

she went to⁴ her company peteously wepynge / and shewyd them all the maner of her tretye, wherof euery parsonne was glad that theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / 8 but they made grat sorow for that the duches shuld be come a prisoner / ³then she callyd Barnard, and sayd,
'Syr, when it is nyght issue out by the posterne with my daughter Claryet, and bere her to⁴ y^e abbot of 12 Cluney, who is her great vncle.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod he,
'be⁶ in suerty that⁶ I shall not reste .ii. nyghtis in one place tyll⁷ I haue delyueryd your doughter to⁴ y^es abbot of Cluney her great vncle.' Then Barnarde toke 16 leue of the duches, who kyste her doughter at her departynge⁹ / There was a posterne that openyd into the feldis ; ³it was so small that Barnarde was fayne to lede his horse in his hande / the nyght was darke,¹⁰ and 20 Barnarde¹⁰ knew¹¹ well the wayes¹² / mountyd on his horse / and¹³ the chylde in his armys / and so rod forthe and passyd the laundes of Burdeaux, and was neuer sene by any¹⁴ man tyll⁷ the nexte day / he rode 24 so all y^e nyght that his horse was wery. And when he sawe that he was past al daungers, and scapyd all perelles / then he rode at hys ease for loue of the chylde / and he complaynyd greatly for the good horse 28 Amphage that Huon had lefte in his kepyng ;¹⁵ but he durste not take that horse with hym for fere that

¹ Fol. lxxxvii. back. col. 1. ² pitifull. ³ &c.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ Madame.

⁶⁻⁶ of good cheere and by the grace of our Lord and Sauioure Jesus Christ. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ good.

⁹ sore weeping and pitifully complayning. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but he.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹² & afterwards he.

¹³ with. ¹⁴ mortall. ¹⁵ vntill his returne.

he shulde haue delt the worse with the lady Esclar-
monde / y^e which had bene trewe / for the emperour
louyd so wel the horse,¹ that he desyryd more to haue
4 agayne the horse² then³ to win the citye / and therfore
Barnarde durste not take the horse with hym. So
longe Barnarde rode that he ariuyd at Monglew, the
which is callyd Lyon, on the ryuer of Rone / and fro
8 thens he rode to Mascon, and fro thence he restyd not
tyll he cam to the abbey of Cluney. ⁴Then he alyghtyd,
and desyryd to speke with the abbot.⁵ when the abbot
saw Barnarde with a chylde in his armes, he had⁶
12 maruayle therof / ⁵when Barnard saw the abbot al
wepyng,⁷ salutyd hym, and sayd / 'syr, the ryght
desolat duches of Burdeux / your nese, wyfe to⁸ the
duke Huon of Burdeux your nephue, hathe sent here
16 to⁸ you her daughter Claryet.' Then the good abbot
embracyd hym, and toke the chylde and kyssed it mo
then .xx. timys / and demaundyd why he brought the
chylde to⁸ hym / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'the citye of
20 Burdeaux hathe bene besegyd by y^e emperoure of
Almayne / and so straytly kepte that it was nere hand
famysshed / manye knyghtis that were within ar
slayne / so that Huon your nephue, by the counsayll
24 ⁹of the duches his wyfe, & consent of all his company,
is departyd out of Burdeaux to seke socoure of the
kynge of Amphamie, brother to⁸ Esclaramond, Huons
wyfe, and so it is a longe tyme syn he departyd, & we
28 neuer coule here any¹⁰ word of hym / and thus he lefte
vs in Burdeaux, and our chefe capytayne was y^e old
Gerames, your cosyn, who was brother to the good
prouost Guyer / & so it was¹¹ on¹¹ a nyght we issuyd out
32 and rode to y^e emperours tentys and slew many of our

for the Emperor
longed to have
him again for
himself.

He reaches
Cluny, and
visiting the
abbot, delivers
Esclaramonde's
message.

Barnard relates
the disasters that
have befallen
Bordeaux and its
duke.

¹ the horse so well. ² agayne after horse. ³ for.

⁴ &. ⁵ and. ⁶ great. ⁷ hee. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ Fol. lxxxxviii, col. 1. ¹⁰ any omitted.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that vpon.

enemyes, and when we sawe¹ tyme, we returnyd towardis our citye / but by some spye we were parseyuyd when we issuid out, wherby the emperoure, knowynge therof, sende duke Sauary his brother with .x.M. men to lye 4 in a busment nere to y^e citye / so that when we had thought to haue enteryd into the cytē, duke Sauary was before vs with .x.M. men / ther we fought a long space / but fynally the olde Gerames and his compayne 8 were all slayne, none scapyd but my selfe, and that was by reason of my horse / so I enteryd into the citye, where as there was made great sorowe / and the nexte daye the emperour with great assaulte van y^e citye and 12 cam to the castel, where as the duches was, who saw well she coud not longe holde the castell ; she made her tretye to sauе her body and her compayne, and so they ar all prisoners / or² she delyueryd vp y^e castell she 16 delyueryd me her daughter, and so I issuyd out at a posterne preuely and was not parsayuyd / therfore, syr, your nephue³ hathe sent you her daughter to the entente that for the loue of her father and of her ye 20 wold kepe and norysshe her tyll her father, duke Huon, be⁴ retournyd.' when the abbot vnderstode Barnarde he began to wepe, & ⁵toke the chyld in his armys, and kyssyd her oftentymes, and sayde, 'my dere chyld, yf 24 it please our lorde god I shall be to you bothe father and mother, and shall norrysshe you tyll⁶ ye be great / and then mary you to⁷ some pusaunte⁸ pryncē / in whome it shall lye to conquere agayne⁹ your herytage / 28 londys / and sygnoryes / for I haue here in this¹⁰ house such treasure that it is sufficent to conquere y^e¹¹ hole empyre.' Then the abbot sente for a noble lady of the countre, and a nouryse, and delyueryd⁷ them the chylde¹² 32 her.

The abbot takes
the child in his
arms,

and promises to
nourish and tend
her carefully.

She is given to a
noble lady of the
country to nurse
her.

¹ our. ² before. ³ neece. ⁴ were.
⁵ Fol. lxxxvii. col 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vnto.
⁸ mightie. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ my.
¹¹ a. ¹² for.

to kepe and to nourysshe / for a fayred ¹nor better
furnysshied¹ of her age was neuer sene. Then the
abbot sayd to Barnarde ²'syr, ye shall abyde here stylle
⁴ with me tyll² this chylde be of age, or elles her father³
retournyd.³ Now let vs leue to speke of this yonge
chylde Claryet, and of the abbot / and retourne to
speke of the dolorours company that were in the castell
⁸ of the noble citye of Burdeaux.

Barnard is invited to remain with the abbot.

¶ How the duches Esclaramond yeldyd vp
the castell to the emperour / and how she
and her companye were ⁴led to prysone⁴ in
¹² the citye of Magence. Ca. Cxv.



e haue wel hard here before that after
the departynge of Barnard fro the
castell in Burdeaux with Claryet, Huons
doughter / how the emperour had made
a tretye with the duches Esclaramonde
for the delyueraunce of the castell / the whyche passyd ;
and on the next mornynge the duches spake with the
²⁰ emperour, who with all his men were⁵ there redy before
the place abydynge to haue the delyueraunce of the
castell. And ⁶when he sawe the duches at a wyndowe
ouer the gate, he sayd, 'dame,⁷ I wyll that the promys
²⁴ that ye made me yester day ye vpholde,⁸ or elles I wyl
do⁹ as I thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, 'I am
redy to fulfull my promys, so that y^e promes me agayne
that my body, and al lalyes and damoyselles and other
²⁸ to¹⁰ be sauyd, & not towchyd by no vyllaynyn, nor
none¹¹ yll done to¹² our bodyes.' 'Dame,'⁷ quod the
emperour, 'all this that ye ¹³saye¹³ I promyse to
vpholde,⁸ but you and all suche as be with you shall be

The Emperor's men assemble before the castle, awaiting its deliverance.

Esclarmonde, speaking from a window, promises to uphold the treaty she has made with the conquerors,

¹⁻¹ creature. ² vntill. ³ be. ⁴⁻⁴ prisoners.

⁵ was. ⁶ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁷ Madame.

⁸ performe. ⁹ according. ¹⁰ shall. ¹¹ no.

¹² vnto. ¹³⁻¹³ require heere.

and offers herself
a prisoner.

my pryoners.' 'Syr,' quod the duchess, 'my lyfe and my body and all suche as be here with me, I put them into¹ the sauergarde of god and of you.' Then she descendyd downe & come into the hall, where as she 4 founde her petuous² company makyng great sorow eche to other, for they knewe not yf³ euer they shulde mets agayne.⁴

The castle-gate is
opened,
and the Emperor
and his lords
enter within it.

Then the duches commaundyd to open the gate, the whiche was done.⁵ Then the emperoure and 8 all his lordys enteryd into the castell / but he woldе not go in to the hall tyl he had all the ladies and other brought out / to the entent that they shulde make no request to hym, & he ordayned a .M. knyghtes of the 12 most aunsyentys men of his hoste / ⁶then he delyueryd

Esclarmonde
and all within the
castle are sent as
Prisoners to
Mayence,

the duches and vi. ladyes with her, and all the other pryoners, as well they that were within the castell as other that had ben taken before at dyuers skyrmysshes / 16 he⁶ sent them strayte to the citye of Magence / and set them all in pryon in towres and other places / but y^e duches was put all alone in a stronge towre, within the

and she herself
is thrown into a
deep dungeon.

whiche there was a depe dongeon / and therin she was 20 set, out of the whiche she neuer issued tyll⁷ she was delyueryd by Huon her husbonde. Then the emperour,

The Emperor
orders all the
men of Bordeaux
to do homage to
him.

⁸beyng in the castell of Burdeaux, sente ouer all y^e countre that all such as were alyue shuld come and do 24 theyr homage to⁹ hym and take theyr londys of hym / y^e whiche they dyd.¹⁰ Then he made his prouostis and offycers to do iustyce both in the citye and countre ;

Thirteen days
later he scizes
some neighbour-
ing provinces.

and after that the emperour had bene there .viii. dayes 28 he went out of the citye and rode and toke possessyon of Blames and of Gerounde, and set there his offycers / ⁶when he had full possessyon of all the countre he lefte kepers in the countre / and so retournyd to the citye of 32

¹ in. ² omitted. ³ where. ⁴ or not.

⁵ immediately. ⁶ and. ⁷ vntill.

⁸ Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ according to his commaundement.

Magens, where as he was receyuyd with great ioye.¹
 Now let vs leue to speak of y^e emperour Thyrry / and
 speke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, beyng in the castell
 4 of the Adamante in great pouerte and famine.

¶ How there aryud at the castell of the adamant a shyp full of sarasyns, wherein
 was the bysshop of Melayne / and how
 8 Huon causyd them to be chystenyd; and then he brought them into the castell,
 where as they founde great plente of vytayle.

Ca. C.xvii [= Cxvi].

12



E haue hard here before how Huon was
 in the castell of the Adamant in great
 pouerte and famyne, where as he had
 been .X. dayes without mete and
 drynke excepte Appelles / and frute

Huon grows
 feeble in the
 castle of
 Adamant, for
 lack of strong
 sustenance.

16

that grewe in the gardayne / wher by he became so
 febyl and ²so voyde² that he had scant³ powre to
 sustayne hymselfe on⁴ his fete / he founde there ryches
 20 ynowe, golde and syluer, aparelle & iouelles, and ryche
 beddynge / so that he wantyd no thyng excepte vytayll /
 and as he ⁵walkyd in the chambre where as the tresure
 lay, he beheld an arch vaultyd, rychly peyntyd with
 24 gold and asure, vnder the which stode a ryche chayre,
 and ther in a coushyn of clothe of gold borderid with
 perlis and presyous stonyss; Huon, who was very of
 walkynge, sate downe in the chayre to reste hym.

He discovers a
 rich arch, under
 which stood a
 chair with a
 golden cushion,
 and there he sits
 down to rest.

28 Then he began sore to muse, castynge down his loke to
 the erthe, and by reason that his longe mantell had
 swepte the powder awaye fro the pauement, there
 aperyd letters of golde wretten on the pavement; ⁶he red
 32 then / ⁶the tenoure of them was, who so euer rede

Upon the pave-
 ment at his feet
 he perceives
 letters of gold,

¹ and triumph. ²⁻² weake. ³ scarce. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ Fol. lxxxix, col. 1. ⁶ and.

and thence learns
that underneath
the pavement is a
cellar filled with
all kinds of food.

But only such as
are free from sin
shall enter the
cellar alive.

Huon prays to
God for aid.

On the side of the
chair he finds a
key of gold,
with an inscrip-
tion written upon
it.

With the key he
opens a little
wicket leading to
the cellar.

Within all is as
clear as mid-day,

and Huon sees a
great oven.

And near the
oven are ten
fairies—all young
men—who were
making bread.

thes letter shall fynd that vnder this pauement there is
a seller with vytayle, bothe brede, flesche, and wyne /
and of all sondry metys for man or woman to ete of /
but the letters sayd, that who so euer¹ enter into this 4
seller, without he be with out dedly synne, as sone as
he toucheth any of the mete, sodaynly he shall dye.
when Huon had red al the letters he had great maruayle
and fere, and thoughte in hym selfe that when he 8
departyd fro Burdeaux, he was confessyd or² his prest
dyed / and syn that tyme he coude not remembre any
thyng that he had comytyd that shuld be dedely
syn, ³then he made his prayers to our lorde god 12
deuoutly, sore wepyng / and when he had endyd his
prayers as he knelyd on⁴ his knees before the chayre,
he saw hanginge on⁴ the syde of the chayre a lytell
keye of golde; he toke it⁵ in his hande & began to 16
muse on the wrytyng that sayd / ‘who so euer enter
in to this castell, though they be valyaunt & wyse /
noble knyghtys, yet they shal not knowe well what to
do’ / then he sayd to⁷ hym selfe / ‘rather then I shulde 20
dye for famine, it were better to dye shortly then
longe to ⁸langushe.’⁸ Then Hu⁹on recommaundid
hymselfe to the ayde and helpe of¹⁰ god, and toke the
key and openyd a lytell wycket and drewe the dore to⁷ 24
hym. Then he regardyd¹¹ into the seller, the whiche
was as clere as though the sonne in the myddes of the
day had enterid in at .x.¹² wyndowes / ¹³he went downe
a¹⁴ .vii. score grefes, then he lokyd¹⁵ on the ryght syde¹⁶ 28
and sawe a great ouen with .ii. mouthes, the whiche
caste out a great clernes / then he saw nere thereto .x.
fayre yonge men, they were all of the Fayry, .iii. of
them had¹⁷ made the past for bred / and .ii. delyueryd 32

¹ should. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ vp.

⁶ or. ⁷ vnto. ⁸⁻⁸ endure in this hunger and thirst.

⁹ Fol. lxxxxix, col. 2. ¹⁰ almighty. ¹¹ looked downe.

¹² the. ¹³ and so. ¹⁴ about. ¹⁵ regarded.

¹⁶ hand. ¹⁷ omitted.

the louys to other .ii., & they dyd set them downe on¹
 a ryche clothe of sylke / then the other .ii. men toke
 the louys and deliuercid them to² one man by .ii. louys
 4 atones / and he dyd set them into the ouen to bake /
 and at the other mouthe of the ouen ther was a man
 that drewe out the whyght louis and pastes, & before
 hym there was a nother yonge man that reseyuyd them
 8 and put them into baskettis³ rychely payntyd. when

Huon had aduysed them, he had great maruayle, and
 came and salutyd them, sayenge / 'syr, I praye to⁴
 god⁵ sauе you & all your compayne' / ⁶when they hard

12 Huon speke, they gaue⁷ no maner of answeare, but
 beheld eche other / ⁶when Huon saw that none of them
 wold make hym any answeare / he was sore abasshyd / ⁸
 how be it he sayd / 'syrs, ye that be here, I coniure

16 you in the name of the father,⁹ sone, and⁹ holy gost /
 & of the ¹⁰blessyd vrygyn Mari his mother and of
 all sayntys¹⁰ / angellis and arkeangellys, and of all

the courte selestyall / that ye answeare me to that I do
 20 demaunde.'¹¹ Then they all sessyd¹² theyr laboure and

busynes and behelde Huon, and rubbyd of the paste
 & mele¹² of theyr handis and fyngers / then⁶ the mayster

¹³of them behelde Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs
 24 great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye¹⁴ knowe yf
 ye were other Sarasyn or paynym ye shuld neuer

depart¹² hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes

hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god /

28 I knowe wel ye haue great hunger, for it is .x. dayes
 syn ye dyd other ete or drynke any thynge excepte
 aloneley of the frute that ye haue¹⁰ founde in the

gardayne / the which as yet is not rype and redy to ete.

32 Therfore, Huon, fayre syr, I knowe well¹⁵ ye haue great

Huon accosts
them,

but they make no
reply.

Huon speaks to
them in the name
of all the
inhabitants of
heaven.

One of the fairies
reproves Huon
for his speech;

¹ vpon. ² vnto. ³ which were. ⁴ our lord.

⁵ to. ⁶ and. ⁷ vnto hym.

⁸ and greatly troubled in his mind. ⁹ and of the.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ of you. ¹² from.

¹³ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹⁴ well. ¹⁵ that.

but he offers him
food and drink
in an inner
chamber, richly
furnished.

As long as Huon
remains in the
castle, he shall
have any manner
of food and wine
he may desire.

Huon demands
what people they
are that inhabit
this place,

but the fairy is
wrathful at the
question.

He tells Huon,
however, that the
castle was built
by Oberon's
father, Julius
Cæsar,

hunger / ¹therfore, yf ye wyl drynke or etc, enter into yonder ryche chambre the which ye se open / where ye shal fynd the table redy set,² and the pottys of syluer and the wessell of golde borderyd with precyous stonyds ⁴ and perle / and the basyns of golde, with¹ ewers with water to wasshe your handys / then³ syt⁴ downe at the table and there ye shall fynde metis and drynkis such as ye wyll wysshe for, and as longe as ye wyl tary here ⁸ in this castell, ye shall haue euyer daye lyke seruys or better yf ye lyste / for any mete that ye wyl wysshe for ye shal haue it at your desyre,⁵ and of wyne in lyke wyse two tymys in⁶ the day, without ye wyl fast. But, ¹² syr, I requyre you of one thinge : that fro henseforth ye do not coniure me nor none of my company / and then ye shall haue euyer thynge at your desyre.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 'for henseforthe I shall not speke to⁷ you / so ¹⁶ that by the coniuracyon that I haue coniuryd you, ye wyll shewe me what people ye be that abyde thus⁸ in this castell, and what ye call this castell, and who is lorde therof / and by whome al the ryches that is here ²⁰ within is kept? I wyll go ete some mete, and then I praye you shewe⁹ me.' Then they answeryd Huon¹⁰ on ryght fersly, and sayd / 'and,¹¹ thou false and vntrewe,¹² for to demaund any suche thynge of vs / at this tyme I ²⁴ shall shew you / but afterwarde / by me nor by none other of my company ye shall neuer here worde spoken.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'therof¹³ I am sory,⁴ and I hartely desyre you yet yf here after I speke to⁷ you ²⁸ alone that ye wyll answe me.' 'Naye, suerly,' quod he, 'that wyll I neuer do / but I shall shewe you that I haue promysyd,¹⁴ syn ye wyll¹⁴ knowe it. Syr, knowe for trouthe that Iulius Cesar, father to the¹⁵ noble kyng ³²

¹ and. ² and the cloth layd. ³ and there. ⁴ you.
⁵ pleasure. ⁶ of. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ heere. ⁹ it vnto me.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. ¹¹ Ah. ¹² knight.
¹³ the request. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ seeing you are so desirous to.
¹⁵ good and.

Oberon, causyd this castell to be made by crafte of the fayry / the whiche castell can not be greuyd no take parforce / so it fortuned that¹ on² a daye that Iulius Ceser, after he had vanquesshed y^e great pompee / he came into Alexandre to Tholomeus kyng of Egypt, and dyscomfytid hym and toke fro hym all his londis to gyue it to³ his syster, the fayre Cleopatre, who was quene of that londie, and after she maryed Marcus Antonius / and after that Iulius Ceser had this done to refresshe hym / he come hether withe the quene of the preuy Isle / and broughte her the same nyght into this 12 castel / and there were .iii. kyngys of the lynage of Tholomeus, who when they knew that Ceser was in this castell / they made an army, and with many shypyps and galyes they came, and laid sege before this 16 castell / and laye at the sege a longe space and coude not hurte it of the value of a⁴ peny / so long they lay here that they were sore dyspleasyd therewith / and so they thought to depart home into theyr owne countrees / 20 but by reason that theyr shyppes were naylyd with Iron naylis they coude not departe⁵ hence. For the Adamante stone, that by nature drawethe⁶ the Iron to³ hym / and so they laye here so longe that they all dyed 24 myserably for famyne and rage / for no shyppe can depart⁵ hens without it be pynnyd with nayles of woole and not of Iron. And where as ye demaunde fro whence comythe the treasure that is here within this 28 castell / knowe for a truthe that it was the ryches that these thre kyngys lefte in theyr shypyps when they were dede⁷ / the which treasure, after that they were ded, Ceser causyd it to be brought into this castell / 32 and or⁸ he dyed he delyueryd vnto me the kepyng of this castell and treasure. And I and .xl. other of my felawes are here condempnyd by the fayrey to abyde

and that no force
can harm it.
After Cesar
defeated Pompey,
he came to
Alexandria, and,
having conquered
Ptolemy, the king
of Egypt, gave
his lands to his
sister Cleopatra,
who wedded
Mark Antony.

Thence he came
to the castle
with the lady of
the secret isle.
Three kings of
Ptolemy's family
besieged him
here,

but they could
do him no hurt.

And their ships
were drawn to the
Adamant rock,
because of the
iron nais,
and the besiegers,
being unable to
depart, died of
famine.

The riches in the
castle were left
in the Egyptian
ships,
and were brought
within the walls
after the death of
all who sailed in
them.

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ one. ⁵ from.

⁶ Fol. c. col. 1. ⁷ dyed. ⁸ before.

Forty-one men
are condemned to
abide in the castle
till the world's
end.

After Cæsar's
murder at Rome,
Oberon swore
never to visit the
castle again.

The fairy
speaker's name
is Gloriadas,
and the castle is
called the
Adamant.

After Huon had
eaten and drank,
he came to a
chamber door,

and having found
the key, he
entered.

It is made of
crystal painted
with gold and
azure.

All the battles of
Troy and
Alexander's deeds
are portrayed
there.

The floor is
covered with
sweetly-scented
flowers,
and singing-birds
fly about the
room.

here to¹ the ende of the worlde. And² when that tydynge came to the knowlege of³ kynge Oberon that his father, Iulius Cesar, was slayne and murderyd within the senat of Rome by them whome he trustyd⁴ well / kynge Oberon toke suche dyspleasure that he made promyse and assurance that he wolde neuer come here more / & no more he hath done, for he thought yf he shuld haue comen hether⁴ he shulde⁸ haue dyed for sorow, for the great loue that he had vnto his father Iulius Ceser. And syn ye wyll knowe my name, I am callyd Gloriadas, and this castell is callyd the Adamante. Nowe I haue shewyd you the 12 trouthe of your demaund, and one thyng I saye to¹ you, ye shall neuer departe⁵ hens as longe as you leue, without ye flye in the ayre as a byrde dothe flye.⁶

¶ when Huon vnderstode hym he was ryght 16 sorowfull. And so after he hadde well eten and dronken at his owne pleasure, he toke his leue and departid, and⁷ came to¹ a dore of a chambre, and sawe letters of gold wryten ouer the dore, wherby he had 20 knowlege where the key was / he toke it and openyd the dore and enteryd into the chambre, and saw how⁸ all the chambre was made of Chrystall payntyd rychely with gold and Asure. And there was porturyd⁹ all the 24 bataylys of Troye and all the dedys of Alexander. And on¹⁰ the pauement was sprede a brode Roses and¹¹ flowres, and herbys, swete smellynge aboue all other sauorys of the worlde, and in the chaumbre there were 28 dyuers byrdys flyenge abought¹¹ the chaumbre,¹¹ syngynge so maruaylous swetely that¹² ioye it was to here them. The rychesse and¹³ beaulty of that chaumbre can¹⁴ not be dyscryuyd. Huon had maruaylous great pleasure to 32

¹ vnto. ² Nowe. ³ the noble. ⁴ again, that.

⁵ from. ⁶ nowe I haue shewyd you your desire.

⁷ Fol. c. col. 2. ⁸ that. ⁹ porraiture of the.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² great. ¹³ and melodie.

¹⁴ could.

beholde it / ¹there he sawe a table set full of mete /
and therby stode great pottys of gold garnysshyd with
preuous stony full of wyne / there was no mete in the
4 world but that there it was redy / Huon had good
apetyte to ete, for he hadde eten but lytell before / by
reason of the talkynge that he had with the Gloriadas.

The rarest food
is spread upon a
table,

and Huon eats of
it.

1 Then two yenge men broughte hym a basyn of golde
8 broderyd with perles to wasshe his handys / & a nother
brought hym a towell to wype his handys. Then Huon
sate downe at a ryche table, the whiche was broderyd
with prsyous stonis / the clothe that laye vpon the
12 table was of sylke ryehely wroughte / Huon dyd ete his
mete, for he had good apetyte therto / a goodlye yonge
man earuyd vnto² hym, and another bare his cuppe /
Many folkes there was to ³do all y^e³ seruys that
16 myghte be done⁴ vnto any creature leuyng in y^e
worlde / and he spake to⁵ them, but none wold answer⁶
one word, ⁷wherwith he ⁸had great dyspleasure; ⁸ but
when he saw there was none other remedy he⁹ let it pas
20 and forgat it, bycause of the swete melody that the
byrdys made. oftentymes he wysshed for¹⁰ Esclaramond
his wyfe,⁴ and for his daughter Clariet, and for Gerames /
Barnard / and Rycharde, and his other companye that
24 he lefte at Burdeaux: thus Huon was seruyd in the
castell of the adamant / when he had dynyd the
seruauntis toke vp y^e table and brought hym water & a
towel to wasshe his handis / then he rose¹¹ fro the table
28 and went¹² into the seller, where as he saw euery
thyng as he had sene before / he salutyd them in
passynge forby,¹³ but they made none answer⁶ / so he
cam to⁵ the greses and mountyl vp / and then wente
32 and sportyd hym fro chambre to chambre / and then

A gold basin is
brought him by
two young men
to wash his
hands.

All the services
he may require
are done for him
by youths,
to whom he
speaks without
reply from them.

At length he
leaves the
beautiful
chamber,

¹ and. ² for. ³⁻³ haue done. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ him. ⁷ Fol. c. back, col. 1.

⁸⁻⁸ was angrie and sore displeased. ⁹ did.

¹⁰ his wife the faire. ¹¹ vp. ¹² downe. ¹³ by.

and returns to the garden above. When he is hungry again, he goes again to the cellar, and the food is ready for him as before. Although he is angry because none will speak with him, his health recovers,

and he wishes himself at Bordeaux battling with his enemies.

At length he sees a Spanish ship approaching the port.

Huon fears for the safety of the ship,

into the gardayne, wherin he toke great pleasure; and when the tyme came¹ to ete he retournyd in to the seller, and so into the chambre wher as he found euery thynge redy as he had done before / but he was sore² 4 displeasyd that they that seruyd hym wold not speke no word / thus he³ was there a hole moneth / and toke suche pleasure there that he recoueryd his helth and strengthe and beautye / greatly he was anoyed that 8 there was no man there that wold speke one worde to⁴ hym / oftentymes he wysshdyd hymselfe at Burdeaux with a .C.M. men of⁵ armis to gyue batayle to⁴ y^e emperour who had done hym so moche damage. And 12 on⁶ a daye as Huon walkyd in the hall saynge⁷ his prayers, he lokyd out at a wyndow into the see / and he saw a far of a⁸ shyp with full sayle comynge⁹ to a ryue at that porte / and they were .iiii. score marchauntys 16 all of Spayne / ¹⁰they knew not what port they aryuyd¹¹ at.

¹² ¶ How Huon saw a shyp arryue at the port
of the¹³ Adamant.

Ca. C.xvii. 20



Hen Huon saw this shyppe arryue at the porte he greatly complaynyd for them, and sayd / ‘a, good lord, what asorte of good marchauntis haue here 24 bene lost / yf they of yonder shyppe knewe therof they wolde not arryue here by theyr wylles’ / and so then he sawe the shyppe com in with such a force, and it dasshled in so sore amonge the other olde shyppys, that the shyppe was nere¹⁴ perysshed. But the other vesselles¹⁵ / were so old that they were

¹ for. ² and greatly. ³ Huon. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ at.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ of. ⁸ a a in text.

⁹ comming before with full. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ did arriue. ¹² Fol. c. back, col. 2. ¹³ Castle of the.

¹⁴ hande. ¹⁵ shippes.

but it dashes in among the old rotten ships, and is unhurt.

rotten, so that ther by the new shyppe was sauyd who
 had bene .xx. dayes in tourment in¹ the see / so that
 the men that were within it were so² sore trauaylyd and
 4 fayne for famyne, that they were scante³ able to sus-
 tayne themselfe on⁴ theyr fete. ¶ When Huon sawe
 them aryue all wepynge he complaynyd for them, for
 he sawe well they were all lost, and that they shulde
 8 neuer departe⁵ thense / when the shyppe was a ryuyd,
 the marchauntis within it callyd vpon Mahound to
 ayde⁶ them, and the mayster of the shyppe stode vp
 and wente ⁷on londe,⁷ and lokyd towardis the castell
 12 and sawe Huon where he stode leuyng in a wyndowe,
 wherof they had great ioye, thynkyng that they were
 arryuyd at a good port / supposyng that he that they
 sawe there before them had bene the lorde of the
 16 castell / by cause he was so marueylous rychely
 aparaylyd.⁸ Then they salutyd Huon in the name of
 Mahounde theyr god. ¶ When Huon hard that he
 knew suerlye that they were Sarasyns, and he⁹ coude
 20 very wel¹⁰ speke the spanyssh languag, answeryd to the
 mayster and said / 'frendis, ye that be here aryuyd /
 shewe me¹¹ the trouth fro whence ye ar come, and what
 ye be / for be you⁹ sure as longe as ye lyue ye shall
 24 neuer depart⁵ hense / and without ye haue vytayles
 brought with you, ye are ¹²here yll aryuyd.¹² Then the
 mayster trymbelynge, sayd / 'syr, know for trouthe⁹ I am
 of¹³ Spayne, and of¹⁴ the citye of Luysarne, and that¹⁵
 28 that ¹⁶be here¹⁶ with me ar al marchauntis of Portyngale
 and come fro the citye of Acre, and there we chargyd
 our shyp with marchaundyse / & we had¹⁷ good wynd
 till¹⁸ we were passyd the stratis of Marrocke, and that

The new vessel
had met with
rough weather,
and the men were
exhausted from
want of food.

They see Huon
at a window of
the castle,

and salute him
in the name of
Mahomet.

Huon asks
whence they
come.

The master of the
ship replies that
they are Moors of
Spain, travelling
home from Acre,

¹ on. ² omitted. ³ scarce. ⁴ vppon. ⁵ from.

⁶ and to succour. ⁷⁻⁷ a shoare. ⁸ and. ⁹ that.

¹⁰ Fol. ci. col. 1. ¹¹ (I pray you).

¹²⁻¹² all arrived at an unfortunate place.

¹³ the countrey. ¹⁴ dwelling in. ¹⁵ they.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ are come hether. ¹⁷ a maruaylous. ¹⁸ vntill.

who have been
driven from their
course.

In their storm-
tossed wanderings
they had rescued
the bishop of
Lisbon and his
chaplain from
shipwreck, who
are on board.

The ship is
without food,
and all on board
are starving.

we were nere to our owne countre / ¹then a tourment
and a tempest¹ toke vs & draue vs of fro² our owne
countre, ³the whiche³ tempest hath ⁴enduryd this⁴.xx.
dayes / ⁵so that perforse⁵ we were feyne⁶ to abandon ⁴
our shyp to the⁷ see and wynd,⁸ as the shyp wold go
at a venture, and⁹ at last ¹⁰we aryuyd¹⁰ by a great rocke,
and there we cast ancre ; and whyles¹¹ we laye there we
founde on¹¹ the rocke¹² y^e bysshop of Lysbone, and ¹³his ⁸
chapelayne¹³ with hym, who came thether dryuyng on¹⁴
a mast of a shyp that had bene perysshed, and⁹ all¹⁵ his
company were¹⁶ by¹⁷ the fortune of the¹⁷ sec. Then the
bysshop and his chapelayne¹⁸ prayed me humbly¹⁸ to ¹²
sauē theyr lyues, and to take them in to my shyp, and¹⁹
I had²⁰pitye of²⁰ them, and ²¹delyueryd them fro the
daunger,²¹ & toke them in to my shyp, and gaue them
mete²² and other thynge suche as I had, for they had ¹⁶
bene²³ dede by famyne and ²⁴I had not²⁵geuen them
mete²⁵ / and yet I thynke²⁶they wyl be dede for famyne
or it be to morowe at nyght / for²⁶ I haue no more
vytayle, nother for my selfe nor for such as be within ²⁰
my shyp / thus, syr, I haue ²⁷answeryd to your
demaunde / and therefore, ²⁸syr, I requyre²⁸ you, in
the honour of god & of mahound, to shew me to
whom this castell doth apartayne, and who is lorde ²⁴

¹⁻¹ and then suddenly a great tempest arose and.

² the coast of. ³⁻³ a great distance, and this.

⁴⁻⁴ continewed these. ⁵⁻⁵ past, so extremely that.

⁶ perforse. ⁷ raging of the. ⁸ euen. ⁹ but.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ by good fortune we chaunced to.

¹¹⁻¹¹ presently after we were arriued there we went vp
into. ¹² and there we founde.

¹³⁻¹³ one of his chaplaines. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ the rest of.

¹⁶ drowned. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ misfortune at.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ humbly prayed me to haue pite vpon them and.

¹⁹ whereupon. ²⁰⁻²⁰ compassion on.

²¹⁻²¹ (as one verie glad and willing to deliuere them from
that daunger), I. ²² and drinke. ²³ almost.

²⁴ yf. ²⁵⁻²⁵ succoured them.

²⁶⁻²⁶ that they will not liue vntill to-morrow at night, for
truly. ²⁷ Fol. ei. col. 2. ²⁹⁻²⁸ I desire.

therof, and what is the name therof, and of this porte
where as we be aryuyd.' 'Frende,' quod Huon,
'know for trouthe this castell and porte is the place
4 in the world most hatyd and doughtyd of paynmys
and Sarasyns, and I shall shewe you the cause why /
this castell is set on a rocke of Adamante stony,
so that yf any shyp¹ come hether by aduenture²
8 can neuer departe³ agayne. For the Adamant is of
that nature that it drawethe all wayes to⁴ hym the
Iron / and therfore any shyp that is naylyd or haue in
it any Iron, and by hap⁵ come nere this port, by force²
12 shall be constrainyd here to aryue.' when the mar-
chaunt hard Huon / he began sore to wepe, and⁶ so dyd
all the other and sayd / 'syr, we are sore⁷ abasshyd of
this⁸ that ye haue sayde.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'all
16 that I have sayd is of trouth; but, syrs, yf ye wyll
byleue me, and to⁹ take on¹⁰ you chrysztendome,
and byleue on the faythe of Jesu chrysste, and byleue
farmely in hym, you and all suche as be in your
20 shyppe I shall bryng you into suche a place where as
ye shall haue mete and drynke at your pleasure / and
apparell as ryche as ye shall demaunde / & then
I shall shewe you so moche golde and rychesse
24 that ye shall be satysfyed with the beholdynge therof.
Therfore yf ye wyll byleue on¹¹ god¹² ye shall haue
all this that I haue sayd before, or elles ye shall
all dye of rage,¹³ of famyne myserably.' ¶ when
28 the patron¹⁴ harde Huon, he sayde, 'syr, knowe for
trouthe it is¹⁵ vii yeres paste syn I¹⁶ beleuyd fyrste
of¹⁶ the faythe of our lorde¹⁷ Jesu chrysst, and, ¹⁸syr, I
thankē you of the curteysy that ye¹⁹ offer¹⁹ me; & fro

Huon informs
the master that
the castle is hated
by Saracens

because of the
power of the
adamant on
which it is
built.

The newcomers
are sorely
distressed,

but Huon
promises
to bring them
safely out of
danger if they
will be converted
to Christianity.

The master of the
ship is willing to
embrace the
Christian
religion.

¹ chance to. ² it. ³ from hence. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ chaunce.

⁶ lament and. ⁷ dismayed and. ⁸ these words.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ vpon.

¹² and of his sonne Jesus Christ. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ had well.

¹⁵ about. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ beleued vpon. ¹⁷ and Sauour.

¹⁸ Fol. ci. back, col. 1. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ haue shewed vnto.

hensforthe I submyt me to the sauegarde of¹ god and
of his² mother, the blessyd vyrgyn Mary, & to them I
commende my sowle.² when Huon hard that he was
ryght ioyfull, and sayd, ‘frind, go to thy shyp, and⁴
moue³ all thy company to byleue on⁴ Jesu chrysste /
and shewe them what parell⁵ they be in nowe / and
what welthe they shall haue yf they byleue⁶ on god⁶ /
and also shewe them what pleasure they shall fynde in⁸
this plase / and yf they wyll not thou mayst wel say
that they are come to theyr laste ende shortly / and
the .ii. men that thou hast sauyd cause them to com
hether to⁷ me’ / ‘syr,’ quod the patron, ‘I shall sende¹²
them to⁷ you’ / then he departyd and enteryd in to his
shyp / and there he shewyd his company all *that* he
had harde of Huon, and⁸ was commaundyd to shewe⁹
them / when the marchantis, who were¹⁰ paynmys,¹¹ 16
harde theyr patron¹² in what case & parell they were
in / they answeryd all¹³ how¹⁴ they were redy all¹⁵ to
do his pleasure, and to receyue chrystendome, wherof the
patron was ryght ioyfull.¹⁶ Then the patron sent for y^e 20
bysshop and his nephue, who was his chaplayn, &
sayd / ‘syrs, in the castell there is a lord who wyll¹⁷
that ye¹⁸ incontynent go¹⁹ a lond, and go to speke with
hym.’ when the bysshop harde the patron he rose vp²⁴
with moch Payne from fayntenes, by reason of famyne,
and sayd how¹⁴ he wolde gladly fulfull his commaundement.
Then he and his chapelayne departyd out of
the shyp, and came to the stayres, and mountyd vp to²⁸
the castell / but they were fayn to reste them by the
waye dyuers tymys²⁰; when they came to⁷ the gate they

Huon bids him
order his
company to
follow his
example.

All are ready to
comply with
their master's
command.

The bishop of
Lisbon and his
chaplain ascend
the steps leading
to the castle.

¹ almighty. ²⁻² sonne Iesus Christ. ³ remoue.

⁴ vpon. ⁵ and daunger.

⁶⁻⁶ vpon almighty god & of his sonne Iesus Christ.
⁷ vnto. ⁸ what he. ⁹ say vnto. ¹⁰ all. ¹¹ had.

¹² declare. ¹³ all answered. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵ readie.

¹⁶ to heare them say so. ¹⁷ prayeth you. ¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ wil come. ²⁰ and.

marueylyd greatly of the great beaute and ryche warke
that they sawe there¹ / so they ²came to³ Huon, who
taryed for them at the hall dore. when they came
4 nere to³ hym they humbly salutyd hym. ‘Syrs,’ quod

Huon questions
them as to their
history.

Huon, ‘god sauе you,¹ I praye you shewe me the trouthe of what countre be ye of.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the bysshop, ⁴ syn it please you⁴ to knowe I shall shew you

The bishop replies
that he was born
at Bordeaux,
and for twenty
years was bishop
of the city.

8 the trouthe / syr, I was borne in the citye of Burdeaux, and am bysshop therof, & haue bene this .xx. yere / and a deuosyon toke me to go a pylgremage to the holy sepulture / but god wold not suffer vs so to do ; for

He and his
chaplain left
Lisbon on a
pilgrimage,
and were wrecked
at sea.

12 when we were departyd fro Lysbone, a great wynde & tourment rose vpon our shyppe / the whiche was fayre and ryche, and well furnysshdyd with marchauntis / & so by fortune our shyp ran againste a rocke, so that

16 our shyp brast⁵ all to pecys / ⁶so that⁶ all our company were there⁷ drownyd, excepte myselfe and my chape layne, who is my nephue, and so⁷ we .ii. sauyd our selues on⁸ y^e maste of our shyp, flotynge on⁸ the see /

The Saracens
who are in the
ship below
rescued them.

20 and⁷ so⁹ by the grace of god / the shyp that is here beneth aryuyd by fortune at the porte nere to³ the rocke, and I prayed hym in the honour of god¹⁰ to sauе our lyues / and the patron had petye¹¹ of vs, & toke vs

The bishop notes
the resemblance
of Huon to Duke
Sevin of
Bordeaux,
who was his
benefactor in his
youth;

24 in to his shyp, and dyd as¹² moch for vs as though we had bene his bretherne / syr, thus I haue shewyd you owre aduenture. And, syr, I requyre ye pardon me in that I so¹³ sore regarde¹³ you / but, syr,⁷ I shall shewe¹⁴

28 the cause whye I do it / me thynke I see before me y^e good duke Seuyn of Burdeaux, who swetely nouryshed me in my youthe : ye greatly resemble to³ hym, and he¹⁵ set me to scole to¹⁶ Parys, and then he sente me

¹ and. ² Fol. ci. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.

⁴⁻⁴ seeing it is your pleasure. ⁵ burst. ⁶ and there.

⁷ omitted. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ that.

¹⁰ and of his sonne Iesus Christ. ¹¹ and compassion.

¹² so. ¹³⁻¹³ stearnly behold. ¹⁴ you (quoth he).

¹⁵ ge in text. ¹⁶ at.

through the
duke's good
offices he obtained
the see of Milan.

The bishop knows
Huon's features,
but he does not
recognize him to
be his benefactor's
son.

He relates how
his father was
brother to the
abbot of Cluny,
who brought
Huon up.

Huon embraces
the bishop as his
cousin,
and declares his
name.

to Rome, to¹ our holy father the pope of Rome, to whome I was a kyne, and he dyd me moch good, and² gaue me the bysshoprych of Myllayne. duke Se³uen is dede / ⁴& he had .ii. sones, the eldest callyd Huon, & 4 the other Gerrarde / Huon was sent for to paris by kyng Charlemayne, & by the way there fel to¹ hym a marueylous adventure, for he slewe the kynges sone Charlott in his own defen[ce] not knowynge that it was the 8 kyngys sone, wherfore the kyng banysshed hym⁵ the realme of Fraunce, and sent him to the Admerall Gaudys in Babylon to do his message, and afterwarde he returnyd into Fraunce. And syn he hath had great 12 warre with the emperoure of Almayne / more I can not saye, and I am⁶ sory that I know not where he is becum, for my father, who was brother to y^e⁷ abbofe of Cluney, longe agone norysshed Huon vp in his youth 16 or⁸ his father duke Seuyn dyed / my father dyd teche him, wherfore I haue great sorowe⁹ at myne harte that I knowe not where he is becom synne the peas was made¹⁰ betwene hym and the kyng of fraunce.' when 20 Huon vnderstode¹¹ the bysshop,¹² his blud changyd, and embrasyng hym swetely,¹³ sayd / 'Syr, ye are my cosyn: I am Huon who passed the see and went to the admyrall Gaudys, and I¹⁴ slew hym, and led away 24 with me his daughter, the fayre Esclarmonde / who was maryed to¹ me by¹⁵ the pope / and I haue left her in the citye of Bourdeaux in great pouerte,¹⁶ besegyd by the emperour of Almayne / I byleue suerly¹⁷ she is 28 taken by this tyme.' when the bysshop hard Huon he began sore to wepe / and Huon embrasyd and kyssed hym, and sayd, 'cosyn, ye ar happy to fynde me here / ¹⁸elles shortly ye had been dede' / 'syr,' quod he, 32

¹ vnto. ² hee. ³ Fol. cii. col. 1. ⁴ God be with him.

⁵ out of. ⁶ right. ⁷ good. ⁸ before.

⁹ and greefe. ¹⁰ and concluded. ¹¹ had well heard,

¹² and vnderstode him. ¹³ he. ¹⁴ I omitted.

¹⁵ our holy Father. ¹⁶ and miserie. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ or.

'I ought greatly to thanke god therof. But, syr, I
repyre you¹ gyue me som mete / for I am so sore
²famysshyd that I can scant² sustayne my selfe on³

The bishop begs
Huon to give him
food.

4 my fete.' ⁴'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god
I shall bryng you to such a place where as ye shall
haue mete and drynke at your wysshe.'⁵ Then Huon
toke him by the hand and brought him into the palays
8 and thrughe the chambres / the bysshopt was⁶ abasshed
to se y^e great⁷ ryches that he saw there. Then they
went downe into the seller / the bysshope beheld the
manner of euery thyng, and had⁸ maruayle that none of

Huon leads him
to the castle
cellar,

12 them that he saw there wolde not speke any word /
he passed by them with Huon, and salutyd them / then
he enteryd into the ryche chambre / where as the table
was redy, and seruantis to gyue them water, and they
16 all .iii. sate downe / ⁹then Huon sayde to the bysshopt,
'cosyn, I coniure you by the sacramente that ye haue
reseyuyd / that ye nor your chapelayne be so hardy¹⁰ to
ete one morsell of mete yf any of you be in any dedly
20 syn / yf ye be incontynent, confesse you to your chape-
layne, and he to¹¹ you ; for yf ye do otherwyse ye shal
no soner ete one morsell but incontynent ye shall dye.

and warns him
and his chaplain
not to eat of the
rich food there
spread before
them unless
they are free from
deadly sin.

¶ when the bysshopt¹² vnderstode Huon he had
24 great maruayle, and sayd / 'cosyn, by the grace of god I
fele my selfe in good estate¹³ to abyde dethe¹⁴: when I
departyd fro rome, Both I and my nephu were confessed
and assoyled¹⁵ of the pope¹⁵ of all our synnes / and syn
28 we enteryd in to the see we haue done¹⁶ no synne.'
Then Huon sayd, 'cosyn, syn¹⁷ ye be bothe in this case
ye maye ete and drynke at your pleasure' / and so they

The bishop
declares himself
and his chaplain
free from sin.

¹ to.

²⁻² punished with hunger and thirst, that I am neere hand
famished and can scarce.

³ vpon. ⁴ Fol. cii. col. 2.

⁵ pleasure, and such as you will wish for. ⁶ greatly.

⁷ omitted. ⁸ great. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vnto.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ not. ¹⁴ for.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ before and assoyled. ¹⁶ committed. ¹⁷ seeing that.

They eat and
drink at their
pleasure.

They marvel at
the sumptuous
furniture of the
room,

and at its sweet
odours and
sounds.

Huon, after the
meal, bids the
bishop go down
to the ship and
baptize the crew.

Elinas, the master
of the ship, had
converted all the
Saracens but ten.

dyde / ¹they had nede therof / they all thre were
rychely seruyd : they had euer thyng as they wysshyd
for / the bysshoppe and his nepheue dyd ete and drynke,
and they were greatly ²abasshyd of the great rychesse ⁴
that they sawe there / & they were rauysshyd with
the swete syngynge of the byrdys, and y^e herbes &
flowres that were there spred abrode smellynge so
swetely that they thought themselues in Paradyse / and ⁸
they had great maruayle to se the seruauntis to serue
them so pesably, but they wold neuer speke one worde /
they wold gladly a demaundyd the cause why / but
Huon had expresly chargyd them³ they shulde make ¹²
none inquiry. Thus passyd theyr dyner in great
ioye / & so⁴ wasshyd theyr handys and rose vp ; ⁵then⁵
the bysshop & his chapelayne sayd grase deuoutly.
Then Huon toke the bysshop by y^e hand, and sayde / ¹⁶
'cosyn, ⁶go we⁶ vp in to the palays, and then ye shal
go downe to⁷ your shyp / and shew them without they
wyll dye incontynent / let them be chystenyd, and
dresse vp tubbes with water of the see / and halowe ²⁰
you it, and chysten them therin / and I shall come
after you with my sworde and clene armyd / to the
entent that yf they refuse thus to do, I shall stryke of
theyr hedys.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, 'I shal do ²⁴
your pleasure.' Then Huon armyd hym,⁸ and wente
after the bysshop and his nephue downe to the shyp⁹ ;
when they came there they founde Elinas the mayster
of them, who had prechyd so moche to¹⁰ the Sarasyns ²⁸
that he had conuerted them all excepte tenne. they
bare hym in hand that they were glade to be chystenyd /
but theyr thoughtys was¹¹ otherwyse / for they .x. had
concludyd in theyr corages not to renounce y^e lawe of ³²

¹ for. ² Fol. cii. back, col. 1. ³ that. ⁴ then.

⁵⁻⁶ from the Table and. ⁶⁻⁶ we will go.

⁷ into. ⁸ selfe. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ vnto.

¹¹ were.

macomet¹ for to byleue on² Iesu Chryst / but they were content to be chrestenyd, to thentent that they wold not dye there for famyne. when Huon and the bysshopp
 4 was come to³ them the bysshopp⁴ sayd, ‘ Syrs, I requyre you all shew me your entencyon that yf with a good hart not coloured ye wyll be come chrestenid, and byleue on the lawe of⁵ Iesu chryst, & leue the false and
 8 detestable law of mahounde, the which is no thyngeworth.’ ‘ syr,’ quod they al, ‘ shortlye delyuer vs, for we⁶ rage for famyne, the which so sore ouer presseth
 vs,⁶ that we can no lenger endure nor suffer it’ / ⁷ when
 12 Huon⁸ hard them he lawdyd⁹ our lorde god, and had great ioye therof ; then⁷ the bysshopp and his chape-
 layne confessyd them al and assoylyd them,¹⁰ and in two great vesselles he¹¹ chrestenyd them all. Then they all
 16 cryed vpon Huon, and sayd / ‘ syr, for the loue of our lorde god, get¹² vs some mete / ‘ syrs,’ quod Huon, ‘ ye shall haue incontynente ynow so that ye shall be satysfyed.’ Then Huon and the bysshopp & his chapeleyne
 20 all .iii. went into the castell, and chargyd in¹³ theyr neckes mete ynowe & brought it to¹⁴ the shyp / and causyd all the marchauntis to syt down / then⁷ the mete was set before them / & the wyne powryd out in
 24 to cuppes / amonge other sate the .x. Sarasyns, who had reseyuyd¹⁵ chrestendome fayntly and falsely / and at y^e fyrist morsell that they dyd put into theyr mowthes
 28 saw that, they were greatly abasshyd, and regardyd eche other, and durst not aproche to towche y^e mete, for they¹⁶ went all to haue¹⁶ dyed / ‘ syrs,’ quod Huon,

Their hunger is, however, so great that they consent to baptism, without believing in Christianity.

After all are baptiz'd they cry out for food.

Meat and wine are set before them in the castle,

but the ten who had received the rite falsely, died on tasting the first morsel.

The rest of the converts fear to eat, lest they die also,

¹ Mahomet. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. cii. back, col. 2.

⁵ God the Father, and of his Son our Lord and Sauour.

⁶⁻⁶ be so hungrie and thirstie, that we are almost famished, the which ouerpresses vs so much.

⁷ and. ⁸ had well. ⁹ humbly thanked.

¹⁰ of all their sinnes. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² glie.

¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ into. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ had thought that they would have all.

but Huon
reassures them.

After the meal
the men carry
up the merchand-
ise in their ship
into the castle.

They are de-
lighted with the
fair aspect of the
garden and the
rooms of the
castle.

A happy time
they spend in
their new abode,

be not dismayde of¹ this; for these .x. men *that* are dede dyd baptysē them selues but aloneley to sauē theyr lyues, & to haue mete / and not with² good harte,³ nor for the loue of⁴ god / therfore be not afryde, ete and 4 drynke at your ease / for ye shall want none⁵ / when the other marchauntys vnderstode by Huon how *that*
⁶they that dyed were no trew chysten men they were⁷ abasshyd / and so fell to theyr mete & drynke / ⁸when 8 they had eten & dronken at theyr pleasure they rose and toke all the ryches that was⁹ in the shyp, and caryed it vp into the castell / ⁸when they came there they had great ioy and pleasure to beholde the halles 12 and rych chambres that were there: so moch gold and¹⁰ syluer and other ryches they sawe there *that* they had therof great maruayle. Then they behelde the rych beddys and chambres aparaylyd wheras they 16 myght reste them. ⁸Then they saw the fayre gardayne so pleasaunt and dylectable¹¹ to beholde / ¹²the more they regardyd it the fayrer it semed to¹³ them / the plase was of lenthe and brede a bowe shote & more. 20 And when the owre cam for supper / then Huon led them down into the seller, and after into the¹⁴ chambre where as there was mete and drynke plente / and after supper they went agayne into y^e palays, and laye in 24 the ryche beddys that they founde there redy, and in the mornynge the bysshope and his chapelayne sange¹⁵ masse before Huon and all the other that were there present / and when they wolde ete they wente to the 28 plase acustomyd, & there they founde always redy euery thynge that they desyryd¹⁶ / in the day tyme they wold be in y^e gardayne to sporte them / oftentymes the bysshope prechyd to¹³ them and confessyd them.¹⁷ 32

¹ nor abasshed at. ² a. ³ conscience. ⁴ almighty.

⁵ nothing, but haue all thinges at your wish.

⁶ Fol. ciii. col. 1. ⁷ greatly. ⁸ and. ⁹ were.

¹⁰ ayd in text. ¹¹ delightfull. ¹² that. ¹³ vnto.

¹⁴ rich. ¹⁵ did sing. ¹⁶ or wisht for. ¹⁷ of all their sinnes.

Thus they were there¹ together the space of a moneth,
in great pleasure and solas. But who so euer had ioye
Huon had none, for his abydynge there greatly anoyed²
 4 hym / ³oftentymes he wolde complayne for his wyfe⁴
Esclaramonde, and for his daughter Claryet, and sayde,
' Dame,⁵ as oftentymys⁶ as I remembre what daunger I
7 haue lefte you in my harte nere departeth out of my
8 body / a cursyd emperor, thou causethe me to suffer
moch yll when I thynke that by this tyme thou hast
taked my citye / my wyfe / and my chylde, and set
them in thy preson / I wold yf it were the pleasure of
12 our lorde god that they were here with me. Then
I wolde neuer departe⁸ hens : and no more I shal do
without it by the grace of god / A, syr,⁹ kynge Oberon,
ye haue gyuen me your¹⁰ realme of the fayry ; yf it
16 might be your pleasure nowe¹¹ to socoure me as to
delyuer me⁸ hense, and to ayde me to dystroy this
emperoure who hathe done me so moche yll.¹²

but Huon
grieves for his
wife and
daughter.

He prays for
their safety,
and begs Oberon
to aid him against
the German
emperor.

¶ How Huon was borne by a gryffon out of
20 the castell of the Adamant, and how he
slew the gryffon and v other yonge gryf-
fons / and of the fountayne / of the fayre
gardayne / & of the frute of the tree nere
24 to the fountayne.

Ca. C.xx.

28



Hus as ye haue harde Huon past¹³ the
tyme in the castel of the Adamant, and
on¹⁴ a daye he lenyd and lokyd out at a
wyndowe into the see warde / and he saw
a farre of a great byrde come flyyng¹⁵

Huon perceives
a great bird

¹ all. ² greeued. ³ for. ⁴ the faire Ladie.

⁵ Madame. ⁶ often. ⁷ Fol. ciii. col. 2. ⁸ from.

⁹ noble. ¹⁰ the. ¹¹ so much.

¹² for euer were I bound to your Mightiness. ¹³ away.

¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ feyng in text.

flying towards
the castle,

which alights
on a ship near
the rock of
adamant.

With its talons
it seizes one of
the ten Saracens
who lately died,
but who were
still whole and
sound.

The bird, which
is a griffin, carries
the man up into
the air like a
hawk bearing a
pigeon.

Afar off Huon sees
a crystal rock,
whither the bird
flies,
and he longs to
visit it.

He thinks that
the griffin will
return the next
day for more
prey, and that,
arming himself
securely and
lying among the
dead men, he
might be carried
away by the
griffin.

He resolves to
wait, however,
to see if the bird
returns again.

thetherwarde / this byrd or fowle was bygger then any
hors in the worlde / wheroft he had great maruayle.
Then he saw where it cam to the same porte, and
lyghtyd in¹ the maste of a great shyp, and sawe how 4
for² the weyght of the fowle the mast had nere hand
broke asonder. Then after he sawe the fowle a lyght
downe into the shyp ; and toke with his talantys one
of the .x. men ³that⁴ dyed bycause they wolde not 8
bileue fermely on¹ god⁵ / they coud not putrefye, but
lay styll in the shype all hole and sounde ; then the
fowle⁶ lyfte hym vp into the ayre and carayed him
awaye as lyghtly as a hauke wold carry a pegyon. 12
Huon, who saw this, had great maruayle, and behelde
the Gryffon whiche way he dyd flye ; and as far of as
he myght se he sawe to his semylytude a great rocke
as whyght to the syght as Crystall / ⁷then he sayd to 16
hymselfe⁸ ‘ wold to god ⁹I were there, I thynke it be
some place inhabytale⁷;’ then he thought to¹⁰ hym-
selfe to com thether agayne the next daye to se yf the
Gryffon wolde come agayne to fech his praye : yf he dyd 20
he thought yf he wolde be out of that¹¹ castell, the
gryffon myght bere hym armyd so¹² suerly that he
shuld do hym no hurte with his talantis / thinkynge to
lye downe armyd with his sword in his hande amonge 24
the dede men / and when the Gryffon had brought
him wher his yonge byrdes were / then to fyght with
the Gryffon / yet he thought or¹³ he wolde thus do he
wolde agayne se yf the Gryffon cam and held the same 28
way as he dyd before / for he thought suerly yf he
retournyd to the same plase it muste nedys be some
londe / for he thought⁹ it¹⁴ impossyble to get out of
that castell by any other maner of wayes. Then Huon 32

¹ vpon. ² with. ³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 1.

⁴ that that in text. ⁵ and of his sonne Iesu Christ.
⁶ fowfe in text. ⁷ and. ⁸ I. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ within.
¹¹ the. ¹² as. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ were a thing.

retournyd to the gardayne to the bysshop and to¹ the other compayne, and made no semblaunce of that he had thought to do;² then he talked with them of 4 dyuerse maters. And when the tyme came they went to ete and drynke as they had bene acustomyd to do before. when nyght came and that Huon was in his bedde he lay and studyed of the conuayaunce of the 8 gryffon / desyryng greatly for the daylight³ to go and se yf the Gryffon returnyd to feche his⁴ praye / when day came, Huon rose and harde mas,⁵ then he went to the wyndowe and lokyd there so longe that at the laste 12 he sawe a farre of where the Gryffon came flyynge fro the same place as he⁶ hadde done the day before / and came and sate downe on⁷ the same maste, beholdynge the dede men that laye vnder hym,⁴ whiche of them he⁶ myght 16 take to his⁴ pray / Huon beheld hym⁴ and sawe howe he⁶ was a crewell fowle. His⁴ becke⁸ was maruaylously greate / his⁴ eyen as great as a basyn, and more redder than the mouthe of a fornays / and his⁴ talantys 20 so great and so longe that ferfull it was to beholde hym⁴ / and then at last he⁶ alyghtyd downe into the shyp and toke one of the dede men⁹ in his⁴ talantis, and so mountyd into the ayre / and flewe the same 24 way as he⁶ dyd the day before. Huon behelde hym¹⁰ well, and sawe howe¹¹ he⁶ flewe to the whyght rocke. This rocke was callyd the rocke of Alexander / for when Alexander passyd the desertys of Inde, and 28 wente to speke with the trees of the sonne / and of the mone / he came to¹ y^e same rocke, and at his returne he baynyd¹² hym in a fountayne nere to the rocke, and there he taryed a sartayne space and sawe there many 32 thynges. Now let vs leue spekyng of this rocke and retourne to¹ Huon / who fyxed his corage / that he

He says no word
of his plan to his
companions.

The next day the
griffin returns
and seizes another
corpse.

Huon notices that
the bird is very
horrible to look
upon.

It flies away to
the crystal rock,
which is called
the rock of
Alexander,

because Alexander
once stayed there.

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 2. ⁴ her.

⁵ seruice and. ⁶ she. ⁷ vppon. ⁸ necke.

⁹ bodies. ¹⁰ the Griffen. ¹¹ that. ¹² bathed.

determinid to be borne thens by the Gryffon, and sayde to¹ hymselfe that he had rather aduenture dethe then to abyde any lenger there / for he hadde so² great desire to se his wyfe and his child that he put fro hym 4 all fere of dethe.

Then Huon sawe that the Gryffon was gone with his³ praye, he went to the⁴ bysshop and⁵ his company, and shewyd⁵ them all that he had sene and thought to 8 do.⁶ when they⁷ harde Huon they began greatly⁸ to wepe, and wrange theyr handys, and⁹ tare theyr here, makynge the greatest sorowe¹⁰ of¹¹ the worlde, and cryed out and sayd / ‘a, cosyn,’ quod the bysshop, 12 ‘by y^e grace of god ye shall neuer take on¹² you suche a folye / ye ought not to seke for¹³ your owne dethe soner then it is the pleasure of god that your owre be come ; syr, for goddes sake forsake vs not / but tary 16 here with vs.’ ‘Frendys,’ quod Huon,¹⁴ ‘I remembre the daunger that I lefte my wyfe, and my chylde, and my citye, and lordis, and burgesses, and comunaltye¹¹ / my harte is so sorrowfull¹⁵ therof,¹⁶ that that it nere 20 hande sleeth me / ye shall abyde here in the sauegarde of our lord god / and I wyll take the aduenture that god wyll sende me, and I praye you¹⁷ speke no more to⁵ me in this mater.’¹⁸ when they saw¹⁹ they coude not 24 tourne Huon fro his enterpryse, the sorow that they made no man can declare / that nyght they passid in great sorowe and doloure / tyl²⁰ the next mornynge that Huon arose. Then he came to the bysshope, and 28 was confessyd and receyuyd²¹ his maker²¹ / then he dynyd wel with his companye / ⁶then after²² he went & armyd hym²³ in dobyll armure and with mayle on¹² his

¹ within. ² a. ³ her. ⁴ Fol. C.iiii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ and. ⁷ all had. ⁸ pitifully. ⁹ did.

¹⁰ and greefe. ¹¹ in. ¹² vpon. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ when. ¹⁵ and so agreeued. ¹⁶ thereat. ¹⁷ to.

¹⁸ for, by the grace of god I will venture it. ¹⁹ that.

²⁰ vntill. ²¹⁻²¹ at his hand. ²² dinner. ²³ himselfe.

Huon reveals his plan to the bishop and his company, who are very dolorous on hearing him.

The bishop declares that Huon seeks his own death.

Huon replies that his anxious fears for his wife and daughter well-nigh kill him.

Huon is resolved to carry out his device, and is confessed by the bishop.

leggys, and helme on¹ his hede, and gyerte his sword abought hym, and when he was redy, and sawe² it was tyme to departe, he toke his leue of the bysshoppes and
 4 of all the other, and commaundyd³ them ⁴to⁴ god.
 when the good bysshoppes saw his departure he made great sorowe, and so dyde all the other / but none of them durste speke any more to⁵ hym / the bysshoppes
 8 embrasyd hym at his departynge, and sayde, ‘cosyn,
 in⁶ the ⁷sauegarde of ⁸our lorde⁸ Iesu chrysste I
 commende you, and that he may of his grace preserue you fro all your enemyes.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘the
 12 great desyre that I haue to ayde and socoure her whome I lefte in great pouertye and dought of her lyfe
 constrainethe me thus to departe / for yf I go not by
 this m[ea]nes I must euer abyde here, and then ⁹shall
 16 I false her my promyse / and I wyll kepe my faythe
 and⁹ promys. Thus I recommend you to⁵ god.¹⁰
 Then he departyd fro them and passyd out of the gate,
 and went downe the stayres and went in to the shyppe,
 20 and then he lokyd into the see and sawe where the
 gryffon was comynge / ¹⁰when he parseyued that he laye
 downe amonge the ded men withe his sword nakyd in
 his hande, and helde it on¹¹ his thyce by cause it shulde
 24 not fall in⁶ the see ; and as sone as he was layd
 grouelynge¹² a monge the dede men, the Gryffon came
 and¹³ restyd on a¹³ shyp maste as he¹⁴ was acustomyd
 to do / and he¹⁴ was so heuy¹⁵ that the mast¹⁶ bent nye¹⁶
 28 asonder. when Huon saw that, he was in great fere,
 and callyd vp on our lorde Iesu chrysste for ayde and

He arms himself
fully in strong
armour,

and takes leave of
his companions.

Huon passes out
of the gate of the
castle, and down
the steps, and into
the ship.

The griffin
approaches,
and Huon lies
down among the
dead men with
his sword drawn.

He trembles
for fear,

¹ vpon. ² that. ³ commended.

⁴—⁴ all into the sauegarde of almightyie. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ to. ⁷ Fol. C.iiii. col. 2.

⁸—⁸ almighty god and of his Sonne our Lord and Sauour.

⁹—⁹ I shall breake my promise vnto her, but by the grace
of god I will keape my faithfull.

¹⁰ and. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² crewling.

¹³—¹³ alighted vpon the. ¹⁴ she. ¹⁵ and so great.

¹⁶—¹⁶ was neere hand broken.

socoure, and to sauē hym fro y^e fell¹ Gryffon / & the Gryffon, lokynge for his² pray, saw where Huon lay armyd / wherby he semyd more greater then any of the other dede men / the Gryffon desyryd to haue hym 4 to his² nest to gyue hym to³ his² yonge byrdis / ⁴so he⁴ cam downe into the shyppe and toke Huon in his² clees, and straynyd hym so faste by bothe sydes *that* his clees enteryd into the fleshe for all his harnays,⁵ so 8

but the griffin
seizes him,
and its claws
pierce his armour.

Huon suffers great
pain,
and prays to God
for help.

The griffin bears
him to the white
rock, and, laying
him down, goes
to a fountain to
drink.

Huon rises,
and sees a forest
at hand.

The griffin swoops
down upon him to
devour him,
and Huon pre-
pares to defend
himself.

that the blode issued out, and Huon was in that dystresse that all his body trymbelyd, & petuously he callyd vpon our lorde god for ayde⁶ / but he durst not stere for any Payne that he felt,⁷ the Gryffon⁸ bare hym 12 so hye and so far that in lesse then thre owres he⁹ bare hym to y^e whyght rocke / and there layde hym downe, and for trauayle that the gryffon had he¹⁰ flewe downe the rocke to a fountayne to drynke / the whiche 16 fountayne was of such great vertue that the bountye therof coude not be descryuyd / and Huon, who lay on¹¹ the rocke was sore very for faynt, for the blude that he had loste / ¹²thought in¹³ hymselfe that yf euer 20 he wolde scape fro that daunger it was tyme for hym¹⁴ to shewe then¹⁵ his prowes / then he rose vp and lokyd rounde abought hym / and sawe howe¹⁶ there was nere hym a fayre foreste / then he prayed³ our lorde god to 24 ayd⁶ hym to depart¹⁷ thens in sauegard, and that he myght ones¹⁸ retourne into his owne countre to se hys wye and chyld, whome he so well louid, then anone he sawe y^e gryffon / who had sene Huon ryse vp ; then 28 she came wiþe her mouthe open to haue deuowryd Huon, who¹⁹ was repenished with hye prowes,¹ came agaynst the Gryffon who had her pawes redy open to haue grypyd Huon / ¹⁹who was light and quycke, gane 32

¹ cruel. ² her. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ and then she.

⁵ armour. ⁶ and succour. ⁷ Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 1.

⁸ did. ⁹ she did. ¹⁰ she. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² he.

¹³ within. ¹⁴ then. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ that.

¹⁷ from. ¹⁸ againe. ¹⁹ but he.

the Gryffon such a stroke with his sworde that he
 strake of one of his¹ fete by the ioynte, and so the
 gryffon fell to the erth and gaue such a crye that the
 4 younge Gryffons, beyng in theyr neste in the foreste,
 harde the crye and knewe wel that it was the voys of
 theyr mother / father had they none, for he was slayne
 but a lytell before by a kynge of perce with his
 8 archers / bycause the Gryffon had slayne the kyngys
 horse for mete for his yong.² Thus when they hard
 the crye of theyr mother they rose vp in to the ayre,
 they were .v. in noumbre; they came all atons with
 12 open wyngis vpon Huon / ³when he ⁴sawe them⁵ all .v.
 comynge on⁶ hym he had great fere / he strake the
 fyrske on⁶ the necke⁷ that he strake of the hede clene
 fro the body. Then the seconde seysyd Huon by the
 16 mayle, that yf he had not stryken of his¹ legge he had
 borne hym vp into the ayre / but Huon gaue hym
 such a stroke that the legge hangyd stylly at the lap of
 his⁸ mayle, then³ he toke it of with his hande and
 20 caste it to the erthe / and with another stroke he slewe
 that Gryffon / ³Then came the thyrde and gaue Huon
 such a buffet with his wyngis that made Huon to
 knele downe on⁶ one of his knees / Then Huon strake
 24 that Gryffon such a stroke on the wyng / that it fell
 clene fro the body. And the fourthe he strake of his
 legges / and with another⁹ stroake of his hed, and also
 then he slewe the other with the one wyng / then
 28 came the fyfthe Gryffon, who was bygger then any of
 the other Gryffons / ³then Huon strake at hym, and
 the Gryffon resyd¹⁰ vp his fete and spredde abrode his
 wyngis, and gaue Huon such a recountre that the noble
 32 knyghte was stryken to the erthe; when Huon felte
 hymselfe hurte and laye on⁶ the erthe, he callyd vp on

He strikes off
one of the
griffin's feet,
and its cry of
pain rouses the
young griffins
in their nest.

Five in number,
they attack Huon,

but he with great
prowess slays
them all one
after another.

¹ her. ² ones. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 2.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ in such sort. ⁸ the.
⁹ stroake. ¹⁰ reared.

god for ayd¹ / for he thought² he shuld neuer haue
rysen more / & wysshed hym selfe at that tyme that he
had taried styl in the castell of the Adamante with his
company, who for sorowe that they had when Huon 4
went into the shyppe / they durst not abyde the
comyng of the gryffon / but went and dyd hyde them
selues in the castell. And Huon, who was sore
woundyd withe thys fyfte gryffon, rose vp as well as 8
he myghte / and came to the Gryffon, who was redy to
dystroye hym with his becke and naylys. Then Huon,
lyke a vertuous³ hardyye knyghte⁴ toke corage, and
lyft vp his sword with bothe his handys, and strake the 12
Gryffon such a stroke on⁵ the hede that he clauie it to
the braynes, so the Gryffon fell downne dede to the
erthe.

¶ Howe Huon foughte with the great gryffon 16
& slew her. C. c.xxi.



Hen Huon saw that he had slayne the
.v. yonge gryffons he thonkyd oure
lorde god for the grase that he had 20
sent hym as to ouercome suche .v.
terryble beastis.⁶ then he sate downe
to reste hym, and layd his sword by hym, thynkyng
7 then to be in a suerty⁷ / but it was not longe but that 24
the great Gryffon, who had brought hym fro the
castel,⁸ came on⁵ hym with thre fete, and betyng with
his wyngis / ⁹when she saw her yonge¹⁰ slayne, she cast
out a great cry so that all the valey range therof / when 28
Huon sawe her comyng he was in great fere, for he was
sore wery with trauayle and losse of blode that it was
payne to sustayne hymselfe / howbeit he sawe well¹¹ it

¹ and succour. ² that. ³ and a.

⁴ Fol. C.v. col. 1. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ foules.

⁷⁻⁷ that they had beene all slaine. ⁸ of the Adamant.
⁹ and. ¹⁰ ones. ¹¹ that.

The old griffin,
who was the
mother of the
birds that Huon
had slain, flies
at the knight,
who is weak from
loss of blood and
the heavy strife.

was¹ nede to defende hymselfe / ²then he came to the Gryffon to haue stryken her, but he coude not, the gryffon was so nere hym betynge with her wyngis so ⁴ fersly that Huon fell to the erthe, and his sworde fell out of his handys, wherof he had great fere / for he thought hymselfe in al hys lyfe neuer³ so nere dethe as he was then / he callyd then ryght petuously for ⁸ ayde⁴ of our lorde Iesu chrysste / and the Gryffon⁵ bet hym merueylusly with her beke / wyngis / and talouns / but the doble⁶ cotys of mayle that he had on were ⁷ so strong that the gryffon coude not breke them / but yf ¹² the gryffon had not lost before one of ⁸ his fete,⁸ and loste so moche blod as he⁹ had done, Huon coude neuer a scapyd without dethe / the Gryffon so sore defowlyd and bet hym that he coud not ¹⁰ ryse vp.¹¹ Then he ¹⁶ rememberyd hym selfe how¹² he had by his syde a rych knyfe, the whyche he brought¹³ fro the castell of the Adamant / he drew it out and ther with strake the Gryffon on¹⁴ the brest .vi. great strokys, euyer stroke as ²⁰ depe as the knyfe wold go / and as his hap¹⁵ was this knyfe was of ¹⁶ two fote longe,¹⁷ and therwith y^e Gryffon fell downe ded / then Huon arose and dyde¹⁸ of his helme, and lyfte vp his handis to ¹⁹ the¹⁷ heuen & thankyd²⁰ ²⁴ god of his vyctory / ²he was²¹ sore trauaylyd and sore¹⁷ chargyd with blod and swete / ¹²he dyd¹⁸ of his helme, and behelde rounde abought hym, and coude se no thynge to trowble hym ; when he had taryed there a ²⁸ sartayne tyme he rose vp & lokyd downe the rocke, then² he sawe a fountayne in a fayre medowe / then he went downe and came thether / then² he sawe the fountayne so fayre and clere that he had great maruayle

Huon fears that
he shall be killed
by the monster.

Huon draws a
knife that he had
brought with him
from the castle,
and strikes the
bird six times in
the breast, so that
it died.

Huon is weary
with the fight,

and happily finds
a clear fountain
at hand.

¹ great.	² and.	³ neuer after himselfe.
⁴ and succour.	⁵ did.	⁶ noble.
⁸⁻⁹ her Legges.	⁹ she.	¹⁰ in no wise.
¹² that.	¹³ with him.	¹⁴ vpon.
¹⁶ length.	¹⁷ omitted.	¹⁸ put.
	²⁹ our lord.	¹⁹ vnto.
		²¹ so.

White jasper with flowers of fine gold and azure forms its masonry,

and at its bottom is gravel of precious stones.

Huon drinks the water.

All his wounds heal at the first draught,

for the fountain was the fountain of youth, which cures all infirmities.

Huon bathes in the fountain.

At its side grew an apple-tree,

and Huon tastes its fruit.

Beyond he sees an orchard,

therof / he sawe the masonrye¹ therof ryche, all of whight Jasper wroughte rychely with flowers of fyne golde and Asure / ²when he sawe the water so fayre he hade great desyre to drynke therof / then he dyd of 4 one of his dobyll armure to be the more lyghter, and so aprochyd to³ the fountayne / and sawe the grauell in the botome all of presyous stones / ²then he dyde⁴ of his helme and dranke of the water his fyll, and he had 8 no soner dronke therof but incontynent he was hole of all his woundys, and as fresshe and lusty as he was when he came fro the castell of the Ada⁵mant, wherof he⁶ thankyd our lorde⁷ Iesu chrysste. This fountayne 12 was callyd the fountayne of youth, the whiche was of suche vertue that what so euer sykenes a man or woman had, yf they baynyd them in the streme of that fountayne they shulde be hole of all infyrmyties. 16 Then Huon vnarmyd hym and dyd⁴ of all his clothes, and bathyd hymselfe in the streme to put away the blode and swete that his body was colouryd with all / ²when he was clene wasshyd, then he armyd hym⁸ 20 agayne with one of his harnes,⁹ and lefte¹⁰ the other / by this fountayne there grewe an appell tree chargyd with leuys and frute / the fayreste that myght be founde / when Huon sawe the tree chargyd with so 24 fayre frute he rose on¹¹ his fete and aprochyd to³ the tree,¹² and toke therof a fayre apple and a great, & dyd ete therof his fyll, for the apple was great / ²he thoughte¹³ he neuer dyd ete before of suche a frute / 28 ‘a, good lorde,’ quod he, ‘I ought greatly to laude & prayse the, synne¹⁴ thou hast¹⁵ replenysshyd me this day with such a fountayne and suche frute.’ Then he lokid on¹¹ his ryght hande and sawe a great orcheyarde 32

¹ workmanship. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴ put.

⁵ Fol. C.v. back, col. 1. ⁶ most humbly. ⁷ and Saviour.

⁸ selfe. ⁹ armours. ¹⁰ off. ¹¹ vpon.

¹² trre in text. ¹³ that. ¹⁴ seeing. ¹⁵ thus.

full of trees, berynge good frute of dyuers sortys, *that* great beaute it was to beholde them. This gardayne was so fayre that it semyd rather a paradise then a
 4 thynge terrestryall. For out of this gardayne there issuyd suche a smell and odoure *that* Huon thought that all the bawlme and spycery of¹ the worlde coude not cast out so swete a smell. ‘A, good lorde,’ quod
 8 Huon, ‘what place is this that I am in / for yf the Gryffon had not bene here I wold haue thought² I had bene in paradyse / good lorde,³ ayde and socoure me
 ‘so⁴ that I be not loste nor dede.’

which cast forth
so sweet an odour
that Huon thinks
that all the balm
and spices of the
world could not
excel its sweet-
ness.

12⁵ ¶ How an aungell aperyd to⁶ Huon and commaundyd hym to gather thre apples of the tree by the fountayne, and no more; and how the aungell shewyd hym tidinges
 16 of his wyfe⁷ Esclarmonde, and of his daughter Clariet / and shewed hym the waye that he shulde go⁸ thens. Ca. C.xxii.

Hus as ye haue harde Huon deuysyd
 20 by hymselfe at the fountayne, then he went agayne to the tre, and sayd howe² he wolde ete of that frute, and gatheryd therof as moche as shulde suffyce hym for .vi. dayes / and in
 24 that space he trustyd to come to some place where as he shulde haue mete suffycyente. Thus as he was goynge to⁹ the tre warde,¹⁰ sodaynely there aperyd to⁶
 28 hym a lyght shynynge, that he thought he was rauysshed in the¹⁰ heuen amonge the aungellys / therewith he harde a voyse angelicall, that sayde / ‘Huon,

Huon declares
that he will
gather enough
fruit to serve him
for six days;

but suddenly an
angel appears to
him,



¹ in. ² that. ³ God, I pray thee to.

⁴⁻⁴ in all mine affaires and enterprizes, and at this time.
⁵ Fol. C.v. back, col 2. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ from.
⁹ towards. ¹⁰ omitted.

and bids him
gather no more
than three
apples.

The fruit is the
fruit of youth:

it can cause a
man of eighty
years to become
as one of thirty.

Huon promises to
obey the angel's
will implicitly,

and begs for
news of his wife
and child.

The angel recites
the story of the
fall of Bordeaux.

knowe for trouthe that our lorde god commaundythe
the not to be so hardy as to gather anye more frute of
that tre / excepte thre apples, the which god is well
content that thou shalte gather, and no more / here 4
after they shal serue the wel / so that thou do kepe
them clenely & worthely as they ought to be kepte / it
shall not be longe or¹ thou shalte haue great nede of
them / the frute of this tree is callyd the frute of 8
youthe / it hathc suche vertue that yf a man of .iiii.
score or of a .c. yerys of age do ete therof, he shall
become agayne as yonge as he was at the age of .xxx.
²yeres. In yonder gardayne thou mayst go and 12
gather of the frute there³ at thy pleasure, and ete
what thou lyste. But ete no more of this tre⁴ that
thou haste eten of,⁵ therfore beware⁶ gather no more
therof excepte the sayde thre appelles / knowe for 16
trouthe⁷ yf thou breke my commaundemente / the
frute shall be derely sold to⁸ the.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'lawde and prayse be⁹ to our lorde god my creature,
when he shewethe his grace to⁸ me that am so pouer a 20
synner, and that he wyll thus vyset me / I shall neuer
consent to breke his commaundemente, I had rather
dye.¹⁰ My body and my sowl I recommande to⁸ his
good grace. But thou, the frende¹¹ of god, I requyre 24
the shewe me howe dothe my wyfe Esclaramonde and
Claryet my doughter, whome I haue lefte in my citye
of Burdeux, besegyd by the Emperoure Therry of
Almayne; I haue great fere *that* they be famysshyd 28
within the citye, and my lordis and companye that
I lefte there with her slayne and dede.' 'Frynde,'
quod the voyse, 'know for sartayne that the citye of
Burdeux is taken, and all thy men dede or taken, and 32
thy wyfe in pryson in the great toure of Magence,

¹ ere. ² Fol. C.vi. col. 1. ³ there *after* gather.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ I charge thee. ⁷ that.

⁸ vnto. ⁹ giuen. ¹⁰ then so to doe. ¹¹ Messenger.

where as the emperoure Therry kepeth her straytly, & thy daughter Claryet is at Cluny in y^e abbey, wher as she is wel seruyd / and the abbot, who hathe alwayes
 4 louyd the, he hathe her in his kepynge / and she is as well cherysyd there¹ as she were his *proper*² daughter.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'and whye was she brought thether?' 'Huon,' quod the voice, 'knowe well that Barnarde thy
 8 cosyne garmayne brought her thether.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'I praye you³ shewe me yf Gerames / ⁴Othon / & Rycharde⁴ be alyue or not?' 'Frend,' quod y^e voyce,
 'at y^e takyng of y^e ⁵citye they were slayne by the
 12 Emperour.' when Huon⁶ harde those petyfull tydyngis
 he began tenderly to wepe, complaynyng for⁷ Esclarame
 monde his wyfe and for the deth of⁸ olde Gerames, and
 sayd, 'frynde, I requyre you³ shewe me yf euer I shall
 16 scape, consyderyng that I am here closyd in with the
 see, the which goethe rounde a boughte this rocke / and
 I se no waye to go out there of / Gladly I wolde knowe
 yf euer I shall retourne into my countre to se my wyfe
 20 & daughter, who ar in great⁹ daunger.' 'Huon,' quod
 the voyce / 'comforde thy selfe / then¹⁰ shalt thou¹¹ see¹²
 ageyne thy wyfe esclaramond, and thy chylde¹³ Claryet,
 and thy good citye of Burdeaux / but or¹⁴ thou¹⁵ come
 24 there thou shalte suffer moche Payne and be in great
 fere¹⁶ / the emperour Tharry hathe conqueryd all thy
 countre and Geronnell is vnder his obeysaunce with the
 citye of Burdeaux.' Then Huon sware and made
 28 promyse that yf our lorde Iesu chryszt wyl¹⁷ gyue hym
 that⁸ grace that he maye¹⁸ retourne into his² countre,
 that surly he wolde sle the emperoure Tharry, what so
 euer ende come therof. 'Messanger of god, I requyre
 32 you³ shewe me by what maner of waye I maye passe

Huon weeps over
the death of
Gerames,

and asks whether
he may escape
from the rock
whereon he
stands.

The angel replies
that he shall only
rejoin his wife
and child after
he has suffered
more ill fortune.

¹ euen. ² owne. ³ to. ⁴⁻⁴ Richard and Othon.

⁵ Fol. C.vi. col. 2. ⁶ had well. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ the.

⁹ feare and. ¹⁰ thou. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² them.

¹³ Daughter. ¹⁴ erc. ¹⁵ shalt. ¹⁶ and danger.

¹⁷ would. ¹⁸ might.

The angel bids
Huon gather
three apples,

and follow a path
leading to some
clear water,

where a ship
awaits him.

He is to let the
ship go what
course it will.

The angel
departs,
bidding Huon
be faithful to
Jesus Christ.

out of this rocke?' 'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'go to the sayde tree and gather the thre apples as I haue sayde to¹ the before, and kepe them well and clenly / for thou shalte hereafter haue so moche profyghte by 4 them that at the ende thou shalte come to¹ thy desyre and wyll, and shalte be out of thy great payne, troubyll, & thoughte. Take this lytell pathe that thou seeste here vpon thy ryghte hande, and so go thou 8 downe to¹ the fote of the rocke, and then² thou shalte fynde a fayre clere water, & theron³ a fayre shyppe, enter in to it;⁴ 5 fyrst go into the gardayne and gather frute to serue the as long as thou shalt be in the shype / 12 then lose⁶ the shyppe fro the chayne that it is tyed by / and let the shyppe go whether as it wyll tyll⁷ it come to the porte where as thou shalte aryue. But be thou sure or⁸ thou come there thou shalt be in as great fere 16 as euer thou wert in all⁹ thy lyfe dayes,⁹ nor thou wert neuer in so great parell / I commaunde the¹⁰ to the sauengarde of our lorde Iesu chryste, I go my waye and leue the here.' Then Huon knelyd downe and held vp his 20 handis, and sayd, 'a, the¹¹ very messenger of god, I requyre the haue me recommaundyd to¹ my creature' / 'Huon,' quod the voyce, 'be of good conforte, for as long as thou arte trewe and faythefull thou shalt haue 24 ayde and socoure of our lorde¹² Iesu Chryst, and shalt attayne to thy desyres / but or¹³ thou come therto thou shalt suffer moche payne and fere. But after, as I haue sayde, thou shalte haue welthe ynough and 28 exalte all thy fryndys.' Huon was glad of that the voyce had sayd to¹ hym / but he was in great dyspleasur in that his wyfe¹⁴ Esclaramond was prysoner in the citye of Magence, and of the dethe of Gerames and of 32

¹ vnto. ² there. ³ therewppon. ⁴ but.

⁵ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 1. ⁶ vnloose. ⁷ vntill.

⁸ before. ⁹⁻⁹ the dayes of thy life. ¹⁰ in. ¹¹ thou.

¹² and Sauiour. ¹³ ere. ¹⁴ the faire.

other his lordis and seruauntys / and sayd to hymselfe,
 'yf he¹ maye the emperoure shall derely abyte that
 bargayne.' Then Huon went to the gardayne and
 4 gatheryd frute to bere into the shyppe. ²Then he wente
 to the fountayne, where as the tree of youthe was therby /
 and then³ by the commaundement of the Aungell he
 gatheryd thre apples / and trussyd them sauely ; and
 8 then he dranke of the fountayne at his pleasure. Then
 he departyd and toke the litell pathe, the whiche was
 betwene the gardayne and the streme that ⁴issuyd out
 of the fountayne / the whyche streme ran and fell into
 12 the great ryuer where as the shyppe laye ; and when he
 was enteryd into this streme he sawe y^e goodlyest
 presyous stonyss that euer he sawe, they were so fayre
 and so rych that the value⁵ coude not be estemyd, the
 16 grauell of the streme that issuyd out of the fountayne
 were all precyous stonyss, and they cast such lyght that
 al the mountayne and rocke dyd shyne therof, wherof
 Huon had great maruayle. Also he sawe the shyppe
 20 so fayre that he was therof⁶ abasshyd / the ryuer ioynyd
 to the ryche gardayne where as Huon had gatheryd
 fryte of .xiiii. sortys, the which he put into the
 shyppe / ²then recommaundynge hymselfe to our lord⁷
 24 Iesu chryst he enteryd in to the shyppe, and vntyed
 the shyppe fro the chayne, then the shyp departyd fro
 that porte / this ryuer was callyd Dyplayre. Thus the
 shyp went as faste as thoughe a byrde had flowen.
 28 ²Thus as ye haue harde Huon saylyd al alonge in this
 shyp on⁸ the ryuer of Dyplayre / ryght desyrous to
 brynge out of danger his wyfe the fayre⁹ Esclaramond.

Huon gathers the three apples.

He follows the path, which runs by a stream full of precious stones.

At the end of it he sees a richly-garnished ship,

and enters within it.

The ship passes very rapidly down a great river, called Dyplare.

¹ I. ² and. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 2.

⁵ of them. ⁶ greatly dismayed and. ⁷ and Sauiour.

⁸ vppon. ⁹ Ladie.

¶ Howe Huon of Burdeaux saylyd in a ryche shyp, and of the perelous goulfe that he passed by, and how he aryued at the porte of the great citye of Thauris in¹ Perse. 4

Ca. Cxxiii.



Huon's ship
was richly
bedecked with
gold and ivory.

A cabin within it
was roofed with
gold and
precious stones,
which shone
brightly through
the night.

Huon sailed alone
between rocks,

and saw no town
nor human being.

After three days'
journeying,
the rocks ahead
appear to close
above him and
form a dark
passage.

Huon enters the
passage, where all
is black.
The wind rises,
and the air
grows cold.

Hus as ye haue hard was Huon² on
this rych ryuer in his shyp, the
whiche was broderyd with whyght⁸
Iuory & naylyd with nayles of fyne
gold / & the fore castell of whyght
crystal medelyd with rych cassydony,

& therin a chambre, the selynge³ with sterres of gold¹²
& presyous⁴ stones / the whiche gaue suche clerenesse
in the darke nyght as though he hadde bene fayre day /
and the bed that Huon laye on² / there is no humayne
tonge can esteme the valewe therof / therin lay Huon¹⁶
euery nyghte, and in the daye⁵ abrode in the shyppe /
it was noyfull⁶ to hym for that he was alone without
company / & saylyd euery daye betwene two rockys
without syght of any towne or vyllage, or⁷ man or²⁰
woman / when he had bene in this shyppe thre dayes
and thre nyghtis he behelde before hym and sawe howe
y^e two rockis began to draw together and to⁷ couer the
ryuer, and it semyd to⁸ his syght that the shyppe²⁴
shulde enter into a darkenes ; howbeit, the ryuer euer
styl kepte his brede / but the nerer he came y^e darker
the passage semyd ; and when the shyppe came nere⁸ it
she went so fast that Huon thoughte⁹ no byrde in the²⁸
worlde could flye so fast / ¹⁰then it began to be sore
blacke and darke, and y^e wynde rose, and¹¹ haylyd so ex-
tremely that he thought the shyppe shulde¹² peryssh¹² /
and Huon was so colde that he wyst not how to get³²

¹ of. ² vpon. ³ wrought. ⁴ Fol. cvii. col. 1.
⁵ came. ⁶ yrkesome. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ it. ¹²⁻¹² haue perished.

any hete. Then he hard petuous¹ voyses spekyng
dyuers languages, cursyng the tyme that euer they
were borne. Then he harde thonder and saw lyghtenyng
so often / that certaynely he thoughte to² be perysshed
and ³lost.³ Thus Huon was in this shyppe in great
fere of lesynge of his lyfe / ⁴when he was hungerid
then he dyd ete of the frute that he had brought
ther / then agayne he was comfortyd in that the
aungel had sayd to⁵ hym that he shuld se againe his
wyfe⁶ & his daughter Claryet. when he had bene in
this case the space of thre dayes he sate downe on⁷ the
see bourde of the shyppe / ⁸then he harde suche a brute
so great and so hor⁸ryble that yf the thonder had fallen
fro the heuen, and that all the ryuers of⁹ the world had
fallen downe fro the rockes / ¹⁰coud not hauue made so
hydeouse anoyse / as the tempest made¹¹ of the Goulfe
the whiche is betwene the see of perse and y^e great
see occyan: it was neuer hard that euer any shyp or
galey scapyd that way without perysshynge / when
Huon saw hymselfe in that daunger deuoutely he
callyd to⁷ our lorde god, and sayde / 'a, ¹²very god,¹²
nowe I see and parseyue that without ¹³recouer¹³ I am
loste and come to my end / but syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure
and wyl that I shall perysshe, here I requyre¹⁵ your
benyuolent grace to accept my sowle in to your¹⁶
handys.' Huon had no soner spoken those wordys
but a wynde arose with so great a tempest that ¹⁷Huon
went¹⁷ then surly to haue bene ¹⁸lost.¹⁸ Then he sawe
comyng agaynst hym great barres of Iron red hote, that
fell downe fro ¹⁹aloft¹⁹ in to the ryuer before Huon,
in suche wyse²⁰ that when they fell into the water, by

Voices are heard
cursing their
ill fortune,

and Huon despairs
of his life.

For three days
all is unchanged,

but at length a
thunderous noise
is heard of
falling waters.

Huon believes
his end to be
near,
and prays to God
for aid.

A great tempest
arises,

and great bars of
red-hot iron
approach the
ship,

¹ pitiful. ² haue bene.

^{3—3} and neuer to haue escaped out of that danger. ⁴ and.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ vppon. ⁸ Fol. cvii. col. 2.

⁹ in. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ made *after* Goulfe.

^{12—12} good lord. ^{13—13} thy ayd and succour. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ beseech. ¹⁶ fauourable. ¹⁷ hee thought.

^{18—18} cast away. ^{19—19} on high. ²⁰ sorte.

but they fall
hissing into the
river, and do not
touch the vessel.

The ship runs
aground in five
feet of water.

Huon draws the
ship to land,
and leaps out.

He finds the
gravel to be of
precious stones,
and casts some of
them into his
ship;

they shine as
brightly as ten
torches.

Huon launches
his vessel again,

and travels on in
mid stream as
quickly as a
bird.

He has no food

reason of the hete of the barres, trowbelyd so the water
that ferfull it was to beholde.¹ Thus was² Huon a
great space / or³ he coude passe the Goulfe, the whiche
was so perelous / and the shyppe wente so sore by force ⁴
of the wynde / so that the shyppe wente out of the
myddes of the streme, and so⁴ was nere to the lond so
that the shyppe⁵ coude go no further.

¶ when Huon sawe and parsayuyd that the shyppe ⁸
was vpon the grounde, he thought then suerly to haue
bene drownyd. Then he toke an ancre and put it into
the water to knowe how manye fote the water was of
deppenesse. Then⁶ ⁷he founde it but v. fote. Then ¹²
he toke one of his ancles and caste it a londe⁸ & then
drewe by the corde tyll⁹ the shyppe came nere to the
banke syde / then he Issued out of the shyppe and
lepte a londe / ⁶then he saw sodaynely a bought hym a ¹⁶
great clerenes wherof he was¹⁰ abasshed, and wyst not
what to thynke / then he sawe before hym¹¹ all the
grauell in the water were medelyd¹² with presyous
stones / ⁶when Huon sawe that / he toke a scope and ²⁰
cast into the shyppe so moche of those presyous stonyss
that it gaue as great a light as thoughe .x. torchys hade
bene brynnynge / so moch of this grauell Huon dyd
cast into the shyppe that he was wary of laboure / and ²⁴
when he saw the shyp suffycyently chargyd / then he
enteryd agayne and drewe vp the ancre, and traueylyd
so sore that he broughte agayne the shyppe into the
myddis of the streme, then the shyppe went so faste ²⁸
that a byrd coud not haue folowid it. Thus he was .x.
dayes or¹³ he coude passe that Goulfe / ⁶thus day and
nyght he saylid, and¹⁴ great fere and sore opressyd for
¹⁵famyne,¹⁵ for he had no thyng to etc¹⁶ but frewte, so ³²

¹ it. ² was after Huon. ³ before. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ was grounded and. ⁶ And. ⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 1.

⁸ shoare. ⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ greatly dismayed and. ¹¹ that.

¹² mingled. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ with.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ through hunger and thirst. ¹⁶ nor drinke.

that therby he was waxed so feble *that he coud scant¹*
sustayne hymselfe on² his fete / and on² the .xi. daye
at the sonne rysynghe he sawe apere the clerenes of the
4 *day lyght, and then he was out of the darkenes*
& enteryd into the see of perse, the whiche was so
plesaunt and peasable that great pleasure it was to
beholde it / ³then y^e son rose and spred abrode his
8 *stremis⁴ vpon the see, wherof Huon was so ioyfull / as*
thoughe he had never felt Payne nor fere. Then a fare
of before hym⁵ he sawe apere a⁶ great citye / and in
the hauen ther of there were so many shypes and
12 *galyes that theyr mastys semyd to be a great ⁷forest,*
wherof Huon had such ioy at his harte that he knelid
downe lyftynge vp his handis to⁸ the⁹ heuen,¹⁰ thank-
ynge our lorde god that he hadde sauyd hym fro this
16 *perelous Goulfe. This citye was called y^e great citye*
of Thauris in Perse / and¹¹ lorde therof was a pusaunte
admyrall / who had made to be cryed¹² and puplysshed /
that all maner of marchauntys by londe or by see that
20 *wolde come to his citye shulde haue free goynge and*
free comynge without let or disturbance other in the¹³
bodyes or goodys, whether they were chysten men or
Sarasyns / so that yf they lost the worthe of a peny
24 *they shuld haue agayne .iiii. ¹⁴for it¹⁴ / and the same*
tyme that Huon came and aryuyd at that porte was the
daye of theyr free feaste / wherfore there was so
moche people of dyuers landys that they coude not
28 *well be nomberyd / when Huon was come into the*
porte he caste his ancre nere to⁸ the land¹⁵ syde, and
was ryght ioyfull when he saw¹⁶ that he was on² the
ferme londe. ³Then he had great desyre to know in

but the fruit he
had gathered at
the angel's
behest.

At length the
perilous gulf is
passed and the
sea of Persia
entered.

A great city comes
into sight afar off,
with a large
harbour full of
ships.

It was the city
of Tauris in
Persia,

and the admiral
of the city
allowed ships of
all countries to
tarry in his port.

Huon casts
anchor, and
lands.

¹ scarce. ² vpon. ³ and. ⁴ and spheares.

⁵ appear before him *after* sawe. ⁶ faire.

⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ and humbly. ¹¹ the. ¹² proclaimed. ¹³ their.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ times the value thereof. ¹⁵ banke.

¹⁶ himself.

what plase he was aryued in.¹ Now ²leue we² speking
of ³Huon tyll tyme shall be to retourne thereto³ agayne.

T Howe syr Barnarde departyd fro the abbey
of Cluny and went to seke for Huon his ⁴
cosyn, whom he founde at the porte of the
great citye of Thauris. Ca. C.xxiiii.



⁴ e haue hard here before how after the takyng of Burdeaux, Barnard, who was ⁸
cosyn to⁵ Huon, had borne Clariet,
Huons chylde, in to Burgoyne, and
delyueryd her to be kepte with y^e
good abbot of Cluny. After that Barnarde had taryed ¹²
there the space of .viii. dayes he was wery⁶ there, and
on⁷ a daye he sayd to⁵ the abbot, ‘A, Syr, I wold at
the takynge of Burdeaux I had bene slayne with my
cosyn Gerames, for when I remembre my good lord ¹⁶
Huon, my hart fayleth me in suche wyse that it is
great Payne for me to bere the sorowe that I endure /
and after⁸ when I remembre the duches Esclaramonde
his wyfe, who endurethe suche mesery that it is petye ²⁰
to thynke therof, dowbeleth ⁹my sorowe.⁹ Alas, what
shall Huon say yf he retourne and fynd his citye
taken, his men taken and dystroyed / and his wyfe in
prysone in great ¹⁰myserye and pouertye;¹⁰ I fere me¹¹ ²⁴
he shall¹² dye for sorowe. Alas, I se all that I haue
is loste for the loue of Hu¹³on my lorde / for the whiche
I care lytel for, yf he be in sauetye alyue, and that he
may retourne agayne / & I am in great dyspleasure ²⁸

¹ and whether he was arriued at a good Port or no.

²⁻² now lette vs leauie.

³⁻³ the good duke Huon vntill wee haue occasion to
returne vnto him. ⁴ Fol. cviii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ with being. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ afterward.

⁹⁻⁹ the sorowe and grefe that I haue at my heart.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ pouertie and miserie. ¹¹ that. ¹² wyll.

¹³ Fol. cviii. col. 2.

Barnard de-
livered Huon's
daughter Clariet
to the good abbot
of Cluny,

and tarried with
him eight days.

The faithful
knight laments
the misfortunes
of his lord and
his lord's wife.

that we can here no newes of hym neuer¹ syn he
departyd fro Burdeaux / I shall neuer rest as longe as I
lyue tyll² I haue founde hym, or harde som sartayne
4 newes of him' / 'cosyn,' quod the abbot / 'yf ye wyll
enter into this enqueste ye shuld do me great pleasure,
and for the great desyre that I haue had that ye shuld
do³ this vyage, I wyll gyue you a thousande florences
8 towardes youre Iorneye.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'I
thanke you.' Then the abbot delyueryd hym the
meney, and Barnarde made hym redy to departe the
nexte daye / and so he dyd, and toke leue of the abbot
12 and departyd, & rested not tyll² he came to Venys /
wher as he founde Galeyes redy to go to the holy
sepulture, wheroft he was⁴ ioyful; and so saylyd forth
tyll² they came to porte Iaffe, where as he wente a
16 londe⁵ with other pylgremes / and euer as he passyd
by the other portis he euer demaundyd for Huon / but
he coude neuer fynde any man that coude shewe to⁶
hym any maner of newes of hym. ⁷Then he departyd
20 fro⁸ porte Iaffe and wente to⁶ Ierusalem, where as he
taryed .viii. dayes. Then when he had done his
pulgrymage he toke forthe his iourney vnto Kayre in
Babylone / and when he came to Gascere, whiche
24 standethe at the enterynge of the desartys, he met with
many merchauntes who were goynge to the fre feast
which was holden in the great citye of Thauris. Then
he thought to demaunde of them whether so moche
28 people were goyng, and al in one compayne / and he
spake to⁶ a marchaunt of Geanes, & demandid of hym
whether ⁹so moche people wente together in one
companye / for they were to the nombre of .vi. score
32 marchantis chrysten¹⁰ and hethen. ¹¹Then the marchante
sayde / 'syr, as me thynke by you ye are of the

He longs to know
the fate of Huon.

The abbot
encourages
Barnard to seek
out his lord.

Barnard sets out
and reaches Jaffa,

and travelling
to other ports,
makes inquiry of
Huon in vain.

At Jerusalem he
tarries eight days,

and visits Cairo
in Babylon.

At Gazir he finds
many merchants
setting out for
Tauris.

¹ omitted. ² vntill. ³ goe. ⁴ right. ⁵ shoare.

⁶ vnto. ⁷ and. ⁸ the. ⁹ Fol. cviii. back, col. 1.

¹⁰ men. ¹¹ hee.

A free feast,
Barnard learns
from a Genoese
merchant, is to
be given at Tauris
to all comers by
land or sea,
Christian or
Saracen.

Barnard is
induced to set out
for Tauris.

For eight days
Barnard makes
fruitless search
for Huon in the
city of Tauris.

One day, how-
ever, a very rich
ship in the
harbour attracts
his attention.

couentre of Fraunce, I shall shewe you whether we go ;
syr, within this .viii. dayes the fre feste shalbe at the
great citye of Thauris, wher as ther shall come a great
nombre of marchantys as well chrysten¹ as Sarasyns, **4**
as well by londe as by see / & there is no thyng
in this mortal world but there ye shall fynde it / and
here of al maner of newes / fro all the partyes of y^e
worlde. Now I haue shewyd you whether we are **8**
goyng, I praye you shewe me whether ye wolde go
and whome ye do seke for ? ' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
' know for trouthe I am of the realme of Fraunce, and
I do seke for a knyghte who is lorde of Burdeaux, who² **12**
is callyd Huon, and it is long syn I departyd out of my
couentre, & I coude neuer here any thyng of his lyfe
nor deth.' 'Syr,' quod the Genouoys, ' yf euer ye
shall here of hym / yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall go **16**
with vs in to the realme of Perce to the fre feste at the
citye of Thaurys.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, ' in a good
owre I haue met with you / I shall not leue your
company tyll³ ye come there, to se yf god wyll send **20**
me so good a⁴ fortune to fynde hym that I seke for.'
Then the marchauntis depart⁵ and rode⁶ to gether
tyll³ they came to⁷ the⁸ citye of Thauris / and
when they were logyd / they went a boughte theyr **24**
marchandyse where as they lyste / thus Barnarde was
viii. dayes in the citye goynge here & there, euer
enquyryng newes for that he sought for ; and on⁹ a
daye he went downe to the porte to⁷ the see syde **28**
where as many shypes¹⁰ laye at ancre, & ¹¹as he lokyd
abought he saw nere to the see-syde a lytell proper
vessell marueylusly fayre / and the nerer he came¹² the
fayrer and rycher it semid / for he saw great clerenes **32**
and shynynge within it by reason of the ryche stony

¹ men. ² and. ³ vntill. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ departed.

⁶ all. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ great. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ and Galleys. ¹¹ Fol. cviii. back, col. 2. ¹² vnto it.

that were there,¹ wherof he had great maruayle, and specially bycause he saw within the shyppe but one man clene armyd / he wiste not what to thynke / but 4 he thought² he was chystenyd ; then he aprochyd³ to the shyp and saluted Huon, and sayd / ‘syr, god gyue you good aduenture, for me thynke ye be a chysten man’ / ‘frend,’ quod Huon, ‘god sauе the.

Within it is one knight,
whom he salutes,
although he
knows him not
to be Huon
himself.

8 Me thynke by thy speche that thou werte borne in the good countre of Fraunce, by reason² thou spekest frenche, for I haue great ioy when I here that language spoken / and frynde I requyre the⁴ shew me where

Huon at once
recognizes the
speaker to be a
Frenchman,
but does not
perceive who
he is.

12 thou wert borne and what thou sekyste for here?’

‘Syr,’ quod Barnarde, ‘syn⁵ ye wyll knowe of my busynes, I shall shew you as he *that* is ryght sorowefull and heuy, and lytell shall ye wyn therby when ye do

16 know it ; but syn⁵ it is your pleasure, I shall shew you the trouthe. Syr, I was borne in the good citye of Burdeaux / where as I haue left my howse and herytage / to seke for my good lorde, sumtyme lorde of

Barnard, at
Huon's request,
relates the
causes of his
journeying.

20 the same citye / and he was callyd duke Huon, who went fro Burdeaux to seke for some socours whylles the citye was besegyd / & so it is my lord Huon retournyd not, nor it can not be knownen where he is becom, and

24 bycause the citye at his departyng was besegyd by the emperour of almayne, and the citye but yll furnysshyd with vitayle to mayntayne it longe ; and also it was so sore beten with engyns that y^e emperour wan the

He recites the fall
of Bordeaux.

28 citye parforce / & slew all those that my lorde Huon had lefte⁶ there excepte .iii.c., the whiche were taken prisoners by the emperoure and led into the citye of Magence, with the noble duchesse Esclaramonde,

32 wyfe to⁷ my⁸ lorde Huon, and she is kepte in a strayte prison, where as she vseth⁹ her dayes myserably, wherof

¹ therein. ² that. ³ neere. ⁴ to. ⁵ seeing.

⁶ Fol. cix. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ spendeth.

Huon recognizes
Barnard,
but sorrow
overwhelms him
so that he cannot
speak to him.

He weeps as he
thinks of
Barnard's faithful
service.

Barnard, still
failing to recog-
nize Huon, asks
him if he has
heard news of his
lord,

my harte is in suche sorowe¹ that when I remembre² it
my hart fayleth me³ / when Huon had well harde³
Barnarde he knewe hym wel; but he had no powre to
speke any word to⁴ hym, his harte was so full of 4
sorowe¹ for that his cosyn Barnarde ha¹ shewyd hym,
and y^e chefe⁵. sorowe was for the trowbyl of his wyfe⁶
Esclaramonde, who was in⁷ parell of deth. Thus Huon
was a great space and coude speke no word for sorow,¹ 8
and wiste not what to do. ⁸Also he sawe hys cosy[n]⁹
Barnarde, who had taken great Payne to serche for
hym / wherby¹⁰ he had suche petye that the terys fell
fro his eyen. ¶ when Barnarde behelde¹¹ that the 12
knyght gaue hym none answere / & saw vnder the
ventayle of his helme the terys of water fell downe fro
his eyen, he was therof so¹² abasshid that he wist not
what to saye. Then he sayd, ‘syr, me thyn[k]e¹³ ye ar 16
a chrysten man / and bycause I se and parseyue in you
that ye ar a man that hathe bene in many placys and
cuntries, therfore I desyre you to shewe me yf ye harde
euer any maner of spekinge of my¹⁴ lorde Huon duke of 20
Burdeaux / whome I haue sought for in many cuntries,
bothe by londe and by se, & I coud neuer here any
sartayne tydynge of him, wherof I am ryght sorry /
for yf I canne here no worde of hym by you I wyll 24
neuer hope more to haue any knowlege of hym / for¹⁵
I thynke I shulde¹⁶ haue some knowlege by you yf he
be aliuie / for yf I knowe no thynge by you I wyll
neuer¹⁷ seke hym further / but I wyll go into som¹⁸ 28
deserte to⁴ some soltry place, and there to do penaunce
and to praye to⁴ god for my good lorde Huon, and to
pardon me of all my¹⁹ offences / and I requyre you in

¹ and greefe. ²⁻² them. it neere hand slayeth my heart.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ cheefest of his.

⁶ the faire Lady. ⁷ great. ⁸ and. ⁹ cosyd in text.

¹⁰ whereof. ¹¹ saw. ¹² dismayed and.

¹³ thynde in text. ¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ shall.

¹⁷ Fol. cix. col. 2. ¹⁸ a. ¹⁹ sinnes and.

the name of our lorde¹ Iesu chrys² shew me what ye
be, and where ye were borne, and fro whence ye come,
that hath brought in your shyppe so great rychesse /
4 for I knowe sartaynly that in all Fraunce can not be
founde the value of so great a³ ryches. Nor the
pusaunte Charlemagne coude neuer assemble together
suche a³ ryches as ye haue in your shyppe.' when
8 Huon harde Barnarde, he sayde / 'frend, I haue great
maruayle of that I here you saye / for in my shyppe I
know nother golde nor syluer nor none other thynge
but my body and myne armure.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
12 'beware what ye saye / for y^e riches that I see in your
shyp, yf ye wyll selle it ye maye fylle agayne your
shyppe with money ; if ye wyll byleue me the treasure
and ryches that ye haue brought in your shyppe, the
16 valur therof can not be estemyd' / when Huon harde
that he had great maruayle, and was ryght ioyful /
then he lokyd downe into the botome of the shyppe
and sawe the ryche stonye there lyynge amoneg y^e
20 grauell, the whiche he neuer toke hede therof⁴ before /
for when he dyd caste it in to hys shyp he thought all
had bene but grauell to balayse his shyp withal that it
myght sayle the more surlyer. Then Barnarde sayde,
24 'syr, I pray you hyde it not fro me / wher haue ye had
this great treasure, and in what countre ? all the stonye
that be there I knowe the vertue of them all / for syn
I came out of my cuntre I was a hole yere with y^e
28 beste lapidary and knower of stones that was in all the
5 world / and he taught me his scyens ; syr, surly the
place wheras ye had them in is of great dynnite.'

'Frend,' quod Huon, 'I shall shew you the trouth /
32 fortune brought me by the goulfe of Perse, where as I
sufferyd moche Payne & troubyll / but thankyd be
god / I scapyd fro that hard aduenture, the force of the

and what is his
own name,
and whence he
came to Tauris.

He marvels at the
riches in Huon's
ship.

Huon had not
before perceived
that the gravel
he had cast into
his ship for
ballast was all of
precious stones.

Barnard
anxiously in-
quires the place
where they were
obtained.

Huon relates
his recent
wanderings.

¹ and sauour. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ of.

⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 1.

wynd that cam out of the Goulfe draue my shyppe out
of the streme / to the lande / and when I sawe I was so
nere the londe I went out of the shyp, and toke a
scopet & ther with¹ dyd east in of the grauell² by the 4
see syde to balayse ther-with³ my shyppe / not knowinge
that any presyous stonys had bene amongo the grauell ;
and when I thought I had caste in suffycient I enteryd
agayne into my shyppe, and so saylyd forthe more 8
suerlyer then I dyd before / there I had these stonys
that be in this shyp, the whiche ye say be of so great
value.'

Barnard perceives
in the ship the
foot of a great
beast,
and asks how it
came there.

'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I pray you wherfore
serueth yonder fote of a great fowle or beast that I se 12
hang yonder in your shyp, I can not tel whether it be
of a fowle or of a dragon / for it is a ferfull thyng to
beholde.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'anone I shall shewe
you / but fyrste I praye you shewe me what vertue & 16
bounte ar in these stonys the whiche ye haue so moche
praysyd / and also to shewe me to⁴ whome this noble
citye partaynethe?' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'this citye
is callyd Thauris, wheroft is lorde a ryche admyrall, who 20
is lord of all Perce and of Mede, who when he shall
be aduerteysyd of your comynge hether, he wyll haue of
you trybute as he hathe of other marchauntis / and as
for your stonys, two of them that I se yonder, and yf ye 24
gyue them for your trybute he shall be well contente /
and, syr, I shall ayde you in youre mar̄chandyse to the
best of my powre / the admyrall is a noble man in his
lawe, and of great credence.'

'Frend,' quod Huon, 28
'I thanke you for the curtesy that ye shew me / but,
syr, I praye you shew me the stones that be of⁶ moche
vertue, I wold haue the best layde aparte fro the
other.' when Barnard harde howe Huon desyryd hym 32
to shewe the vertue of the stonys / then specyalys
he shewyd Huon .vi. stonys, and he drewe them out

And he
replies to Huon's
questions as to
the name and
government of the
city whereat
they tarry.

Barnard points
out to Huon the
precious stones of

¹ f. ² that lay. ³ therwith *after* shyppe.
⁴ vnto. ⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 2. ⁶ so.

fro the reste and layd them vpon Huons shyld, and so greatest value in
 chase out .xxx. other / and shewyd them all to¹ Huon,
 and sayd, ‘syr, these .xxx. stony s that I haue layd on²
 4 your shyld ar of so great value that there is nother
 kynge nor emperoure that can paye the value of them,
 and specyally of .v. of them.’³ when Huon harde that
 he was ioyful. Then he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe
 8 fro Baruarde, and also bycause of the great hete that he
 was in he dyd⁴ of his helme / the whiche he kepte on
 all that season bycause he wold fyrst know of Barnarle
 some tydyngys or he wold be knownen to¹ hym / for he
 12 knewe⁵ Barnard well ynough at his fyrste comynge
 to¹ hym.

After Barnard
 had sorted the
 stones, Huon
 takes off his
 helmet,
 and reveals
 himself.

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux and Barnarde his
 cosyne knowlegyd themselues eche to other
 16 & shewyd⁶ theyr aduenture. Ca. C.xxv.

20



Hen Barnarde sawe Huon do⁴ of his
 helme he becam as ruddy as a rose,
 and was so rauysshyd that be wiste
 not what to saye or thynke, and sayde,
 ‘syr, I can not say trewly what ye
 be / ⁷but ye resemble so⁸ lyke Huon, whem I seke for
 that I can not tel whether ye be he or not.’ ‘Cosyn,’
 24 quod Huon, ‘come hether to¹ me and embrace me. I
 am he whome ye do seke for, / so they embracyd eche
 other in suche wyse that of a longe space they conde
 not speke one to another / at laste Huon sayd, ‘my
 28 ryght dere cosyn, I praye you shewe¹ me all the newes
 that ye knowe of Burdeaux syn my departynge.’ ‘Syr,’
 quod Barnard, ‘I shall shew you that I wolde fayne
 knowe my selfe, but fyrst, syr, I praye you shew¹ me
 32 the aduentures that ye haue had syn my⁹ departynge

Barnard recog-
 nizes Huon when
 he removes his
 helmet.

Huon inquires
 anxiously for
 news from
 Bordeaux.

Barnard begs
 first to know

¹ vnto. ² vppon. ³ and. ⁴ put. ⁵ his cooen.

⁶ the discourse of.

⁷ Fol. ex. col. 1.

⁸ much.

⁹ your.

Huon's ad-
ventures in the
East,

and the knight
relates them.

fro Burdeaux.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'yf I wolde¹
shewe you all the aduentures and fortunes that I haue
had syn my departyng fro you, it shulde² be ouer
long to shew³ it / but breuely I shal declare it⁴ / when 4
I was in⁵ the see a⁶ tempest rose vpon vs, the whiche
enduryd⁷ y^e space of .x. dayes with out sease⁸ / and
then Huon shewed hym howe he was in the Goulfe /
and what perel he was in there, & how he spake with the 8
Iudas; and howe he aryuyd at the castell of the
Adamant, and how his company there dyed for⁹
famyne; and howe he enteryd into the castell and
slew the serpente, and shewyd hym of the beaute and 12
aduentures that were in the castell / and howe he was
borne to¹⁰ a rocke by a gryffon / and how he slew the
.v. yonge gryffons, and after¹¹ y^e great gryffon whose
fote was in the shyp, the whiche he shewyd to¹⁰ syr 16
Barnarde, and declaryd¹² of the fountayne and gardayne,
and tree of youth; and of the shyppe, the whiche they
were in / and howe he founde it by the ryuer / and
how by the voyce of the aungell he enteryd into the 20
shyppe / and after¹¹ he shewyd what⁶ payn and parell
he sufferyd in passynge the¹³ gulf of Perse, and how
he was parforce dreuyn a londe,¹⁴ and there he cast in
y^e stony slypes, thynkyng it had bene but¹⁵ grauell / and 24
how he was as then come and aryued at the great citye
of Tauris in Perce.

Barnard declares
his joy at Huon's
safety after all
his perils.

¶ when Barnarde had well harde¹⁶ Huon, he
embracyd hym and sayd, 'a ryght¹⁷ vertuous knyght to 28
whome in prowes and hardynes none can be comparyd /
of your comynge I ought to be ioyfull, &¹⁸ thanke¹⁹ god
of the grace that he hath sent you' / 'cosyn,²⁰ quod

¹ should. ² would. ³ rehearse. ⁴ vnto you
⁵ vpon. ⁶ great. ⁷ continued. ⁸ ceasing. ⁹ by.
¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ afterward. ¹² discoursyd.
¹³ Fol. ex. col. 2. ¹⁴ shoare. ¹⁵ omitted.
¹⁶ and vnderstood. ¹⁷ deare and. ¹⁸ I. ¹⁹ oure lord.
²⁰ syr.

Huon, 'I ought greatly to thanke our lorde Iesu Chryst, in *that* I se you in¹ helthe; and nowe I praye you² shew me wat hath fallen in the countre of 4 Burdeaux syn I departyd³ thence.' Then Barnarde, all wepyng, shewyd hym euery thyng as it hal fallen, and shewed to⁴ Huon the maner how y^e good citye of Burdeaux was taken, and of the deth⁵ Gerames 8 and his company / and of the takynge of the⁶ duches⁷ Esclarmond,⁸ how the emperour held her in prysone in the cyt^e of Magence in great pouerty and myserie; and of his doughter Claryet, how he had 12 brought her to⁴ the abbey of Cluny, and set her in kepynge there with the abbot her cosyn. ¶ when Huon⁹ vnderstode barnarde, he made great sorowe,¹⁰ & sayd, yf god wold ayde¹¹ hym he wolde cause the 16 emperour to dye an yll¹² deth¹³ / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'wyll you apease yourselfe; yf ye haue trust in our lorde god, desyre his¹³ ayde and socoure, and let the whelle of fortune ryn / and yf ye do thus, and take it 20 a¹⁴ worth anythyng that is fallen vnto you ye shall not fayle, but ye shall com to⁴ your desyre, / thus with such wordys Barnard apaysyd Huon his cosyn / ⁸thus 15 they deuysyd together of dyuers thyngis / 'cosyn,' 24 quod Huon, 'I praye you shew me the vertue of thes presyous stony^s that ye haue layde aparte¹⁶ / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'the .v. that lyethe¹⁷ by themself hath the great vertu / this stone is of suche¹⁸ vertue that 28 he that bereth it vpon hym can not be poysonyd / also it is of suche dignyte¹⁹ that who so euer do bere it may go & come thrughe fyre without felyng of any hete though he were in a²⁰ brennyng²⁰ ouen / also yf

Barnard tells the story of the fall of Bordeaux.

Huon grieves over his wife's disasters.

Barnard consoles him with assurances that the Lord will help him.

Barnard tells of the virtues of the precious stones in the boat, and how one renders its owner invulnerable.

¹ good. ² to. ³ from. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ the old.

⁶ noble. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ and. ⁹ had well.

¹⁰ in his heart. ¹¹ and helpe. ¹² euill. ¹³ of him.

¹⁴ in. ¹⁵ Fol. cx. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ aside from the other.

¹⁷ there. ¹⁸ great. ¹⁹ and woorth.

²⁰⁻²⁰ hot burning.

This one Huon
takes for himself.

Barnard tells
of the virtue of
another that
preserves its
owner from all
discomfort and
from old age.

The second stone
Huon also takes.

Barnard tells of
the virtue of a
third stone,
possessing other
marvellous
powers,

and of a fourth
which has, among
its many virtues,
that of making
him who holds it
invisible.

a man fell in¹ the water hauynge this stone abought
hym² can not synke nor drownye / syr, this is y^e vertue

of this fyrst stone.' Then Huon toke it and kepte it
for hym selfe.³ Then Barnard toke vp a nother & 4

sayde / 'syr, here is a nother stone of suche vertue /
that a man berynge it abought hym can haue no⁴

hunger / no⁵ thruste / nor cold, nor shal not wax elder
by semyng nother in body nor vysage / but he shal 8

euer apere⁶ of the age of .xxx. yerys, nor fastyng
shall not enpayre hym' / then Huon toke that stone

and put it in¹ his bagge, and sayde⁷ he wolde kepe y^e 7
stone for hymselfe / 'well,' quod Barnard, 'syr, here 12

is another of suche bounte and vertue that he that
bereth it can not be hurte in armys, nor vanquesshyd

by his enemyes, and yf any of his kyn were blynde
and touche⁸ his eyen with this stone incontynente he 16

shall se agayne / and yf the stone be shewyd to⁹ a
mans eyen he shall incontynent be blynd, and yf a

man be woundyd¹⁰ tourne this stone in the wounde,
and incontynent he shol be hole' / when Huon hard 20

that he was¹¹ ioyfull, and sayd that he wolde kepe wel
that stone / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'here is a nother, the

whiche hath so great vertue, that yf a man or woman be
neuer so syke, shewe them⁸ this stone, and incontynent 24

they shall be hole of any maner of maladye / and
also yf a man were closyd in pryon in chaynes and

fetters, handys and fete,¹⁰ touch them with this stone
and the chaynis shal breke / and also yf a¹³ man haue 28

any cause to be pledyd in any court before any Iuge,
be his mater ryghtful or wrongfull, he shal wyn his

cause, whether it be for londis or goodys, and also yf a
man haue this stone in his hande and close it, he shall 32

be inuysyble, and may go wher as he lyst, and shal not

¹ to. ² he. ³ and. ⁴ neither. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ seeme to be. ⁷ that. ⁸ but. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ doe but.

¹¹ right. ¹² Fol. ex. back, col. 2. ¹³ any.

be sene. As ye shal se the profe' / for as he had the stone in his hande he closyd it, and incontynent he was inuysyble so that Huon coude not se hym, wherof

To prove its power, Barnard renders himself invisible to Huon.

Huon thinks he has lost Barnard for ever,

4 he was not content, for he feryd lest¹ he had lost his cosyn Barnard for euer, and sayd / 'a, good lord, thou hast geuyn me the grace to fynde my cosyn Barnarde / who shulde haue kept me company tyll² I had retournyd 8 into myne owne countre, and nowe I se well¹ I haue lost hym' / when Barnarde harde Huon, he laughed, and Huon who hard hym / gropyd all abought with his armes abrode / tyll² at laste he embrasyd hym, and 12 helde hym fast / and when Barnard felte that he openyd his hand, and then Huon sawe hym agayne, wherof he was³ ioyfull / and blyssyd hym at the vertue of that stone, and toke it and layd it vp amone the other in 16 his bagge, and sayde how he wolde kepe that stone ⁴for specyalye.⁴ Thus Barnarde dyd chose out the stony^s one fro another / & there were so many good stony^s that the value of them coud not be estemyd / then he 20 tournyd vp the botom of the grauell to seke out the best / and ⁵there⁵ amone the other he dyd chose out a carbounle / the whiche cast out suche a lyght as thoughe two torches had bene lyght / Barnarde toke 24 ⁶it and delyueryd it to⁷ Huon, and sayde / 'syr, be⁸ sure⁹ who so euer bere this stone vpon hym / may go dry fotyd vpon the water as sure as thoughe he were in a vessell / an^t also yf a man go in the darke nyght he 28 shall see as well as thoughe he had the lyght of vi. torches / and yf a man be in batayle, haugynge this stone on¹⁰ hym,¹¹ can not be ouer come nor hurte, nor his horse wary nor faynte, nor hurte, nor woundyd, / 32 when Huon hard that he smylyd, and toke the stone

but to Huon's joy, Barnard becomes visible once more, and Huon keeps the wondrous stone.

There are so many more stones, that Barnard finds it no easy matter to value them rightly. He chooses out a carbuncle that shines with the light of six torches, and gives it to Huon.

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ right.

⁴⁻⁵ especially, because it was of such a woonderfull great vertue.

⁵⁻⁶ omitted. ⁶ Fol. cxi. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ you.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ about. ¹¹ he.

Saracen merchants come to them, and marvel greatly at their rich ship.

They ask to be allowed to buy some of the precious stones,

but Huon will sell none till the next day.

The news of the ship's arrival is spread through the city, and the admiral comes to behold it.

He salutes Huon and Barnard, and demands the customary tribute.

and put it¹ amonqe the other. Thus as they were deuysynge together there came to² them dyuers marchauntys, Sarasyns, who with great maruayle behelde this lytell shyp³ they sawe it so fayre and rych, and so⁴ wel garnysshed with precyous stonys / that they thought al the marchaundysse that was there in the hauen was not⁴ to the⁴ halfe⁵ valewe⁶ of that they saw there ; then⁷ they aprochyd to² the shyp and salutid Huon, and⁸ sayd / ‘ syrs, is it your pleasure to sell vs any of your stonys / we are here dyuers marchauntys that wyl be glad to bye of them⁸’ / ‘ syrs,’ quod Huon, ‘ as for me as this day I wyll sell none tyll⁹ to morowe in the¹² mornynge,¹⁰ / therwith the marchauntys helde theyr peas and spake no more ; but there cam so many Sarasyns and paynyme to beholde the shyppe, that maruayle it was to be hold them ; so that y^e newes¹⁶ therof spred abrode in the citye / & the admiral was aduertysed therof / who incontynente, accompanied with his lordys, came to the porte syde wher as this shyppe laye at⁴ an⁴ ancre.

20

¶ when he¹¹ was come thether he behelde the shyppe, the whiche he thought fayre¹² and ryche ; and how that there was neuer kynge nor emperour that euer sawe¹³ any such, and it shone so clere by reason of the²⁴ stonys, that the Admyrall and all such as were with hym thought it had bene the sonne shynynge in the myddys of the day / then he aprochyd to² the shyp and founde there Huon and Barnarde : the admiral²⁸ salutyd them, and sayde / ‘ syrs, it aperethe wel¹⁴ ye be chrysten men / it is conuenyent that ye paye me the trybute that is coustomyd to be payed in this citye’ /

¹ into his bagge amonqe the other. ² vnto. ³ and.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ the. ⁶ and woorth.

⁷ then then in text. ⁸ if yee please. ⁹ vntill.

¹⁰ and then if it plase yee, you shall haue of them.

¹¹ the Admirall. ¹² Fol. exi. col. 2. ¹³ behelde.

¹⁴ that.

'syr,' quod Huon, 'it is¹ reason and ryght that we
paye you as we ought to do / syr, here be² two stony
the whiche I gyue you, and I desyre you to take them

Huon gives him
two of the
precious stones.

4 a³ worthe' / the Admyrall toke the stony and behelde
them well, and sayd / 'frynde, nowe ye maye go and
come into this citye to make your marchaundise at
your pleasure to your most profyght⁴ / for the gyfte
8 that ye haue geuen me is to me more agreeable⁵ then yf
ye had geuen me y^e value of .iiii. of the beste cityes of⁶
this countre' / ryght ioyfull was the admyral for he
knewe well the vertue of the stones : one was of suche
12 value⁷ that the berer therof coude not be poysonyd
nor no³ treason coude not be done nor purpensyd,⁹
comynge in the presence of hym that berethe this stone
but incontynente the doer shuld fall¹⁰ dede / and the
16 second¹¹ stone had that vertue and dynyte that the
berer therof coude neuer be perysshid by fyre nor
water / nor dystroyed by Iron, for though he were all a
daye¹² in a brynnynge¹² furnays he shuld not lese one
20 here of his hede / nor perysshe in the see. 'frende,'
quod the admyrall, 'the courtesye that ye haue done to¹³
me¹⁴ shall be¹⁵ rewardyd, I wyll¹⁶ that throughe out
my realme, as well of Perse as of Mede,¹⁷ ye shall¹⁸ go
24 at your pleasure to sell your marchandyse ; and no man
shall lette nor trouble you / but one thyng I wolde
desyre of you to shewe me what aduenture hathe
brought you hether / and of whens ye be, and of what
28 countre / and in what place ye haue found thes stones
wherof ye haue so great plente / howe be it I vnder-
stonde your language, wherby I knowe¹⁷ ye be frenche-
men / longe agone I was in fraunce, and dwelte there,

The admiral is
much pleased,
as he knows the
virtues of the
stones, which can
preserve their
owner from many
perils ;
he gives the
travellers per-
mission to enter
the city.

He promises to
protect them in
his own realm
as well as in that
of Persia and
Media,

and asks what
strange adventure
brought them
hither.

The admiral
knows their
language,

¹ good. ² is. ³ in. ⁴ and gaine. ⁵ acceptable.
⁶ in all. ⁷ bountie and dignitie. ⁸ no no in text.

⁹ purposed. ¹⁰ downe. ¹¹ other.

¹²⁻¹³ burning in a hot ouen or. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ this day.
¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ and commaund. ¹⁷ that.

¹⁸ Fol. exi. back, col. 1.

for he has served
in Charlemagne's
court.

and seruyd in the courte of kynge Charlemayne / &
was never knownen / I¹ haue² maruayle where ye haue
founde so many goodly stones / it is nere³ a .C. yerys
syn I was gyrtle with a sworde ; but I never saw so 4
ryche stones here before.

¶ How the admerall of Perce dyd great
honoure to⁴ Huon of Burdeaux, and led
hym into his palays, where as he was 8
receyuyd withe great ioye and myrth.⁵

Ca. C.xxvi.

As the admiral
seemed to be a
man of nobleness,
truth, and
freedom, Huon
tells him at
length all his
adventures.

He tells him his
name and the
place of his
birth,
how he departe^d
thence two years
back, and how
since that tyme
he has suffered
much pain and
poverty,
and how he set
out with seven
knights, his
chaplain, and a
clerk.

Contrary winds
came upon them
in their journey-
ing on the high
seas,



Hen Huon of Burdeaux⁷ vnderstode
the Admerall, he regardyd hym moch / 12
bycause he was a fayre old man, and
semyd to be a noble man,¹said, ‘syr,
bycause I knowe and se apaunte in
you great noblenes, trouthe, and fredome, I shall shewe 16
you at lengthe all myne aduentures without hydynge of
ony thynge fro you. Syr, know for trouthe my name is
Huon, and I am⁸ borne of⁹ the countre of Fraunce in a
city namyd Burdeaux ; and I departed¹⁰ thence abought 20
two yerys past, synne the whiche tyme I haue sufferyd
moche Payne and pouerte. ¶ when I departyd¹⁰ thens,
I hadde with me .vii. knyghtys and my chapelayne and
a clarke to serue hym, and we toke our shyppe at 24
Burdeaux, and we saylyd downe the ryuer tyll¹¹ we
come in the mayne see / then the wynde rose¹² con-
trarye to¹² vs, and so contynuyd a longe space, so that
our patron knew not where he was /¹ so at the last we 28
came to a porte, where¹³ we founde many shypes of
stran[ge] countres / and there we gote vs a newe
patron ; and as shortly as we myghte, we wente forthe

¹ and. ² great. ³ hand. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ triumph.
⁶ Fol. exi. back, col. 2. ⁷ had well heard and. ⁸ was.
⁹ in. ¹⁰ from. ¹¹ vntill. ¹²⁻¹² against. ¹³ as.

on our Iourney. But when we were comyn agayne
into the hye see, a¹ tempest arose so great² that we³ and a storm arose
nere hand all perysshdyd / this tempeste enduryd .x.

lasting for ten days.

4 dayes, so that we were fayne to abandone oure shyppe
to the wynde. And on⁴ the .xi. daye, we aryuyd on⁵
the perelous Gulfe, wher as we founde Iudas, who
betrayed our lorde⁶ Iesu christ: we were then in such
8 fere that we lokid for nothyng but when we shulde
perysshe and end our lyfe. But god alwayes his
seruauntis and suche at⁷ byleuethe in [h]is⁸ holy lawe⁹
wyll euer kepe and preserue them / he sent vs a wynde y^e
12 which¹⁰ draue vs fro that perelous Goulf, and brought
vs to¹¹ the castell of the Adamant¹² / and there he shewyd
the admiral at lenthe the beautye of that castell, and
howe there aryuyd a shyppe with Sarasyns, who were
16 robbers¹³ of the see, and howe they fought together, and
also he shew[ed] hym all y^e aduentures of the castell
that he had there, as well of his men that dyed for¹⁴
famyn as of them that be lefte there, & also he shewyd¹⁴

On the eleventh day they arrived in the perilous Gulf, where they saw Judas, and were like to end their lives;

then God in his goodness sent a fair wind, which drove them thence to the castle of Adamant.

Huon describes to the admiral the beauty of the castle, and shows all the adventures that he and his men met there.

20 how he came by vetyles. And also he shewed howe
he departyd¹⁵ thence, and was borne awaye by the
Gryffon, and howe he strake of one of his¹⁶ legges when
he fought with hym,¹⁶ after the gryffon had set hym
24 on⁴ the rocke, the whiche legge he shewyd to¹¹ the
admiral[ll] wherof he had¹⁷ great maruayle.¹⁸ Then
also he shewyd hym howe he fought with the .v. yong
Gryffons, and slew them / and also of the olde
28 Gryffon / and also of the fountayne wherin he baynyd
himselfe, and of the fayre gardayn, and of the tree of
youth that stode by the fountayne: and of the vertu of
the frute therof / and howe he dyd gather therof,¹⁹ and

Then he tells how he departed, and was borne away by the griffin to a rock, and how in fighting with the beast he struck off one of its legs, and this leg he showed to the admiral.

He then tells how he fought with the five young griffins and slew them, and of the fountain and the fair garden, and of the tree of youth by the fountain.

He, knowing its virtue, gathered some of the fruit,

¹ great. ² omitted. ³ were. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ at.
⁶ and sauour. ⁷ as. ⁸ gis in text.

⁹ and keepe his commaundementes. ¹⁰ Fol. cxii. col. 1.

¹¹ vnto. ¹² Pirats. ¹³ by. ¹⁴ discoursed.

¹⁵ from. ¹⁶ her. ¹⁷ wondersfull. ¹⁸ and.

¹⁹ of the same.

but was forbidden
to take more by
an angel sent
from God.

However, what
he had already
eaten and drunk,
healed the
wounds given
him by the
griffin.

The angel com-
manded him to
gather three of
the apples,
and showed him
the way from the
rock.

In a fair river
under the side of
the rock, he
found the ship
they were now in,
and a wind drove
his ship faster
than a bird.

He passed by the
Persian Gulf,
and suffered
torments there
for ten days,
and was thence
driven to the
land where he
found the
precious stones.
He did not then
know their value,
but took them
to balance his
ship.

The admirall
marvels greatly
at Huon's
adventures;
he has never
heard the like
before.

more wolde haue done but that he was defendyd¹ so
to do by an aungell sent fro god / but before I was
commaundyd² the contrary, I dyd ete³ both of the
frute and dranke of ye water of the fountayne, wherby⁴
I was⁴ incontynente⁵ all⁶ hole of⁶ the great woundes
that the Gryffon had geuen me.⁷ And, syr,' quod
Huon, ' knowe for trouthe that of this tree I gatheryd
.iii. apples, by the commaundemente of the aungell, and⁸
haue kept them suerly / then the aungell shewyd me
the waye howe I shulde go fro that rocke, and vnder
y^e rocke syde I founde a⁸ fayre ryuer, and there I
founde this shyppe that we be nowe in, and enteryd¹²
into it. Then there⁹ came a wynde¹⁰ and draue my
shyppe so faste that a byrde coude not ouertake¹¹ it.
Then he shewyd¹² vnto the Admyrall how he passyd
by the goulfe of Perse, & what tourmentis he sufferyd¹⁶
there, and howe he was there .x. dayes, and how he was
dreuen to the londe,¹³ wher as he founde those precyous
stones,¹⁴ wenynge to hym it were¹⁴ nothyng but grauell,
and¹⁵ he purposyd nothyng elles but to balays¹⁶ therwith²⁰
his shyppe, that y^e shyp myght sayle the more suerlyer /
and he sayd, ' syr, god, on¹⁷ hom I¹⁸ byleue, so aydyd¹⁹
me that I am scaped²⁰ thence in sauegarde.'

¶ when the admerall²¹ vnderstode Huon / he²⁴
²²maruaylyd greatly,²² for he neuer hard before of so
great²³ maruayles,²³ and was sore²⁴ abasshyd, and sayd,
' Frynde, I haue great maruayle of that I haue harde you
say, for it is nere hand .vi. score yere syn I came fyrist²⁸
in to this worlde / and I neuer harde that euer any man

¹ forbidden. ² to. ³ ete after both. ⁴ whole.
⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ when I slew them. ⁸ great.
⁹ Fol. exii. col. 2. ¹⁰ [quoth he]. ¹¹ haue ouertaken.
¹² discoursed. ¹³ shoare.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and he thought it had bene. ¹⁵ that.
¹⁶ ther therwith in text. ¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ stedfastly.
¹⁹ and socoured. ²⁰ from. ²¹ had well heard and.
²²⁻²² had great maruaile. ²³⁻²³ and wonderfull aduentures.
²⁴ dismayed and.

scaped alyue out of the Goulfe of Perse / therfore ye
maye well saye that the god on¹ whome ye do² byleue
hath shewyd that he louis you well, when he hath
4 sauyd you out of that perelous Goulfe, your god is
pusaunt, and louethe³ moche them that byleueth
on hym,³ he is false⁴ that byleueth not on⁵ his law /⁶
when he hath sauyd⁷ you out of .ii. suche Gulfes, and
8 also fro the castell of the Adamant, fro whense none
can departe, nor neuer dyd, nor I thynke neuer shall :
and also hath sifferyd you to see the Gryffons /
suerly ye ought to loue hym that hath geuen you that
12 grace / & fro⁸ the great maruayles that he hath done
to⁹ you, I wyll be chrystenyd & receyue your lawe /
but I fere me yf my lordis and men knewe therof they
wold sle me shortelye, for agaynst them all /¹⁰ I can not
16 resyste' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'to the entent that ye
shuld haue the fermer byleue in our lorde¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu
chrysste, I haue .iii. apples, the whiche hath such
verte in them that yf ye wyl byleue in our lorde
20¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu chrysste, I shall gyue you one of them, the
whiche ye shall ete, and incontynent after ye haue
eten it, ye shal become yonge agayne of the age of .xxx.
yerys, and ye shall be as fayre & as lusty as ye were
24 when ye were of *that* age / there is not so olde a man
nor so crokyd, yf he ete of this frute¹² and byleue
farmely¹³ in our lorde Iesu chrysste / but he shall
become¹⁴ as lusty as he was of .xxx. yeris.¹⁵ 'Frend,'
28 quod the admiral, 'yf it be so that by the¹² etynge of
this apple, I shal becom¹⁶ yong agayne¹⁶ as I was
17 of y^e age of¹⁷ .xxx. yerys,¹⁵ what so euer come of me

Huon's escape
proves his trust
in God, and God's
love for him.

In awe of this
testimony of
God's love and
power, the
admiral wishes
to be christened,
but fears his
lords and men
would slay him
if they knew of it.
Huon answers
that he will give
him one of his
three apples,
and if he eats it
believing firmly
in our Lord God
Jesus, he will
straightway
become young
again—of the age
of thirty years.

¹ vpon. ² stedfastly.

³⁻⁵ all men that stedfastly and vnfainedly beleue in his
holy lawes, and keepe his commaundements and.

⁴ and vntrue. ⁵ in. ⁶ but hee loueth you well.

⁷ deliuered. ⁸ for. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ Fol. cxii. back, col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and sauour.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and vnfainedly. ¹⁴ yong and as.

¹⁵ of age. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ as yong and as lusty. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ at.

The admiral
consents,
and hopes to
persuade all his
realm to believe
the same.

To this end Huon
bids him eat
the apple in the
presence of his
lords and men.

The admiral takes
Huon's advice,
and hand in hand
they go out of the
ship.

Barnard was left
to keep the ship,
which was visited
by many people.

The admiral led
Huon to his
palace.
In their walk
through the city
they were
regarded with
great interest by
men of all
nations.
The admiral
made a great
feast in Huon's
honour.

I wyll be chrystenyd and byleue in y^e law of Iesu chryst, the fere of dethe shall not let me to do it, for to longe I haue byleuyd in this false lawe¹ and detestable of Macomet / for yf I had² sene nor harde no more 4 then ye haue shewyd,³ I ought yet⁴ to byleue in your lawe / and I shall do so moche that I truste I shall cause all my realme to byleue in the same' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'and ye do as ye saye, ye shall be sauyd, 8 and I shall geue you the apple / the whiche ye shal ete in the presence of al your lordis & men. And when they shall se you wax agayne yonge,⁵ knowe for trouthe y^e maruayle therof shall cause them to byleue of⁶ Iesu 12 chryst, and to renounce theyr false ⁷macomettis⁷ lawe^{'8} / 'frend,' quod the admyrall, 'I byleue well as⁹ ye saye / and I shall vse my selfe after your aduyse' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande 16 & wente together out of the shyp; and Huon lefte Barnard there to kepe it / moch¹⁰ people was come thether to se the shyp, and ¹¹also for the great maruayles that they had harde fallen to¹² Huon; ¹³they behelde 20 Huon and had great marnayle of y^e honour that y^e admyrall made to¹² hym / for he led hym stylly by the hand tyll¹⁴ he came to his palays; as they passed thrugh the citye they were greatly regarded of men of 24 sondry nasyons / for Huon was so fayre¹⁵ a knyght¹⁶ that none coude be founde as then that myght¹⁷ compare with hym in beaute¹⁷; when Huon was come to the palays¹⁸ the admyrall made huon¹⁹ great fest and 28 chere, and the tables were set vp, & they sate downe to

¹ lawe after detestable. ² neither. ³ vnto me.

⁴ yet after byleue. ⁵ yonge before againe.

⁶ in our Lord. ⁷⁻⁷ and detestable. ⁸ of Mahomet.

⁹ that which. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹ Fol. cxii. back, col. 2.

¹² vnto. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ vntill.

¹⁵ in his visage, and so valiaunt. ¹⁶ in stature.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ bee compared vnto him.

¹⁸ whereas hee was honourably receiued with great ioy.

¹⁹ him.

diner; of theyr seruyse and metis I wyll make no longe rehersayle. ¹when dinner was done, the admiral commaundyd carpenters to make a great scaffold of 4 tymber before y^e palays / y^e which was coueryd with ryche clothes of gold and sylke, & therer was brought a rych standarde of golde with other thyngys;² then he commaundid throughout the citye that all hys³ barons 8 of his realme that were come therer to⁴ his fre feste, that they shulde all come to⁴ hym at an owre apointyd, the which they dyd; there cam so many straungers and other that there were mo assembelyd together then

12 a .C. & .I.M. men. when they were all there together, then y^e admiral, holdyng Huon by the hand, mounted vpon y^e rych stage, & dyuers other great lordis with hym;² when they were there the admiral stode vp

16 and sayde with a hye voyce to⁴ the lordys and to the people / 'syrs, ye that be com hether by my commaundement, know for trouth / the great loue that I haue had to⁴ you and haue / moueth me to saye and

20 to shew you the waye how that I and all you may come to eternal saluacyon, for yf we dye in this case that we be in, we shall all⁵ be dampnyd and loste by the false and detestable⁶way that you and I do hold /

24 therfore I counsayle and praye you for the loue that ye haue longe borne vnto me, that ye wyl leue⁷ the lawe of Macomyte and byleue in⁸ our sauour and redemer, Iesu chrysyt, who is worthy and holly, as ye maye se by

28 the euydente myracles that he hathe shewyd for his pouer knyght that ye se here by me.' then the admiral shewyd to⁴ the people all the maruaylous aduentures that had fallen to⁴ Huon / that is to saye, how he had 32 bene at the castel of the Adamante, and how the Gryffon bare⁹ hym¹⁰ thence, whome he slewe, and

Carpenters were commanded to make a scaffold of timber in front of the palace, and to decorate it with cloth of gold and silk. By command, at the hour appointed, all the admiral's barons came there, and many strangers and others besides.

The admiral, holding Huon by the hand, mounted upon the stage, and tells the lords and people in a loud voice that he is going to show them how they may come to eternal salvation,

by leaving the law of Mahomet and believing in Jesus Christ, whose worthiness and holiness is proved by the miracles he has worked for Huon.

The admiral then shows the people all the marvellous ad- ventures of Huon,

¹ but. ² and. ³ Lordes and. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ all after be. ⁶ Fol. exiii. col. 1. ⁷ with me.
⁸ the Law of. ⁹ did beare. ¹⁰ from.

.v. of y^e yonge Gryffons; and also of the fountayne
and gardayne, and of the freute of the tree of youthe,
and howe he had passyd the two Gulfes where as he
had taken y^e ryche stonys that he had brou[g]ht¹ 4
thereth / the whiche thyngis coude not haue bene
without the ayde² of our lorde³ Iesu chrysste, and also
he shall shewe before you euydente myracles that lesu
chrysste shall do for me yf I wyll take his lawe / for he 8

and how
such things could
not have been
without the aid
of Jesus Christ.

He then tells how
if he firmly
believe in Christ,
the apple of
Huon's gift will
make him young
again.

The people
answer that if
they see proof of
this, they also
will be christened,

but that of such a
miracle they had
never heard.

seyth to⁴ me that if I wyll byleue on⁵ his god, he wyll
make me to ete of such a holy frute, by the which I
shall become agayne but of the age of .xxx. yerys, and
as lusty as I was then⁶ / & therfore, syrs, yf Iesu 12
chrysste wyll do this for me I wyll be chrysstenyd' /
then all the people answeryd and sayd / 'syr, yf this
that ye haue sayd come to profe, we⁷ al be⁸ content to
be chrysstenyd, and to byleue on⁹ y^e lawe of Iesu 16
chrysste, and to leue the law that we haue long kept /
but we ar hard of byleue that this shall be / for
yf it be so, there was neuer harde of suche a¹⁰ myracle.'

¶ How the emperour, by reason of the apple 20
that Huon gaue hym¹¹ to eete, he became
of the age of .xxx. yeris / wherby he and
all the people of perce and Mede were
chrysstenyd, and of the great honoure that 24
the admyrall made to⁴ Huon. Ca. C.xxvii.

Huon, right
joyful to learn
that all the lords
and people were
willing to believe
in Jesus Christ,



Hen Huon¹² vnderstode y^e lordis &¹³
people how they were al¹⁴ content to
leue tneyr law and to byleue of⁹ Iesu 28
chrysste, he was ryght ioyfull, & thankyd
god with all his harte / then Huon

¹ broughht in text. ² and helpe. ³ and Sauiour.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ in. ⁶ at that time. ⁷ shall.

⁸ all after be. ⁹ vppon. ¹⁰ wonderfull.

¹¹ Fol. cxiii. col. 2. ¹² hadde well heard and. ¹³ the.

¹⁴ omitted.

sayde to¹ the admyrall / 'syr, ete of the appyll that I
haue geuyn¹ you / and then y^e people that be here
assembelyd shall see what grace our lord god shall
4 send you.' The admyrall toke the apple and began to
ete therof / and as he dyd ete he began to chaung
coloure / his here and his berde, y^e which were whyght,
began to chaunge and waxed yelowe / or² the apple was
8 clene eten, he was clene chaungyd, & his beautye and
strenthe as he was when he was but of .xxx. yerys of
age. Then generally all the people that were there
with one voyce cryed & requyryd to be chrysstenyd,
12 wheroft the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyfull,
bycause they saw the good wyll of the people was to
receyue chrysstendome / when the admyrall felte hym
selfe agayne yonge³ the ioye that he had at his harte
16 can⁴ not be declaryd, the people also were ryghte
ioyfull / the admyrall, who was a goodly prynce, toke
Huon by the hande and sayde / 'my ryght dere freynde,
blyssyd be the owre that ye came hether for me and
20 my people, ye haue brought vs into the way of
saluasyon and delyueryd vs out of darkenes, therfore I
wyl fro hensforth that in all my realme ye shall haue
your parte as wel as⁵ my selfe, and I wyll⁶ ye be so
24 obeyed' / then he embracyd and kyssed Huon mo then
.x. tymys, seyenge / 'frynde, blyssyd be the our that
euer ye were borne, and happy was that woman that
bare you in her body' / the paynmys and Sarasyns that
28 were there, seyng the great beaute that the admyrall
was of / and also the⁷ great myracle that they had
sene, sayde one to another, how they neuer had hard of
suche a myracle, and how that fro thenceforth they
32 that wold byleue on⁸ mahound were acursyd &
vnhappy / for they sayde⁹ his byleue / his lawe /¹⁰ his

tells the admiral
to eat the apple.

As he ate, his
white hair and
beard waxed
yellow, and when
he had finished,
he was in beauty
and strength as a
man of thirty
years.

Then all the
people cried out
that they wished
to be christened,
whereof the
admiral and Huon
were right joyful.

The admiral
offers Huon a
share of his
realm,

and embraces him
ten times.

Having seen the
miracle,

the people declare
that all who
believe in
Mahomet are
accursed and

¹ vnto. ² before. ³ and lusty. ⁴ could.

⁵ Fol. exiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ and commaund that.

⁷ woonderfull. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ and.

unhappy,
and they desire
to embrace the
religion of
Christendom.

A bishop of
Greece, who was
in the city as
Ambassador from
Constantine the
Noble, offered to
christen the
admiral and his
people.

Forty great
vessels of clear
water were
brought,
the bishop hal-
lowed them,
and baptized the
admiral and
named him Huon.
Afterwards all the
lords and people
were christened,
and then, the
admiral leading
Huon, returned to
his palace.
There was great
joy and feasting
in the city that
day,
especially among
the Christian
merchants there,
and fifteen priests
with them, who
had helped the
bishop to christen
the people.

The admiral tells
Huon he ought to
render thanks to
our lord Jesus
Christ, that
through him
Persia and Media
have been
brought to the
Christian faith,

doctryne / was of no valour / then they cryed with a
hye voyce, ‘O ryght noble and pusant admyrall /
desyre that noble man that is there with you, that he
wyll cause vs to haue¹ chrysṭendome.’ And as then in 4
the citye there was a bysshop of Grece who was come
thether in bassade² to the admyrall fro the emperour of
3constantyne the noble,³ who, herynge the wyll⁴ of the
people, was ryght ioyfull / and he cam to⁵ the admyrall 8
and to Huon, and sayde / ‘syr, it shal be no daunger for
you to be chrysṭenyd / for, syr, I am here redy to do
it.’ Then incontynent there was brought forthe .xl
great vesselles full of clere water / the bysshop dyd 12
halow them, and erystenyd the admyrall and gaue⁶
hym⁷ to name⁷ Huon, bycause Huon was his godfather.
Then after⁸ all the lordis & people were chrysṭenyd and
receyuyd the law of our⁹ lorde⁹ Iesu Chrysṭe. when 16
they were all chrysṭenyd, the admyrall with great
tryhumphe¹⁰ retournyd to⁵ his palays ledyng Huon by
the hande.¹¹ great ioye and feast¹² was made that day
in the citye / and spesyally of the chrysṭen marchauntis 20
that were there, amonge the which there¹³ was a¹³ .xv.
prestes, and they all aydyd the bys¹⁴shop to chrysṭen
the people / the nombre can¹⁵ not be declaryd of the
men, women and, chyldren that reseyuyd that daye 24
chrysṭendome / the admyrall beyng in his palays
makynge great ioy and fest¹² to¹⁶ y^e noble duke Huon
of burdeaux, sayd to⁵ hym / ‘frynde, well ye ought to
render thaukynges to our lorde Iesu chrysṭe, syn¹⁷ by 28
you these two realmes, that is to saye, Perce and Mede,
are reducyd and brought to⁵ the chrysṭen faythe and
law, and I wyll¹⁸ ye knowe that ye maye well saye that

¹ receiue. ² ambassage. ³⁻³ Constantinople.

⁴ and desire. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ named. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted.

⁸ afterward. ⁹⁻⁹ Sauiour and Redeemer. ¹⁰ and ioy.

¹¹ and. ¹² feasting. ¹³⁻¹³ were about.

¹⁴ Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ could. ¹⁶ with.

¹⁷ seeing. ¹⁸ that.

in these two realmes ye maye commaunde¹ at your pleasure without fyndyng any parson to do or say to y^e contrary of your wyl and pleasure / and to the 4 entent that ye shall suerly byleue what great loue² I bere vnto you, I wyl that myne all only daughter ye shall haue to your wyfe, so that ye be not bound to³ none other; syr, know for trouthe the great desyre 8 that I haue to haue you tary stylle here with me mouethe me thus to do / I haue none other eyre but my daughter / wherby after my deth ye shal be lord and heyre of the realmes⁴ that I holde / and in the 12 meane season I wyll that the moyte of the reuenewe of thes realmes⁴ shall be yours, for your company pleaseth me so well⁵ that I wolde neuer haue you to departe⁶ hens.'

and that he may demand aught that he pleases;

to prove the great love he bears him, the admiral offers Huon his daughter in marriage, provided he has not already a wife.

The lady is the admiral's only child, and on his death the marriage would make Huon lord of the realms; meanwhile, the admiral offers him half the revenues of his kingdom.

16 ¶ Of the complayntis that Huon made to³ the admerall of Perse on⁷ the emperour of almayne / and of the socours that the admryall promysyd to³ Huon. Ca. C.xxviii.

20  Hen Huon⁸ vnderstode y^e admiral, he sayd, 'syr, knowe for trouthe that it is .iiii. yerys past syn I was maryed to³ a noble lady who passeth in beaute al other that be alyue in thes dayes, & when ⁹I remember her all my body and harte trymblethe for sorowe / when I thynke of the trowble / dyspleasure / and pouerte that she is in / & therfore, 24 28 syr, I thanke you of the great honoure and curtesye that of youre bountye ye do¹⁰ offer me.' 'I praye to³ god that he may rewarde you, Huon,' quod the admryall; 'syn¹¹ it is so that ye haue a wyfe, I hold

Huon replies, that four years past he was married to a noble lady of surpassing beauty, that when he remembers her it is with great sorrow, for she is now in trouble and poverty,

and thanks the admiral for the great honour he offers him.

¹ anything. ² and affection. ³ vnto.

⁴ and Dominions. ⁵ entirely. ⁶ from. ⁷ vppon.

⁸ had well. ⁹ Fol. exiiji. col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ seeing.

The admiral demands of Huon why his wife is in such distress, and what Christian prince is so bold as to trouble him. Huon tells how he left his city of Bordeaux besieged by the Emperor of Germany, who had taken the city, and cast his wife into prison.

The admiral bids Huon take comfort;

he will come to his aid, and make war on the Emperor with all his forces,

and oblige him to make full restitution.

But Huon desires not to shed Christian blood,

but to visit the holy sepulchre, and then, on returning to his own country, to rescue his wife from danger.

His wife was the daughter of Gaudys, the admiral of Babylon and Egypt.

you well excusyd. But I praye you shew¹ me for what cause youre wyfe is in suche case / or what chrysten prynce is so hardy² to troubyll you or³ do you any dyspleasure? 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'when I came out of 4 my countree I lefte my citye of Burdeaux besegyd by the emperour of Almayne / who hath taken my citye and slayne my men, and some⁴ kepethe in saruage, and my wyfe set⁵ in pryson, and there kept in great 8 pouertye and mysery / the whiche when I remembre, sorowe⁶ so⁷ grypethe my harte, that all my membres⁸ trymbelythe for⁹ dyspleasure' / 'Huon,' quod the admyral, 'I praye you³ leue your sorowe and dys- 12 pleasure and cast it fro you, and take Ioye and conforte / for by the holy lawe that I haue reseyuyd, I shall so ayde and socoure you, that the emperoure who hath done¹ you so many dyspleasures, I shall make hym 16 suche warre, that whether he wyl or not,¹⁰ the damage and losse that ye haue had,¹¹ I shall constraine hym to make full restytucyon / for I shal lede with me in your company such nombre of people, that all the valeys and 20 mountaynes shall be coueryd withe people.'¹² 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of the curtesye & socours that ye offer me I humblye thanke you / but yf it please our lorde¹³ Iesu Chryste, who hathe aydyd me out of many 24 parelles / I hope he wyll so ayde me that I shall not nede to make¹⁴ warre and¹⁵ to dystroye¹⁶ the chrysten blode / but, syr, fyrste I wyll¹⁷ go to the holy sepulture / & then I wyll retourne into my countre / and do what 28 I can to get my wyfe out of daunger and of¹⁵ the Payne that she is in / syr, the wyfe that I haue weddyd was daughter to the admyrall Gaudys who helde as then Babylon and all the realme of Egypte.'³² Then Huon shewyd hym all the mater howe he came

¹ vnto. ² as. ³ to. ⁴ hee. ⁵ put.

⁶ and greefe. ⁷ sore. ⁸ and ioynts. ⁹ with.

¹⁰ for. ¹¹ and received. ¹² them. ¹³ and Sauiour.

¹⁴ any. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ Fol. cxiiii. col. 2. ¹⁷ shall.

by the fayre Esclaramonde / wherof the admyrall was
sore abasshydde for the great maruaylles that ho¹ hard
Huon declare, and so were al other that harde it,
4 and sayde one to another, that without that² Huon
had bene welbelouyd with³ our lord Iesu chrys, he
coud neuer haue scapyd the deth with one of the lefte
aduentures that he had shewyd vnto the admiral.

Huon relates how
he came by
the fair
Esclaramonde,
and all who heard
it marvelled
greatly.

8 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the Emperoure of almayne hath
taken my citye and my wyfe, and destroied my men /
and hath taken in to his handys all my lordys and
sygnoryes / but by the grace of god I shall do so
12 moche to get them agayne / and yf I can not attayne
thereto, then I shall retourne agayne to⁴ you to haue
your socoure and ayde.' 'Huon,' quod the admiral,
'put all melancoly fro you / for yf ye gyue me know-
16 lege that ye canne not haue your wyl of this Emperour /

If Huon cannot
regain his city,
wife, lords and
seignories taken
by the Emperor
of Germany, he
will ask succour
of the admiral.

I shall bryng you people innumerable / that all
chrystendome shal trymble for fere of you / and I²
shall render to⁴ you your wyfe and all your londis,⁵
20 and your men that be in pryson or in saruage, &
I shall put the Emperour into your handis to do with
hym youre pleasure, elles I shall not leue in all his
lande neyther citye nor towne standynge vpon the
24 erthe.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke you
hartely / but, syr, I muste worke another waye fyrste /
for⁶ when I scapyd fro the goulfe of Perce I promysyd
to⁴ god, that or⁷ I went into m[y]ne⁸ owne countre to
28 go and vyset the holy sepulture in Ierusalem, and to
make warre vpon the sarasyns, or⁷ I made any warre
vpon any chrysten men / but, syr, yf I may get of the
emperour by fayre speche my londe and my wyfe,
32 I shall serue hym with good⁹ harte ; for as long as I
leue, I shall make no war against any chrysten man yf

Then will the
admiral make all
Christendom
tremble for fear
of Huon ; he will
regain for him
his wife, and
lands, and men,
and deliver the
Emperor into his
hands, or he will
leave neither city
nor town stand-
ing in the
Emperor's land.

Huon has
promised God
before returning
home, to visit the
holy sepulchre,
and to make war
upon the
Saracens.

He hopes to
recover his land
and wife from the
Emperor by fair
speech,

¹ hadde. ² omitted. ³ of. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ and Signories. ⁶ Fol. cxliii, back, col. 1. ⁷ before.

⁸ mone in text. ⁹ all my.

for if right can be shown him he desires to make no war against Christian man. The admiral will go with Huon to the holy sepulchre, and take with him 50,000 men to make war on the Saracens.

Huon tells the admiral how this good deed will cause him to be crowned in the empire of heaven.

I may haue ryght and reason shewyd to¹ me / 'syr,' quod the admerall, 'of this that ye say I can² you good thanke / but by the grace of god I shall go with you the vyage to the holy sepulture, and take with me 4 l.M. men to make warre agaynst the paynyme and sarasyns suche as byleuethe not in god, and I shall put to my Payne with all my powre to exalte and encrease the law of Iesu chrysste.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'ye haue 8 sayd nobeyle; yf ye do thus³ great grace and glory parpetuall ye shall deserue / wherby ye shalbe crownyd aboue in the imperyall heueyn.' Now leue we to speke of this mater.

12

¶ How the admerall of Perse assembelyd moche people, and he & Huon, with all his armye, toke the see and came to the port before the citye of Angory, whereas they 16 founde a great nombre of paynyme & sarasyns redy to defende the porte.

Ca. C.xxix.



The admiral sends orders through Persia for the men of war to make ready, and appoints the day on which they are to embark for the Holy Land.

All come at the time assigned. Meanwhile, Huon and Barnard oftentimes visit the city of Tauris,

After that the admerall and Huon had 20 deuysid to gether of many thyngys / the admerall sent out his letters and brefes commaundynge through⁴ 5 Perse, 6 and made⁶ men of warre to be redy ; 24 and gaue them a day to be redy to go with hym, sertefyenge them that his nauy of shyppe shulde be redy for the transportyng of hym and of⁷ them / the whiche was done, and every man 28 came at the day that was assyngnyd. in the mean season Huon and Barnard wente often tymys together and vysytyd the citye of Thauris, where as moche

¹ vnto. ² giue. ³ thus do. ⁴ out.

⁵ Fol. cxiiii. back, col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ and Media. ⁷ omitted.

honoure was made to¹ them / wherof Huon and Barnard oftentymys thankyd god of the good aduenture that he had sente them. Thus as ye haue
 4 harde the admiral of Perce assembelyd² great nombre of people, and made hym redy & enteryd into his shyp, and all other in to dyuers shyppys, and shypydyd theyr armure and horsys;³ Huon, who desyryd to ples
 8 the admiral, toke hys owne lytell shyp and dyschargyd it, and toke all the presyous stony & dyd put them into another shyp, the whiche y^e admiral had delyueryd to serue hym.³ then he sayd to¹ the admiral,
 12 'syr, I know well⁴ the lytell shyppe that I came in hether is not to serue in the warre, & therfore, syr, as it is, I do gyue it¹ you' / wherof the admiral had great ioye, for in al the worlde ther was none such
 16 of beautye nor of ryches. Then Huon gaue the admiral a bussell of the stones, and to¹ the lordys together, and they thankyd Huon of his curtesye and larges / of all the stones he kepte to his owne vse but
 20 .iii.C., and gaue awaye all the resydewe. Then he enterid into the shyp that was apoyntyd for hym / and then euery man enteryd in to theyr shyppys, the whiche were well furnysshyl and vytaylyd⁵ / then y^e
 24 admiral toke⁶ leue of his daughter,⁷ &⁷ ⁸weyed vp ancles and lyft⁹ vp the saylys, and they had suche good wynde that a¹⁰none they were far fro the porte ; a goodly syght it was to behold the nauy / for at theyr
 28 departyng, they made such noyse with trompettys¹¹ and tabours¹¹ & hornes that all the see range¹² therof / great ioye¹³ had Huon & Barnarde of the grace that god hadde sent them / so longe they saylyd with¹⁴ wynde
 32 and sayle, that they enteryd in to the great see o

where much honour is shownn them.

Huon, to please the admiral, discharged his own little ship, took out of it all the precious stones, and put them into another ship, which the admiral gave him.

To the great joy of the admiral, Huon gives him his beautiful boat. To the admiral and the lords Huon gives a bushel of the precious stones, keeping for his own use but three hundred. He entered the ship appointed for him ; all the rest likewise embark.

The admiral takes leave of his daughter ; the anchors are weighed, the sails spread, and a fair wind drives them quickly from the port.

The departure of the ships was a goodly sight.

¹ vnto. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ that. ⁵ for the wars.

⁶ his. ⁷⁻⁷ who pitifully wept at her Father's departing.

⁸ then they. ⁹ hoysed. ¹⁰ Fol. cxv. col. 1.

¹¹⁻¹¹ Drummes. ¹² did ring. ¹³ and gladnesse.

¹⁴ good.

They enter the Caspian Sea,
and see afar off
the city of Angore.
Its admirall was
powerful and
rich,
and, seeing from
one of the towers
of his palace, so
vast a navy
advancing,
wondered greatly.
He knew the
Persian ships by
their banners,
but he saw in the
forecastles
banners of white
with red crosses.

He gives orders
that every man
in the city should
arm and prevent
the Christians
from landing.
The noise and
confusion in the
city was so great
that the admiral
of Persia and
Huon, and all
with them, could
hear it.

The admiral sees
they will meet
great resistance
at their landing.
Huon enquires
what people
possess the city.

Caspys, & then they saw a fare of a¹ cetye stondyng by
the see syd, callyd the citye of Angore, wherin there
was² an admyral ryght pusaunt and ryche / and the
same tyme he was in one of the³ towres of his palays, 4
⁴when he sawe⁵ so⁵ pusaunt a⁶ nauey come saylynge⁷
towardis his citye / he had great maruayle /⁸ for he
knewe well the shypis were of Perce by the penons
and baners that he sawe wauynge in⁹ the shypys, and 8
on⁹ the other parte he saw in y^e toppes and fore-
castelles baners stondyng, all of whyght, and therin
red crosses / then he sayd to¹⁰ his lordis that were
abought hym / ‘syrs, I am greatly¹¹ abasshyd what 12
meanethe yonder great flete: syn¹² this citye was won
by Reyngnalte of Mountaban / there came neuer
chrysten man here / and I haue more maruayle to se the
baners and arme of Perce y^e which thes chrysten men 16
do bere in⁹ theyr shypis’ / then he¹³ went downe and
puplysshdyd in the citye that euyer man shuld arme
them and go to the port to defend¹⁴ that the chrysten
men shulde not londe there / then the crye and larum 20
began in the citye so great and orryble, withe the
noyse of¹⁵ hornes and busyns, trompetts and tabours¹⁵ /
so that the noyse of them range vpon the see, so that
the Admyral of Perse, and Huon, and such as were on⁹ 24
the see myght well here them / Then the admyrall sayd
to¹⁰ Huon / ‘syr, I se¹⁶ well¹⁷ at¹⁸ our londynge we
shall haue great batayle and resystence’ / ‘syr,’ quod
Huon, ‘I pray you what people be they that haue that 28
citye in gydynge, and who is lorde therof?’ ‘Syr,’
quod the admyrall, ‘knowe for trouthe¹⁷ this citye is

¹ faire. ² dwelt. ³ his. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁶ and perceiued such a. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ so fast.

⁸ and was sore dismayed and abashed. ⁹ vppon.

¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ dismayed and. ¹² seeing.

¹³ the Admirall. ¹⁴ it.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ Trumpets and Drummes, Hornes, and Basons,

¹⁶ and perceiue. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ Fol. cxv. col. 2.

great and well peopled / they byleue not in god / and
^a xx. yeris passyd, this citye was wonne by a lorde
 Fraunce callyd Reyngnalte of Mountaban, and he
⁴ made it to be chr[y]stenyd; and then at¹ .viii. yeris
 after, it was wonne agayne vpon the² chrysten men by
 the admirallic son: the which admiral was lord
 therof when it was won. And nowe agayne they be all
⁸ paynynms and Sarasyns as ye maye se vpon the see
 syde, they ar redy to abyde for vs and to defende theyr
 porte.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'we ought greatly to thanke
 our lorde Iesu chrys of this fayre aduenture / when we
¹² se before vs the enemys of our chrysten faythe / & by
 the grace of³ Iesu⁴ this daye we shall do so moche that
 the citye and the inhabitauntis therin shal be in our
 handys to vse them at our pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the
¹⁶ admiral /⁵ 'god⁶ gyue⁷ grace that it may so be⁸ / great
 grace our lorde god shall do to⁹ vs, yf we maye wynne
 this citye.' Then the admiral causyd his men to be
 armyd /¹⁰ then they sawe halfe a lege fro the citye a
²⁰ porte or hauyn / the which was not kept nor defendyd,
 bycause the admiral of Angory wold not Issue out
 farof fro his citye, tyll¹¹ he sawe what countenaunce
 the chrysten men wolde make. Then the admiral of
²⁴ Perce and Huon auaunsyd them selfe so forwarde, *that*
 they caste out they[r] anres and launcyd out theyr
 botys well garnysshed with men, archars and crosbowes,
 so that they londyd at this porte¹² without any daunger.
²⁸ Then the shypys drewe to the londe &¹³ vnshyppyd
 theyr armure and horses, & so euery man londyd
 excepte suche as were sygnd¹⁴ to kepe the shypes /
¹⁰ then euery man lept¹⁵ on¹⁶ theyr horses and ordaynyd
³² .iii. batayles / the fyreste was led by duke² Huon, and

The city, says the
 admiral of Persia,
 is great and
 inhabited by
 unbelievers;
 twenty years past
 it was taken by a
 lord of France
 and made
 Christian,
 but eight years
 after it was again
 won by Saracens.

The admiral and
 Huon determine
 to take the city
 and use it at
 their pleasure.

The men are
 armed,
 and half a league
 from the city they
 see a haven
 undefended.

Here they land
 without danger,

leaving some to
 guard the ships.
 They are arranged
 in three divisions,
 the first led by
 duke Huon with
 20,000 men;

¹ about. ² omitted. ³ our Lord and Sauour.

⁴ Christ. ⁵ I beseech almighty. ⁶ to. ⁷ vs the.

⁸ be so. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ vntill.

¹² in sauegard &. ¹³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 1. ¹⁴ assigned.

¹⁵ mounted. ¹⁶ vpon.

the second by a great lord of Persia, marshal of the host; the third by the admirall of Persia himself, who rode from rank to rank, admonishing his men to do their duty valiantly.

with hym. xx.M. men of hault and hye corage; the second was led by a great lorde of Perce, who was marshall of the hoste / the thyrde, gydyd the admiral of Perce / who rode fro ranke to ranke, admonesshyng 4 his men to do theyr deuours¹ valyauntly; then a soft pase they drew in batayle towards the citye.

¶ How the admerall & Huon toke the porte and fought with the admiral of Angorie, 8 and discomfytyd hym, and toke the citye / and how after² Huon went in to the desertys of Abillant to serche aduentures.

Ca. C.xxx. 12

When the admirall of Angore saw that the Christians had landed,

he divided his men into four parties.

The two hosts met together with such force that the bright sun waxed dark,

and many a knight was killed under the horses' feet.



Hen the admiral of Angore saw and parsayuyd that the chrysten men had taken londe, and were re³dy to geue bataile, and were comynge towardys 16 the citye, he ordaynyd and rengyd his bataylis, & deuydyd them in⁴ .iiii. partys, and set them to be led and gydid by such as he thought best; then he auauncyd forwarde and was to the nombre of 20 l.M. men / when these .ii. hostis saw eche other, there was none of them but that feryd the dethe / the day was fayre & clere, & so they aprochyd, and al at a frusshe⁵ of⁶ both partyes dasshed together in suche 24 wyse, that by reason of the powder & dust that rose⁷ by theyr horses, the sonne that was fayre and bright waxed darke, and the shote of⁶ bothe partyes flew so faste and as thick as thoughe it had snowed / at theyr 28 fyrste metyng, many sperys were broken, and many a knyght borne to the erthe, so that they coud neuer releue⁸ after, but laye on the ground amonge the horse fete, and there dyed in doloure / there were manye 32

¹ endeauours. ² afterward. ³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 2.
⁴ to. ⁵ rush. ⁶ on. ⁷ did rise. ⁸ be releued.

horses rynnyng abrode traylynge theyr brydels after
 them, and theyr maysters lyeng¹ in the blude &² myre /
 great slaughter there was made on³ bothe partyes / and
 4 Huon, who went brekinge y^e great presses, where as he
 slew so many paynyme that every man feryd hym, he
 sawe where the admiral of Angoryes nephue was who
 had slayne a christen knyghte /⁴ they ran eche at other
 8 so freslye,⁵ that the paynym brake his spere vpon
 Huon ; and Huon saylyd hym not, but gaue hym so
 marueylous⁶ a stroke that his spere passed thrughe his
 body, and so⁷ fell⁸ to the erth and dyed / then Huon
 12 ran at another and gaue hym suche a⁹ stroke that
¹⁰he persyd¹⁰ thrughe his shylde and body / and with
 drawynge out of the spere, he fell to the erth, and neuer
 relynyd after / and so the .iii. and .iv.¹¹ he saruyd in
 16 lyke maner, and ¹²dyd so¹³ that he slew .viii. or¹⁴ his
 spere brake,⁴ then he drewe out his good¹⁵ sword / &
 therwith he dyd suche dedes that it was ferefyll to
 beholde hym / he cutte legges and armes, and rassyd of
 20 helmes so that none of his enemyes durste aproche
 nere¹⁶ hym / but they fledde before hym. as y^e byrde
 dothe before the hauke, he brake asonder the thyke
 presses ; he dyd so to be feryde that his enymyes left
 24 hym / for he neuer stroke¹⁷ man with a full stroke but
 he¹⁸ was slayne. Also with hym was Barnarde his
 cosyn, who euer folowyd hym & dyd merueylous in
 armes, for he was a sharp and an eger knyght. ¹⁹Also
 28 the admiral of Angore enforsyd hym selfe to do
 damage to¹⁶ y^e christen men / he sawe were the admiral
 of perce was sleynge of his men / and came and ranne
 at hym ; and the admiral of perce sawe hym &

Huon encounters
the nephew of the
admiral of
Angore,

and slays him.

After Huon had
slain eight of the
paynyme, his spear
broke,
but he did
fearful deeds
with his good
sword.

Barnard followed
Huon, and
worked marvels
in the fight.

The admiral of
Angore attacked
the admiral of
Persia;

¹ dead vpon the erthe. ² in the. ³ vpon. ⁴ and.

⁵ so fiercely after ran. ⁶ and so great. ⁷ he.
⁸ downe. ⁹ marauilous. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it passed. ¹¹ more.

¹² Fol. cxvi. col. 1. ¹³ valiantly behauie himselfe.

¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ vnto. ¹⁷ any.

¹⁸ that receiued it. ¹⁹ And.

each bore the
other to earth,

but they were
separated by their
men.

The force of the
Saracens was so
great that the
admiral of Persia
could not re-
mount, and was
obliged to fight
on foot.

He was rescued
by Huon and
Barnard.

Huon kills the
admiral of
Angore,

encounteryd with hym by such force¹ that eche of them bare² oder to the erth / then q[u]ycly they releuyd them³ with theyr swerdes in there handes, wyllynge eche⁴ of them to slee⁵ other / y^e whiche had⁴ bene done in dede, &⁶ there men had not come and socouryd them / but theder came so many of⁷ bothe partyes that the .ii. admyralles had no power on⁸ them to towche² other ; weth great force came theder Paynyme⁸ and Sarasyns so *that* the cristen men coude not remount vp agayne the admyral of Perce / but was fayne to fyght a fote / and had bene in great iopardy⁹ and⁶ Huon and Barnarde had not come and rescuyd¹²

hym ; they came theder hastily when they harde the showtyng and cryenge that was made aboute the admyral of Perce / and they brake a brode¹⁰ the great prese of the paynyme. And when they sawe Huon aproche nere¹¹ them they were sore afayde / ¹²they knewe hym¹³ well, and departyd,¹⁴ and sperclyd¹⁵ a brode, and durste not abyde / and Huon, seynge y^e admyrall of Perce a fote amoneg his enymyes with his swerde valyauntly defendyng hymselfe, whiche shulde but lytyl auaylyd yf he had not bene quyckly socowryd / ¹²when Huon sawe hym he sayd : ‘O ryght pusaunte Admyral, haue no doute’ / then Huon toke a spere out²⁴ of the handes of a paynyme whome he had slayne / and there with he ranne at y^e admyral of Angory, and gau¹⁶ so horrabyle¹⁷ a stroke *that* the spere passyd thorowe his body more then a fote / and so¹⁸ fell downe dedde²⁸ amoneg his men / wher of y^e Paynyme were sore¹⁹ abasshyde when they sawe theyr lorde lye dedde on²⁰ the erth ; ¹²then Huon quyckly toke the admyralles

¹ and puissance. ² the. ³ selues. ⁴ both.

⁵ each. ⁶ if. ⁷ on. ⁸ one of. ⁹ and danger.

¹⁰ asunder. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. cxvi. col. 2.

¹⁴ parted. ¹⁵ spread. ¹⁶ him. ¹⁷ and so vehement.

¹⁸ hee. ¹⁹ dismayed and. ²⁰ vpon.

horse by the rayne¹ and came to² the admiral of Perce,
where as he was fyghtyng a fote / and sayd, 'syr,
³ lepe on³ this horse, for the paynyme and Sarasyns ar
4 desconfyed' / 'Syr,' quod the admiral, 'blyssed be
the oure that⁴ ye were borne / for by your excellente
prowes I am sawyde and all myn hoste, and haue⁵ ouer
come myn enemyes, / then the Admyrall mountyde on⁶
8 y^e good horse, wherof he was ioyful; and so he and
Huon and Barnarde delte such strokes among the
Sarasyns / *that* they were constrayned to fle and turne
there backes / ⁷then they were chassyd by such force
12 *that* they enteryd in to the citye one with a noder /
then the christen men slew the paynyme and Sarasyns,
men, women, and chyl드rene, that⁸ pyte it was to se
them lye dedde on⁶ heppes in y^e stretes / so that the
16 bloode of them that were slayne, ranne in the strettes to
the horse pastours; fynally by the hey prowes of Huon
and by the pusaunce of the admiral of Perce, the
paynyme and Sarasyns were discomfyted in the citye
20 of Angory. when the sleynge was sessyd, and that the
admiral and Huon sawe how they had ouercome theyr
enemyes / they sessyd sleynge of the pepyll / ⁷they
wente in to the temples, tours, & pallyses, where in
24 many paynyme & Sarasyns were withdrawen / they
were take to vertue,¹⁰ promysyne to sauē theyr lyues
yf they wolde leue the¹¹ law of Macomyte and byleue
in¹² Iesu chryst / and so many were chystenyd, and
28 such as wold not were slayne / when the admiral and
Huon sawe that the citye was become chystenyd /
then th[e]y sette theyr offecyers, prouostis, and baylyes
to gouerne the citye, and with them .ii.M. persons to
32 kepe y^e citye. Thus they taryed ther¹³ .viii. dayes,

and mounts the
admiral of Persia
on his riderless
horse.

The Saracens
were forced to
flee;

they re-entered
the city with the
Christians in
pursuit,
and the Saracen
men, women, and
children were
killed by the
Christians.

Those who had
hidden in the
temples and
palaces, Huon and
Barnard saved
if they consented
to be christened,

but if they
refused, they
were slain.

The victors set
officers over
the city, and,
having tarried
there eight days,

¹ of the bridle. ² vnto. ³⁻³ mount vpon. ⁴ euer.

⁵ vanquished and. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ and. ⁸ great.

⁹ Fol. exvi. back, col. 1. ¹⁰ mercie.

¹¹ false and detestable. ¹² our Sauour and Redeemer.

¹³ by the space of.

made ready to depart.

They set forth,
leave the Caspian
Sea,
enter the
Euphrates river,
and thence pass
into the great sea.

They coast the
desert of Aby-
lante in bright
weather and a
fresh wind.

Huon and the
admiral talk over
their adventures,
and praise God
for their success.

The admiral has
great desire to see
the Holy City.

Huon hopes to
reach it,
but the chief
object of his
voyage is the
destruction of all
unbelievers.

The travellers
meet with no
adventure for
eight days.

Huon laments the
fate of
Esclarmonde.

¹then they made redy to depart, and trussyd & newe wyttelyd theyr shypes / ¹then they enteryd in to theyr shypes,² trompetes, and³ busyns, & tabours made⁴ noyes,¹ the mareners weyed vp theyr ancreys and 4 hyssed vp theyr sayles, & sayled so longe that⁵ they were out of⁶ great see of caspus, and enteryd in to the great floude of eufrates / the whiche dissendeth in to the great see / when they were passed the ryuer / they 8 costydd the desertis of abylante / the sesone was fayr and clere, and the wynde freshe. Thus⁷ they sayled by this great see, the admyrall and Huon stode at the borde syde of theyr shyppe and deuiysed⁸ of 12 theyr aduentures, & laudyde⁹ god of his grace¹⁰ that he had done to¹¹ them. ‘Huon,’ quod the admyrall, ‘great desyre I haue¹² to se the holy citye wher our lord god was crucifyede and layed in sepulture.’ ‘syr,’ 16 quod Huon, ‘by y^e grace of god we shall ryght well¹³ come theder, & I hope he shall do¹¹ vs¹⁴ greater grace¹⁵ as to ayede vs to conquere and to¹⁶ dystroye them¹⁷ in our way that byleueth not on our holy law / for that is 20 the chef¹⁸ entent of our vyage.’ Thus they deuyed togydder the space of .viii. dayes withoute fyndyng of any aduenture ;¹ so on¹⁹ an euenynge Huon all alone stode lenyng ouer the shyppe bord / beholding the 24 see, y^e which was playne and peasable, then he remembrede y^e duches Esclaramonde his wyfe / therewith the teres fel²⁰ downe his vysage, & sayd, ‘a, ryght noble lady, when I remembre in²¹ what²² danger I left you in, 28 and in what pouerte & mysery ye be in,²³ I haue no²⁴ membre but that trymblyth for the dysplesure that I

¹ and. ² and the. ³ omitted. ⁴ great. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ the. ⁷ as. ⁸ demysed in text. ⁹ prayded.

¹⁰ for. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² I haue after admyrall.

¹³ and shortly. ¹⁴ farre. ¹⁵ yet.

¹⁶ Fol. exvi. back, col. 2. ¹⁷ all those. ¹⁸ cheefest.

¹⁹ vppon. ²⁰ ran tenderly. ²¹ omitted. ²² peril and.

²³ nowe. ²⁴ ioynt nor.

am in, and for fere left y^e false emperoure cause you to
dye or¹ my retoure,² then he begane to make great
sorwe³ / then³ Barnarde, who was not farre fro hym,
4 sayd / ‘A, syr, ye know well that in all the fortunes
and aduentures that hath come to⁴ you god hathe
ayded you and sende⁵ you fro the peryll of deth /
therfore take⁶ comfort to yourself, and laude and prysse
8 god for that he sendeth⁴ you / and doute not yf ye
haue perfyte hope and trust in hym he wyll ayed and
confort you / ⁷he neuer forgeteth them *that* with good
harte serueth hym.’ Thus with suche wordes Barnard
12 conforted Huon / ⁷then the admiral came and lent
downe by Huon / and deuysede togyder of⁸ dyuers⁹
thynges / the same tyme there rose vp a wynd and a¹⁰
tempeste so great and so horrable that the sayles were
16 broke in dyuers places, & some mastes brake and flewe
ouer the bordes of the shyppe / the see begane to be
wode¹¹ and furious / so that euery man thought^[t] to
haue bene peresshyde: the fortune of this tempest was
20 so horrable / ¹²euery man / deuoutly called vpon our
lorde god to sauе them fro that¹³ perryll.¹⁴ ‘syr,’ quod
Huon, ‘I pray¹⁵ you shewe me what countre is yonder
that I se before me, we were happy and¹⁶ we myght
24 aryue there and cast our ancles vnder the rocke that I
se ther’ / ‘syr,’ quod y^e Admyrall, ‘we be aryued at an
yll¹⁷ port, for we be nere to the deserts of abyante;
on¹⁸ yonder mountayne that ye se is conuersant an
28 enemy, who hath causyd many a shyppe and vesseyll
to be drowned in this see, wherby we be all in great
aduenture¹⁹ to be lost / for none can aproche to this
rocke / but *that* he is slayne & stranglyd²⁰ by the

Barnard consoles him.

There suddenly
rose up a great
tempest;
the sails and
masts were
broken in divers
places.

Huon demands
the name of the
country he sees
before him.

It is an evil port,
inhabited by an
enemy who slays
and strangles all
who approach.

¹ ere. ² and greefe. ³ but. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ saued.

⁶ good. ⁷ and. ⁸ about. ⁹ and sundrie.

¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ rough. ¹² as. ¹³ the.

¹⁴ and danger *that* they were in. ¹⁵ Fol. cxvii, col. 1.

¹⁶ fortunate if. ¹⁷ euil. ¹⁸ vppon. ¹⁹ daunger.

²⁰ slayne *after* strangled.

Every man is
much afraid,
and the admiral is
anxious to
withdraw from
the place.

Huon must have
speech of this
enemy;
if he displeases
him he will strike
off his head.
The admiral
declares that
500 Huons could
not resist him.

Huon is
determined to
visit him;

the admiral tries
to dissuade him,
but in vain.

Barnard wishes to
go with Huon;

enemy that ys there, / then euer man was in great
fere, and the Admyrall sayd to¹ y^e mareners / 'syrs, I
pray you if it may be let vs draw out of this quarter' /
'Syr,' quod Huon, 'me thynke ye are to sore² abasshyd / 4
for by that lorde that made me to his semblaunce,
I shall neuer haue ioye in³ my harte tyll⁴ I know why
that enemy causethe them to perysse⁵ that pas⁵ this
waye / I shall neuer rest tyll⁴ I haue spoken with 8
hym, and yf he do any thynge contrary to my pleasure,
I shall stryke of his hede.' 'Huon,' quod the admyral,
'I haue great maruayle of that ye do saye / for yf there
were .v.C. suche as ye be / within an owre ye shulde 12
all be dede and strangelyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'dought not⁶ that / for thoughte I shuld dye in the
quarrell, I wyll go se hym and know the cause why he
letteh or troubelethe this passage / or⁷ it be .iii. dayes 16
to an ende I shall go and speke with hym⁸ what
soeuer fortune.'⁸ 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'in you it
is to do your owne wyll: ⁹syn it pleseth you I must
be content / but yf ye wold beleue me ye shuld not 20
take on¹⁰ you that vyage.'¹¹ 'Syr,' quod Huon, all
smylyng, 'I haue my hope¹² in¹³ god¹⁴ and in y^e vyrgyn
Mary his mother,¹⁴ who hathe¹⁵ hether vnto¹⁵ sauyd
me,¹⁶ and so I hope they¹⁷ wyll do¹⁸ yette / for it is a 24
comune prouerbe sayde,¹⁷ whome that¹⁴ god wyll ayde¹⁹
no man can hurte.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'I praye
to¹ our lorde god to defende you fro all yll / and²⁰
gyue you²¹ grace to retourne agayne in sauegarde' / 28

'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you.'²² Then Barnarde
rose vp & sayd, 'dere cosyn, I requyre you²⁰ let me go

¹ vnto. ² dismayed and. ³ at. ⁴ vntill.

⁵⁻⁵ so fast. ⁶ you. ⁷ before.

⁸⁻⁸ what fortune soeuer commeth therof. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ and enterprize. ¹² and trust.

¹³ almighty. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ heretofore.

¹⁶ from death. ¹⁷ he. ¹⁸ Fol. cxvi, col. 2.

¹⁹ and succour. ²⁰ to. ²¹ the. ²² heartily.

with you' / ¹then the admiral sayd / 'syr, I desyre
you² be contente that I and Barnarde maye keep
you company, and we shall haue with vs for y^e more
4 sauergard of our parsones .CCCC. hardy knyghtys' /

the admiral will
also accompany
him with 400
brave knights.

'syr,' quod Huon, 'by goddys grace I wyll go alone,
none shall go with me but my selfe and Iesu Chryste,
and his blyssyd mother, in whose sauergard I commyt
8 my selfe' / when Barnard hard that he had great
sorowe at his harte, and so had the admiral, when
they sawe³ they coude not tourne hym⁴ fro his⁵
vyage.⁶ Then Huon armyd hym⁷ and toke leue of the

But Huon desires
to go alone;

12 admiral and of the other lordys, and of Barnard, who
made great sorow for his cosyn Huon, who all alone
wold go in to the deserte⁸; when Huon had taken his
leue, he was sette a londe,⁹ and made the syngne of
16 the¹⁰ crosse on¹¹ his breste. Then he mountyd vpon the
mountayne, but or¹² he was the halfe waye / a great
wynde arose on¹¹ the see / so that the tempeste was
great and orryble / ¹³so that¹³ the cordys and cables

Barnard and the
admiral are much
grieved.

20 of the shippys with the admiral brast asonder / ¹so
that¹⁴ parforce they were fayne to take the see and sayle
at aduenture as wynde and wether wolde serue them /

When he was
half way up the
mountain, a storm
arose, which
forced the
admiral to sail as
the wind would.

15 so that parforce¹⁵ they were cast out of that great
24 se, wherof the admiral and Barnarde, and all the other
lordys had great fere, and greatly complayned for
Huon, who alone without company was mountid on¹¹

The ships are
cast about on
the great sea, and
all have great
fear for Huon.

28 the moun¹⁶teyne; and as he was goyng he lokyd
downe into the see / and saw the marueylous tempest
that was in the see, so that of .CC. shippes that he
had lefte there with the admiral, he coude then se no
more but .ii. together, for al the rest were separate one
32 fro another in great peryll¹⁷ / then he began¹⁸ to wepe

Huon sees the
storm, and how
all the ships were
scattered.

¹ and. ² to. ³ that. ⁴ Huon. ⁵ dangerous.

⁶ and enterprize. ⁷ self. ⁸ to seke aduentures.

⁹ shoare. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ vppon. ¹² ere. ¹³⁻¹⁵ whereby.

¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ whereuppon.

¹⁶ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁷ and danger. ¹⁸ pitifullly.

He began to weep
for his wife
Esclarmonde,
whom he thought
never more to
see.

and complayne for his wyfe¹ Esclaramonde, whome he thought then neuer more² to se, bycause he was in that deserte, and saw the shypes dreuyn fro the londe in great fere of lesyng. Then he knelyd downe and held 4 vp his handys to³ y^e⁴ heuen, requyryng our lorde god of his petye and grace to ayde and to gyue hym conforto so⁴ that he myght scape⁵ thence alyue / and to sauе the shypes and to bringe them agayne in 8 sauegard to the place fro whence they departyd. Then petuously⁶ he complaynyd for his wyfe and daughter, & sayde, ‘a, ryght noble lady Esclaramonde, when I remembre the paynes, and dolours, and pouerties, that 12 by my cause ye suffer and haue sufferyd / all my body sweteth for⁷ Payne & doloure / Alas, I had thought in short space to haue ayded and socuryd you / but now I se well⁸ our departyng is come for euermore / in yonder 16 perelous see, I se my cosyn Barnard and dyuers other lordys, that by my cause are in the way of pardyssyon without god to⁹ ayde¹⁰ them, whom I humbly requyre to sende them that grace that they may aryue at 20 some¹¹ porte, and that I may ones¹² see them agayne to the entente that I may fyght agaynst the paynmys and sarasyns in exaltinge the law of Iesu chryszt.’

to cause Barnard
to reach a haven
in safety,
and to allow
Huon to see his
friends again.

Thus Huon of Burdeaux made his prayers to our lorde 24 Iesu chrysste.



¹³ ¶ How Huon wente so long in this deserte
that he founde Cayine and spake with hym
a longe season, and howe he begylid 28
Cayne and departid. Ca. cxxxii.

¹ the faire. ² more *after* se. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ from. ⁶ greeuously. ⁷ by. ⁸ that. ⁹ doe.

¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ good. ¹² once *after* them.

¹³ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2.

H4 fter that Huon had thus made his
 prayers to¹ our lorde god, he rose vp
 & blyssyd him with y^e syngne of y^e
 crosse recommaundynge hym selfe
 to¹ our lorde god, & so² came to the
 heyght³ of the mountayne; ⁴ when
 he was there al his body trymbelyd with trauayle, so
 8 that he was⁵ fayne, and feble. Then he lokyd all⁶
 abought,⁷ and sawe in a fayre medow a clere fountayne,
 thereth he went to refresshe and to reste hym / then he
 layde hym down on⁸ the gras to refresshe hym or⁹ he
 12 wolde drynke, he was so hote / and when he was well
 colyd he came to the fountayne and dranke¹⁰ a lytyll
 and wasshyd his handys and fase / ¹¹then he went
 further into the foreste and coude fynde nother towne
 16 nor castell, gardayne, nor trees with frute, wherof he
 was¹² sorowfull,¹³ and so serchyd all day to fynde som
 man or woman, but all was in vayne / & when he saw
 that the sonne went to rest and coude fynd no creature,
 20 he was sore anoyed¹⁴ / he chose out a tree & there¹⁵ layd
 hy[m]¹⁶ downe & slepte; & in the mornyng when he
 saw the sonne ryse, and that his beamys spred abrode
 on⁸ the erthe / then² he arose and blyssyd hym / and so
 24 wente forth in to the deserte and found nother man
 nor woman / beste nor byrde, wherwith¹⁷ he was sore
 dysplesaunt¹⁷ / devoutly he calyd vpon our lorde god
¹⁸Iesu chryst, and on his blyssyd mother the vrygyn
 28 Mary,¹⁸ prayenge them¹⁹ to haue in theyr²⁰ ²¹tuissyon²²
 his body and sowle / and that he myght yet ones see
 his wyfe²³ and ²⁴chylde.²⁴ He went so long in this

On reaching the top of the mountain, Huon was faint, and fell down.

He refreshed himself at a clear fountain, and,

going further into the forest, could find neither town, castle, gardens, neither were there men nor women.

He was sore annoyed, and laid him down to sleep under a tree.

At sunrise he arose and went into the desert, but met neither man nor woman, beast nor bird. He called on our Lord Jesus Christ and the Virgin Mary to let him see once again his wife and child.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ toppē. ⁴ but. ⁵ verie.
⁶ round. ⁷ him. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ before. ¹⁰ thereof.
¹¹ and. ¹² right. ¹³ and sore displeased.
¹⁴ discomforted. ¹⁵ vnder. ¹⁶ hyd in text.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ being sorowfull and angrie. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.
¹⁹ him. ²⁰ his. ²¹ Fol. exviii. col. 1. ²² and keeping.
²³ the faire Escleremond. ²⁴⁻²⁴ Clariet his Daughter.

At last he reached a plain, where he saw a tun of oak bound with iron, which rolled about in the circuit of the plain,

and beside it, lying on the ground, a great mallet of iron.

As the tun passed by him, he heard a piteous voice within complaining.

He approaches near, and asks who lies within it.

No answer comes forth.

Huon conjures the voice to reply to him.

He who is in the tun replies that Cain is there who slew his brother,

deserte that at last he cam to a playne of a¹ .iii. bowe shote large, and in y^e myddes therof he sawe a tonne made of the hart of oke, bound all abought with bandys of Iron / and it euer¹ tournyd and rollyd in the playne, and neuer passyd out of the cyrcuite of the playne / and besyde the tonne he saw where there lay on² the grounde a great mall of Iron / great maruayle Huon had³ when he saw this tonne thus⁴ rolle abought

without sease lyke a tempeste, and as it passyd by hym⁵ he hard a petuous⁶ woiche within the tonne sore complaynynge, and when he had hard it .ii. or .iii. tymys he aprochyd nere to the toune, and sayd, ‘thou art in this tonne / speke to⁷ me & shew me what thou art or what thyng thou nedyst⁸ of, and why thou art put there’ / Then when he that was in this⁹ tonne harde Huon,¹⁰ restyd styl & spake no word.¹¹ when

Huon sawe that it wold not speke, ¹⁰sayd / ‘what so euer thou art, I coniure y^e by hym that creatyd all the worlde, and by his sone our lorde Iesu chryszt, whom he sent downe to suffer deth and passy[on] on the tre of the crosse to redeme his frendys, who by the synne of Adam and Eue were in lymbo, and by his gloryous resurreccyon, and by his aungels and archangels, Cherubyns and Seraphyns, and by all his holy sayntys, I coniuere thee to shewe me what thou arte, & why¹² thou art set here in this tonne?’ when he that was within the tonne hard how sore he was coniuryd, he answeryd and sayde / ‘thou that hast coniuryd me, thou doest great yll¹³ to cause me to shew the y^e trouthe / knowe cuerly that I haue to name Cayme, and sone I was to⁷ Adam & Eue,¹⁴ and am he that slew my brother Abel by false and cursid enuy that I

32

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ had after maruayle.

⁴ thus after abought. ⁵ Huon. ⁶ pitifull. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ hast neede. ⁹ the. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ and.

¹² and for what cause. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxviii. col. 2.

had to¹ hym, bycause his oblacyons and dymes that he made to¹ god were exaltyd, and the fume therof went vpwarde to heuyn / and tho² that I made the fume
 4 wente downe warde / and when I sawe that, I slewe & mourderyd my brother Abell, wherfore, and for the great syn that I haue commytyd, I am dampnyd to be and to suffer this merterdome with in this tonne
 8 wherin I am closyd brynnynge³ and with serpentys, and todys here within deuouryth⁴ me, and yet I can not dye / and here I shall be vnto⁵ the day of Iuge-mente, and then my Payne shall be doubelyd / Nowe
 12 haue I shewyd the thy demaund, wherfore I repute the but a fole / when thou art so hardy⁶ to enter into this deserte where as neuer man enteryd and departyd without dethe / for knowe for trouthe⁷ hether repayreth
 16 .ii. enemyes, fendys of hel, who shall sle the and bere thy sowle into hell without thou wylt do as I shall shewe the' / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray the shewe me what it is that thou spekest of, or what thynge
 20 thou wylte that I shulde do, and I shall⁸ do it to the entent that I may departe⁹ hense / there is no thynge in the worlde but I shall do it for the, so thou shewe me the way how I maye departe⁹ hens' / 'frende,' quod
 24 Cayme, 'I shall shew the what thou shalt do: thou shalte take this malle of iron that thou seest there & stryke therwith so long vpon this tonne tyl⁵ thou breke¹⁰ it, to the entent that I myght¹¹ issue out / &
 28 when I am delyueryd I shall set y^e in sauegard in Ierusalem or in fraunce, or in what contre¹² thou wylte wysshe / yf thou do this that I haue sayd, & delyuer me fro this tourment, I shal set y^e whersoeuer thou
 32 wylt be, in any lond¹³ chysten or hethen / and yf thou

and is therefore condemned to suffer this martyrdom until the day of Judgment.

None depart from this desert alive,

for it is inhabited by two fiends of hell, who will slay Huon unless he does as Cain shows him.

Huon will do whatever Cain asks him, if only he will show him how to depart thence.

Cain tells Huon to take the iron mallet and strike upon the tun till he break it.

Cain will then be delivered, and will set Huon in whatever country he may wish.

¹ vnto. ² those. ³ burning. ⁴ deuouring.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ will. ⁹ from.

¹⁰ hast broken. ¹¹ may. ¹² soeuer.

¹³ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 1.

do not this that I haue sayd, or¹ it be nyght I shall cause the to dye with great tormentes, for anone thou shalt se come heder .ii. deuyls of hell, fowyll and howdeous to behold, and they shall strangle the & bere ⁴ thy sowle into hell.' 'O, verye god,'² quod Huon, 'humbely I requyre³ the to sauе me fro this tourmente / Cayme,' quod Huon, 'thou spekyste⁴ fayre and sayeste as thou lyste, but I wyll not delyuer the out of this ⁸ tonne tyll⁵ fyrst thou shewe me how I may departe hence' / then Cayme sayd, 'yf thou wylt promyse me by thy faythe and by thy parte of paradyse to delyuer me out of this tonne / I shall shewe the the maner ¹² howe thou shalte scape fro hense.' 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'haue no dought, and that I promyse the to kepe my faythe / so thou shew me the maner how I may depart out of this deserte, I shal delyuer the out ¹⁶ of thy tourmente.' Then Cayme sayd / 'thou shalte go by this lytyll pathe that thou seest here by on⁶ thy ryghte hande / the whiche shall bryng the strayte to the see syde, the whiche is not far⁶ hense / ⁸then go ²⁰ downe the mountayne where as thou shalt fynde a shyp, and therin but one man / but or thou⁹ enter into the shyppe, blysse the thre tymys, for he that thou shalte fynde there is a fende of hell / and shewe¹⁰ hym ²⁴ howe thou art Cayme scapyd out of the rollynge tonne, and byd hym to pas the ouer ; and saye howe¹¹ thou wylte go and dystroye¹² the chrysten men that be in the worlde & bryng theyr sowlys into hell / and ²⁸ when he hereth the say thus, he wyll pas the ouer in sauetye / for it is longe synne that he hathe taryed for me / by cause he thynkethe I shulde scape out of this tonne. But thou must take with the this mall ¹³ of ³²

¹ before. ²⁻² Ah, good Lorde. ³ and beseech.
⁴ mee. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ from. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ and.
⁹ doest. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ that. ¹² slay all.
¹³ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 2.

Iron on¹ thy necke to the entente that he shall the
better byleue the.² ¶ ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘I pray
the is this of trouth that thou hast sayd?’ / ‘frend,’
4 quod Cayme, ‘I lye neuer a worde. Nowe I praye the
synne³ I haue shewed the maner howe thou mayst
scape / take this mall of Iron and breke asonder this
tonne that I am in / that I maye be delyueryd’⁴ /
8 ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘I praye the⁵ shewe me who is
he that dyd put the into this tonne, & what is his
name?’ / ‘syr,’ quod Cayme, ‘knowe for trouth that
god of heuen set me here bycause I had dyspleasyd
12 hym for sleynge of my brother Abell, wherfore I haue
sufferyd so moche Payne and sorowe that more I
can not endure / and therfore yet agayne I praye the⁵
delyuer me⁶ hense’ / ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘god
16 forbede that I shulye delyuer the syn³ our lorde god
haue set the there / know for trouth thou shalte neuer
departe⁶ thense without⁷ it be by his commaunde-
mente / for there shalte thou be euer for me / I had
20 rather be pariuryd then to fordo⁸ that thyngē that⁹
god wyll haue done to punysshe the for the ylles¹⁰ that
thou haste done / I knowe well as for the yll¹¹ that I
haue done as in brekinge of my promyse to the,
24 god wyll lyghtly pardone me for it / abyde thou there
with thy cursyd synnes / for as¹² by me thou shalte
haue none other ayde.’

he is to fasten the
iron mallet on his
neck, that the man
shall the better
believe him.

Huon is doubtful
if this is true;
but Cain never
lies.

Huon enquires
who put Cain into
the tun,

and learns that
God of Heaven
set him there.

Therefore Huon
will not release
him;

Cain shall not
depart thence
except by the
commandment of
the Lord.

Huon feels sure
he will be
pardoned for
thus breaking
his promise.

¶ How Huon departid fro Caym and passed
28 the see in a veseyle gydyd by the deuyll,
who byleuid it had bene Cayme / and
Huon aryuyd at a citye callid Colanders,
where as he found the admirall of perse

¹ vpon. ² and surely he will then passe the ouer.

³ seeing. ⁴ out of this paine and torment. ⁵ to.

⁶ from. ⁷ excepte. ⁸ vndoe. ⁹ which. ¹⁰ euils.

¹¹ euil. ¹² sure.

¹and Barnarde his cosyn, who had layd
sege to the citye.

Ca. Cxxxii.

Cain calls Huon
traitor and liar.



Hen Cayme² vnderstode Huon, he sayd,
'A, thou false traytoure, by whome I 4
am beglyyd and mockyd / thou arte
not worthy to be byleuyd in any
thyngē that thou sayeste, thou lyest
worse than a dogge.' 'O thou false pariuryd traytoure, 8
thou hast yll kept thy promys, thou art not worthy to
be byleuyd, Cayme,' quod Huon, 'other good getteste
thou none of me / for thou arte not worthy to be harde,
when thou haste slayne thy dere brother by false enuy 12
and cursyd treason wherof thou arte ful / go thy waye,
traytoure, to moche yll³ can not be done to⁴ the / be
contente with the tonne that thou arte in / thou
nedyste not fere of any fresshyngē nor of more 16
fourtheryngē for me, well hast thou deseruyd it, but
within short tyme thou shalte haue worse payne and
sorowe.' 'A, traytoure,' quod Cayme, 'and false lyer,
thou hast loste thy parte of paradyse.' 'Thou lyeste,' 20
quod Huon / 'to⁴ the, ought to be kepte nother faythe
nor promys, bycause thou haste slayne Abell thy
brother, wherfore thou arte nowe ponysshedyd, and well
hast thou deseruyd it' / 'A, false lyer,' quod Cayme, 24
'suptylly thou haste deseyuyd⁵ me by thy false wordys
and subtyltyes / I see well thou shalte⁶ go⁷ hense and
leue me stylly in this payne.' 'sartaynely,' quod Huon,
'that I promysed the was but to begyle the / for as by 28
me thou shalt not come out without he commaunde it
that set the here' / 'well, Huon,' quod cayme, 'knowe
for sertayne that in all thy lyfe thou were never better
counseylyd, for yf thou haddest delyuerde me out in 32
contynente I⁸ wolde haue strangled the.' 'A, false

Cain complains
that Huon has
subtly deceived
him,

but owns that had
Huon delivered
him, he would
have strangled
the knight.

¹ Fol. cxix, col. 1. ² had well. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and mocked. ⁶ wilt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. cxix, col. 2.

fende,' quod Huon, 'yet thou hast no repentaunce of thyne yll¹ that thou hast done / I wyll go my waye,
and thou shalt abyde here styl² for euer in³ payne &
⁴ tormente' / there with Huon departyd and toke the
mall on⁴ his neke and enteryd in to the letyll waye
that Cayme had shewyd⁵ hym.

Huon departed
the way Cain had
shown him.

¶ Now we wyll leue spekyng of Huon and speke
8 of the admiral of Perce and of his armye on⁴ the see.

To return to
the Admiral of
Persia,
the tempest
ceased on the
second day, when
the ships arrived
at a city called
Colanders.

On⁴ the seconde day the tempest sessyd and the see⁶
calme and fayre / then the shypes drew agayne
togyder as it pleysede god, and aryuyd at a noble citye,

12 the whiche was as then in armanye called colanders,
a great and a fayre citye / but after it was dystroyd
by the noble duke ogyer y^e danoyse, he went in to
ynde / the admiral⁷ greatly compleyned for Huon
16 whom they had so lost / they though neuer to se hym
more, and Barnarde his cosyn made suche sorowe that³
pyte it was to se hym ; y^e Admyrall and all his lordes
wepte⁸ sore⁹ for Huon, they thought ne[un]jer¹⁰ to se hym

The admiral
laments the loss
of Huon greatly :
he and Barnard
fear never to see
him again.

20 agayne. But he that oure lorde Iesu chrysste wyll haue
sauyd can not peryse, for Huon the same tyme came
downe the mountayne to come to⁵ the porte where as
the veseyll laye and the deuyl with in it / when Huon
24 sawe the veseyll and the fende with in it, who was so
howdeous and horrabyle to regarde¹¹ that it was maruayle
to se ; he semyd well to be the deuyl of hell, his
hede was as great as an oxe hede / his eyne more
28 redder then .ii. brynyng¹² coles, his tethe greate and
longe, and as roght as a beyre, he caste fyre and
smoke oute of his gorge lyke a forneyse, ¹³it was no
meruayl though Huon doutyd hym / for when he saw
32 him so fowle, he had great fere / and so lent hymselfe

But at that very
time Huon was
coming down
to the ship
with the devil
in it, of which
Cain had warned
him ;
the fiend was
hideous to look
upon.

Huon had great
fear,

¹ euill. ² for euer after tormente. ³ great.

⁴ vpon. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ waxed. ⁷ and his companye.

⁸ and pitifullly complayned. ⁹ sore before wepte.

¹⁰ nener in text. ¹¹ beholde. ¹² burning.

¹³ Fol. cxix. back, col. 1.

and made the sign to a roke the better to beholde hym / ¹then he blyssed of the cross.

The enemy did not perceive the sign.
Huon entreats God to counsel him how to deal with the fiend;

if he remains in the ship Huon will surely be slain.

If Huon escapes from this adventure, he will go to the Holy Sepulchre and make war on the Saracens.

Then Huon takes heart,

and calls on the fiend to give him passage over the sea.

The fiend refuses to let him go farther, and will certainly slay him and bear his soul to hell.

Huon, in no way abashed, says he is Cain;

to a roke the better to beholde hym / ¹then he blyssed hym with the syng of the crosse, recommaundynge hymselfe to the sauе garde of our lord ²Iesu chrys^t² / it fortuned so the same teme that y^e enemy sawe hym ⁴ not. ‘A, ³very god,’³ quod Huon, ‘I praye and requyre the humbly to conseyl me in what maner I shuld trust in this fowle fende who is fereful to beholde, I haue merueyll how I myght be aqentyd ⁸ with hym, wheder I myght trust to be in the shyppe with hym / sertaynly I haue great dought that he wyll cast me in to the see or elles slee me on the other syde of, y^e se I wote not what to do / for I most be fayne to ¹² trust hym, or elles⁴ retourne in to the deserte, where as I shall dey ⁵for rage,⁵ and neuer to⁶ se wyfe nor chylde. But syn⁷ it is thus I shal aduenture myselfe with hym / and yf I may escape fro this aduenture, ¹⁶ I shall go to the holy sepulture wher as our lorde Iesu chrys^t was quycke and dedde / and then I shal make warre vpon the Sarasyns’ / then duke Huon toke on⁸ hym herte and corage, and with y^e mal on⁸ his neke he ²⁰ marchyd forth fersly / then he callyd the enemy and sayd / ‘O thou that kepest this wessell and passage, passe me in contynente ouer this see and sette me a londe on⁸ the other syde’ / when the deuyll sawe ²⁴ Huon with the mal on⁸ his neke and spekyng so fersly, he sayd, ‘what arte thou, wheder wylt thou go, or what dost thou seke for here, or how art thou so bolde to come heder, thou shalt neuer go ferther. But ²⁸ I shal cast the in the see or strangell the, and then bere thy soule in to hell.’

⁹ ¶ when Huon hard hym, he began to trymble, but he was no thinge abasshyd / for yf he had fayntyd or ³² taryed to haue made awnswere he had incontynent be¹⁰

¹ and. ²⁻² god, but. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ to.
⁵⁻⁵ with famine. ⁶ more. ⁷ seeing. ⁸ vppon.
⁹ Fol. cxix, back, col. 2. ¹⁰ beene.

dystroyed and slayne / but lyke a hardy knyght ful of
great prowes, & ferme in the fayth of Iesu chryst, sayd /
'hold thy pease, thou fole / for I am Cayme for whome
4 thou hast taryed here so longe / I came ryght¹ now out
of the rollynge tonne vpon the mountayne : hast the
and passe me ouer this arme of the see / for I shall
fynd nother man nor woman / that byleneth on² Iesu
8 chryst but I shall sle hym to the entent that hell maye
be fyllyd with theyr sowles' / when the fende harde
Huon say so he had great ioye, and sayde / 'Cayme,
whye haste thou made me tary here so longe as I haue
12 dome, I am ioyfull of thy comynge / for I coud neuer
haue departyd out of this place without thou haddest
bene delyuerid out of the tonne, therfore, Cayme, come
on thy waye, enter into this shyppe³ / and I shal
16 brynge the where as thou wylte be / gladly I wyll passee
the ouer the see to the entente that thou shuldest sle
chrysten men and Sarasyns / to haue theyr sowles into
hell' / Then Huon enteryd into the shyppe com-
20 maundynge⁴ hymselfe to our lorde Iesu chrysste : and
sayd, 'quyckly passee me ouer' / or⁵ Huon thought
that he had bene gone but .ii. legys, he was ouer on the
other syde, wheroft Huon had great maruayle that he
24 was so sone ouer, and thankyd our lorde god that he
was out of that daunger: then he toke leue of the
enemy, and sayd, 'farewell, I wyll retourne agayn
shortely, within these thre dayes thou shalte here
28 tydynge of me' / ⁶then the fende awryerd shortly
and sayde, 'Cayme, go thy waye quyckely, & hast the
⁷to the entent that when thou retournyst into hell, thou
shalte haue good chere of our maysters, who greatly
32 desyret thy comynge' / then Huon departyd quyckely /
he thought euer the deuyl had folowed hym / ⁸then
Huon⁸ went so longe that he aprochyd to a citye

the fiend must
give him passage,
and then will
Cain slay all
Christians.

The fiend joyfully
invites Cain to
enter the ship:

he will gladly
take him over
the sea.

Very quickly the
ship arrives at
the land on the
other side of the
sea,
and Huon thanks
God for his
deliverance.
He takes leave of
the fiend,
promising to
return in three
days.

Huon departed
quickly, and
approached the
city of Colanders,

¹ euen.

² in.

³ presently.

⁴ recommending.

⁵ Before.

⁶ and.

⁷ Fol. cxx. col. 1.

⁸⁻⁸ and he.

and in the even-
ing entered it
with the mallet
on his neck.

The Saracens
marvelled to see
him come alone
on foot, and
armed,

and demanded of
him who he was.

He is Cain, come
to destroy all who
believe in the law
of Jesus Christ.

That night the
paynims feasted
Huon and
welcomed him
joyfully,

because the day
before the admiral
of Persia had laid
siege to the city.

callyd Colanders / glad was Huon when he had loste
the syghte of the ¹spryghte¹ / and in the euynnyng he
enteryd into the citye of colanders with the mall on²
his necke / the paynyme and Sarasyns³ within the ⁴
citye had great maruayle when he cam alone afote
clene armyd into the citye / and amonge other there
was one demaundid of hym what he was and why
he wente so alone armyd / then Huon answeryd hym ⁸
fersly to abasshe hym therwith, and sayd, ‘I am
Cayme who by myne ylnes slew Abell my brother,
wherwith god was angery with me / but or⁴ it be longe
tyme I shall take suche vengaunce that as many men, ¹²
or women, or chylldren, as I fynd byleuyng in the
lawe of Iesu chryst, I shall dystroy them all in such
wyse that the paynyme and Sarasyns shal haue no
dought for any yll⁵ that they shall do to⁶ them / for I ¹⁶
shall dystroye and sle them all, nother sparynge olde
nor yong’ / when the paynyme harde that they were
⁷joyfull / and that nyght saruyd well⁸ Huon and made
hym great feste, bycause they trustyd that he shulde ²⁰
dystroye all chrystendome, and sayd amonge them
selues that he was as then⁹ welcom thether bycause the
citye was besegyd the day before by the admiral
of Perce / thus Huon had great ioye & feaste made to⁶ ²⁴
hym ; and after supper he was broughte to¹⁰ a¹¹ ryche
chambre wherin he laye and slept¹² tyll¹³ the nexte
mornynge.

¶ ¹⁴ How Huon¹⁵ had great ioye when he sawe ²⁸
the admiral of Perce before Colanders
where he foughte with the Sarasyns.

Ca. C.xxxiii.

¹⁻¹ euill Spirit. ² vpon. ³ that were. ⁴ before.

⁵ euill. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ right. ⁸ well after Huon.

⁹ as then after that. ¹⁰ into. ¹¹ faire and.

¹² soundly. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxx. col. 2.

¹⁵ of Bourdeaux.



Fter that y^e admiral of Perce had
lefte Huon in the deserte of abylaunt
& how he had a great storme on¹ y^e
see, & at y^e last there shypes
asemblyd togyder & aryued at the

The admiral of
Persia had ar-
rived at the city
of Colanders

port before the ceyte of colanders,

in the whiche cyete huon was³ in / who was ryght
8 ioyous when he knewe that y^e admiral was come

although the
admiral and
Barnard were
lamenting that
never again
would they see
him.

theader to laye sege to the cete, and the admerall⁴ was
sorowfull bycause they had lost huon, and speseyally
barnard hys cosyn, for he though neuer to haue seen
12 hym agayne. But he had shortly tdynges of hym as
ye shal here after / when the admerall was aryuyd at
y^e porte, they armyd them⁵ and ordeyned there men
as well as they myght to assayll the ceyte of colanders.

The admiral
orders his men
to assault the
city.

16 They issuyd out of there shypys & came marchyng
towardeſ the ceyte, and made a great assault / ⁶then y^e
paynymeſ⁷ armyd them on all sydes and went to the
defences / then the chatelyne⁸ of y^e toune came to

The paynims,
fully armed,
went to the defences,

20 huon, and sayl, ‘come on forth, cayme, it is tyme for
you to shewe what ye can do / for here with out ar the²
eristene men assaylynge the ceyte / I pray you spare
them not,⁹ we haue great trust in you’ / ‘syrs,’ quod

and the captain
calls on Huon to
show what he can
do.

24 huon, ‘syn¹⁰ I am in this ceyte ye nedde not to fere
any parson, anone ye shall se what I can do’ / ‘cayme,’
quod the capetayne, ‘I pray you go on before, and we
shall folowe you’ / ‘well,’ quod huon, ‘with this mall

Huon is to go
before, and the
rest will follow;
Huon will destroy
the enemy with
his mallet.

28 I shall astone them all’ / the paynymeſ had great ioy
of his wordes, wenynge surely it had bene cayme /
then huon¹¹ armyd hym / and he hadde a good horse
brought to¹² hym, where vpon he mountyd / then he

Huon, armed and
well mounted,
went out of the
city, and found
the men of the
Admiral of Persia
ranged in order of
battle.

32 and the paynymeſ issuyd out of the citye and found as
then the admiral of Perse and all his company redy

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³ now. ⁴ and his companie.

⁵ themselves. ⁶ and. ⁷ and Sarazins. ⁸ Captaine.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ Fol. cxx. back, col. 1. ¹² vnto.

rengyd¹ in batayle. And when he sawe *that* the Sarasyns were issyud out, he set on² them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the aduenture that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and 4 wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseyuyd and feastyd in the citye by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaultes were of the realme of Perce, and how the admiral & his cosyn Barnard 8 were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of y^e good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd : ³ O very god, ye ought³ greatly to be laudyd,⁴ for ye⁵ neuer fayle⁶ them at 12 tyme of nede *that* serueth you⁷ / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones⁸ se my wyfe & my chylde' / thus Huon sayd to himselfe beholdyne bothe batayles fyghtynge. 16

Huon takes no part in the fight, because he had been so kindly welcomed in the city.

He thanks God that once again he beholds the admiral and Barnard, and hopes, with the Lord's aid, to see his wife and child.

¶ Howe the citye of Colanders was taken by the admiral of perce after he had wonne the batayle, and of the great ioye that was made to⁹ Huon when he was knownen by 20 the admeral of Perse and by his cosyn Barnarde. Ca. C.xxi.iiii.

The admiral set on his enemies ; the slaughter on both sides was great.

The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.



10 Hen the admiral of Perce sawe and parseuyuyd *that* they of the towne 24 were issyud out, he marched forthe his batayles and set on¹¹ his enemyes / there was great slauter¹² on both partyes. But at the last they of the citye had the 28 worse, for the chrysten men were of a greater nombre then the paynyme¹³ that were issyud out, wherfore

1 arriued. 2 vpon. 3-3 Ah, good Lord, thou oughtest.

4 prayded. 5 thou. 6 faylest. 7 thee. 8 more.

9 vnto. 10 Fol. cxx. back, col. 2. 11 vpon.

12 made. 13 and Sarazins.

they were constrainyd to graunt the vyctory to theyr
enemyes / the paynymes ¹tourned theyr backes¹ and
fled towardes theyr citye / & the admyrall and Barnarde
4 with theyr company chasyd them ²and slew them,²
that it was pety to se it / fynally the admyrall opressyd
them so sore, that he enteryd in to the citye with
them, and Barnarde & his company / and slewe and bet
8 downe the Sarasyns, that maruayle it was to see / the
blud that ran in³ the stretys / when the admyrall sawe
how⁴ he had the vyctory / then he commaundyd to
sece the² sleynge / and that all suche as wold byleue
12 ⁵on god Iesu chryst,⁶ theyr lyues shuld be sauyd and
theyr goodes / and so all such as wold not be christenid
shuld be slayn incontynent and none sparyd, the
which was done / many⁷ receyuyd chrysztendome, and
16 such⁸ as wold not were⁹ slayne / thus as this citye was
taken ; then Huon, who¹⁰ enterid into the citye with
the admyralles men, came to the palays, where as
he sawe the admyrall and all the barons, & Barnarde
20 his cosyn / Huon had styl his malle in¹¹ his necke /
¹² when he came into the hal he dyd¹³ of his helme and
salutyd the admyrall & all the other that were there ;
when the admyrall and his lordys sawe Huon, the¹⁴ ioye
24 that they had no man¹⁵ can tel. ‘ O ryght¹⁶ vertuous
knyght,’ quod the admyrall, ‘ your comyng doth so
reioys me that I can not tell whether I dreme or not,
ye ar moche bounde to¹⁷ god that he hathe geuen you
28 y^e grace to sauе you fro perell /, then the admyrall /
embracyd Huon ; and ye may well knowe that Barnarde,
his cosyn, had great ioye, & so had all the other /
¹²then the admyrall sayd to¹⁷ Huon, ‘ syr, I pray you
32 shew me what aduentures ye have had syn ye departyd

The paynims fled
to the city,
pursued by the
admiral and
Barnard, who at
length enter the
city.

Seeing he had the
victory, the
admiral orders
the slaughter to
cease,
and promises to
spare all who will
be baptized.

Many accepted
Christianity,
those who would
not were slain,
and thus was the
city taken.

Huon comes to
the palace, and
salutes the
admiral and all
the others ;
their great joy
no man can
describe.

The admiral
cannot tell if it be
a dream or not;

he embraces
Huon.

The admiral asks
of Huon his
adventures,

¹⁻¹ retired. ²⁻² omitted. ³ through. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. cxxi. col. 1. ⁶⁻⁶ in our Lorde God. ⁷ of them.

⁸ as many. ⁹ receiue were all. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ vpon.

¹² and. ¹³ put. ¹⁴ great. ¹⁵ tongue.

¹⁶ deere and. ¹⁷ vnto

fro vs' / then Huon shewyd them all as ye haue harde
here before, and how he scapyd / when the admiral

which he relates,
to their great
wonder.

and other vnderstode Huon they were neuer so¹ abasshyd
in all theyr lyfe / of that he was so scapyd fro the ⁴
handys of the deuyll, and sayd how² he was moche
bounde to³ god ; they were al glad⁴ of the comynge of
Huon, and specyally Barnarde / then the capetayne of
the citye, who had newly receyuyd chrystendome, came ⁸

All, and especially
Barnard, are glad
of Huon's coming.

to³ Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you⁵ desyre the
admirall to be my goode lorde⁶ / for I promyse⁷
faythefully to abyde here in this toune as his good and
trew seruaunt, kepyng ⁸fermely the chrysten faythe, ¹²

The captain of the
city, who was
newly converted,
desires the
admiral to be his
good lord.

the whiche I haue newly receyuyd' / when Huon saw
the capetayne who had receyuid hym in to his house at
his fyrske comynge in to the citye, he wente to³ the
admirall, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you to geue the ¹⁶

Huon asks the
admiral to give
the keeping of the
city to this noble
man.

kepyng of this citye to³ this noble man &⁹ to holde it
as his owne, and to do homage to³ you for it' / 'syr,'
quod the admirall, 'al that ye wyll I am agreeable vnto ;
I graunt it hym for the loue of you' / Then Huon ²⁰

The admiral
grants this for
love of Huon.

thankyd the admirall / the capetayne, seynge the great
and ryche gyfte that the admirall had geuen³ hym for
the loue of Huon, he had great maruayle of y^e great
larges and courtesy that was done to³ hym by meanes ²⁴

The captain
thanked them,
and did homage
to the admirall.

of Huon / ¹⁰then he knelyd downe before them and
thankyd them, and dyd homage to³ the admirall in

The captain
promises to guard
the city against
all men,

the presence of all the lordys,¹¹ and promysid trewly to
kype the citye agaynst all men that wold do any ²⁸

The captain
promises to guard
the city against
all men,

domage therunto, nor neuer to yeld it vp to³ any
parsonе but alonly to the admirall or to³ hym that

and thus was
Colanders taken.

shall haue his comyssyon / thus¹² y^e citye of Colanders
was taken.

¹ amazed and. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and right ioyfull.

⁵ to. ⁶ and Maister. ⁷ promised.

⁸ Fol. cxxi. col. 2. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ and barons.

¹² as yee haue heard.

¶ How the admiral of Perce and Huon of Burdeaux, and all theyr hoste, passyd by Antyoche and by Damas & came to the
 4 citye of Ierusalem to the holy sepulture,
 & was nobly receyuid be the kynge of Ierusalem / and how the Soudans messenger
 came and defied the admiral of perce.

8

Ca. C.xxxxv.

¹  Hen the admirall and Huon sawe this
 citye thus² wonne and brought vnder
 their obeysance, and had stablysshed
 12 there a newe lorde and capetayne, and
 set prouostis, and baylyffes, and other
 officers / then they toke aduyse together and deter-
 mynynd, syn they were alonde, to send backe agayne
 16 theyr nauey of shypes into Perce / & they to go by
 londe to the citye of Ierusalem / for they had fro
 thence as they were but .x. ³iounleys³ vnto antyoche /
 and so to pas by that citye, and then to⁴ Damas,
 20 & then⁵ to Ierusalem, and there to do theyr offerynge ;
 and yf by aduenture they founde in theyr waye other
 kyngis or admirallis that wolde let or trouble them in
 theyr passyng, they sayd⁶ they were of pusans suffycient
 24 to resyste agaynste them / and then they sayde how⁶ fro
 Ierusalem the admirall myght retourne by lond into
 Perce / vnto the ryuer Euprates / and there his nauey to
 mete hym, & so to conuey hym to⁴ his citye of Thauris /
 28 & Huon to retourne to⁴ Iaffe, and fro thence by water
 to retourne into fraunce : thus they concludyd to do /
 the which aduyce was laudyd⁷ of all the lordys⁸ of the
 hoste ; af⁹ter this conclusyon thus taken / the admirall

The admiral and Huon determine to send back their ships to Persia, and to go by land to Jerusalem through Antioch and Damascus.

They themselves were of sufficient might to resist any kings or admirals who should trouble them in their way.

From Jerusalem the admiral could return by land to Persia ; his navy could meet him at the river Euphrates and convey him to Tauris, and Huon could return to France by water from Jaffa.

¹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 1. ² omitted. ³⁻³ dayes iourney.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ so.

⁸ and Barons.

⁶ that. ⁷ and praised.

⁹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2.

The ships, after
setting ashore the
things necessary
for the journey by
land, are
discharged,

and their masters
commanded to
await the admiral
in the river
Euphrates.

The admiral
ordered that
merchants and
others should
send after his host
supplies of food,
and gave this
charge to the new
admiral of
Colanders.

Every man was
to be ready in the
morning to go
where it pleased
the admiral,

and with great
noise the admiral,
Huon, and all the
host entered the
fields on their way
to Antioch;

they reached the
city on a Monday,

commaundyd his shypis to be dyschargyd of all thyngis necessary to be caried by londe / the whiche was done dylygently¹ / theyr horses were sette a londe, and theyr tentys and pauylyons trussyd vpon mulys, & 4 Camelles, and Dromedaryes / the which caryag semyd a great host, there were so many together / the noyse and brute that they made semyd to be a newe worlde / ²when al the shypis were dyscharygd, the patrouns and maysters of the shypis toke theyr leue of the admyrall, who commaundyd them expresly to abide for hym in the ryuer of Eufrates / and so they dyd.³ Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them and turne to⁴ ou[r]⁵ 12 fyrste⁶ mater. ¶ when these shypis were departyd & euery thynge trussyd / then y^e admyral commaundyd thrughe⁷ all the countre that all marchantis and other able to do it shulde sende after his host brede, wyne, 16 and fleshe, and bysket to vytell his host ; and the charge to se this done was geuyn to the newe admyrall of⁸ Colanders / the whiche he dyd dylygently / when the admyrall of Perce saw⁹ tyme to departe, he made it 20 to be cryed¹⁰ thrughe⁷ the city by a trumpet¹¹ euery man to¹² make hym redy to depart y^e next mornyng to go whether it pleasid y^e admyral ; this was done, so that¹³ an owre before the next day there was great 24 brute & noyse made in the remouyng ; then y^e admyrall & Huon made them redy, & mountid on¹⁴ theyr horsis & issued out of the citye and enterid into the feldis / then the hole hoste toke y^e way towardis Antioche ; 28 of theyr iourneys I make no rehersaile : they ¹⁵did¹⁵ so that they passyd by low Armanye & by the hye ¹⁶ermyne, and so on¹⁴ a mondaye they came before Antyoche / where as they logyd that nyghte a longe¹⁷ 32

¹ according to his commaundement. ² and.

³ accordingly. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ out in text. ⁶ former.

⁷ out. ⁸ the citie of. ⁹ his. ¹⁰ proclaimed.

¹¹ that. ¹² should. ¹³ at. ¹⁴ vppon.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ road foorth. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxii. col. 1. ¹⁷ by.

the ryuer¹ without that any parson of the citye made
any semblaunt to trouble or to let them / but they
brought out of the citye into y^e host brede, flesshie,²
<sup>and encamped
by the river,
supplied with
food by the men
of the city.</sup>

4 and wyne, and othe[r]³ thyngys necessary for theyr
meny⁴ / wherof the admiral and Huon were ryght
ioyous,⁵ and coude⁶ them great thanke / and for that
courtoise the admirall wolde not siffer that any of his
8 hoste shulde do any hurte or damage to⁷ any parson of
the citye / then the nexte daye when they had dynyd,
they toke theyr waye toward the citye of Damas / and
as they wente thetherwarde they toke sartayne townes
12 and castelles, and brought them vnder theyr obey-
saunce / and such as were taken parforce and wolde not
bylue in our ⁸lorde god⁸ Iesu chrysste incontynent⁹
were¹⁰ slayne.¹¹ Thus wastynge and dystroyenge the
16 countre in theyr waye, at laste they came before the
citye of Damas ; when they came thether they logyd
abougt the citye in the gardaines and subbarbes, and
constraynyd them within the citye to brynge them
20 vytayles / y^e whiche they dyd for dought of the
dystroyenge of theyr gardayns and frutys there ; they
laye one nyght, and the nexte daye they toke the waye
to Ierusalem, and had dyuers batayles by the waye /
24 but they were of so great a pusaunce that none coude
resyst¹² them ; so longe rode this chryssten host that
they came and logyd before Napelous, and there lefte
theyr hoste, then the next mornynge the admirall and
28 Huon, and dyuers of the great lordys¹³ of Perce,¹⁴
departyd fro Napelous, to the nombre of foure thou-
sand¹⁵ knyghtis to accompany¹⁶ them into the ci¹⁷tye
of Ierusalem / thether they came abougt none, where
<sup>In gratitude for
this, no man
harmed any
person of the city.</sup>

The next day
they went to-
wards Damascus,
and on their way
took possession
of certain towns
and castles.

At Damascus
they lodged in
the gardens and
suburbs,
and obliged those
within the city to
furnish supplies.

The next day
they set out for
Jerusalem,
fighting many
battles by the
way, but none
could resist their
power.
They next lodged
before Nablous,
and Huon, the
admiral, and
about 4000
of the great lords
of Persia, reached
Jerusalem at
noon on the next
day.

¹ side. ² flesshie *after* wyne. ³ othem *in text.*

⁴ companie. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ gaue. ⁷ vnto.

⁸⁻⁹ Sauiour and Redeemer. ⁹ they. ¹⁰ all.

¹¹ and brought to vtter ruine and destroyed. ¹² against.

¹³ and barons. ¹⁴ accompanied with them. ¹⁵ valiant.

¹⁶ guard. ¹⁷ Fol. cxxii. col. 2.

They were
joyfully received
by the king, and
the patriarch, and
the arch-priest.

They made their
offerings to the
Holy Sepulchre,

and when they
had accomplished
their holy pil-
grimage, all were
splendidly feasted
at the palace.

As they sat at
dinner, a Saracen
entered;

he was a
messenger sent
by the sultan
to challenge the
admiral to battle
between Rame
and Jaffa.

as they were receyuyd with great ioy of kyng Thibault
and of the patryarke & arche pryst, who as then were
in¹ Ierusalem / whom y^e emperour Constantyne had
lefte there and orderyd for the kepyng of the citye ; 4
when the admirall of Perce, and duke Huon, &
Barnarde, and other went and offeryd to the holy
sepulture / then they went to the temple of Salamon
and to² the holy temple of Symeon, where as they 8
made theyr offerynges / and the next ³day they dyd
theyr other³ pylgremages to² all the holy plases in the
citye with great deuosyon and reuerence ; when they
had acompllysshyd theyr holey pylgremages, they 12
retournyd to the paleyse of the kynge of Ierusalem,
where as they were greatly festyd and honerably
receyuyd, of theyr seruyce I wyll make none acounte /
but one thynge I dare well saye, that there was neuer 16
admirall⁴ nor kynge better seruyd / and as they sate at
dyner / there enteryd a sarasyn fowle and blacke,
callyd Trampoynghnyfle, the whiche is as moch to say
as Balaach. Then he sayd ahye before the table / ' the 20
same god that made the fyrmanent, and that downe to
vs he³ sent his holy profyt Mahomet to teche vs his
holy law / he sauе and kepe Saphadin y^e³ sowdan of
Babylon and of Egypte, & may confound them that 24
be his enemyes / to the admirall of Perce & of Mede ;
the sowdan sendethe the³ worde by me / that wro[n]g-
fully and without cause thou goest & dystroyest his
countre & his people without⁵ geuyng hym any 28
knowlege why thou dost soo / & therfore by me he
sendeth y^e word ³by me³ that am his secrete messenger,
that he wyl assynge to² y^e day of batayle, that is a⁶
thursday nexte comynge, ⁷betwene Rame and Iaffe / 32
wheras there is a playne countre / and he wyll⁸ thou

¹ the Citie of. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted.

⁴ Admirall after kyng. ⁵ not. ⁶ vpon.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that.

knowyst for sartayne that yf he take the, thou shalte
be hangyd & flayne all quycke,¹ and all other that I
se here settynge at this table.'

¶ Of the awnser that the admiral of Perce
made to² the sowdans messenger / and of
the report that he made to² his mayst[er].

Ca. C.xxxvi.

8  Hen the admirall had well harde³ the
sowdans messenger, he begane to smyle,
and sayd ⁴ to the messenger, 'go and
say to ⁴ thy mayster that I sette no
12 thynge by his thretenyng nor by no
thynge that he can do, nor I wyll not leue for all his
sayenge to distroye, and to take his townes and castelles,
and to sle all them that wyll not byleue in Iesu Chryst,
16 and saye vnto hym fro me that I am not in mynd to
recule⁵ backe / but by the ayde of god my creature, I
shall go⁶ and mete with hym so that he shall not need
to tary for me, and I shall fyght with hym my pusaunce
20 agaynst his to shewe ⁷ hym how they can do *that*
bileueth in Iesu chrys / go thy waye & saye to² thy
mayster that he shall not fynde me fleynge for any fere
that I haue of any man byleuyng in the false &
24 detestable faythe of mahomet.' Then the admirall
commaundyd to gyue to the messenger mete & drynke,
and .xl. florencis; the messenger refusyd it not, but
toke it, and thankyd the admirall / & when he had
28 dynyd he taryed not nyght nor day tyll⁸ he came to the
citye of Gasere, where as he founde the soudan & all
his army, the whiche was a great nombre, for they were
9 mo then⁹ a .C.M. men, and all they thretenyd the

The admiral sets
no value on the
sultan's threats,
and is ready to
fight with him.

The admiral gives
the messenger
food and twelve
florins;

he returned to
Gaza, where was
the sultan with
100,000 men.

¹ and neuer see faire day more. ² vnto.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴⁻⁴ Tell. ⁵ retire. ⁶ come.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vntill. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

deth of y^e admyral of Perce / but it is a comune sayng
that many thingis lackethe of folyshe thoughtis, & so
dyd they / when y^e messenger was ariuyd at Gasere, he
came before the soudan & made his reporte what 4
answere the admyral had made hym / & when the soudan¹ vnderstode the messenger, he had great maruayle
of the great outrage *that* he thought to be in the
admyral of Perce in *that* he durste abyde hym, & 8
sware by his lawe *that* yf he myght haue the vper
hand of the admyral that he wolde flee hym quicke.
Then he commaundyd his hoste to dyslode & to take
the way towardis Escalonne / y^e whiche they dyn. 12

The sultan was
astonished at the
admiral's reply,

and swore he
would kill him
quickly.

He orders his
host to march
towards Escalon.

¶ How the admyrall of perce sent his men
that laye at Napelous & causyd them to
drawe² towardes Rames, and how they
departyd fro Ierusalem ; and how he wente 16
to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulum .C.xxxvii.



³ Fter that Trampougnifle, the mes-
sanger, was departyd fro Ierusalem 20
and retournyd to his mayster the
sowdan / then the admyrall of Perce
and Huon of Burdeaux, who were in
the palays with the kyng of Ieru- 24
salem / thether they callyd all theyr counsayle ; and
when they were al assembelyd, the admyrall sayd /
' syrs, I pray you counsayle me what maner I shall vse
myselfe to go and mete with the enemyes of the chrysten 28
faythe, the whiche are come agaynst vs, therfore
I desyre eche⁴ of you to shew me your opynyon
what⁵ is best to be done.' Then Thybaulte, kynge of

The admiral asks
the king of
Jerusalem to
counsel him how
best to meet
these enemyes of
the Christian
faith.

¹ had well heard and. ² with drawe.

³ Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ eueryone. ⁵ in this case.

Ierusalem, arose¹ and sayd, 'syr admiral of Perce and
Mede, we thynke ye shuld not abyde them here / but
rather ye ought to departe and to go agaynst your
4 enemyes / for yf ye abyde for them in this citye ye
shal do great damage to this countre, for we haue truse
with the Sowdan for .v. yerys, the which with our
honour we can not breke / for yf we wolde haue made
8 warre agaynst hym, we coude not a² resystid agaynst
hym / and also we ar far of fro Fraunce to seke
for socoure & ayde there.' Then³ the kyng spake no
more. Then duke Huon of Burdeaux sayde / 'syr
12 admiral, y^e kynge of Ierusalem hath shewyd you the
trouthe / for yf we shuld abyde here, it shulde be
alwayes to our reproche⁴ yf this holy citye shulde
be lost, the which was wonne by two noble emperours
16 as of Rome and of Grece, for the kynge that is here his
honoure sauyd and the suertye of his countre, maye not
breke the truse that he hath taken with the Sowdan of
Babylon / and therfore myne aduyse it⁵ that as sone as
20 we may commaunde your men that be at Na⁶pelous
hastely to dyslode and to mete with you at Rames /
and then when ye haue somwhat refreshyd your hoste,
then set forwarde towardys your enemyes / as the
24 kynge of Ierusalem hath sayd / for it were folly
to gyue them leyser to come to far forward / fyrst let
them know how the swordys and sperys of the Percyens
and Medyens can stryke / who somtyme dyd maruayles
28 in armes, wherfore it is reason that they folowe nowe
theyr predecessours' / when Huon had fynysshyd his
reason / the admiral and all the⁷ lordys that were
there laudyd,⁸ and helde *that counsayle good that was*
32 purposyd by the kynge of Ierusalem and of Huon /
and then they departyd and retournyd to theyr⁹

King Thibault
advises them to
go and meet the
enemy,

since he has a
five years' truce
with the Sultan,
and cannot in
honour break it.

Huon advises that
the men left at
Nablous be com-
manded to break
up their camp
and meet them at
Rames,
and then alto-
gether set forward
against the
enemy.

¹ vp. ² haue. ³ thus. ⁴ and shame. ⁵ is.

⁶ Fol. cxxiii. col. 2. ⁷ other. ⁸ praised.

⁹ Chambers and.

The admiral follows this counsel.

takes leave of the king of Jerusalem ; Huon and Barnard do likewise.

On arriving at Rames they found the host ready lodged, and the next day the host sets out for Escalon, to the great joy of Huon.

The admiral arranged his army thus : the first division under Huon and Barnard ; the second led by the marshal of Persia ; and the third by the admiral himself.

He exhorts all to do their duty valiantly, and specially puts his hope in the strength and prowess of Huon.

logynge. Then the admiral commaundyd hastily his hoste to drawe towardes rames, where as he wolde tary for them / the whiche thynge was done dylgently / ¹the host restyd not till they came to² Ramys, where 4 as they founde redy y^e admyralles herbygers, who had redy³ apoyntyd theyr logynges. Thus after that y^e almyrall had wryten to his marshalles of his hoste, he toke then⁴ his leue of the kynge of Ierusalem, and in 8 lyke wyse so dyd Huon and Barnarde his cosyn, without knowlegyng of hymselfe to the kynge of Ierusalem. Then they departyd fro y^e holy citye, and rode so longe that they came to the towne of Rames, whereas they 12 founde theyr host redy⁵ lodgyd. Then they restyd them there vnto⁶ the nexte daye / ¹then the admyrall commaundyd⁷ to dysloge and⁸ thake the waye towardys Escaloun. A goodlye syght it was to se the hoste 16 dysloge / Huon had therof great ioye / for he desyryd rather to slee the paynymes then to be in chaumbres with ladies & damosellis ; ⁹when they were all in the feldys the admyrall ordayned his batayles / the fyrist 20 gydyd Huon of Burdeaux and Barnard his cosyn, he had with hym .xx. M. Persyans ferse and hardy / the seconde batayle led the marshall of Perce with .xx. M. men⁵ of good men of warre / the thryd batayle led the 24 admyrall of Perse and of Mede, and with him .xxx. M. men⁵ of the most valyantys men of his hoste / ¹when euery thynge was ordayne as it aparteyned, he went and vysyted,⁷ exortynge them to do well theyr 28 deuoyre¹⁰ / then he came to² Huon and sayde. ‘ O, ryght¹¹ vertuous knyght, garnysshed and replete with all prowes / all my hope I put in your strenthe and vertue of your armis and body / therfore I desyre you 32

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ alreadie. ⁴ then *after* haste.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ them.

⁸ to make them ready to. ⁹ Fol. cxxiii, back, col. 1.

¹⁰ and prayinge them to quit themselves valiantly.

¹¹ deare and.

this day to shew out your great vertues wherof¹ ye
 be² garnysshed / for specyally for y^e loue of you and
 for your bountye I haue taken & receyuyd the holy
 4 baptym, wherof I laud³ our lord god of his grace *that*
 he hath done to⁴ me / therfore I desyre you this day
 to shewe to⁴ the sarasyns that your sworde is to be
 feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god gyue me grace to be
 8 such⁵ one as ye saye, and to parfourme in me that⁶
 lackethe / and, syr, I truste in me it shall not be let but
that this daye our enemyes shall haue no cause to praise
 nor to make⁷ bost ; ⁸therfore, syr, let vs ryde forth
 12 suerly / for by the grace of god I haue hope *that* this
 daye we shall gyue⁹ our enemyes so moch a do that
 they shall haue scante¹⁰ ¹¹leyser to graunte⁴ vs the
 vyctory' / and¹² as y^e admirall and Huon was¹³ thus
 16 deuysing together, they sawe before them a fare of the
 ayre waxe thycke, and that the sonne lost his clerenes,
 wherof they had great maruayle, bycause they sawe¹⁴
 the sonne shyne so fayre & clere there ; as they were
 20¹⁵ anone they parseyuid that the darkenes rose by reason
 of the dust rysyng of the horses of theyr enemies, who
 were hastily comynge towards them to haue taken
 them in theyr logynge, wherby they came all out
 24 of order / trustynge all in theyr great nombre of men,
 for they were mo then a .C.M. ; ferfull it was to se
 them comynge / so faste they rode, that the one hoste
 myght well se the other / when Huon had well parseyuyd
 28 them and sawe theyr demenoure and dysorder,¹⁶ sayde
 to⁴ y^e admirall / 'syr, well ye ought to prayse our
 lord¹⁷ Iesu chrys¹⁷ for this day he shal bryng your
 enemyes into your handis to sle them at your pleasure ;
 32 therfore, syr, I counsayle¹⁸ that incontynente¹⁹ in

Huon trusts the
 enemy shall have
 no cause to boast,
 and is anxious to
 ride forward.

As they talked,
 they saw the sun
 lose his clearness,
 and marvelled
 much;

it was by reason
 of the dust from
 the horses of their
 enemies,

who, trusting
 to their vast
 numbers, were
 advancing with-
 out any order.

¹ wherwith. ² are. ³ and praise. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ a.
⁶ which. ⁷ their. ⁸ and. ⁹ make. ¹⁰ scarce.
¹¹ time and. ¹² now. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ a little before.
¹⁵ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ hee. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ god.
¹⁸ you. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ we hasten and.

Huon advises
an immediate
attack upon the
enemy;

it is easy to
discomfort them
while they are in
such confusion.

The admiral gives
the word to
advance.

When the sultan
sees the host of
the Persians
advancing,

he desires to set
his armies in
order.

Then steps forth
the admiral of
Dorbrye, great
and horrible to
behold.

He rode a mare
with a horn in
her forehead.

The admiral
seemed rather a
fiend of hell,
and all made way
as he came to the
sultan.

The admiral
advises to meet
the enemy at
once,
he boasts he can
slay them all.

haste¹⁹ sette vpon them to the entente that they shal
haue no¹ leyser to assemble together to bryngē themſelue
in good order / yf we do thus it is no dought, but by
the grace of god, we shall shortly dyscomfyte them or² 4
they be assembelid.' 'Syr,' quod the admiral, 'your
opynyon is good and resonable / let it be done as
ye haue deuysid' / then the admiral commaundyd y^e
marshalles & capetayns of his hoste to marche forwarde 8
his batayles agaynst his enemyes / ³then trumpetys
and tabours⁴ began to sown, that it was maruayle to
here them / ³then they set on towardis theyr enemyes /
when the Sowdan and they of his hoste sawe the 12
Persyans comyng agaynst them redy rengyd in batayle /
then⁵ he calyd to⁶ hym his kyngis and admiralys,
who were .xv. in nombre, and said to⁶ them / 'syr, it
were good that our men restyd stylly a season, that we 16
myght order and renge our batayles / for yonder we
maye se⁷ our enemyes comynge' / Then stepte forthe
the admiral of Dorbrye, who was orryble & great to
behold, ⁸he was .xv. fote of heylite, and rode on⁹ a 20
goodly splayed mare, the most fayrest and greatest that
euer was sene, she had a great horne in her forhede / yf
she were anythyng chafyd none durste aproche nere⁶
her but alonly her kepar / this admiral was fowle and 24
great, he rather semyd a fende of hell then any humayne
creature / ³when he came to⁶ the Sowdan euery man
made hym way / then he said to⁶ the Soudan, 'syr, I
haue great maruaile of the that thou art so affrayed for 28
a small nombre of men / who are comynge towardys
theyr dethe / syr, knowe for trouth that or² ye can
order your men in¹⁰ to good¹⁰ araye, I shall dyscomfyte
your enemyes and delyuer to⁶ you the admiral of 32

¹ time nor. ² before. ³ and.

⁴ Drummes, ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ well.

⁸ Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ battaile.

Perce other quycke or dede' / when the Sowdan¹
 vnderstode the admiral of Dorbrey, he sayd / 'syr
 admiral, I put al the conducte of myne hoste into
 4 your handys / I haue great affyaunce in the vertue that
 is in you, and in the strenthe of your armys / the
 whiche ar greatly to be feryd' / then the Sowdan
 commaundyd all his host to set on² theyr enemyes, and
 8 sayd / 'syn³ the admiral of Dorbrey is with me I fere
 no man of Perse nor⁴ Mede,' & so sporyd his horse
 without makynge of any good order.

The sultan
 therefore puts the
 conduct of his
 host into the
 hands of the
 admiral of
 Dorbrey.

¶ Now speke we of the great batayle that
 12 was in the playnes of Raines betwene the
 Sowdon of Babilon and the admiral of
 Perce / the whiche was discomfited by
 the prowes of Huon of Burdeaux.

16

Ca. C.xxxxviii.

5  Hen Huon, who led the fyrist batayle of Seeing the
 the Perseans, beheld and sawe how Saracens advance
 the Sarasyns came on without any in disorder,
 20 good ordre or conducte, he sownyd his
 trompettes, exortynge his men to do
 well,⁶ and commaunded his constables and marshalles to
 hast⁷ forward, and so dyd the Admyrall ; ⁸his company
 24 and they ioyned nere one to a nother to the entente joined by the
 eche of them to socoure other ; when Huon saw his admirals
 company.
 enemyes aproche, and that it was tyme to set on⁹ / he
 commaundyd his archers and croushbowes to shote, ⁸so
 28 they dyd, that by reasone of y^e shotyng of bothe Huon commands
 perteyse it semyd lyke a clowde, so¹⁰ that there by and the archers and
 with¹¹ duste togyther it darked the lyght of y^e sonne ; crossbowmen to
 then Huon couchyd his spere and ranne at hym that shoot,
 and so they do till the light of
 their arrows.

¹ had well heard and. ² vpon. ³ seeing. ⁴ of.

⁵ Fel. cxxxiiii. col. 2. ⁶ and valiantly. ⁷ march.

⁸ and. ⁹ vpon them. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ the.

Huon runs at the sultan's standard-bearer with his spear,

throws him,

and kills so many Saracens that they doubt if Huon be mortal.

He slew five kings and two admirals; and he and Barnard are so greatly feared that the Saracens hardly dare approach him,

and so fierce is the battle that its like has not been seen for 100 years.

When the sultan saw his men so slain, he curses the time that he put faith in the admiral of Dorbrey.

bare the soudans standder, who was comyng before all the other to cause his compayne to folowe the faster; Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere that he persyde hym¹ thorowe the body so that he fell fro 4 his horse² with y^e standard, wheroft the Sarasyns were abasshyd and sore³ dyspleasyd / then they aprochyd to reyse vp agayne theyr baner / but Huon and the Perseans encounteryd them fersly so⁴ that many were 8 slayne on both parties / he that had sene Huon howe he slewe and bet downe the Sarasyns and paynymes,⁵ wolde haue sayde that he was no mortall man / but rather a man of the fayrey, for the great prowes and 12 maruayles that he dyd / for he causyd the paynyme, whether they wolde or not, to recule backe and to forsake the baner⁶ lyenge on⁶ the erth / for or⁷ he departyd⁸ thense he slewe .v. kyngis & .ii. admyrallis / 16 Huon was so feryd that there was none so hardy⁹ durst aproche nere to hym / ¹⁰also ¹¹Barnarde his cosyn¹¹ was greatly to be feryd, and he euer folowed Huon as nere as he coude / then there ioynyd y^e batayles of the 20 marshallys / and the admyrall of Perce set vpon the sowdans batayle / then¹⁰ the batayle began so orryble and great¹² that a .C. yerys before was¹³ sene none suche ; ¹⁴valyantly dyd the admyrall of Perce and 24 suche as were in his company / when the Soudan sawe his men so slayne, he was¹⁵ sorowfull,¹⁶ & sayd to¹⁷ the admyrall of Dorbrey, ‘I may well curse the daye & tyme that I beleuyd you / for by you I haue lost my 28 baner, and I se my men slayne / for and¹⁸ I had orderyd my batayle before / this myschefe had not happyd / nor that¹⁹ is aparant to fall / ¹⁰then the

¹ cleane. ² Fol. cxxiiii. back, col. 1.

³ sore before abashed. ⁴ so before fersly.

⁵ Paynyme and Sarasyns. ⁶⁻⁶ that laye vpon. ⁷ before.

⁸ from. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his Cozen Barnard.

¹² great before horrible. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ so. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶ and sore displeased. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ yf. ¹⁹ which.

Soudan couchyd his spere and strake therwith a knyght
 who was great mayster of the howse of Perce, in suche
 wyse that the sowdan ran hym clene thrughe, and so
 4 he seruyd the second, thyrde, and fourth, and when his
 spere was broken, he drewe out his sworde and dyd
 therwith great ¹damage; great cry and noyse was
 made when the batayles ioynyd / there myght a² bene
 8 sene many horse rynnyng abrode in the felde traylynge
 theyr brydellis after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in
 the felde a monge the horse fete, and³ orryble thyng
 it was to se and to here y^e playntys⁴ and cryes that the
 12 woundyd men made amonge y^e horse fete, hauyng
 no power to releue themselfe, but there dyed and
 fynysshed theyr dayes myserably; great cry made the
 sarasyns and Persyans that fought together, and
 16 specyally where as Huon fought & serchyd the rankes,
 and brake the great presys, he bet downe and con-
 foundyd all that came before hym / so that none
 durste abyde before hym / for by that tym he had
 20 slayne vi of the kyngys and .v. admyrallis, besyde
 many other / so that the noyse and crye cam to the
 herynge of the admyrall of Dorbrey, who dyd great
 dystruuccyon amonge the Persyans, so that it was an
 24 orryble thyng to se⁵ / and when he harde how that
 there was a knyghte that dyd great damage,⁶ and had
 slayne dyuers kyngis and admyralles / he said to⁷ a
 paynyme who had broughte⁸ those⁹ newes / 'go thy
 28 waye and shewe me¹⁰ hym¹¹ that hath done vs so great
 damage' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I shall shewe¹² you
 hym¹⁰ / but I wyll aproche to hym no nerer then I am
 nowe; ye may se hym¹⁰ yonder how he fyghtethe / and
 32 makethe our men to recule¹³ backe,¹⁴ for there is none so

The sultan does
great damage,

and when the
armies are joined,
there is much
noise,

and many perish
under the horses'
feet.

The admiral of
Dorbrye, hearing
of Huon's pro-
gress, desires to
meet him,

and a Saracen
points him out to
the admiral.

¹ Fol. cxxiiii. back, col. 2. ² haue. ³ a.

⁴ complaints. ⁵ and behold. ⁶ and hurt among them.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ vnto him. ⁹ tidings and. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ vnto me. ¹² him vnto. ¹³ retire.

¹⁴ from him.

When the admiral beheld Huon, he spurs on his mare.

Huon does not refuse to meet him.

The admiral kills Huon's horse,

and lifts Huon by his armour on to the neck of his mare, and the admiral, carrying Huon in one hand, fights with the other.

Huon, fearing he is lost, asks God to have pity on his wife.

The admiral desires to present Huon to the sultan,

but the mare, running among the spears and men that lay on the ground, stumbles, and the giant falls.

hardy that dare aproche nere¹ hym / then the gyaunt behelde Huon and saw how he made the paynymes to recule² backe / then he stroke his mare with the³ sporys. ⁴Huon, who well parsayuyd⁵ hym comynge, ⁴feryd hym ; howbeit, he refusyd hym not / but cam with his sword in his hand⁶ ⁷agaynst⁸ then the paynym, then⁸ the sarasyn, who bare a great hache in⁹ his necke, sawe Huon comynge / ⁴strake at hym, but as 8 god wold,¹⁰ he myst hym, for yf the stroke had lyght vpon hym he had bene slayne / the stroke lyght vpon the crope of his horse, so that the horse fell downe dede and Huon on⁹ his backe ; and he was not so sone 12 releuyd but that the gyant toke hym by the harneys¹¹ & caste hym before his sadell as lyghtly as thoughe it¹² had bene but a fether, and so he helde and caryed Huon with y^e one hand and fought with the other 16 hande / when Huon felte hymselfe so taken he cryed¹³ vpon our lord god & prayed hym to haue petye¹⁴ of Esclaramond his wyfe, for he saw well his lyfe was determinyed / the gyaunte who was¹⁵ ioyfull in that he 20 had taken Huon who had done the sarasyns so moche damage / he desyryd to fynde the Sowdan to make hym a present of Huon / so that with the hast that he made he strake his mare, and she began to lepe and 24 gaumbaulde, and began to rynne ; and, as fortune was, she ran amonge the broken sporys and dede men that lay on the ground so that she stombelyd,¹⁶ so that she¹⁶ knelyd to the erthe / and the gyante thought to 28 haue releuyd her / but he coude not by reason of the weyghte that laye vpon her necke / ¹⁷so that¹⁷ she was

¹ vnto. ² retire. ³ his. ⁴ and.
⁵ and saw.

⁶ then. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 1. ⁸⁻⁹ the Sarazin, and the.

⁹ vppon. ¹⁰ haue it. ¹¹ armour. ¹² he.

¹³ and called. ¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶⁻¹⁷ and thereby.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ and by the great swiftnesse of her running.

fayne to fal downe to the erthe / when Huon saw¹ that,
 he was lyght and quycke, and rose vp on his fete / and
 when he sawe the gyaunte fallen downe & began
 4 to releue / he hastyd hym and lyfte vp his sworde
 with bothe his handys and gaue the gyaunt such a
 stroke on² the helme that he claue his hede to the
 brayne so³ therwith he fel⁴ dede to the erthe / and
 8 then Huon sesyd² the mare by the rayne⁵ and lepte
 vp⁶ vp⁷ on her and had great ioy, and so had the
 Persyans / and the admiral had great ioye, for it had
 bene shewyd hym how y^e gyaunt had taken Huon / and
 12 was scapyd and had slayne the gyaunte / when Huon
 felt hymselfe on² the stronge mare, he dasshyd in
 among the paynyme⁸ and met with the kynge of
 Olyfarne, whom he gaue suche a stroke that he claue
 16 his hede asonder; then he ran at the admirall of
 Orcaney, who was brother germayn to⁹ y^e sowdan, he
 gaue hym suche a stroke on the sholder that he strake
 of his arm, so that it fell⁴ to the erthe shylde and all ;¹⁰
 20 when the admirall felte hymselfe hurte,¹¹ wolde haue
 fled a waye / but Huon, syttinge on² the mare who
 was the swyftest¹² horse of¹² the world, ran after him,
 & when Huon had ouertaken y^e paynym,¹³ he gaue
 24 hym suche a stroke on² the hede that he claue it to his
 tethe, & so¹⁴ fell downe dede to the erthe / wherby the
 paynyme¹⁵ were so afraied that after that they durst
 not assemble together; this was shewyd to y^e sowdan
 28 how the gyant was slayne and .v. other kyngis and
 admiralles, and his brother also slayne / and all by the
 handis of one knyght / and also he sawe his batayle
 sore broken and how they began to fle, wherfore he
 32 saw well that yf he taryed there longe he shuld be

Huon quickly
rises to his feet,

sells the giant
to the earth with
his sword,

and leaps on his
mare.

Great is the joy of
all the Persians.

On the strong
mare Huon
dashes in among
the paynyme,
and meets and
kills the king of
Olyfarne.

He sells the
admiral of
Orcaney to the
ground.

As he tries to flee,
Huon overtakes
and kills him.

When the sultan
saw how many
bold knights were
slain by the hands
of one man, and
how his men
began to flee,
he feared he
would be either
slain or taken.

¹ and well perceiued. ² vpon. ³ that. ⁴ downe.

⁵ of the bridle. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 2.

⁸ and Sarazins. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ and wounded, he. ¹²⁻¹² of pase in all. ¹³ Sarazin.

¹⁴ hee. ¹⁵ and Sarazins.

The king of
Antiopheney, a
near relative,
counsels him to
flee;

and the sultan,
with twenty men,
departs towards
Acre, which
belongs to the
Saracens.

Huon, mounted
on the powerful
mare, beats down
his enemies,
and none can
abide his strokes.

The admiral
wishes that Huon
could always stay
with him.

The admiral and
Barnard follow
Huon,
but by reason of
his good horse, he
outstrips them.
Huon's desire is
to overtake the
sultan.

other slain or taken / then the kyng of Antiopheney,
who was nere parent to y^e sowdan, came to¹ hym and
sayd / ‘syr, thynke² to sauе thy lyfe, for yf thou tary
longe here there is none can sauе the / for yf the 4
knyght that is with the admyrall of Perce hap to com
hether thy lyfe is lost, therfore I counsayle the to
departe and sauе thy selfe / elles thou art but dede.’
then the sowdan³ with a³ xx. with hym departyd and 8
toke the waye by the se syde to go towardys⁴ Acre,
the whiche as then partaynyd to¹ y^e sarasyns, and
Huon, who was mountyd on⁵ the pusaunt mare, betyng
downe his enemyes so that none durste abyde his 12
strokyss; and the admyrall of Perce folowynge him,
regardynge that by y^e hye prowes of Huon his enemyes
were confoundyd⁶, and sawe well howe⁷ there was no
humayne body that had any powre to resyst agaynst 16
hym⁸ without deth / then he sayd to¹ his lordys and to
Barnarde / ‘syrs,’ quod y^e admyral, ‘yonder before you
ye may se maruayles and thyngis incredeble to be
declaryd / for ye may se there is none so pusaunt⁹ that 20
can resyst agaynst my frende Huon / ¹⁰wolde to god⁷
he were vnmaryed / then he shulde neuer departe fro
me, for I wolde then gyue hym my daughter,¹¹ I shall
be so¹² sore dyspleasyd¹³ when he shall depart fro me’ / 24
thus as ye haue herd the admyrall of Perce¹⁴ sayd to¹
his company, and so sleynge and betyng downe the¹⁵
sarasynts that fled / the admyrall and Barnard folowyd
Huon, but by reason of his good hors he was so 28
far before them that they coude not ouertake hym, for
he desyryd nothyng so moche as¹⁶ to ouertake the
sowdan, who was fleyng as fast as he myght towardys
the citye of Acre / when the admyral sawe that he 32

¹ vnto. ² how. ³⁻³ and about.

⁴ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 1. ⁵ vppon. ⁶ and discomfited.

⁷ that. ⁸ and escaped. ⁹ and strong. ¹⁰ I.

¹¹ in mariage. ¹² verie. ¹³ and discomforted.

¹⁴ and Media. ¹⁵ Paynims and. ¹⁶ he did.

coude not ouertake Huon, then he and Barnard enteryd
 in amonge the sarasyns who were fleyng away; the
 admyrall and Barnarde slewe & bet them downe that¹
 4 petye it was to se² / for with the blode of y^e dede
³sarasyns theyr swordys were all⁴ tayntyd red; yf I
 shuld shewe all the hye prowes⁵ that was⁵ done there
 that daye, it shuld⁶ be ouer longe to reherse / but
 8 I dare well saye that by the great prowes of Huon the
 batayle was vanquesshyd and clene dyscomfytyd / the
 7 Percyans chasyd the sarasyns and paynyme⁸ and
 slew an[dl]⁹ ¹⁰bet them downe, the chase enduryd more
 12 then .iiii. legis / and the admyrall had great maruayle
 that he coud not ouertake nor here no¹¹ thyng of Huon /
 who chasyd stylly the sowdan & folowid hym so longe
 that Huon found the sowdan¹² alone / for his men coud
 16 not folowe hym so fast for¹³ theyr horses wer so wery
 that they coude¹⁴ go no¹⁵ further / y^e sowdan rode on¹⁶
 a pusaunt¹⁷ horse / and Huon, who folowed hym on¹⁶
 the pusaunt mare, anone ouertoke hym / ¹⁸when he came
 20 nere to the sowdan / he sayd, 'O thou¹⁹ sowdan, great
 shame²⁰ thou maiest haue when thou fleest thus²¹ away
 all alone without¹¹ company, tourne thy shylde agaynst
 me or elles I shall sle the fleyng.' when the sowdan²²
 24 harde Huon he had great²³ fere²³ / for he knew well it
 was he by whome he had²⁴ so great losse,²⁵ and by
 whome so¹⁵ many kyngis & admyrallis had beine slain,
 and thought to hymselfe yf he tournyd²⁶ not²⁷ he
 28 shulde be slayne, wherfore he toke corage to hymselfe,
 seyng that Huon was alone as well as he, and also he

The admiral and
Barnard slay the
feeling Saracens,

and, owing to the
great prowess of
Huon, the enemy
is vanquished.

At last Huon
comes up with the
sultan;
he is alone, his
men being unable
to keep up with
him.

Huon challenges
the sultan to
fight.

The sultan takes
courage, seeing
Huon is alone
also.

¹ great. ² and behold them. ³ Paynims and.
⁴ all after taynted. ⁵⁻⁵ and maruailous deedes that were.
⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 2.
⁸ Paynims before Saracens. ⁹ add in text. ¹⁰ did.
¹¹ any. ¹² all. ¹³ because. ¹⁴ not. ¹⁵ omitted.
¹⁶ vpon. ¹⁷ and a goodly. ¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ traiterous.
²⁰ and reproach. ²¹ thus after away. ²² had well.
²³⁻²³ maruaile and was greatly feared. ²⁴ received.
²⁵ and damage. ²⁶ returned. ²⁷ that.

thought that it shulde not be longe or¹ he were
 socourid with some of his men that folowyd hym,
 & therfore, lyke a hardy knyght, he tournyd his horse
 hede towardis Huon / who fersly ran together² & gaue 4
 eche other great strokys, but it had bene³ but a⁴ small
 profyght⁵ to the sowdan and⁵ he had not bene rescued
 by his men, for⁶ Huon had elles⁴ slayne hym / but
 thether came a⁷ .xl. knyghtys sarasyns, and they al ran 8
 at Huon / who was sore⁸ abasshyd when he saw hym
 selfe so enclosyd with his enemyes ; howbeit he myght
 haue sauyd hymselfe welynowe yf he had lyst to
 ha[ue] fled awaye / but for any fere of them he wolde 12
 not fle, but⁹ he delte suche strokys¹⁰ amonge them that
 there was none so hardy that durste aproche nere¹¹ hym,
 so sore they feryd hym / for he strake none with a full
 stroke but that his hede was clouen to the brayne¹² / 16
 when they sawe¹³ they coude not take nor sle hym,
 they were¹⁴ sorowful¹⁵; then the sowdan cryed and
 sayd, ‘ syrs, on⁴ vpon hym, great shame it is to¹¹ you all
 when by the body of one man ye are so put backe, and 20
 ye se wel¹³ he hathe no socoure / go and sle the mare
 that he rydethe on¹⁶ with sperys and dartis / then he
 shall be sone ouercome / and ye know well¹³ it is he
 by⁴ whome I haue sufferyd al my great¹⁷ damage / it is 24
 he that hathe slayne my men, and by hym I haue lost
 the batayle / yf he scape¹⁸ you ye ought never to be sene
 in any prynces court’ / when the paynynms¹⁹ vnderstode
 theyr sowdan, they then²⁰ sore opressyd Huon, who 28
 dyd²¹ merueyles²², but his pusaunce and vertu shulde²³

They ran fiercely
 together, and had
 not the sultan
 been rescued by
 his men, he
 would have
 perished.

Huon, sore
 abashed, will not
 flee, and deals his
 strokes among
 them;
 great slaughter
 follows.

The sultan tells
 his men to slay
 Huon's mare,
 for then he will be
 overcome.

If they let Huon
 escape them,
 never more ought
 they to be seen in
 prince's court.

¹ before. ² one at another. ³ vnto the sowdan.
⁴ omitted. ⁵—⁵ if. ⁶ if they had not come when they did.
⁷ about. ⁸ dismayed and, ⁹ and.
¹⁰ Fol. cxxvi, col. 1. ¹¹ vnto.
¹² or to the teeth, so that they needed after no Surgeon.
¹³ that. ¹⁴ right. ¹⁵ and angrie. ¹⁶ vpon.
¹⁷ losse and. ¹⁸ from. ¹⁹ and Sarazins had well.
²⁰ then after they. ²¹ great. ²² in armes.
²³ but.

lytell auayle¹ hym yf he had not bene shortly²
 socoryd / and also by reason of the riche stony and
 perles that were on³ hym / then the⁴ Sarasyns, who of
 4 xl. were lefte alyue but .xxviii., they saw well⁵ they
 coud not haue⁶ Huon without fyrst⁷ they slewe the
 mare that he rode on⁸; therfore they cast at her darty
 & iauelyns in suche wyse that fynally they slew her
 8 vnder hym, wherof Huon was⁹ sorowful¹⁰, and was
 10 then in¹¹ fere of his lyfe / then he callyd vpon our
 lorde Iesu chryst to haue petye¹² of his sowle, for
 he saw that his lyfe was at an ende, & sayd, 'dere
 12 lord Iesu chryst, I pray the by thy swete marcy to
 haue¹³ compassyon of my wyfe¹⁴ who is in great parel
 and pouertye for the loue of me without any deserte of
 her part, and also I recommende into thy sauegarde my
 16 lytell daughter Claryet.' After that Huon had made
 his prayer to¹⁵ our lorde¹⁶ god, he toke his shyld and
 his sworde in his hande afote, and he saw where there
 grewe a busshe, he went thether and set his backe
 20 therto that the sarasyns¹⁷ shuld not come behynde
 hym,¹⁸ so he stode at a baye lyke a wylde bore baytyd
 with houndis, there was not so hardy a paynyme¹⁹ that
 24 quurst assayle hym / they cast at hym sperys and dartis,
 but they coude neuer hurte his fleshe, he coueryd
 hymselfe so well²⁰ with his shyld that no thyng
 28 coude hurte hym. The sowdan, seyng that no thyng
 can not slee nor take one man alone' / ¹⁸then the Then the sultan
 sowdan approchyd¹⁵ Huon and gaue hym a great stroke himself
 approached Huon,

Huon did
 marvels, but his
 power would have
 availed little, had
 he not been
 succoured by the
 precious stones he
 had on him.

The Saracens
 cast their darts at
 Huon's mare,
 and finally slew
 her under him.

Huon, in fear of
 his life, calls on
 our Lord Jesus
 Christ to have
 pity on him,
 and recommends
 his wife and
 little daughter
 Claryet into God's
 safe keeping.

Huon sets his
 back against a
 bush, and so
 stands at bay,
 but not a paynim
 can hurt his flesh.

¹ hane auailed. ² aided &. ³ vppon.

⁴ Paynims and. ⁵ that. ⁶ ouercome.

⁷ first after mare. ⁸ right. ⁹ and sore displeased.

¹⁰ as. ¹¹ great. ¹² and compassion. ¹³ pitie and.

¹⁴ Escleremond. ¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxvi. col. 2.

¹⁷ and Paynims. ¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ or Sarazin.

²⁰ and so surely. ²¹ pierce.

and broke his shield into two pieces.

Looking behind him, the sultan perceives the admiral of Persia with 20,000 men coming to Huon's aid.

The sultan then decides to leave this enemy, who cannot be vanquished by force of arms. Near them was the sea, about a league from Jaffa, towards Surrey, a galley was there, sent from Escalon, and thither rode the sultan.

Huon, right weary, could not have borne up so long save for the precious stones about him.

The sultan and his men enter the galley, and leave their horses on the sea shore.

so that he brake his shyld in two peces, wherof Huon then was in¹ fere of dethe / then the sowdan drew backe and lokyd behynde hym into the playnes of Rames wheras the great batayle had bene / and then he⁴ sawe comynge the admirall of Perce with .xx. thou-sande men, and they came to seke for Huon / ²when the sowdan sawe that socours were comynge to³ Huon / the whiche he knew by reason of the great baner of Perce / then the sowdan sayd to³ his men / 'syrs, let vs leue this enemye, who by force of armys can not be⁴ vanquesshid / let vs sauе our lyues, for yonder I se comynge the admirall of Perce / for² yf we tary longe¹² here we⁵ are all dede⁵ & dystroyed.' Nere to³ them was y^e see syde abought a lege fro Iaffe, the way towardis Surrey / there was redy a galeyn the which the sowdan had sent thether fro the citye of Escaloune / ¹⁶ the sowdan rode thether; and his men lefte and forsoke⁶ Huon, who was ryght wery and coul not longe haue enduryd, nor had not enduryd so longe but for the⁷ vertue that was in the rych stones⁸ that²⁰ were abought hym. The sowdan to sauē his lyfe he and his men dyd so moch that they came to the place where as the galeyn was / and enteryd in to it in² great haste¹⁰ for¹¹ sauegarde of theyr lyues, &¹² forsoke⁶ ²⁴ theyr horses on¹³ the see syde.

¶ How the admirall of Perce¹⁴ found Huon, where as he hadde foughte with .xl. men sarasyns, and howe the sowdan fled to²⁸ acre / and how the admirall of Perce¹⁴

¹ great. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴ ouercome nor.
⁵—⁵ shalbe all slaine. ⁶ did forsake.

⁷ Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 1. ⁸ and pearles. ⁹ as.
¹⁰ as they could by any meaneſ. ¹¹ the. ¹² they.
¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ and Media.

besegid hym there; and of the¹ vysyon
that Huon had in a² nyght. Ca. C.xxxxix.



4 Fter that the Sowdan was thus fled
and departyd, the admiral of Perce³
came to the place where as Huon
was sore wary of trauayle, and saw⁴
abougt hym⁵ laye dede⁵ a great
8 nombre of men slayne, wherof they
had⁶ maruayle; the admiral, seyng Huon alone,
began⁷ to wepe for petye and for ioy that he had, and
sayd, 'O ryght noble⁸ knyght, moste excellente of all
12 other leuyng in this world, to whome in prowes and
valure none can compare⁹ / ye are the myrour of all
knyghtis / the temple of trouthe / the resort¹⁰ of wedowes
and of⁵ orphelyns / to whome god hathe geuyn so
16 great¹¹ grace that none can saye¹² the bountye that is
in you / by whome the honure of the Percyans and
Medyens this day is sauyd and kepte / I desyre
you ryght cordeally,¹³ my dere frynd,¹⁴ shewe me yf ye
20 haue any hurt wherby ye shulde be in any parell'¹⁵ /
'syr,' quod Huon, 'it apartaynethe¹⁶ not to¹⁷ me to
haue suche hye wordys or prayes to be geuen / I
oughte to haue none other prayse but as one of your
24 other knyghtis, wherof ye haue so many noble and
valyaunte that they can not be noumberyd / but, syr,
know for trouth, this grace and glory cometh of our
lord god, who hathe aydyd and socoryd you, reportynge
28 how¹⁸ ye haue in hym parfite affyaunce' / ¹⁹then the
admirall alyghtyd, and came and embracyd Huon,
and after²⁰ came Barnarde, sore wepynge for petye²¹

The admiral of Persia comes to where Huon is, sore weary;

the admiral marvels at the number of men lying dead around.

He weeps for joy at seeing Huon, and sings his praises;

then the admiral asks if Huon has received any hurt.

Huon disclaims any merit in himself;

the success came from God alone.

¹ strange. ² the. ³ and Media. ⁴ lying.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ sore. ⁸ and valiant.

⁹ be compared. ¹⁰ comfort. ¹¹ vertue and.

¹² report. ¹³ hartely. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ or daunger.

¹⁶ Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 2.

¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ that.

¹⁹ and.

²⁰ him.

²¹ compassion.

Barnard, weeping for joy, kisses his cousin Huon, who ought to thank God and the Virgin for having thus saved him.

Huon is feasted by all the barons.

A horse is brought Huon, who mounts, and they come to the place where the battle had been fought.

The Persians were made rich by the booty. The admiral and Huon leave the plains of Rames and lodge in the town, where they determine to remain three days to refresh themselves.

and¹ ioye that he had founde his cosyn Huon in sauegarde, and came and kyste hym² .x. tymes, and sayd / ‘ my ryght dere lorde,³ well ye⁴ ought to⁴ thanke god⁵ and the blesyd vyrgyn Mary his mother⁶ who⁴ hathе sauyd you fro so many parellous⁷ aduentures, wherof I thanke our lorde Iesu chryst that hathe geuen you such grace’ / ⁸then he was of all the barons greatly festyd, and they had⁹ maruayle of the parelles and⁸ aduenture that Huon had scapyd, wherfore they sayd they ought greatly to lawde¹⁰ god in that Huon was aryuyd in theyr countre, by whome they were reducyd¹¹ to¹¹ the fayth of Iesu chryst. Thus deuysyd the¹² lordis¹² amoneg themselfe / and behelde the dede men that lay abought Huon / ⁸when they had bene there¹³ a season and sawe that y^e sowdan was fled, then a horse was brought to¹⁴ Huon, and he mountyd¹⁵ / then¹⁶ they departyd¹⁶ thence and came to¹⁴ y^e place wher as y^e batayle had bene, wheras they founde .lxxiiii. thousande men dede,¹⁷ besyde them that were slayne in the fleynge in y^e chase, wheras there were slayne²⁰ .xii.M.¹⁸ besyde the prisoners great goodes¹⁹ wan ther¹⁹ the Parsyans,²⁰ the whiche was departed²¹ to such as it apartained, so that they were all made ryche / then the admirall²² and Huon departed fro the playns of Rames,²⁴ then²³ they went and logyd in the towne / and in the mornynge they determinyd to tary there thre dayes to refresshe them / and on²⁴ the fourthe daye they departed bycause it was shewed them how²⁵ y^e sowdan²⁸ was departed fro Sayre and gone by see with a small

¹ for. ² more then. ³ and Maister. ⁴ may.
⁵ our lord. ⁶⁻⁶ for his goodnesse alwayes towards you.
⁷ and dangerous. ⁸ and. ⁹ al great. ¹⁰ and praise.
¹¹⁻¹¹ and brought to beleue in. ¹² and Barons. ¹³ for.
¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ vpon him and. ¹⁶ from.
¹⁷ vpon the earth. ¹⁸ men.
¹⁹⁻¹⁹ wan ther after Medians. ²⁰ and Medians.
²¹ and diuided. ²² Fol. cxxvii. col. 1. ²³ and.
²⁴ vpon. ²⁵ that.

companye to the citye of Acre. Then the admiral and Huon drew theyr host towardis Napelous, and there taryed two dayes / ¹fro thence they wente to 4 Iene and so to the citye of Nasareth, and visyted that holy place, whereas the aungell brought the salutacion angelyke to the vrygyn mary. Then fro thence they went to the castell of Iaffet and toke it with assaulte, 8 and slew all them that were within² excepte suche as wolde bylue in our lord Iesu chrys. ¹Then fro thence they went and logyd within halfe a lege of Acre, & there pyght³ vp theyr tentis and pauylions / 12 and when they were all logyd / ther foragers ran abrode and brought to the hoste great plente of vytayles / oftentymys they skyrmysshed before the cete of acre / But they kowde never⁴ fynde man nor 16 woman that durst issu out to do any dede of armes ; there they lay .viii. dayes and no man dyd them any domag, for the⁵ sarasyns wer so affrayed for the great los⁶ that they had sufferyde, that they durste not 20 stere⁷ / And the sowdan, who was within, wrote letters into al his countres, as wel in to Arrabey / Egypt / and⁸ Barbarye / & Europe, and⁹ to al¹⁰ hys frendys, that they wolde come and socoure hym in¹¹ his nede ; 24 he sent dyuers messengers bothe by londe and by see, also he sent in to anthyoche & in to Damas, & to al other places where as he thought to haue any¹² socouie / and on¹³ a day two foragers of the admirallis 28 ¹⁴went forthe on¹³ the see seid, and they found by the way trampoignifle the sowdans messenger / they toke and brought hym in⁸ to the hoste⁸ to the Admyrals tent, and ther he was examynyde and hys letters taken 32 fro hym, the which were sene and red befor the

On the fourth day the admiral and Huon draw their host towards Nablous, where they tarry two days.
Thence they go to Jene and the city of Nazareth.

They assaulted and took the castle of Jaffet.

They put up their tents and pavilions half a league from Acre ; foragers brought food to the host.

They skirmish before the city, but the Saracens are too frightened to venture out for deeds of arms.

The sultan wrote letters to all his countries, as well as to Arabia, Egypt, Barbary and Europe, for aid.

Messengers are sent by land and sea, even to Antioch and Damascus.

Two foragers of the admiral find the sultan's messenger by the sea-side, and bring him to the admiral's tent.

¹ and. ² it. ³ pitcht. ⁴ neither. ⁵ paynims and.

⁶ and dammage. ⁷ nor make any semblance.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ as. ¹⁰ other. ¹¹ at. ¹² any ayd or.

¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ Fol. cxxvii. col. 2.

His letters are
read, and thus the
admiral and Huon
learn the sultan's
plans.

They hang the
messenger on a
gallows in sight
of the sultan.

The admiral
summons the
barons to his
tent,
and bid them take
counsel together
as to the manner
of continuing the
war.

They are to give
their answer on
the morrow.

At night all go to
rest except those
who have charge
of the watch.

Huon spent the
night in the
admiral's tent,
and in his sleep
a vision came to
him.
He thought he
was at Mayence
in person, and
saw the Emperor
of Germany take
Esclarmonde out
of prison, and

admyrall and huon / the whiche when they herde yt and
the content therof, ther by they knew sumwhat of y^e
sowdans counsayle / then they toke the messenger and
brought hym before the citye of Acre, and made there 4
a payre of galowes, and hangyd vp the messenger in¹
the syght of the sowdan and of them² within the citye /
the same day the admyrall assemblyd his³ barons
in his tente, & sayde to⁴ them / 'syrs, all ye that be 8
here assemblyd, knowe that I haue great desyre to
knowe what thynge is⁵ to be done, and how we shall
vse our selfe in this warre that we haue begonne / ye
knowe wel the victory that, by the grace of ⁶god⁶ and 12
by the⁷ prowes of Huon, that⁸ we haue⁹ obtayned and
haue here our enemye enclosyd, who can not fle
without¹⁰ it be by the see / therfore I desyre you all
that ech¹¹ of you wyll shewe your aduyse what is to 16
be done / and that to morowe at¹² this owre¹³ to geue
me an answe^r /, then al the lordis¹⁴ aduysyd together,
and so among them was dyuers opinyons and reasons,
howbeit they departyd eueryman to his¹⁵ owne logyng,²⁰
bycause they had daye of answe^r ;¹⁶ the nexte day
folowyng / thus y^e daye passyd without any thynge
done, and at nyght euery man wente to reste / excepte
suche as had the charge of the wache that nyght / who 24
went not to bed, as is the¹⁷ custume of the warre.
Huon taryed all that nyghte in the admyralles tente,
and aboughte the owre of mydnyght Huon dremid
in his slepe, & thought¹⁸ that he was at Maience in 28
presone, and saw the emperoure of Almayne take
Esclarmonde his wyfe out of presone / and she semyd
to⁴ hym pale and lene and yl coloryd / and how she
was in her kyrtyl, and her heyr hangyng aboute her 32

¹ within. ² there. ³ Lordes and. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ best. ⁶⁻⁶ our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁷ hye.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ now. ¹⁰ except. ¹¹ euerie one.

¹² about. ¹³ time. ¹⁴ and Barons. ¹⁵ their.

¹⁶ and. ¹⁷ order and. ¹⁸ Fol. exxvii. back, col. 1.

shulders / and .x. men ledynge her out of the towne to be brente¹ / and he thought² she made petuous complayntes for Huon her husbaynd and for claryet her 4 daughter. ³Also he thought he saw passe thrugh y^e stretes .ccc. gentyll men who had bene takyn at Burdeaux when the ctyte was takyn / and he thought² he sawe dyuers galowes made, and how the Emperoure 8 had sworne to hange them all / so that he thought he was⁴ sorowful⁵ to se that company ledde to⁶ the⁷ deth warde⁸ / for in his slepe he thought verely all this had bene trewe, and that he coude not helpe it. Thus 12 as Haon was in this Payne slepyng, he gaue an horrable crye / so that y^e Admyrall and Barnarde awoke therewith in hast / thynkyng it had bene theyr enemyes² had enteryd to haue slayne them / then they herde 16 Huon say, 'O good lord, I pray the⁹ by thy pyte and grace to socoure & confort me good wyfe / for sertenly I can not tell, but my harte Iuggyth¹⁰ / that the false emperoure wyll cause her to dye and all y^e other 20 prisoners.' Then the Admyrall and Barnard rose vp and came to¹¹ Huon, and had well harde his complayntes, and sayd / 'A, syr, dyscomfort not your self nor gyue no fayth nor credence to dremes / 24 for the emperoure wyll neuer do suche a velany as to put to deth so noble a lady / it is nothyng but your thought and remembrance that ye haue dayly, the whiche in the nyght representyng before you slepyng' / 28 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I can not beleue¹² but that my wyfe hath sumwhat to do / Alas, to longe¹³ I tary¹³ here / but yf your warre were at an ende I wolde gladly go my way / for I shall neuer haue ioye at my 32 harte tylly¹⁴ I maye knowe therought.' Then they

cause ten of his
men to lead her
out of the town
to be burnt;

and a gallows
prepared on which
to hang 300
gentlemen taken
at Bordeaux.

Huon awoke with
a great cry;
the admiral and
Barnard wake
hastily, deeming
the enemy had
come.

They hear Huon
pray to the Lord
to succour his
wife.

When they hear
the cause of
Huon's distress,
they assure him
that it is but a
dream, to which
no credence must
be given.

Huon is troubled,
and were the war
only at an end
gladly would he
go his way.

¹ burnt. ² that. ³ And. ⁴ right.

⁵ and sore greeued in his mind. ⁶ towardes. ⁷ their.
⁸ omitted. ⁹ eu'en for thy Sons sake and. ¹⁰ thinketh.

¹¹ vnto. ¹² Fol. cxxvii, back, col. 2.

¹³⁻¹³ haue I taried. ¹⁴ vntill.

The council
assembles in the
admiral's tent.

The marshal
announces they
will say not a
word until Huon
shall have given
his opinion.

The admiral begs
Huon to show
what he thinks
it best to be done.

arose, for it was day, ¹and then eueryman arose / and the oure come that all the² counseyll assembled³ togyther in the admyralles tente / And euery man sat downe on⁴ benches well coueryd with cloth of golde ⁴ and other ryche clothes of sylke / ⁵when they were there assembled / the marshall rose vp,⁶ he was a ryght sage and a⁷ wyse man, and sayd / ‘Syr Admyrall, we haue comonyd togyther and debatyd y^e mater at lenth,⁸ and we haue had dyuers opynyones, but we be all concludyd to say nothyng tyll⁸ that Huon, who is therby you, hath fyrst⁹ shewyd his opynyone what he thynketh¹⁰ to be done / for it is¹¹ resone that he be ¹² harde fyrst¹² to speke’ / ⁵then the Admyrall beheld Huon, and sayd / ‘my dere frende, ye here what my lordes¹³ hath concludyd togyther / and how they all resteth vpon you that fyrst ye shall say your aduyce,¹⁶ wherfore I requyre you for the loue of¹⁴ god / ¹⁵shew me what I ought to do as ye thinke best.’

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux counseylyd y^e
admyrall of Perce to reyse vp his sege 20
before acre, for dyuers resones, and to
retorne in to Perce. Ca. C.xl.



Hen Huon had well vnderstond the Admyrall, and that he had¹⁶ hard the ²⁴ lordes¹³ that theyr opynyons was *that* they wolde not speke till⁸ he had fyrst shewyd his¹⁷ opynyon, then he sayd ¹⁸to¹⁹ the Admyrall, ‘syr, yf it be youre pleasure ²⁸ I owght not to be gyn fyrst, this reason for ye haue

¹ and the appointed houre was come before & euerie man.
² Lords of the. ³ should assemble. ⁴ vppon. ⁵ and.
⁶ for. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ first after shewed.
¹⁰ is best. ¹¹ good. ¹² first after to speke.
¹³ and Barons. ¹⁴ our Lord. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ well.
¹⁷ aduise and. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxviii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vnto.

Huon gives his
advice.

many lordis can better speke in this matter then I, but
 syne¹ it is youre pleasure and theres, I shall shewe²
 yow shortly myn aduys, and as I wold do if I where
 4 as yowe be;³ then⁴ Huon of Burdeaux sayd / 'syr
 admyrall of perce & of mede, it is a longe season sin ye
 departed fro youre contre londys and syngnoryes, and
 not without great trauaile and great⁵ Payne, and that
 8 god haue done you that grace that with⁶ an armeri⁶ al
 ye haue passed, & taken castels, & haue slayne and
 dystroyed the cou[n]treys & men of the sowdans of
 babylone and⁷ egyp / and haue bene at the holy cetye
 12 of Ierusalem, the whiche is in the myddes of his
 countre / and after that the sowdan hath fought with
 you with people innumerable, whom ye haue dys-
 counfyted, and slayn⁸ all they that were with hym.
 16 And also god hath gyuen you grace that ye ar sauely
 skapyd with lytta losse⁹ / and none ye haue in this
 cetye before vs besegyde and inclosyd in y^e sowdan
 your enymy / who nyght and day doth emagen how he
 20 may recouer his losse, as ye may well knowe by his
 letters sent by his messynghers / y^e whiche ye haue
 sene and red the contynue¹⁰ of y^e same. And, syr, ye
 may well thynke that he hathe sente dyuers other
 24 messengyrs as well by londe as by see to his frendys to
 seke for socoure and¹¹ ayeyd, in the entencyon to be
 reuengyde of you, wherfore I counsell you; syn¹² ye
 be so farre of fro your countre, as shortly as ye can
 28 to departe fro thence¹³ and to reyse your sege and
 retorne in to your owne countre / your men be wary
 and sore trauelyd / ¹⁴the Sowdan is in his owne countre /
 and¹⁵ he wyll awytes assemble¹⁶ great nombre of
 32 peopell / and awytes he may haue socoure and vytaylles,

Since they have
been so long away
from Persia, and

have so far been
successful, and

have escaped with
little loss,

they had better
raise the siege of
Acre, and return
into their own
country as quickly
as possible.

The sultan can
command succour
both of men and
food,

¹ seeing that. ² vnto. ³ are. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ much.

⁶⁻⁶ one armie. ⁷ of. ⁸ almost. ⁹ or dammage.

¹⁰ contents. ¹¹ for. ¹² seeing. ¹³ hence.

¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxviii. col. 2.

whereas the
Persians can have
neither.

They can return
in the spring
if they wish.

As long as they
stay in these
parts, Huon will
not forsake them,

though he greatly
desires to return
to France.

the whiche ye can not do nor haue / for here with¹
great Payne ye shall ²fynde any² vyteyll / for the
coultre is sore fowllyd and opressyd / & ye can haue no
socoure fro any parte, wherfore of necessyte ye most ⁴
departe / the whiche ye may do without any losse.
For ye may passe y^e ryuer of eufrates or³ his pepill be
assembled to do you any damage / & when the
sprynynge⁴ tyme of y^e yere cometh, yf it be your ⁸
pleasure, ye may retorne with such nombre of men as ye
shall thynke best / for ye are of pusaunce so to do.
Syr, this that I say is for nothyng that I wold forsak or
leue you as longe as ye be in this parts; I had rather ¹²
dye / though it be so as ye well knowe / that the
thyng that I ought most to desyre is to departe to go
in to ⁵ france,⁵ where as I haue left my wyffe, my
doughter, and my coultre in great pouerte and danger ¹⁶
of deth and dystruccyon.'

¶ How the admyrall of Perce agreed well to
the counsell of Huon of Burdeaux, and
pryedes his saynge; & of y^e fayr offer that ²⁰
y^e admyrall of Perce mad to⁶ Huon of
Burdeaux.

Ca. C.xli.



Hen the Admyrall had⁷ hard⁶ Huon, he
behelde his lordes, and all wepynge, ²⁴
sayd, ‘syrs, all ye that be my men, ye
haue⁹ well herd Duke Huon, who hath
shewyd his aduyce,¹⁰ and therfore I
¹¹commaunde and desyre you all to shew me what ye ²⁸
thinke by the sayenge of Huon’ / then they all with
one voyce sayd / ‘syr, a more noble nor¹² profytalbe

¹ without. ²⁻² haue no. ³ before. ⁴ spring.

⁵⁻⁵ my owne coultre. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ well.

⁸ and vnderstood. ⁹ all. ¹⁰ and opinion.

¹¹ Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹² or.

counsayle can¹ no mortal man geue for your welth and
 suertye of your parsone and of vs all / there was neuer
 man spake better, & therfore all we pray and counsayle
 4 you to vpholde the counseyle that he hathe geuen
 you' / then the admiral, seyng² al his lordis agreed
 to the counseyle that Huon had geuyn hym / he sayd /
 ' syrs, as for me, syn ye are agreed therto, I am redy to
 8 byleue all good counsayle / there was neuer a heygher
 counsayle geuyn to³ any kynge or prynce' / ⁴when the
 admiral had sayd how² he wolde byleue the counsayle
 that Huon had geuen hym / he callyd then Huon to³
 12 hym, and sayde / 'syr Duke of Burdeaux, the pyller /
 shyld, and sworde of the chrysten faythe, and the
 defender of the Perseans / and Medyens / we⁵ knowe
 well that by ryght I oughte not to kepe you / for⁶
 16 reason is⁷ that ye retourne thether where as ye were
 borne, and to ayde & comforte your trew spowse and
 wyfe / for whom ye be in great anoyaunce,⁸ and not
 without cause / and therfore for y^e goodnes and honoure
 20 that we haue founde in you, we offer to go with you in
 our owne proper parsone with al our armye, and mo to
 the nombre inestymable, and to ayde to reuenge you of
 the false emperoure of almayne who hathe done you so
 24 moche yll and damage, or elles yf ye wyll retourne to³
 vs in to Perce at this nexte spryngynge⁹ tyme we shall
 delyuer³ you suche pusaunce, and my selfe to go with
 them in to almayne, so that y^e valeyes and mountaynes
 28 shall be full of people / and we shall do so moche by
 the grace of our lorde god that we shall de¹⁰liuer the
 emperour in to your handis to do with hym¹¹ your
 pleasure.' when Huon¹² vnderstode the admiral¹³ who
 32 offeryd him so great an offer,¹⁴ sayde / 'Syr, of the

The lords of
 Persia pray the
 admiral to follow
 Huon's advice;

the admiral
 agrees to do so.

The admiral
 offers, accom-
 panied by his
 whole army, to
 go with Huon,
 and aid him to
 revenge himself
 on the Emperor.

¹ can after man. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ I.

⁶ it is good. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ discomfort. ⁹ spring.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ at.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ Persia and of Media.

¹⁴ hee.

Huon thanks the admiral for his great offer,

but first intends to try peaceful means with the Emperor.

If he is unsuccessful, then Huon will ask the admiral's aid and that of all his friends.

curtoys that ye offer me I thanke you with ¹a good ¹
harte: god forbide that I shulde be the causer of
dystruccyon of chysten blode / fyrist I wyll assay
with all swetenes and reasonable offers as moche as in ⁴
me is possyble to do to present & offer² the emperour /
to y^e entent that I myght³ ateyne to his loue and to
haue pease, the whych thynge I ⁴desyre, and wyll⁴ do
with all my harte; And yf it be so that he wyll not ⁸
inclyne nother to ryghte nor resone, then H.⁵ will come
to you and to² all other that I knowe or thynke⁶ to
be⁷ my frendis, and then desyre you al of⁸ ayed &
comforte.⁹

12

¶ howe¹⁰ huon¹¹ toke¹² leue of the admyral
and of¹³ the¹⁴ lordys of Perce & wente and
toke shyppynge at the porte of thesayre,
and how he ariuyd at marsell without ¹⁶
fyndyng of any strange aduenture.

Ca. C.xlii.



Hen the admyrall¹⁶ vnderstode Huon,
he sayde, 'my ryght dere¹⁷ frend, I 20
can¹⁸ you¹⁹ thanke of that you saye /
ye maye be sure²⁰ yf ye haue any nede
& that ye can make none apoynt-
ment with y^e emperoure, the offers that I haue made² 24
you, I shall vpholde and socoure you in myne owne
parsone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I²¹ thanke you, for I am
moche bounde to² you, wherfore I am yours' / then
the admyrall toke Huon by the hande, & sayde, 'syr, 28
I se well we two muste departe, the which greueth me

1-1 all my. 2 vnto. 3 may. 4-4 will and desire to.

5 Huon. 6 thinke before knowe. 7 of.

8 of your courtesies for. 9 succour. 10 Duke.

11 of Bourdeaux. 12 his. 13 all. 14 other.

15 Fol. cxxix, col. 1. 16 had well. 17 and wel-beloued.
18 giue. 19 good. 20 that. 21 most hartely.

sore / but synne it is thus I must suffer it,¹ I knowe
well² ye thynke longe tyll³ ye be gone / the seruys
that ye haue done⁴ me, I can not recompence it / for our
4 two wayes ar contrary, yours is by water and myne is
by lond ; And, therfore, at y^e porte of the sare⁵ there is
a ryche shyp / the whiche was wonne vpon the sowdans
men, I gyue her to you, enter into her at your pleasure,
8 and therwith I gyue you .x. somers chargyd with
golde, & other chargyd with clothes of golde and
sylke / and ye maye take with you all the Frensshe
men that be in this host, such as folowed vs when we
12 departyd fro Ierusalem / let them go with you in to
theyr countre / and after that ye be⁶ departyd I shall
rayse my sege and retourne into Perce' / 'syr,' quod
Huon, 'of your gyfte and of your courtoysy I thanke
16 you.' Then the admiral sente these somers to the

Huon will find at
the port a rich
ship won from the
sultan;
this the admirall
gives to Huon,

and he may take
with him all the
Frenchmen that
are in the host.

porte of the sare,⁵ and there al that⁷ rychesse was⁸ put
into the shlyppe *that* was⁸ geuen⁴ Huon / ¹then he
delyueryd vnto Huon to serue hym al the pylgremes
20 that were there of Fraunce ; and the admiral gaued
them ryche gyftys, wherof they were⁹ ioyful¹ of the
fayre aduenture that was fallen to⁴ them / for they
hadde¹⁰ more moneye at theyr departyng then they
24 hadde when they came out of theyr ow[n]e countre,
wherof they thankyd the admiral / and promysyd to
do trew seruyee to⁴ Huon, and not to leue hym tyll³
he had achieved all his busynes / Then Huon made
28 hym redy, & toke with hym the great Gryffons fote /
¹the admiral, & his constables and marshallys, and
the other lordis of the hoste, lepte on¹¹ theyr horses and
conuaied huon and his compayne to the porte of the
32 sare,⁵ where as his shyppe was redy furnysshyd with
vyteyle and other thyngys parteynyng therto / then

Huon thanks the
admiral for his
gift.

The admiral gives
the pylgremes
of France rich gifts;

they thank the
admiral,
and promise not
to leave Huon till
he has accom-
plished his desire.
Huon makes
ready to depart,
taking with him
the griffin's foot.

All the Persians
accompany Huon
to the port,

¹ and. ² that. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ Thesayre.

⁶ are. ⁷ the. ⁸ were. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxix. col. 2. ¹¹ vpon.

and there he
takes leave of the
admiral and the
other barons.

Huon,¹ wepyng, toke² leue of the admyrall and of the other³ barouns / for whose departyng they were⁴ sorowfull, and so retournyd to theyr hoste before Acre / deuysyne of the great value, prowes, and courtoysye⁴ that was in Huon. Then the admyrall commaundyd preuely the nexte mornynge to dyslode and to⁵ departe / the whiche was done.

The admiral left
Acre, found his
fleet in the river
Euphrates, and
sailed into his
own country.

¶ Thus the admyrall departid fro the citye of 8
Acre and toke his waye towardis Perce / and he founde
on⁶ the ryuer of Eufrates all his shippis, and so with
them he saylyd into his owne countre / And Huon and
barnarde his cosyn, and dyuers⁷ knyghtis and squyers 12
of Fraunce,⁸ when they were in theyr shyppe / they
wayed vp theyr ancers and made sayle. Then they
passyd the Goulfe of Sathale / and then passyd by the
rodes and by sardayne / and so longe they saylid 16
without daunger or let that they came and aryuyd at
the porte of Marseyle / ⁸there they ⁹toke londe⁹ with
great ioye / and dischargyd the shyp, and then he¹⁰
gau the shyp to the patron *that* had brought them 20
thether, wherby y^e patron was rych & thankyd Huon /
when they were al a lond, they ¹¹conueyed all theyr
baggage in to theyr lodgyng in the towne, wheras they
restyd an¹² .viii. dayes. Nowe let vs leue to speke of 24
Huon and of them that were with hym, and let vs
speke of the abbot of cluney.

¶ How the¹³ abbot of Cluny layde a busshe-
ment of men of armys betwene Mascon 28
and Tournous agaynst the Emperours¹⁴
nephue, who was there slayne, and all his
men / wheroft the emperoure was so sore

¹ all. ² his. ³ Lords and. ⁴ right. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ other. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ went a shoare.

¹⁰ Huon. ¹¹ Fol. cxix. back, col. 1. ¹² about.

¹³ good. ¹⁴ of Almaines.

Huon and
Barnard, when
aboard their ship,
weighed anchor,
and sailed
without danger
to Marseilles.

Then Huon gave
the ship to the
master who had
brought them
thither.

They rest at
Marseilles for
eight days.

¹troubelyd that he toke the duches esclarmond out of prison to haue brent² her, & the .iii.c. prisoners of Burdeaux to haue hangyd them all.

Ca. C.xliii.

8



e haue well harde in this hystory / how Barnarde departyd fro y^e abbey of Cluny to go³ serche for his nephue Huon / and the abbot, seynge that he coude here no newes of Huon nor of

Barnarde his cosyn, who was gone to seke for hym / he was⁴ sore⁵ displeasyd *that* he coude haue none other

12 knowlege ; but the thynge that causyd hym to pas y^e mater the more esyer, was by cause of Claryet, Huons daughter, whome he kepte, and she was all his comforte / she was so fayre and so swete that none was

16 lyke her in beauty nor³ in good vertues, and agayne when he rememberyd the duches her mother, Esclarmond, whome he knewe was in great pouerte and myserie, he was therwith so sore dyspleasyd that al his

20 membres trymbelid. So on⁶ a day it was reportyd to⁷ hym by a notable man that as he cam fro saynt Iames and by Burdeaux, howe that a nephue of the emperorus shoulde go fro Burdeaux to the citye of Mayence, to

24 his vncle Tharry the emperoure of Almayne / & howe he shuld haue with hym a great nombre of the burgesses of y^e citye of Burdeaux as prisoners, bycause on⁶ a daye they spake of Huon theyr naturall lorde /

28 and also how⁸ he shuld eary with hym the trybute and money of the rentys and reuenewes of the countre of Burdeloys, and suche moneye as euery man was bounde to pay to⁷ the emperour : when the good abbot of 32 Cluney was aduerteysyd of the comynge of the

The abbot of Cluny was sore grieved that he could hear no news of Huon of Barnard his cousin.

The abbot's grief was easier to bear since he kept with him Huon's daughter Clariet; none was like her in beauty and virtue.

But the remembrance of the distress in which her mother was troubled the abbot.

It was reported how a nephew of the Emperor was going from Bordeaux to Mayenee, with a number of the citizens of Bordeaux as prisoners,

and how he would carry with him certain moneys.

¹ vexed and. ² burnt. ³ and.
⁴ right sorowfull and. ⁵ Fol. cxxix. back, col. 2.
⁶ yppon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ that.

Thereupon the
abbot assembles a
number of men,

and chooses the
lord of Vergier to
be captain.

He learns through
spies which road
the Emperor's
nephew will take,

and commands
the lord of
Vergier to lie in
ambush.

When the
Germans pass, the
lord of Vergier's
company issues
from the ambush,

and in a short
space slay or take
prisoner all their
enemies.

emperours nephue, whom he reputyd as his enemy / he
assembelid a great nombre of noble men, the most part
parteynyng to¹ the duke of Burgoyne, who as then
was father to Gyrard of Rousayllon,² who as then was² 4
but .iii. yere of age / ³when y^e abbot had assemblyd a
good⁴ nombre of men / he chose the lorde of Vergier to
be capetayne and leder of that company / & then he
sent out his spies to knowe⁵ the sartayne⁵ which waye 8

the emperours nephue shulde come ; ³at⁶ last he had
sartayne knowlege that he was lodid at mas⁷cou, and
that⁸ the nexte daye he shulde departe to Tournous /
³then the lorde of vergier and dyuers other by the 12
commaundement of the abbot of Cluny went and layd
theyr busshement betwene mascou and Tournous, in a
valey / so that by their spye, who laye on⁹ a mountayne,
¹⁰saw the Almayns comynge, abought the nombre of 16
.ii. M. horses / and the lorde of vergier had in his
company aboue .iii. M. horses defensably aparaylyd /
they were¹¹ ioyfull when they harde by theyr spye
that theyr enemyes weie comynge ; then they aparelyd 20
themselfe to abyde theyr enemyes / who were come so
forwarde that they were past theyr fyrst enbusshement
and were enteryd into the valey / when they of the
fyrst enbusshement and they of the seconde enbusshe. 24
ment sawe theyr tyme, they issuyd out & brake vpon
theyr enemyes, and made a great crye, so that in¹² a
shorte space theyr enemyes and the most parte of them
were slayne, not one that scapyd, but other he was 28
slayne or taken / they coude not sauе themselfe by
cause on⁹ the one syde was the mountayne, & on⁹ the
other syde the ryuer of some, and before and behynde
theyr enemyes were they them selfe / the same tyme 32

¹ vnto. ²⁻² being at that time. ³ and. ⁴ great.

⁵⁻⁵ certainly. ⁶ the. ⁷ Fol. cxxx. col. 1.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ right.

¹² within.

the emperours nephue was slaine, who was a goodly knyghte / and y^e emperour had before sent hym to Burdeaux to gouerne the londe and countre of Burdeloys,
 4 and had bene there the space of .iiii. yeris / of whose dethe the lorde of Vergier was sory, for he had rather
¹ he had bene taken prisoner / then they toke his body and buryed hym in the chefe churche of Tournous,
 8 where as they lay all nyght with theyr prisoners, who were to y^e nombre of .viii. c. ; they of Burdeaux *that* were taken as prisoners were² Ioyfull, when ³they were⁴ seapyd the handys of the almayns.

The Emperor's nephew, a goodly knight, was himself slain,

and buried in the chief church of Tournous.

12 ¶ After this discomfiture they retournid⁵ Cluny, where as they were receyuid with great ioye of the abbot and of the couente / then the lorde of Vergier shewyd the ⁶maner of the⁶ dyscomfyture / and then
 16 the botye was ⁷departyd to⁷ them *that* had wonne it⁸ / then⁹ all the men of warre departyd excepte a .M. men whome the abbot retaynyd styl⁸ for the sauegarde of the towne of Cluny / who made many
 20 scyrmysshis with the emperours men. ⁹After this dyscomfyture the newes therof were¹⁰ broughte to the citye of Magence to y^e emperoure Therry, who was ryght sorowful for y^e dethe of his nephue, who was his
 24 sistres sone / by reason of the sorowe &¹¹ dyspleysure that he had,¹² he was thre dayes after or¹³ he wold come out¹⁴ of his chambre / and on the fourthe day he sent for all his lordys and counsayle / & to the[m]¹⁵
 28 he made his complayntis, how by the occasyon of duke Huon of Burdeaux, he had loste .iiii. of his nephues, & his bastarde sone / & sayd, 'I ought greatly to be anoyed¹⁶ when I can not be reuengyd of Huon / I
 32 thynke he shal neuer retourne agayne / but syn¹⁷ it is

The men of Bordeaux that were prisoners were glad to have escaped the hands of the Germans. They returned to Cluny, and were joyfully received by the abbot.

All the men of war departed except a thousand retained to guard the town of Cluny.

The news of this defeat was brought to the Emperor Thierry at Mayence; he was right sorrowful for his nephew's death.

¹ that. ² right. ³ Fol. cxxx. col. 2. ⁴ thus.

⁵ to the abbey of. ⁶⁻⁶ whole discourse of their.

⁷⁻⁷ deuided amongst. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ was presently. ¹¹ great. ¹² for. ¹³ before.

¹⁴ forth. ¹⁵ then *in text.* ¹⁶ greeued. ¹⁷ seeing.

As he could not
be revenged on
Huon himself,

the Emperor
determines to
burn Esclar-
monde and hang
the 300 prisoners
brought from
Bordeaux.

Thorns were
carried out of the
city to burn the
noble lady
Esclarmonde,
and four hangmen
bring her and the
prisoners out of
the city,
and beat them by
the way.

Weeping and
lamenting, the
lady calls on our
Lord Jesus Christ
to bring her soul
into Paradise.

so that I can take of hym¹ no vengaunce, I shall take it vpon his wyfe Esclaramonde and vpon the .CCC. prisoners that I brought out of Burdeaux / but by the same lorde that made and fourmyd me to his semblaunce, 4 I shall neuer haue ioye in² my harte, nor drynke³ nor ete tyll⁴ I haue sene Esclaramonde brente⁵ in a fyre, and y^e.CCC. prisoners hangyd and strangelyd, and I wyll that eche of you knowe that he that speketh 8 to me fyrst to the contrary I shall hate hym euer after' / when the ⁶lordis⁷ harde the emperoure make that promyse, there was none so hardy that durst speke one worde / then the emperoure in hast⁸ commaundid 12 great plentye of thornes to be caryed out of the citye vnto a lytell mountayne there besyde / and therby to be rerid vp sartayne galous to hang theron .iii. C. prisoners; all this was done as he commaundyd / 16 for mo then .x. lode of thornes were caryed out to brenne⁹ the noble lady Esclaramonde / and she was sent for out of pryon by .iiii. hangmen, and the prisoners with her were brought into y^e citye, and all 20 to¹⁰ beten by the waye / when the noble lady sawe how she was delte with all,¹¹ petuously she complaynyd for her good husbande Huon, and for her daughter claryet, and sayd / ‘a, my ryght swete lorde & husband Huon / 24 at this tyme shal be the departure of vs two’; ¹²then she callyd vpon our lorde god¹³ Iesu chrys, prayenge hym by his grace and petye to bryng her sowle into paradyse / thus cryenge and complaynyng the noble 28 lady was led thrughe the towne / ¹²then ladyes, and burgesses, and maydens of the citye ran to theyr wyndowes and dorys / and behelde the dolorous and petuous¹⁴ company ledynge towardes theyr dethes; then 32

¹ of hym *after* vengeance. ² at. ³ drinke *after* ete.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxx. back, col. 1.

⁷ had well. ⁸ in hast *after* commandid. ⁹ burne.

¹⁰ bee. ¹¹ shee *before* petuously. ¹² and. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ pitiful.

they sayde ahyghe / 'A, ryght noble lady, where is
become the great beautye that ye were wonte to be of /
for now your vysage is pale and dyscolouryd that was
4 wonte to be so fayre, and now so lothely¹ and dis-
figuryd / where is become your fayre herys, that nowe
be so blake and ruggyd for the great pouerty that
ye haue enduryd / Alas, noble lady, great pety² we
8 haue to se you in this estate yf we coud a mende it' /
thus as this lady was led thrughe y^e towne she was
bemonyd³ of them that sawe her / the .iii. C. ientylmen
also⁴ were led forthe / and the emperour Thyrry and
12 his lordlis rode after them / for his desyre was to se the
lady brente⁵ & the⁶ prisoners hangid / he made haste
because of the sorowe that he had for y^e dethe of his
nephue and of his men, who were newly slayne by the
16 purches⁷ of the abbot of Cluney / when they were
issued out of the citye of Magence / duke Hyldebert, a
nere kynsman of the emperours, was comyng into the
citye the same tyme that the lady was led fourth, and
20 sawe how rudely they delte with the lady / ⁸when he
sawe her he knew wel⁹ it was¹⁰ Esclaramond / ¹¹when
he sawe her at that poynt, the water was in his eyen,
and¹² syd to¹³ them that ledde her / 'Syrs, go not
24 so faste tyll¹⁴ I haue spoken with the emperoure' / the
whiche they dyd gladly ; when the noble lady Esclara-
monde¹⁵ vnderstode the duke / she had a¹⁶ lytell hope,
she tournid her eyen towardis hym, and sayd / 'A,
28 ryght noble prynce, haue petye and compassyon of me,
for I haue done no thynge wherby I shulde deserue to
dye' / when the duke¹⁷ harde¹⁷ her he had suche petye
that he coude speke no worde, his harte was so full of
32 sorowe / ⁸then-he rode as fast as he myght to mete with

All who behold
her ask what has
become of her
great beauty.

As the procession
went out of the
city, duke
Hildebert, a
kinsman of the
Emperor, was
coming in, and
seeing how
roughly they
dealt with
Esclaramonde,

he bid them
desist till he had
spoken with the
Emperor.

Esclaramonde
begs Hildebert
have pity on her.

¹ loathed. ² and compassion. ³ Fol. cxxx, back, col. 2.

⁴ were also. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ other. ⁷ meanes.

⁸ and. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the faire Ladie. ¹¹ but. ¹² he.

¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ had well heard and.

¹⁶ some. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ had well vnderstood.

y^e emperoure, and passyd by the .CCC. prisoners, and had great pety¹ of them / and so he came to² the emperour all wepyng, he³ sayd / ‘A, ryght noble emperoure, I requyre you in the honoure of the passyon 4 of our lorde Iesu chryst, haue petye and compassyon of this dolorous company that ar lykely to dye this daye, remembre howe⁴ it is nowe in the holy tyme of lente, wherefore I requyre you⁵ respyght theyr lyues vnto⁶ it 8 be past Ester / and, syr, humbely I requyre you for all the ser⁷uyce that I and myn haue done² you, grante me⁸ this request for my rewarde, the whiche is⁹ resonable and iust / great wronge ye do to reuenge your 12 iyre¹⁰ vpon this noble lady / ye haue chasyd her out of her countre¹¹ and sygnories, the whiche you hold in your handes, and take the reuenuys & profyghtes therof / yf ye be not suffyced with this, I dought me¹² 16 that our lorde Iesu chryst wyll be sore dysplesyd with you’ / when the emperoure had¹³ herde the duke his cosyn, he stode stylly and spake hastely, and sayd, ‘fayr cosyn, I haue well herde you, & therfore I 20 answeare you in breue wordys / how that yf al the men that be in myn empere, and all the preestes and freers were here, and dyd preche to² me an hole yere desyrynge me to respyght this ladys deth and the other 24 that be with hyr, I wolde do nothyng for all them / and therefore speke to me¹⁴ no more in that mater / for by the berd that hangeth at¹⁵ my chynne, syn I can not haue Huon hyr husbande at my wyll, I shal neuer eete 28 nor drynke tyll⁶ I haue seen hyr brente¹⁶ and the other persones hangyde. For when I remembre the deth of myn nephues and of my dere sone, the whiche hath bene slayne by Huon, there is no membre in my body 32 but that trymbleth for sorowe and dyspleasure.

¹ and compassion. ² vnto. ³ and. ⁴ that.

⁵ to. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. cxxxvi, col. 1. ⁸ but.

⁹ both. ¹⁰ anger. ¹¹ landes. ¹² omitted.

¹³ well. ¹⁴ to me after more. ¹⁵ vnder. ¹⁶ burnt.

He entreats the Emperor to respite their lives till after Easter.

Surely it is sufficient to have chased her from her country and signories, and to have taken her revenues for himself;

but if all the men in his empire and all the priests preached to him for a year, the Emperor will not give way, neither will he eat nor drink till Esclarmonde be burnt, and the other persons hanged.

¶ when the good duke hyldeberte vnderstode the emperoure, he had great sorowe,¹ and departed without any worde spekyng and without any leue takyng.
 4 But retornyd fro thence² he came³ full of iyre and dyspleasure / then the emperoure thyrry cryed with a hye voyce, and sayd how⁴ he wolde shortly dispache the mater to se the lady brente,⁵ and led to y^e hyll
 8 where as the fyre was redy / when the lady perseuyed y^e place where as she⁶ shulde dye in / she cast out a great crye & made a petnose⁷ complaynte to our lord Iesu chrys^t, and sayd / ‘A, ryght swete lorde
 12 Iesu chrys^t, thou knouest that for the loue of the I am chrysstened to byleue in thy law, wherin I wyll lyue and dye / I se well my dayes ar but shorte / and thou knowest well⁸ there is no cause wherin that
 16 I haue deseruyd deth / therfore I requyre the hombly to haue pyte⁹ of my soule and⁹ to kepe and preserue my husbande Huon and my daughter claryet.’ Thus as ye haue herd the noble duches Esclaramonde made
 20 hyr complayntes, hyr handes fast¹⁰ bound, and knelyng on¹¹ hyr kneys before the stakes, abydyng y^e our of hyr deth / Now¹² leue we¹² to speke of this noble lady tyll¹³ we retorne agayn, and speke of the noble
 24 kynge Oberone and¹⁴ his compayne.

He commands
the despatch of
the business:

when the lady
saw the place
where she should
die, she implored
our Lord Jesus
Christ to have
pity on her soul,

and to keep and
preserve her
husband Huon
and her daughter
Clariet.

With her hands
bound and kneel-
ing before the
stake Esclara-
monde awaits the
hour of her death.

¶ How¹⁵ Oberon sent .ii. of his knyghtes of the fayery, that is to saye, Malabron and Gloryande, to delyuer the duches
 28 Esclaramond, who shulde haue bene brente,⁵ and¹⁶ .ccc. prisoners¹⁷ who were¹⁸ delyueryd by the sayd knyghtes. Ca. C.xliiii.

¹ at his heart. ² and. ³ became. ⁴ that.

⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxxi. col. 2. ⁷ pitifull.

⁸ and compassion. ⁹ that thou wilt vouchsafe.

¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹²⁻¹² let us leaue. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ of. ¹⁵ King. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ that should haue bene hanged. ¹⁸ all.

On the same day
as Esclaramonde
should have been
burnt, Oberon
was holding a
great court in
his palace.



The noble queen
Morgan was
there, with her
niece and many
other ladies and
knights of fairy-
land, making
great joy.

Oberon began to
weep,

and Gloryand, the
good knight of
Fairyland, asks
him the cause of
his grief.

It is that
Esclaramonde,
wife of Oberon's
friend Huon, is
to be burnt, and
the prisoners
hanged.

Oberon may not
succour them.

Ow seweth the story¹ that y^e same
daye that the duches, y^e fayre
Esclaramonde, shuld haue bene
brent,² kynge Oberone of the fayery⁴
was in his pales of mummur,
wheras he had holden a great courte and a sumptuous
for his mother; the lady of the pruye Isle was there /
and also the noble quene Morgan³ le faye / & the 8
dameysell Transcelyne hyr nese, with dyuers other
ladyes of the fayery, and dyuers knyghtes⁴ of the
same, makynge great ioye; kynge Oberon was syttinge
in a ryche trone garnyshed & borderyd with fyne 12
golde and precyous stones / and as he satte he fell in a
great study / and therwith the dropes of water fell out
of his eyene, &⁵ began to wepe⁶ so sore as though he
shulde haue drowned in⁷ dropes of water / when these 16
quenys, ladyes, and damysels sawe hym make suche
sorowe, they had great merueyll /⁸ there was Gloryande,
the good knyght of the Fayery, and Malabron, who
were ryght preuy and wel-bclouyd with kyng Oberon / 20
⁸when they sawe the kynge make such sorowe they
were⁹ abasshed, and syr Gloryand sayd / 'Syr, what
man is lyuyng in this world that hath dyspleased
you or done any thynge agaynst you?' / 'Gloryand,' 24
quod y^e kyng / 'the dyspleasure that I haue is for the
fayre¹⁰ Esclaramonde, wyffe to¹¹ Huon of Burdeaux /
my¹² frende / she is as nowe led out of the cytye of
Maience & brought to¹³ a¹⁴ fyre, wherin y^e Emperoure 28
therry wyl byrne her / & other .CCC. poore presoners
to be hanged / and I maye not¹⁵ socoure them / and I
am sory therof for the loue of Huon / who is as now
passyd the see, and is in the waye retournyng home- 32

¹ Historie. ² burnt. ³ Morgne.

⁴ Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁵ he. ⁶ and complaine.

⁷ with. ⁸ and. ⁹ sore dismayed and. ¹⁰ Ladie.

¹¹ vnto Duke. ¹² verie good. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ great.

¹⁵ ayd nor.

warde / and he hath had suche aduenturs that there is
no humayne body coude suffre nor bere the payns and
truelles *that he hath endeured*, nor the meruelous
4 aduentures that he hath borne; ¹ he hathe had so
many bateylles that it were ² meruyll ³ to here them
re hersyd, and nowe where as he thought to haue had
rest & to haue founde his wyfe, the fayr ⁴ Esclara-
8 monde a lyue, who shall now be brent ⁵ without ⁶ she
be shortly ⁷ socoured, ⁸ & then ⁸ I am sure ⁹ he shall ¹⁰
dye for sorowe.¹¹ when Gloryand and malabrone¹²
herle¹³ ¹⁴kynge Oberone / they kneled downe before
12 this kynge and sayd / 'syr, we desyre you to socoure
this noble lady for the loue of her good husband,
your¹⁵ frend Huon' / 'Gloryand,' quod the noble kynge
Oberon / 'that wyll I not do, but I am well contente
16 that hastely ye go and delyuer the good lady and the
other prisoners that be with her / and saye on¹⁶ my
behalfe to the Emperoure therry, that he be not soo
hardy¹⁷ to do any yll to the lady or to any of her
20 compayne / but saye *that I wyll*¹⁸ *that he respygght*
theyr lyues tyll¹⁹ the holy feeste of Eester be passyd /
and *that the lady & all⁸ y^e other prisoners he cause to*
be retorne agayne¹⁶ to the citye of Maience, and *that*
24 y^e lady be set in a chambre at her lyberte and pleasure,
& let her be bayngned²⁰ and wesshyde and new arayed,
and let her haue .iiii. noble ladyes to serue and
acompaynye her, & that she haue meet and drynk
28 as good & as plenteous²¹ as thought she were his owne
propre doughter / in lyke wyse let²² the other prisoners
be seruyd / & saye *that I wyll*²³ *he*²⁴ *do this vnto*²⁴ *the*

Huon, after
enduring many
pains, is return-
ing to his own
land,

and if he
finds Esclara-
monde burnt will
die of sorrow.

Gloryand and
Malabron ask
Oberon, for love
of Huon, to
suceour the noble
lady.

Oberon desires
his two knights
to go and deliver
her,

to request the
Emperor to
respite their lives
till after Easter,

to place the lady
in a chamber
with four noble
ladies,
to serve her
and to treat her
exactly as if she
were his own
daughter.

He is to do
likewise with the
other prisoners.

¹ and. ² great. ³ and wonderful. ⁴ Ladie.
⁵ burnt. ⁶ except. ⁷ aided and. ⁸⁻⁹ omitted.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ will.

¹¹ and griefe that he will haue at his heart. ¹² had well.
¹³ and vnderstode. ¹⁴ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ deare.
¹⁶ in. ¹⁷ as. ¹⁸ and commaund. ¹⁹ vntill.
²⁰ bathed. ²¹ plentifull. ²² all.
²³ and commaund that. ²⁴⁻²⁴ doth thus vntill.

Then Gloryand
and Malabron
wist themselves
in the place where
the lady was,

and they come
through the air
with a noise as of
thunder, but
invisible to all but
the lady,

and cast into the
fire the men who
would have burnt
the lady.

The knights
release the lady,
tell her who they
are, and bid her
be of good
comfort.

It is not the
first time Oberon
has aided
Esclaramonde
and Huon.

In a short time
Esclaramonde
shall see Huon
again.
Esclaramonde
rejoices greatly
at the good
tidings.

tyme that Eester be passyd / and shew him that he be
not soo hardy to breke or trespass¹ my commaundement' / then Gloryand & Malabron toke leue of the
Kyng and of all other *that were there* / ²then they ⁴
wysshyd them selfe in the place wher as the lady and
the other prisoners where ; ³the lady as then was on⁴
her kneys before the fyre sore wepynge,⁵ abydyng the
oure of her deth / the which had bene nere to⁶ her yf ⁸
she had not shortly bene⁷ socouryd for they were
aboute to haue bounde her to the stake / when Gloryand
& Malabron came braynge in the ayre lyke thonther /
and they were not seyne of no person but aloneyn of the 12
lady / ²when they were come & saw y^e fyre akyndlyng,
⁸they toke y^e .x. rybawdis⁹ that wold haue cast the
lady in¹⁰ y^e fyre, they toke them & dyd¹¹ cast them all
.x. in to y^e flamynge fyer, wheras they wher shortly ¹⁶
brent,¹² and besyde them there wher dyuers other
brent,¹² whereof suche as were there had¹³ greate feer
that none durst a byd there / then y^e .ii. knyghtis cam
to the lady and lousid hyr, and sayd, 'dame,¹⁴ be ²⁰
of good comfort, we ar .ii. knyghtis sent hether fro
kinge oberon to socour and to bryng you out of the¹⁵
daunger that ye be in' / ' syrs,' quod the lady, 'yt ys
not the fyrste tyme that the noble kynge Oberon hath²⁴
socouryd vs, bothe me and my husbonde / god of hys
grace rewarde hym' / 'dame,'¹⁴ quod gloryand, 'be
mery and make ioye, for your good husbonde Huon is
come on this syde the se, whome ye shall see in¹⁶ ²⁸
shorte tyme' / when y^e good lady¹⁷ vnderstode gloriand
she had suche ioye *that* of a great spase she coude
speke no word, she was so rauysshyd ; ¹⁸at laste she
sayde, 'syr, I ought greatly to loue you ¹⁹to bryng¹⁹ ³²

¹ against. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ and complayning and. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ been shortly.

⁸ Fol. cxxxii, col. 1. ⁹ villaines. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ omitted.

¹² burnt. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ Madame. ¹⁵ perill and.

¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ had well. ¹⁸ but. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ for bringing.

me suche tdynges' / ¹then they sayd to² hyr, 'Dame,³
rest you here a seson tyll⁴ we haue delyueryd the other
prysoners, whom we see yonder ledyng to⁵ the dethe
⁴ warde,⁵ and shortely we shal retourne to⁶ you.' there
with they departyd fro the lady, and lefte hyr on⁷
hyr knees holdynge vp hyr handys ²to the² heuen,
¹deuoutely re[n]dering thankis to our lord Iesu chrysste
⁸ of⁸ the socoure and ayed that he had sent hyr. then
gloryand and malabron came to y^e galous, & there
lowsyd y^e CCC. prysoners, and slew dyuers of them
that were sent thether to do execucyon, wherof all
¹² they that were ther⁹, had great merueyl¹⁰ when they
saw there compeny slayn & coude not se them that dyd
it / but they thought there were a thousande knygghtes
by reason of y^e¹¹ brute & noyse that¹² y^e .ii. knygghtes
¹⁶ of y^e fayry made / wherof they had suche fere that
they fled away and ran to the emperoure, who was sore
¹³ abasshed of that auenture / for it was also shewyd²
hym / that the lady was reskewyd, and they coude not
²⁰ tell by whom ; But that they sayd they herde¹⁴ great
brute & tempest¹⁵ / then also the emperoure saw how
the people came rynnyng toward hym, fleynge fro the
galous, and they shewyd¹⁶ hym all that they had sene
²⁴ and hard, wherof y^e emperoure & all his lordes had
great fere & were sore abasshed. 'A, syr,' quod the
duke of Astrych, 'it had bene better for you to haue
beleuyd duke Hyldbert, your cosyn / know suerly¹⁷ ye
²⁸ haue greatly displeased our lord Iesu chrysst syn¹⁷ ye
wolde do suche cruell Iustyce in the holy tyme of
lente' / thus after these .ii. knygghtes of the fayry had
reskewyd the good lady and y^e other prysoners, he¹⁸
³² toke them and the lady & brought them to² the

She devoutly
renders thanks to
our Lord Jesus
Christ.

The knights
deliver the 300
prisoners,
and slay their
executioners.

All the spectators
marvel greatly,
thinking there
must be a
thousand knights,
so great is the
confusion.

They flee to the
Emperor,
and describe to
him what has
taken place.

It would have
been better for
the Emperor to
have given heed
to Hildebert's
request.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ Madame. ⁴ vntill.
⁵—⁶ toward their deaths. ⁶ again vnto. ⁷ vpon.
⁸ for. ⁹ present. ¹⁰ and did woondre thereat.
¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. cxxxii, col. 2. ¹³ dismayed and.
¹⁴ a. ¹⁵ noyse. ¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ they.

Then the two
knights brought
the lady and
prisoners to the
Emperor,
and made them-
selves visible to
all.

The Emperor,
seeing only two
knights armed
on horseback,
sets little account
by them,
and asks what
they mean by
such boldness,

and declares he
will hang them
also.

Gloryand repeats
to the Emperor
the things Oberon
has commanded
him to do.

emperoure, and shewyd them selues openly / ¹when they were in the presence of the emperoure, and y^e prisoners with them / ¹the emperoure saw that there were but .ii. knyghtes armyd on² horse back, he set 4 lytyll by them, and sayd / ‘how are you so bold and so hardy to delyuer and to take out of my mens handes they³ that are condemned to dye by Iustyce, and beseyd, that ye haue slayne⁴ of my men / and⁵ bryng 8 them in to my presence whome I haue condemned to dye / wherfore I wyll⁶ ye⁷ knowe that or⁸ I eete or drynke you and all they shal be hanged, and the lady Esclaramonde brente,⁹ nor I shall not departe¹⁰ hence 12 tyll¹¹ I haue sene you all dye’¹² / then Gloryand and Malabrone lyft vp theyr wessers and shewyd theyr faces / and they semyd to¹³ all them that sawe them that they neuer saw before .ii. so¹⁴ fayre knyghtis in all 16 theyr lyues. Then Gloryand sayde to¹³ the emperour / ‘syr, of you nor of your thretenynges we make ther of¹⁵ lytell acounte. But, syr, know for trouthe / that the noble kynge Oberon commaundeth you by vs in as 20 moche as ye fere your lyfe / that ye be not so hardy any forther to do any yl or iniury nor commaunde to be done to¹³ this noble lady that is here present, nor to these other pryoners / vntyll Eester day be past. 24 And also kynge Oberon commaundeth you that ye¹⁶ kepe this lady in your house clothyd and apareyled and as well gouernyd, & to be accompanied with ladyes and damoselles to serue her honorably as well as¹⁷ she 28 were your owne proper doughter, and that in lyke wyse these presoners to be newly aparelyd¹⁸ and orderyd as well as other knyghtis of your house / &, syr, we warne¹⁹ that in all²⁰ this that we haue sayd that ye do 32

¹ and. ² vpon. ³ those. ⁴ many. ⁵ nowe.

⁶ that. ⁷ well. ⁸ before. ⁹ burned. ¹⁰ from.

¹¹ vntill. ¹² the death. ¹³ vnto.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ but. ¹⁶ doe. ¹⁷ if.

¹⁸ arrayed. ¹⁹ and charge you. ²⁰ omitted.

not the contrary for any thynge that maye fall / for yf
ye do other wyse / there is no mortall man shal saue
your lyfe: thus commaundeth you¹ to do the² noble
4 kynge Oberon, who is souerayne lorde³ of the fayry' /
when the emperour Therry⁴ hardle these knyghtes of y^e
fayry thus speke to⁵ hym / and saw how they were
armyd with theyr swordis in theyr handlys tayntyd
8 with the blade of his almayns, he had great fere,
& beheld his barons, and sayde / 'syrs, I praye you
gyue me som good counseyle in this⁶ besynes / ye⁷
haue well hard moch spekyng of kynge Oberon and of
12 his great actis and dedys, wherfore I fere hym moche /
ye may se what .ii. of his knyghtis haue done / they
haue rescued them that I had condemnyd to dye /
and slayne dyners of my men. Also ye here what
16 worde he sendeth me by his two knyghtis, that I
⁸ shulle kepe this lady and the other prisoners
honorable / and that I shuld not be so hardy to put
them to any daunger tyll⁹ Eester were¹⁰ passyd.' Then
20 an aunsyent knyght sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe
that kyng Oberon is pusant and wyse / for there is
nothynge in the world but that he knoweth it, and
also as often as he lyst, he can be where as he wylle
24 wysshe hym selfe, ¹¹with as great nombre of people as
he lyste / ¹¹therfore, syr, byleue surly yf ye do other-
wyse then he hathe commaundyd you to do these two
knyghtis of his that be here present hathе suffycyent¹²
28 pusaunce to dystroye you, and kynge Oberon to syt
styl at home / therfore, syr, myn adulyse is that ye
answere these .ii. knyghtes, that all that kynge Oberon
hath commaunded you to do by them, that ye wylle do
32 it surly' / ¹¹then all the other lordis gauē the emperour

The Emperor
was sore afraid,
and asks his
barons to counsel
him what to do.

An ancient
knight describes
Oberon's great
power,

and advises the
Emperor to do as
the two fairy
knights
command.

¹ commaundeth you after Oberon. ² right.

³ and Gouernor of all the Realme. ⁴ had well. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ serious. ⁷ we. ⁸ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 2.

⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ be. ¹¹ and. ¹² after puissance.

The other lords
gave the same
counsel.

The Emperor
promises to do
what Oberon
commands.

Gloryand says
Oberon will then
take the Emperor
for his friend,
and to the marvel
of all, the two
knights vanish.

They return to
Oberon, and
relate what they
have done.

Oberon declares
when Easter is
past, the Emperor
will carry out his
intention of
burning Esclara-
monde, and of
hanging the
prisoners.

Gloryand cannot
believe the
Emperor will
dare to do it.

His great hatred
will force him
so to do.

the same counsayle / when the emperor had¹ hard²
his lordys³ he retournyd⁴ hym to⁵ the .ii. knygty^s of
the fayry, and sayde / ‘syrs, ye shall salute me to
kyng Oberon, and say that as for me I shall do euery⁴
thyng as he hathe commaunded me to do to the best
of my power’ / ‘syr Emperour,’ quod Gloryand, ‘yf
ye⁶ do as ye saye the kynge wyl take you for his
frende / and therupon we commaunde you to god’ / 8
thus the .ii. knygty^s departyd, so that the emperoure
nor none other parson⁷ coude tell⁷ where they were
become, wheroft euery man hadde great maruayle and
were sore abasshyd. 8 Thus Gloryand and Malabron 12
within a whyle came to⁹ Mommure, where as they
founde kynge Oberon, to whome they shewed all that
they had done. ‘wel,’ quod kynge Oberon, ‘as now
the lady Esclaramonde and the other prisoners ar 16
at theyr ease and well seruyd / but or¹⁰ a¹¹moneth
be passyd they shall derely abyte the ease that they be
in nowe / for the emperoure hateth them so sore
bycause of the maleys that he berethe to⁵ Huon¹² / he 20
wyll set them all agayne into preson in great¹³ mysery /
and when Eester is past / he wyll brenne¹⁴ the lady¹⁵
and hange vp¹⁶ the prisoners without they be rescued’¹⁷ /
‘syr,’ quod Gloryand, ‘I can not byleue that the 24
emperour dare do it or thinke to do so.’¹⁸ ‘Gloryand,’
quod the¹⁹ kyng, ‘know surly that the great hate that
is rootyd in the hart of the emperoure shal constreyn²⁰
him thus to do.’ now let vs leue spekyng of²¹ kyng 28
Oberon, and speke of the Emperoure.²²

¹ well. ² and vnderstood. ³ and Barons.

⁴ turned. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ will. ⁷⁻⁷ knew not. ⁸ and.

⁹ the City of. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1.

¹² of Bourdeaux that. ¹³ pouertie and. ¹⁴ burne.

¹⁵ Escleremond. ¹⁶ all. ¹⁷ againe. ¹⁸ so to doe.

¹⁹ noble. ²⁰ and vrge. ²¹ the noble. ²² Tirrey.

¶ Howe the emperoure¹ made the² lady esclaramonde to be well seruyd and aparaylyd, and all the other prisoners / but
 4 a³ .iii. wekys after he made the noble lady & the sayd prisoners to be put agayne into pryon, where as they were in great mysery.

Ca. C.xlv.

8 Ow sheweth the hystory that after these⁴ .ii. knyghtis of ye fayry were departid and vanysshid away out of the presence of the emperoure, and
 12 that the emperoure was retourned into the citye of Magence with the lady



Esclaramond and with the other prisoners, wherof the burgesses, ladyes, and damosels of ye citye⁵ were
 16 ioyfull⁵ of theyr good aduenture / ⁶the emperoure had them into his palays and delyuerid to⁷ them chambers well drest and hangyd, as it aparteynyd,⁸ and the⁹ lady⁹ had .iiii. ladyes to serue her / and she was baynyd¹⁰
 20 and stuyd,¹¹ and new aparaylyd as wel and¹² rychely as though she had bene the empe¹³rours¹⁴ proper daughter, so that within a shorte space she came agayne to her beautye,¹⁵ and in lyke wyse so dyd all the other
 24 prisoners who were kepte¹⁶ in¹⁶ chambers and new aparayled, and had theyr ease¹⁷ as other knyghtis of ye emperours courte had / but as sone as thre wekys was passyd / the great hate that the emperour had to⁷
 28 the² lady and to the¹⁸ prisoners constrainyd hym to take fro them theyr⁴ ioy and ease that they were in,

The Emperor returned to Mayence with the lady Esclaramonde and the other prisoners.
All rejoice to see them.

The lady is treated just as though she was the Emperor's own daughter,

so that she regained her beauty.

The other prisoners were treated as knights of the court.

At the end of three weeks the Emperor's hate returned,

¹ Tirrey. ² noble. ³ about. ⁴ the.

⁵—⁵ had great ioy. ⁶ and. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ thereunto.

⁹—⁹ noble duches Escleremond. ¹⁰ bathed. ¹¹ washed.

¹² as. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. ¹⁴ owne.

¹⁵ and to be as faire and well fauoured as euer she was.

¹⁶—¹⁶ also in faire and rich. ¹⁷ and pleasures.

¹⁸ other.

and tournyd the same ¹ to wepynges and sorowe.¹
And the emperor sware that for all kynge Oberon or
for any thyng that he coude do / he wolde neuer be
in peas in his harte tyll² he had set all that³ company ⁴

and he swore that
after Easter the
lady shoulde be
burnt, and the
prisoners hanged.

agayne into pryon / and besyde that, he sware that
Eester shulde no soner be past but that y^e lady
Esclarmond shuld be brent⁴ and all the other prisoners
hangyd / and on⁵ them to take vengaunce in the spyte ⁸
of Huon of Burdeaux, who had done hym so moch
trouble that he coud not forget it / then he com-
maundyd to take agayne the duches Esclarmonde and
to put her and all the other prisoners in to the preson ¹²
agayne / y^e which was done⁶ / Then the duches
Esclarmonde and al the other prisoners were ryghte
sorowful, and were in great fere, and sayd eche to
other, ‘Alas, now our deth aprocheth.’ and when⁷ ¹⁶
the lady saw that she was set agayne in pryon, she

Esclarmonde
and the others
were again
imprisoned.

The lady weeps
for her husband
Huon.

He tarries so
long, and will not
come in time to
save her.

began sore to wepe and complayne for the duke Huon
her husband,⁸ and sayd / ‘a, dere lorde and husbonde⁸ /
to longe⁹ ye tary, for I se none other owre¹⁰ but that ²⁰
my deth aprocheth / for ye shall not come in tyme /
well may I curse the owre that¹¹ I was borne / for in all
my lyfe I haue had but sorow, and heuynes, and dolours
¹² in portables¹² / better it had bene for me to haue ²⁴
ben ded then¹³ to vse¹⁴ my lyfe in this derke presone’ /
ryght deuoutly she called on⁵ our lord Iesu chrysste
to haue pyte¹⁵ of her / thus was this noble duches set
agayn in presone, and also the .CCC. prisoners, where ²⁸

They suffer great
hunger;

as they sufferyd great fayme¹⁶ and pouerte / for other
thyng had they not to lyue by but barly brede &

¹⁻¹ into pitifull weepinges and great lamentations.

² vntill. ³ the. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ vppon.

⁶ according to his commandement. ⁷ that.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ quoth she. ¹⁰ way. ¹¹ euer.

¹²⁻¹² insupportable. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 1.

¹⁴ spend. ¹⁵ and compassion.

¹⁶ famine.

clere water. Now we wyll leue to speke of them and speke of¹ Huon, who was aryued at Marcyll.²

their only food is
barley bread and
clear water.

¶ How Huon departed fro Marcyll² and
4 came to his vncle, the³ abbot of cluny, in
habyte dysgysed / & to⁴ hym dyscouered
hymselfe, wherof the abbot had great ioy,
& so had Claryte his daughter. Ca. C.xlvi.

8  S ye haue harde here before, how Huon
was at Marcyll,² and after that he
had soiorned⁵ .iiii. dayes, he made
hym redy to departe, and brought
mules and horse for hym⁶ & for
barnard,⁷ and for his company / and

12 then he chargyd his summers / and vpon one of them
he trussyd the greffons fot, y^e which was great and
16 horryble, & coueryd it bycause euery man shulde not se

it / when he was redy and euery thynge trussyd, he
departed fro Marcyll² / and rode so by his iornyes that
he passyd by Prouence and came to⁴ Masconoys, and

20 on⁸ a thursday at nyght, he aryuyd at the towne of
Tournos.

And when they had suppyd, he callyd
Barnard his cosyn, and sayd / ‘cosy[n],⁹ I praye you

10 abyde me¹⁰ here / for I wyll go¹¹ se myne vncle the³

24 abbot of Cluny and Claryet my daughter, whome

I sore desyre to se, & shortly I shall retourne agayne
to⁴ you, I wyll go preuely dysgysed to y^e entent that I

wyll not be knownen' / ‘syr,’ quod Barnard, ‘syn¹² it

28 is your plesure we must be content’ / then they went

to bed, & in the mornynge Huon rose vp and aparelyd
hymselfe lyke a pylgryme, with a stafe, and a bage
abought his necke / ¹³with great botis on⁸ his legis;

Huon leaves
Marselles, passes
by Provence and
Masconoys, and
on a Thursday at
night reaches
Tournol.

After supper,
Huon announces
his intention of
going to see the
Abbot of Cluny
and Clarét his
daughter, in
disguise.

In the morning
Huon dressed
himself as a
pilgrim, with staff
and bag, great

¹ Duke. ² Marsellis. ³ good. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ iourned there. ⁶ selfe. ⁷ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2.
⁸ vpon. ⁹ cosyd in text. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to stay. ¹¹ to.
¹² seeing that. ¹³ and.

boots, a beard,
and long hair.

Barnard and his
company laugh
at the disguise;

Huon looks like
a beggar indeed.

He reaches
Cluny,
and demands
entrance.

This being
granted, he asks
to see the abbot.

The porter gives
him leave to go
into the house;

the abbot is in his
hall, communing
with his brethren.

he had a great berd and long here, wherfore he semyd well a pylgrime¹ come¹ fro a far countre, & so he had done in dede / when Barnard & his company saw hym so aparaylyd, they laughed & said / ‘syr, it apereth⁴ well by your maner that ye ar scapyd out of some good place / it semeth to vs / *that* yf ye wyll shake your stafe ye wyll make the money to a voyde out of mens purses, ye ar so bold a begger’ / when Huon hard⁸ hym² he laughed, & toke leue of them and departid al alone with his bage aboute his necke / so a fote he went tyll³ he came to⁴ Cluny / ⁵then he came to⁴ the abbey gate & callyd y^e porter,⁶ & sayd / ‘frend, I pray¹² you⁷ let me enter.’ ⁸he openyd the weket & beheld Huon, who semyd to hym to be a tall & a goodly man, & sayd / ‘pylgryme, enter when you plese’ / ⁹Then Huon enterid in at the weket, and sayd to⁴ y^e porter / ¹⁶frend, ‘I com strayt fro beyonde the great see, and haue kyssed the holy sepulture, & I¹⁰ haue sufferyd moche Payne and pouerte / and bycause or¹¹ this tyme I haue bene here with y^e abbot of this place, therfore I thought¹² I wolde not pas by without spekyng with hym ; I pray you⁷ shewe me that courtoysē *that* I may speke with hym / for he wyll sone know me.’ ‘Syr,’ quod y^e porter, ‘it semeth¹³ by your maner¹² ye seme to²⁴ be a man of a good plase: therfore I gyue you leue⁷ go into the house at youre pleasure / and ye shall fynde our good abbot in his halle, where as he is comonyng with his bretherne / serteynely I knowe well¹² ye shall²⁸ be welcome to⁴ hym yf he haue of you any knowlege, for a more noble man cortoyse and large¹⁴ ye shal not fynd on¹⁵ this syde¹⁶ the see.’ ‘Frend,’ quod Huon, ‘your curtoysē may auayle you.’ Then Huon went³²

¹⁻¹ that came out. ² them. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and. ⁶ vnto him. ⁷ to. ⁸ then.

⁹ Fol. cxxxiiii, col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ before.

¹² that. ¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴ liberal. ¹⁵ vppon.
¹⁶ of.

into the hall, wheras he found the abbot with his
bretherne / ¹then he saluted the abbot and all his
couente. ‘Frende,’ quod y^e abbot, ‘ye are welcome; I

Huon found the
abbot,
saluted him,

⁴ pray you² shew me fro whence ye come? / ‘Syr,’
quod Huon, ‘I shall shewe you the trouthe / I come
now fro beyonde the see fro the holy citye of Ierusalem,
where as I haue kyssed y^e holy sepulture¹ where as³

and in answer to
his inquiry Huon
describes himself
as a pilgrim from
Jerusalem,

⁸ our lord⁴ was quycke and dede; I haue bene in those
partyes more then these³.vii. yerys / and the cause⁵ I
am com hether to se you is this, I found there a
yonge knyght of myne age namyd Huon of Burdeaux,

who had met with
a young knight
named Huon of
Bordeaux.

¹² and he⁶ saythe⁶ he is your nephue / and when he saw
that I wold depart⁷ thence to come into this⁸ countre,
he humbly prayed me to recommaunde hym to⁹ you /
and therfore, syr,³ I am com to⁹ you to do this⁸

Huon prayed the
pilgrim, since he
was coming into
this country,
to deliver a
message to the
abbot.

¹⁶ message / for he and I haue bene together in¹⁰dyuers
bataylis / & great amyte¹¹ betwen vs’ / when the good
abbot¹² harde¹³ the pylgryme, ¹⁴great dropis¹⁴ fell fro
his eyen¹⁵ when he harde his nephue Huon namyd /

²⁰ and sayd, ‘frend, I pray you yf it be trewe as ye saye,
to shew me the trouthe yf ye haue sene my nephue
Huon / for it is he that I loue best in all this worlde, and
desyre moste to se hym / ¹I pray you shewe⁹ me what

²⁴ is his mynd, other to retourne hether or elles to abyde
styl¹⁶ there; ¹⁷wold to god¹⁸ I were in det to pay a
.M. marke of golde so that he were as nowe here in this
hall.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘of youre nephue whome ye

²⁸ desyre so moche to se, ¹⁹or it be past a moneth¹⁹
he wyll²⁰ be here with you, and, syr, he shewyd me at
my departyng fro hym that he hath a daughter whom

In a month Huon
will arrive here,

¹ and. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ Jesus chryst.

⁵ why. ⁶⁻⁶ said that. ⁷ from. ⁸ his. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxxivii. col. 2. ¹¹ haue bene. ¹² had well.

¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ many teares.

¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheeks. ¹⁶ there stiil. ¹⁷ I.

¹⁸ that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ before a moneth be past.

²⁰ (by the grace of God).

and also he charged the pilgrim to see Clariet, for Huon knows not if she is alive or dead.

The abbot will summon Clariet into the hall.

The abbot sends a noble knight, Sir Emery, to fetch Clariet.

Sir Emery salutes her;

she returns his salutation, and demands his news.

A pilgrim has come from beyond the sea with tidings of Huon, her father; the abbot desires her to come and speak with him.

Clariet and her damsels enter the hall.

ye haue norysshed and brought vp / and he charged me greatly that I shuld desyre of you to se her or¹ I departyd fro you, he knoweth not whether she be a lyue or dede / I wolde gladly se her yf it were your pleasure.' 'Frende,' quod the abbotte, 'ryght gladly ye shall se her. I shal cause her to come hether, and then ye maye se her at your ease / and I dare well saye to² you that in all the world ye shall not³ fynd no fayrer nor a sweter creature, nor more wyser of her age nor better lernyd, & yet she is but .x. yerys of age.

¶ When Huon vnderstode the abbot, ye maye well know that he had great ioye at his harte penuely, & thankyd our lord Iesu chrysste. Then the abbot callyd to² hym a ryght notable knyght, namyd syr Emery, and commaundyd hym to go & feche thether his nece Claryet. y^e knyght went into the chaumbre wheras the fayre lady was with other .iiii. noble ladyes, who⁴ had brought her vp / then Syr Emery saluted the lady and the other that were with her / when the yonge lady parseyued syr Emery, she rose vp and renderyd to hym his salutacyon, & ryght humbly saing, 'syr knyght, I am ioyous⁵ of your comynge, I pray you⁶ shew⁷ sum³ of your newes'⁸ / 'sertaynly, fayre lady,' quod y^e knyght / 'hether is come a pylgryme, who is come fro beyond the see / and he hath shewyd² the abbot your vnkle tydynge of your father, duke Huon, therfore your vnkle desyreh you to come and speke with hym.' when the lady harde spekyng of her father, with all her harte she desyred to know sum sertayne tydynge / ⁹she and her damesels departed out of y^e chambre and came in to the hall to the abbot her vnkle, accompanied with .ii. notable

¹ before. ² vnto. ³ omitted.

⁴ Fol. cxxxivii. back, col. 1. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ to. ⁷ mee.

⁸ and tidinges. ⁹ and then.

knyghtes; when¹ she enteyd into the hall rychely
 aparalyd / no man coud dyscryue her beaute,² she was so well formyd that³ god and³ nature⁴ coude not
 amende her / her skynne was as whyte as y^e floure in
 the mede⁵ / & colouryd lyke the red rose / her hanches
 low and her pappys sumwhat resyng, her throte smoth
 and clere / her chyne vaunted / her mouth as vermeyl
 as a rose / her tethe small & well rengyde, and whyte /
 her face whyte and well colouryd, meddelyd⁶ whyte &
 red / her eyene smylynge, her chere amerous to behold,
 her nose strethe / her forehed whyte / her here yelow /
 her eeres gentyll and close, I can not deuyse the
 .x. parte of her excellent beaute / none coude regarde
 her⁷ but that prayded and louyd her / all her beaute
 and her swete demenor, and great humelyte that was
 in her / yf I shulde⁸ dyseryue it / it shulde⁹ be ouer
 long to rehers; when Huon had¹⁰ sene his doughter¹¹,
 who was so fayre / he gladly beheld her with / ¹²out
 makynge of any knowlage / then y^e abbot toke his nese
 by the hande & led her to¹³ Huon, and sayd / ‘ pylgryme,
 howe say you by³ this damysell / ye maye well parsayue
 by³ her she hathe not bene sore trauelyd nor moche
 come in the sonne / I haue kept her a long space¹⁴ /
 and yf she be garnysshed with beaute / in lyke wyse
 so she is withe wytte and bounte / she is daughter to¹³
 Huon of Burdeaux / the man in the worlde that I
 moost loue / that¹⁶ wold to god¹⁷ I dyd se hym as I do
 you¹⁸ / but yf god send me lyf¹⁹, this lady shall be
 rychely maryed, I shall²⁰ gyue her³ of my³ goodes that
 she shall be ryche and pusaunte.’ ‘syr,’ quod Huon,
 ‘I pray to our lorde Iesu chryszt to gyue her good

Her beauty is so
great; nature can
do no more;

all who see her
praise and love
her.

The abbot tells
the pilgrim of
her beauty and
wit,

and how he
intends to dower
her richly.

¹ then. ² for. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ herself.

⁵ meadow. ⁶ mingled. ⁷ nor looke vpon her.

⁸ heere. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ well. ¹¹ clariet.

¹² Fol. cxxxivii, back, col. 2. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ time.

¹⁵ Duke. ¹⁶ I. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ nowe. ¹⁹ and helth.
²⁰ will.

Clariet asks for
tidings of her
father.

The pilgram
relates how he
and Huon have
been companions
for a long space,

and the ad-
ventures they
have had
together.

Huon will return
before two
months are past.

Clariet hopes he
will deliver her
mother out of
prison.

Huon then
declares who he
really is,

and that he is
going to make
war on the
Emperor Thierry.

fortune / & that she may be so maryed that her blod
may therby be lyft vp and exaltes' / then the fayre
lady Claryte sayd to¹ Huon / 'syr pylgryme, I pray
you² shew me yf ye know any tdynges of my father, 4
duke Huon of Burdeaux?' / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon,
'he and I togyther haue bene a longe space³ beyonde
the see / and companyons together / and we fought the
sowdan of babylon *that now is* / it is not he that was 8
set there by Huon after *that he had slain ye great*
Admyrall gaudes, it is a nother who syn *that tyme*
conqueryd⁴ y^e cytye & y^e countre of Egypt / many
aduentures Huon and I⁵ sufferyd, but at the end 12
we dyscumfyted the sowdan and his men⁶ slayne⁷ /
'pylgrym,' quod⁸ Claryte, 'I requyre you² shewe me
yf ye know that⁹ my dere father wyll retorne hether
agayn¹⁰ / the whiche is the thynge in the world that I 16
most desyre' / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'I answere you
or¹¹ .ii. monethes be past ye shall se hym here in good
helth' / 'I praye¹² to¹² god¹³ it may be so,' quod the
lady¹³ / 'that he maye delyuer my mother out of 20
prysone, where as she¹⁴ is in great pouerte and mysery.'

¶ When Huon¹⁵ harde¹⁶ his daughter, he wold no
lenger hyde hymselfe / but sayd, 'my ryght dere
doughter, or¹⁷ august be past I shall delyuer her or 24
dye in y^e payn, for I shall moue¹⁸ suche warre agaynst
y^e emperoure Therry, that yet or¹⁷ I dye I shall stryke
of his hede¹⁹ what so euer fall therof' / when the lady
harde Huon how he sayd that he was her father, she 28
changed coloure and blussyd as rudy as a rose, and
thought to herself by the wordes that he spake *that he*
was her father, where of she was²⁰ ioyfull, & sayd /

¹ vnto. ² to. ³ time. ⁴ bothe. ⁵ haue.

⁶ are. ⁷ and destroyed. ⁸ the faire Ladie.

⁹ whether. ¹⁰ or no. ¹¹ that before.

¹²⁻¹² vnto our lord. ¹³⁻¹³ qouth the Ladie, it may be so.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxv. col. 1. ¹⁵ had well. ¹⁶ and vnderstood.

¹⁷ before. ¹⁸ make. ¹⁹ from his bodie. ²⁰ right.

'A, syr, I praye you yf ye be duke Huon of Burdeaux,
my father,¹ shewe me.' / 'my ryght dere doughter,
byleue it suerly, for I wyll no lenger hyde it' / when
4 the lady hard that he was her father she cleppyd hym,
and xx. tymes kyssed hym. Then the abbote came
and embrassed hym, and sayd / 'my ryght dere
nephew, the ioy that my harte desyreth² your comynge
8 is to me so agreeable³ that I can not tell whether I
dreme or not *that I se you'*⁴ / then agayn⁵ embrassed
hym, makyng the greatest ioy in the worlde. Also
there was Claryet his doughter, who embrassed and
12 kyssed hym / then all that were in y^e howse came
thether to make⁶ chere and feest⁷ / 'fayre nephew,'
quod the abbot, 'I am sore abasshed that ye be retorne
with so small a company.' 'fayr⁸ vncle,' quod Huon /
16 'it coude be none other wyse; I haue had such
fortunes on⁹ the see *that the moost parte of my men ar
dede and peryshed, and sum by malady, and sum ar
retorne to theyr owne countrees / and specyalys they
20 that went with me ar abydynge at the rocke of the
Adamant, and there al be dede for¹⁰ fayne, and they
that were my gydes to haue brought me to¹¹ enphame
ar in lyke wyse dede there' / then¹² ¹³ Huon began to
24 shewe¹¹ the abbot all the aduentures that he had syn he
departed fro the noble cytye of Burdeaux / there were
sum that hard it *that toke it for a mock, & al ye he
shewyd of so many great meruaylles / they thoughte*¹⁴ the
28 moost part of them were lies / ¹⁵one sayd to an nother,
'great auantage hath these vacaboundes to lye, bycause
they fynde no man to say them naye / & yf any man
say nay, theyr answere is rudy to saye go and se' /
32 then the abbote sayd, 'fayre nephew, yf I were of y^e*

Clariet, right joyful, embraces her father.

The abbot expresses his joy at Huon's return; he can hardly believe it true.

All in the house make a feast.

The abbot cannot understand why Huon has so small a company;

but he learns that of his companions, some are dead, and others have returned to their own country.

Huon relates all the adventures he has had since he left Bordeaux.

Some think he is mocking.

¹ to.

² hath of.

³ acceptable.

⁴ heere and.

⁵ hee.

⁶ great.

⁷ feasting.

⁸ good.

⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ by.

¹¹ vnto.

¹² Duke.

¹³ Foi. cxxxv, col. 2.

¹⁴ that. ¹⁵ and.

If the abbot were younger, gladly would he go with Huon to destroy the Emperor, but he will pay with his own treasure a number of men of war who shall aid Huon.

age to bere harneys,¹ gladly I wold go with you² to destroy this Emperoure who hath done you so myche yll; I shall sende for suche a nombre of men of warre and pay them with my tresoure, the whiche I haue 4 longe tyme gatheryd togyther, and shal ayed you to make such warre *that it shall*³ *be euer*³ *had in remembraunce / or elles I wyll dye in the Payne,* and all they that shulde go with me / and to cause hym to 8 make you amendes of al the ylles and damages that he hath done to⁴ you / yet sumwhat I haue done all redy / for it is not long⁵ that one of the Emperours nephewes was slayn by my men, and all they that 12 were with hym slayn or taken / for, nephew, I haue gatheryd togyther as⁶ great treasoure *that I may therewith wel*⁷ *entertayn a .C. M. men for .ii. yere without sellynge or laynge to plegge any fote of londe pertenyng 16 to my churche / but as nowe I am so olde that I can not ryde out, for I am a .C. & xiii. yere of age / and therfore syn⁸ I can not go with you / I shal abandone to⁴ you all my treasure ; ⁹ take therof as moche as 20 it shall please you' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye make me so great an offere that ones or I dye I truste to rendere to⁴ you the doble¹⁰ by the grace of god.'*

As the abbot is one hundred and fourteen years old, he will abandon all his treasure to Huon, who can take as much as he pleases.

¶¹¹ How duke Huon of Burdeaux shewyd to 24 his vnkle, the abbote of Cluny, all the aduentures that he had syn he departed fro the¹² cytye of Burdeaux / & how he gaue y^e abbot y^e appyll of yought, wherby 28 y^e good abbot became agayn to his beaute that he had when he was of .xxx. yere of age.

Ca. C.xlvii.

¹ armour. ² to ayde you. ³⁻³ alwayes be. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ since. ⁶ a. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ seeing that. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ value. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxv, back, col. 1. ¹² noble.

Hen¹ Huon of Burdeaux² vnderstod
the³ abbot his vncle, and sawe the
fayr offere and seruyce that he had
offeryde⁴ hym, &⁵ sayd / ‘syr, of your
curtesie and largesse, and all the good
that ye haue done to⁴ me and to my daughter claryet,
god rewarde you for it / trewe it is after *that* I had fought
8 with the gryffons ; I came to⁴ a fayr fountayn, & theroy
was a tree growynge charged full of fayr fruyte, the
tree was called the tre of yought, of y^e which I gaderyd
.iii. appyls, wherof ye shall haue one and shall eete it,
12 and as sone as ye haue eten thereof wherby ye shal
become as yonge, and as stronge and lusty as ye were
when ye were of the age of .xxx. yere.’ Then there
was a monke in the howse callyd dan Johan salmet,⁶
16 who began to laugh, and hasted hym to speke, &
sayd / ‘A, syr, what is it that ye saye / thys .ii.M. yere
there was neuer man at the tree of yought, therfore this
tale is not to be byleuyd’ / ⁷when Huon harde the
20 monke he waxyde rede for angre, & lyft vp his staffe
and wolde haue stryken therwith the monke, and⁸
he had not skept backe, and sayd / ‘A, thou false
monke, *thou* lyest falsly / I haue bene there, and that
24 *thou* shalt se the profe there⁹ of whether I say trewe or
not’ / then the abbot came bytwene them and stoppyd
the stroke / and sayd to⁴ Huon / ‘A, my ryght dere
nephew, apayse yourself’ / and then he sayd to the
28 monke / ‘A, thou¹⁰ gloutone,¹⁰ by the faythe *that* I owe
to⁴ my lorde saynt bennet,¹¹ thy wordes¹² shall¹² be
sore punysshdyd’ / then he causyd the monke to be set
in presone / and then the abbote sayd to⁴ Huon / ‘syr,
32 I pray you be no lenger dyspleasyd’ / then Huon toke

Huon tells how
he gathered the
fruit of the tree of
youth,
and offers one of
the apples to the
abbot in order
that he may
become once
again a young
man.

Thereupon a
monk, Johan
Salmet, laughs
and cries that the
tale is false.

Huon waxes
furious.

and the abbot
sends the monk
to prison.

¹ Duke.

² had well. ³ good. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ he.

⁶ Saliuet.

⁷ and. ⁸ if. ⁹ Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 2.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ rude gromo. ¹¹ for.

¹²⁻¹² thou shalt.

one of his appyls and toke¹ it to his² vncle the abbote, and sayd / ‘syr, take this appyll, y^e whiche I gaderyd of the tree of yought; I gaderyd³ .iii., and one I gaue to the admyrall of Perce, and a nother I kept for⁴ myself, the which I gyue you / ⁴I wolde haue gaderyd mo but I was defended⁵ by an aungell sent fro our lorde Iesu chrys^t/ &, syr, knowe for troughe that the admyrall of perce or⁶ I gaue hym y^e appyll he was of 8 the age of .vi. score yere & more / but as soone as he had eeten therof / he became as fayr and as stronge as when he was .xxx. yere of age, & he is as nowe one of the fayrest pryncys of⁷ the worlde; By the whiche 12 myracle he and all his people of his realme forsoke⁸ the⁹ law of macomete and toke on¹⁰ them the byleue of our lorde Iesu chrys^t, and were chrystenyd / & they that wold not were hewen al to peses / and after that for 16 the loue that he bare¹¹ me, he passed the see with me with great pusaunce, and we enteryd in to y^e sowdans land / where as we dyscumfyted hym in playne batayll’ / when the² abbote¹² harde¹³ his nephew he had great 20 ioy, and toke the appyll / & made therof¹⁴ the synge of y^e crosse, and dyd eete it vp euery dele,¹⁵ wherby incontynent in¹⁶ syght of all them that were there present, he became in to his fyrrt youth as he was 24 when he was¹⁷ but of y^e age of .xxx. yeres, his whyte berd fell away & a new berd come / his iowes that were lene & pale, y^e flesse grew again new quycke flesse, so that he became a fayre¹⁸ man & wel fornyshyd of 28 body and membres / a farer man can¹⁹ no man se, nor lyghter, nor lustyter / wherof he had suche ioyc at his harte that he ran and embrasyd Huon, and kyssed hym

Then the abbot, making the sign of the cross, took the apple and ate it,

and at once became as a man of thirty years.

In great joy he embraces Huon.

¹ gau^e. ² good.

³ therof. ⁴ and. ⁵ forbidden.

⁶ before. ⁷ in. ⁸ did forsake. ⁹ false and detestable.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ vnto mee. ¹² had well.

¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴ thereon. ¹⁵ whit. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ Fol. cxxxvi. col. 1. ¹⁸ young. ¹⁹ could.

more then x. tymes / when they ¹ that were¹ present
 saw the² great merueyll, they were greatly abasshed, &
 sayd one to a nother / that Huon was worthy to be
 4 byleued / for out of suche a prynce's mouthe³ neuer
 Issuyd a ley / there was moche ioy made / the tabels
 were set & they went to dyner / there sat the abbote
 and Huon, and claryet his doughter / of there seruyce
 8 and meetes I wyll make no rehersall, for they were
 rychely seruyd ; after² they had dyned & grace sayd /
 all y^e monkes of the couent came & knelyd downe
 before Huon, and humbly requyred hym of pardone for
 12 dan Johan salmet,⁴ who was to hasty to speke, & all
 was but⁵ throghe nyglynce of yought and yll
 aduysed / when Huon saw all the monkes before hym
 on⁶ theyr kneys desyryng hym to pardon the monke of
 16 his folly. He sayd to⁷ them, ' syrs, I am content to
 fulfyll your desyers / for I am not come hether to
 troble any man' / when the⁸ abbote⁹ harde Huon¹⁰
 pardon his monke, he thanked hym, and sayd / 'syr,
 20 by saynte bennet, yf ye had not pardonyd hym, he
 shuld not haue come out of presone this yere' / then
 the monkes went to the pryson, and they shewyd⁷ the
 monke that was in prysone what meruaylles was done
 24 in his absence / and how theyr abbote, who was a
 .C. and .xiiii. yere of age, was¹¹ become of the age of
 .xxx. yeres / 'syrs,' quod he, 'I am glad' of my
 delyuerance, but I can¹² not byleue it be so as ye say,
 28 nor I wyll not byleue it tyll¹³ I se it' / then he went in
 to the hall whereas the abbote and Huon was¹⁴ togyther /
 and when he sawe the abbote yonge agayne / then he
 knelyd downe and cryed Huon mercy / and requyrd
 32 hym of pardon / y^e whiche Huon granted. Then there

They dine, and
are well feasted.

After dinner, the
monks of the
convent humbly
ask Huon to
pardon John
Salmet.

Huon grants their
request;

the abbot thanks
him.

They show the
monk what
marvels have
taken place in his
absence.

He will not
believe them until
he sees them,

but when he saw
the abbot young
again, he cries
Huon mercy, and
asks his pardon,

¹ there. ² that. ³ (quoth they).

⁴ Saliuet. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ had well. ¹⁰ his Nephew. ¹¹ now.

¹² Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ were.

which Huon grants.

Huon is to send for 20,000 men of war, to fight the Emperor.

Huon desires to lead the Emperor by peaceful means to yield him his lands and seignories,

and Huon would even become his liege man.

That night would Huon study the matter.

was great ioy / then the abbote sayd / ‘nephew, send for men of warre on all sydes / & I shall pay theyr wages to the nombre of .xx.M. men / for I haue golde & seluer inought / and let vs send for all our frendes, 4 and we shall be a great nombre of men able to fyght with y^e Emperoure, who hath wrongfully,¹ without cause, dysheryte you, & kepyth your wyfe in prysone, wherof my hart is so sorowfull that I can no lenger endure it’ / 8 ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘yf I may fynde any other way to come to passe with the Emperoure / then by spere and sheylde and no man slayne / then² I wold thynke³ I had well spede / for yf I myght do so moch with the 12 Emperoure that he wolde render to⁴ me my londes and synnyres, & my wyf & men / and that therby I myght become his lege man / I⁵ thyng I had made then⁶ an honorable ende / for I haue done him great 16 damage’ / ‘fayr nephew,’ quod the abbote, ‘I wolde fayne knowe by what maner ye coude bringe this mater aboute’ / ‘vnkle,’ quod Huon, ‘this nyght I wyl study on⁷ y^e mater, y^e which I trust to⁸ our lord 20 god⁹ to bryng to a good¹⁰ end.’

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux departed fro
Cluny & went to y^e noble cytye of Maience
upon a fryday, & how he came nere to⁴ the 24
Emperoures oratory. Ca. C.xl.viii.

Huon wrote a letter summoning his men lying at Tournous to come to the abbey of Cluny.



¹¹ fter that Huon and the¹² abbot had deuyed togyther of dyuers thynges / Huon wrote a letter to⁴ his men 28 beyng at tornus, that they shulde come to⁴ hym to the abey of Cluny; he sent a gentylman of the abey to

¹ and. ² then after thinke. ³ that. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ would then. ⁶ then before thinke. ⁷ vppon.

⁸ in. ⁹ Iesu chrys. ¹⁰ and prosperous.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² good.

feche them / ¹when he was come to tornus and had
 delyueryd his letters to² Barnarde / they made them
 redy, and trussyd theyr summers and departed³ thence /
 4 and they rode so longe that they came in at the gates
 of the abey of Cluny / y^e same tyme Huon and the
 abbot were lenyng out at a wyndowe / the abbot sawe
 .xv. summers chargyd, & .vii. mules and mulettes /
 8 wherof he had great merueyll of whence they were,
 and sayd to Huon, ‘fayre nephew, can ye tell to²
 whom parteneth⁴ thes summers, or what be they *that*
 bryngeth them?’ / ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘know for
 12 trouthe⁵ I haue conqueryd them and they ar myn,
 and yonder is Barnarde that doth conducte them / who
 hath had moche payne and trouble or⁶ he coude fynde
 me’ / ‘fayre nephew,’ quod y^e abbot, ‘great ioy I haue
 16 at my harte that he hathe soughe you so longe to fynde
 you at⁷ last / nor I coude not haue sent a more noble
 man / ye ougth greatly to loue hym / and also he
 is our kynsman / and alwayes he hath bene to² you
 20 good⁸ and trewe⁹ / ‘syr,’ quod Huon,⁸ ‘in hym
 I haue founde all that ye say / and, syr, the great
 summer that ye se yonder with the .ii. great coffers
 well bandyd / they be full of presyous stones and
 24 iowelles, more worthe then .iiii. good cytyes; I wyll
 leue them here with you to kepe for the maryage of my
 doughter,’ and with those wordes he kyest her / ‘dere
 nephewe,’ quod the¹⁰ abbot / ‘and besyde that ye wyll
 28 gyue her I shall departe with her large¹¹ly of my
 treasure’ / therwith¹² ther came¹² Barnarde and all
 the other of his company / ¹when ye abbot perseyuyd
 Barnard he came to² hym¹³ with his armes abrode and
 32 cleppyd and kyssed hym / and made² hym great feest

Led by Barnard,
they reach the
abbey, with all
the sumpter-
horses.

The abbot sees
them from a
window, and
marvels to whom
they can belong.

Huon has
conquered them;
they are his, and
Barnard is
conducting them.

The biggest
sumpter-horse
bears two coffers
full of precious
stones and jewels.

Huon leaves them
in the abbot's
keeping for his
daughter's dowry.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ from. ⁴ appertaine.

⁵ that. ⁶ before. ⁷ the. ⁸⁻⁹ omitted.

⁹ and faithfull. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2.

¹² ¹² after Barnarde. ¹³ right ioyfully.

The abbot made a great feast in Barnard's honour.

The sumptuous horses are discharged, and all the coffers opened.

The abbot thinks Huon has riches enough to buy the whole realm of France.

Huon gives Clarinet a rich necklace of gold and precious stones.

She humbly thanks her father.

Huon apparels himself as a prince of high degree, and was fair to look upon.

On the ninth day Huon secretly departs, accompanied by Barnard.

Only the abbot knows of their going.

and chere¹ to hym¹ and to all his company / then duke Huon and y^e² abbot³ and⁴ Claryte his doughter went in to theyr chambre and dyscharged the summers and openyd euery coffer / when the abbot had sene the 4 ryches that was in them / he was neuer so abasshed, and sayd / ‘A, Huon, fayr nephew, I thynke ye haue broughe hether ryches to bye therwith the hole realme of france /, then⁵ Huon toke a color of golde full of 8 precyous stones, that the clerenes of them illumyned all the howse / ⁶Huon dyd put the coler abought his doughters neke, & kyst her¹ in the¹ mouth, & sayd / ‘my dere⁷ doughter, I gyue you this ryche¹ coler, 12 I neuer gaue you any thyng before / it is so rych that the stones therin ar worth a realme or a duchy’ / when the lady sawe the rych coler, she was⁸ ioyfull, and knelyd downe before her father and thanked hym 16 humbly⁹ / then Huon shewed all his treasure to¹⁰ his² vnkle the abbot / ⁶when all had bene sene and aweuyd, y^e abbot dyd put them in to coffers / then Huon aparalysd hymselfe with a¹ rych aparyll / then⁶ he 20 semiyd¹¹ to be a prynce of hye degré, he was so fayre to behold that all such as sawe hym had¹² pleasur to behold hym / there he made good chere¹³ the space of .viii. dayes / & on¹⁴ the .ix. daye in the mornyng 24 he departed thence pruely, and toke Barnard with hym, without¹⁵ knowlage of any parson except the abbot, to¹⁰ whom he sayd / ‘¹⁶vnkle, I and Barnarde wyll departe, and I requyre you¹⁷ lat no man lyuyng 28 know of my departyng as long as ye can kepe¹⁸ it secrete tyll¹⁹ ye here fro me sum newes²⁰ / ‘syr, it shall be done,’ quod the abbot / ‘and I commend you

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² good. ³ his vnkle. ⁴ the faire Ladie.

⁵ Duke. ⁶ and. ⁷ and louing. ⁸ right.

⁹ humbly before thanked. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ then.

¹² great. ¹³ and feasting for. ¹⁴ vppon. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶ Faire. ¹⁷ to. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxxvii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vntill.

²⁰ tidings.

to the sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst¹ / then Huon
 and Barnarde departed or² any man were resyn / and
 they toke theyr waye³ to³ Maience & restyd not tyll⁴
 4 they came to Coloyne, & the nexte mornynge they
 rode tyll⁴ they came within a lege of⁵ Maience / ⁶then
 they enteryd in to a wode, & there they lyghted / then
 Huon aparaled hymselfe lyke a pylgrym in habyte,
 8 hose & shoes / and he toke an herbe and rubbed ther-
 with his vysage, so⁷ that he semyde that he had bene
 in the sonne .x. yere, so that he was vnknowyn,⁶ so
 that⁶ Barnard that was with hym coude not knowe
 12 hym by the face / ⁶then Barnarde lawghyde / then he
 toke hys stafe and skryp, and sayd to⁸ Barnarde, ‘syr,
 go ye⁹ your waye before in to the cete with our
 horses, and take none aquentance of me thoughe ye se
 16 me, and take vp sum smal loggyng’ / so Barnarde
 wente / on before / and Huon fayre & easly went
 after,¹⁰ and so enteryd in to the cytye ; And he had
 with hym the .xxx. ryche stones in his bosume / when
 20 he was enterid in to the cytye, he restyd not tyll⁴ he
 came to the palyes / and as he went vp the stayres,
 he mette the stewarde of the Emperou[r]s howse, to⁸
 whom he sayd / ‘syr, I praye you in y^e honoure of our
 24 lorde Iesu chryst, ⁹and of the blessed vyrgyn mary
 his mother,⁹ to gyue me sum meet, for I am soo hungry
 that I can skant¹¹ go on¹² my leges, nor I haue no
 mony to bye me a morsell of brede’ / when the
 28 steward¹³ hard¹⁴ the pylgryme, he behelde hym well
 and saw how he stafe shakyd in his hande / the which
 he thought had bene for¹⁵ feblenes and pouerte / and
 had of hym great pyte,¹⁶ and demaunded¹⁷ fro whens

¹ and I beseech him humbly that you may haue peace with
 the Emperour Tirrey.

² before. ³⁻³ towards the Citie of. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ the Citie of. ⁶ and. ⁷ in such sort. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ him. ¹¹ scarce. ¹² vpon.

¹³ had well. ¹⁴ and vnderstood. ¹⁵ with.

¹⁶ and compassion. ¹⁷ of him.

Huon and
 Barnard take
 their way to
 Mayence,
 and rest not till
 they come to
 Cologne.

When within
 a league of
 Mayence, Huon
 disguiseth himself
 as a pilgrim,
 and stains his
 face brown.

Barnard hardly
 knew him.

Barnard is to go
 and lodge in the
 city, but to take
 no notice of
 Huon.

Huon, with thirty
 precious stones in
 his bosom, comes
 to the Emperor's
 palace.

He meets there
 the steward,

and asks him for
 food.

The steward bids
Huon tarry until
he has carried
some food to the
duchess Esclar-
monde and the
other prisoners.

They are to be
killed five days
hence.

Huon sorely
weeps at this bad
news,

and returns into
the town, where
he is well lodged
by a notable
burgess.

To-morrow is
Good Friday,
and Huon asks
his host if the
Emperor does not
give alms on that
day.

he came / ‘syr,’ ¹ quod Huon, ‘I come streght fro the holy sepulture, and I haue enduryd moch pouerte’ ² / ‘frende,’ quod the stewarde, ‘I pray you ³ tary ⁴ me here a lytell seasone / tyll ⁵ I haue bene in y^e presone ⁶ to bere ⁶ meet to ⁷ y^e duches Esclarmond and to ⁸ other prisoners, who cryeth out ⁹ for fayme ⁹ that they ben in / for yf they be longe in this cayse *that they be in*, ¹⁰ they can not long ¹¹ endure ¹² / for the Emperoure hath 8 takynge suche an inwarde hate to ¹³ her and to ¹³ them that be ¹⁴ in presone with her / that he hathe made promyse that as soone as Ester be ¹⁵ past, the lady shall be brente ¹⁶ and the other ¹⁷ al hangyd / and 12 this day is sher ¹⁸ thursdaye, so ¹⁹ they haue to lyue but .v. dayes / and I am ryght sory for y^e noble lady that our Emperoure wyll put her to dethe without ²⁰ cause’ / when Huon ²¹ hard that / he had no membre ²² but that 16 trymbelyd, and he cast downe his vysage and began sore ²³ to wepe, & sufferyd the stewarde to passe and spake no worde ²⁴ / but retorneid in to the towne and went & logyd in y^e towne ryght heuy and sorowfull ; 20 how be it he was ryght ioyfull / ²⁵ that his wyfe was alyue, for he ²⁶ feryd ¹⁹ she had bene dede ; he logyd in a notable burgesse howse, who receyued hym well for the loue of god, but what so euer he had there he coude 24 nother eete nor drynke for sorowe ²⁷ that he had at his hart / then he sayd to ⁷ his host, ‘syr, to morowe is good fryday, the which day I thynk the Emperoure wyll gyue great almys’ / ‘frende,’ quod his hoost / 28 ‘ye may suerly byleue that the Emperoure wyl gyue as to morowe great almes, he wyll gyue of his goodes so

¹ Fol. cxxxvii. col. 2. ² and miserie. ³ to. ⁴ for.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ carie. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ the.

⁹⁻¹⁰ through famine and rage. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ omitted.

¹² it. ¹³ against. ¹⁴ are. ¹⁵ is. ¹⁶ burnt.

¹⁷ Prisoners. ¹⁸ Shroue. ¹⁹ that. ²⁰ a iust.

²¹ had well. ²² noi oynt. ²³ pitifully. ²⁴ vnto him.

²⁵ in. ²⁶ greatly. ²⁷ and greefe.

largely to¹ al poure men that² commeth to² hym that
 day³ shall be⁴ satysfyed / ye shall not fynde a prynce
 of⁵ greater almes / & of one thyng I aduertysse you /

4 the Emperoure hath⁶ one eoustume, that the fyrst
 pouer pylgryme that comethe to¹ hym to morowe shall
 be happy / for there is no thynge in y^e world, be
 yt never so dere,⁷ yf he demaund it of the emperoure
 8 it shall not be denied hym: it must be at the same
 owre that the emperour goeth to¹ his chapel to say his
 orysons⁸ / when Huon⁸ vnderstode his hoste / he began
 to reiocese, and thought in⁹ hymselfe¹⁰ yf he coude
 12 in any wyse he wolde be the fyrst that shulde demaund
 almes¹¹, but that shulde be nother golde nor syluer, it
 shulde be his wyfe and his men that he hathe in
 pryson; and also yf he may he wyll axe therwith
 16 his londe¹² / Then the hoste went to his reste / &
 Huon abode in his chambre alone and slepte not of al
 the nyght, but thought how he myght delyuer his
 wyfe / and the prisoners that be¹³ with her; and all
 20 nyghte he was in¹⁴ his prayers¹⁵ desyrryne¹⁶ god to
 cunsayle and ayde hym to recouer his wyfe.¹⁷ Erly
 in the mornynge he rose and made hym redy, and
 toke his scrippe and stafe and wente strayte to the
 24 palays, and sat on¹⁸ y^e greses wheras the emperour
 shuld pas / at whiche tyme the emperour was¹⁹ rySEN
 vp / ²⁰there were many other pylgrymes that were there
 abydyng for y^e emperours comynge, and euery man
 28 couetyd to haue the fyrste gyfte / but Huon dyd so
 moch by his subtylte that he was the fyrste that
 enteryd into the chapell, and none other parseyuyd
 hym / and he dyd hyde hymselfe²¹ in a corner nere to¹

The Emperor will
 give largely,

and to the first
 pilgrim that
 cometh to him
 he will deny
 nothing that he
 demands.

Huon determines
 to be the first,
 and demand his
 wife and the
 prisoners.

Huon passed a
 sleepless night
 considering how
 he might best
 deliver his wife.

In the morning
 he goes straight
 to the Emperor's
 palace,

and finds there
 many other
 pilgrims who
 coveted the first
 gift.

Huon, by his
 subtlety, entered
 the chapel first,

¹ vnto. ²⁻² if they come vnto. ³ they. ⁴ all.
⁵⁻⁶ that doth giue. ⁶ Fol. cxxxvii, back, col. 1. ⁷ but.
⁸ had well. ⁹ within. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ of the Emperour.
¹² and Signiores. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ at. ¹⁵ humbly.
¹⁶ our Lord. ¹⁷ Escleremond. ¹⁸ upon. ¹⁹ newe.
²⁰ and. ²¹ closely.

and in a corner
awaits the
Emperor's
coming.

the emperours oratory, and there he sate styll without any worde spekyng, abydynge¹ the comynge of the emperour.

²¶ How Huon dyd so moche with the em- 4
perour Therry, that he had peas³ / & his
wyfe renderyd to⁴ hym and all his londys⁵ /
and howe the emperour brought hym to⁴ 8
the Abbey of Cluny, where as they found
the good abbotte in harnays,⁶ not know-
ynge⁷ of the peas that was made.

Ca. C.xlii.

The Emperor
came into the
chapel,
and made his
prayers before the
altar.



When he was ready to go into the oratory, Huon drew out a rich stone of such virtue, that its owner could not be overcome by his enemy, or drowned, or burnt.

The stone cast such a brightness in the chapel that

ow shewethe the story⁸ that anone 12
after that Huon was enteryd into the
chapell / the emperoure came in and
knelyd downe before the auuter and
made his prayers ;⁹ many pouer men 16
were there abydynge y^e ende of his

prayers, and no man sawe Huon wheras he was hedyng¹⁰
in a corner harde by the emperours oratory / when y^e
emperour had made his prayers, he rose and tornyd him 20
to have gone into his oratory / and Huon who had great
desyre to be the fyrst &¹¹ to haue the fyrst gytfe of the
emperoure ; he drewe out of his bage a rych stone / y^e
whiche was of suche vertue that who so euer dyd bere 24
it hym coude not be ouer come with his enemye, nor
coud not be drownyd nor brent¹² ; the stone¹³ was so
vertuous¹³ that none coud esteme the valure therof. And
besyde that, it cast such a¹⁴ clerenes in the chapell that 28
the emperoure was abashid therof,¹⁵ nor he knew not

¹ there for. ² Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 2. ³ with him.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ and Signories. ⁶ armour. ⁷ any thing.

⁸ Historie. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ closely. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 1.

¹² burnt. ¹³⁻¹⁵ had such great virtue. ¹⁴ omitted.

¹⁵ therat.

fro whence that lyght shulde come / then he behelde
 Huon and Huon helde¹ the stone in his hande, and
 shewyd it to² the emperor / and when the emperoure
 4 saw the riche stone he greatly³ dyd couet³ it / and
 auauansyd hymselfe and toke it⁴ of the pylgrymes
 hande / who presentyd it to² hym / when the emperoure
 had the stone in his hand, he had great ioy at his hart,
 8 for he was cunnyng in the discryuynge of stones, and
 sware to hymselfe that the pylgryme shulde neuer haue
 it agayne for any thynge that he coude do / but he
 thought⁵ if he wold sell it, he wolde gyue hym as
 12 moche golde & syluer as he coud resonably demaunde /
 or elles be thought to kepe it styll what so euer fell
 therof / ⁶then the emperoure sayd to² Huon, 'pyl-
 gryme, I pray the⁷ shewe² me where⁸ hast thou get⁸
 16 this ryche⁹ stone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue brought
 it fro beyonde y^e see' / 'frend,' quod the emperour,
 'wylt thou sel it, and I shall gyue the for it what so euer
 thou wylt haue; and to be in¹⁰ suertye to bere awaye
 20 my gyfte that I wyl gyue thee for it, I shall cause the
 to be conductyd into thyne owne countre wheresoeuer
 it be' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyl gyue it² you with a
 good hart: so it be trew that myne host hath shewed²
 24 me this daye / for he hathe shewed² me that your
 costume is that y^e fyrist parsonne pylgryme that comethe
 to² ¹¹you on¹² this day,¹³ good friday, should haue of
 you a gyfte such as he wolde demaund after that ye haue
 28 made your praiers to our lorde god' / 'pylgryme,' quod
 the emperoure, 'he that shewed the that said¹⁴ trouth¹⁴
 and therefore what so euer thou demaundest other
 borougue towne or citye, or what thynge so euer it
 32 be / I promyse to gyue the who so euer be dyspleasyd

the Emperor
knew not whence
the light came.

Huon showed the
Emperor the
stone,

and the Emperor,
who was cunning
in precious
stones, desires to
buy it of the
pilgrim for gold
and silver,

or even to keep it
happen what
might;

he asks Huon
how he came
by it.

Huon will give
the stone to the
Emperor if,
according to his
custom, he will
grant the first
pilgrim any
request he may
prefer.

This the Emperor
agrees to do.

¹ did holde. ² vnto. ³⁻³ desired to haue. ⁴ out.

⁶ within himselfe that. ⁶ and. ⁷ to.

⁸⁻⁸ thou hast gotten. ⁹ and bountifull. ¹⁰ the more.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2. ¹² vppon.

¹³⁻¹⁴ that which is true.

therwith I graunt it¹ the / therfore demaund what²
 thou wylt' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your grace and
 fayre gyfte I³ thanke you / therfore, syr, with a good
 hart, I do⁴ gyue you that stone that I delyuerid to⁵ 4
 you⁶ right⁶ now in the recompence of the courtoysy and
 gyfte that ye haue grauntid⁵ me, the whiche shall be
 nother golde nor syluer, and, syr, bycause I know sar-
 taynl that the renome is ouer al the world that ye be⁷ 8
 a iust and a trewe noble man, and that⁸ ye promyse ye
 wyll vpholde and⁹ neuer swarue fro your promys / and
 by cause¹⁰ I knowe suerly that the promys that ye haue
 made⁵ me, ye wyll vpholde of what so euer gyfte I 12
 desyre to have' / 'frende,' quod the emperor, 'I wyll¹⁰
 you¹¹ know that yf ye demaund .iiii. of my best cityes,
 I shall gyue you them syn¹² I haue made¹⁰ promys, and¹³
 god be pleasyd I shal not go fro¹⁴ my promyse / for I 16
 had rather¹⁰ one of my handys were cut of then I shulde
 be found false of my wordys / & therfore demaunde
 and suerly ye shall haue your demaund withe out any
 refuse.'¹⁵ 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I¹⁶ thanke you' / and 20
 wolde haue kyssyd his feete / but the emperor wolde not
 suffer hym, but toke hym vp / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'fyrste,
 before all other thynge, I desyre of you pardon / of all
 the yll dedis and trespasses that I or my men haue 24
 done agaynst you ; and yf ye haue in your preson other
 men or women partaynyng to⁵ me or of¹⁷ my lynage
 that ye wyll delyuer them all to⁵ me ; and also yf ye
 haue any thynge of myne other towne¹⁸ / borowe / or 28
 castell / I requyre you by y^e promyse that ye haue
 made⁵ me to render them to⁵ me quyte / syr, any
 other thynge I demaunde not.' / 'pulgrym,' quod the
 emperor, 'make no dought to haue that⁸ I haue 32

Huon then
 demands pardon
 for the trespasses
 and ill deeds that
 he or his men
 have done against
 the Emperor;
 and that all men
 and women
 belonging to him
 shall be delivered
 to him;
 that all his towns,
 boroughs, and
 castles shall be
 rendered him.

Huon wants
 neither gold nor
 silver.

Whatever it be,
 the Emperor will
 hold by his
 promise.

¹ to. ² so euer. ³ most hartely. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ but euen. ⁷ are. ⁸ which.

⁹ kepe and. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ well. ¹² seeing. ¹³ if.

¹⁴ for in text. ¹⁵ deniall. ¹⁶ hartely.

¹⁷ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁸ or Citie.

promysyd¹ / therfore I graunt al your desyre / but I
 requyre you humbly² shew³ me what man ye be, & of
 what countre, and of what lynage, syn⁴ ye haue desyred
 4 of me suche a gyste' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am he that
 sumtyme was duke of Burdeaux, whome ye haue so
 moche hated, I come nowe fro beyonde the se, wheras
 I haue endurid moche Payne and pouerte. I thanke
 8 our lorde Iesu Chryst that I haue done so moch that I
 am nowe agreyd with you, and I shall haue agayne the
 duches Esclaramonde, my⁵ wyfe and my men and⁶
 landes⁷ yf ye wyll⁸ sholde⁹ your promyse' / when the
 12 Emperoure⁹ vnderstode Huon / all his blode began to
 change and¹⁰ was a great space or¹¹ he spake any worde,
 he was so¹² abasshed,¹³ at¹⁴ laste he sayde, 'A, Huon,
 ar you he by whome I haue sufferyd so many yllys and
 16 domages, and haue slayne so many of my nephues and
 other of my men / I wolde not haue thought that ye
 wolde haue ben so hardy to haue shewed your selfe
 before me, nor to haue com into my presence, ye haue
 20 well ouercome me and enchaunted me ; I had rather
 haue lost .iii. of my best cityes, ye and all my countre
 brent¹⁵ and destroyed / ye¹⁶ and my selfe banysshed out
 of myn owne countre for .iii. yere rather than ye shuld
 24 haue thus come to my presence / but syn⁴ it is thus
 knowe for trouthe that¹⁷ I haue promysyd³ you I shall
 vpholde¹⁸ / and fro hence forthe in the honoure of the
 passyon of ¹⁹our lorde Iesu Chryst, and of this good
 28 daye on the whiche he was crucyfyed & put to dethe.

I pardon you all myne yll wyll and good wyll, I shall
 not be pariurid, your wyfe and your londis,⁷ & your
 men ; I shall render them into your handes / speke

The Emperor
then asks what
man this pilgrim
is.

The pilgrim is
none other than
the Duke of
Bordeaux,

who thanks our
Lord that he will
have again his
wife, and his men,
and his lands.

The Emperor is
abashed, and

wonders at
Huon's boldness
in thus coming
into his presence.

The Emperor
must, however,
abide by his
word,

and will render
Huon those who
belong to him.

¹ vnto you. ² to. ³ vnto. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ louing.
⁶ my. ⁷ and Signories.

⁸⁻⁹ be as good as your word and vphold.

⁹ had well heard and. ¹⁰ hee. ¹¹ before. ¹² sore.
¹³ but. ¹⁴ the. ¹⁵ burnt. ¹⁶ omitted. ¹⁷ which.
¹⁸ and keepe. ¹⁹ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 2.

Huon thanks him, and desires to be forgiven.

The Emperor kissed Huon in token of peace.

The Emperor shall have a double reward.

He asks of Huon his adventures.

Huon will relate them after the divine service has been read.

The Emperor led Huon with him into the oratory,

and all the lords marvel who the 'pilgrim can be to whom the Emperor does so much honour.'

The Emperor and Huon dine together,

and afterwards Huon relates his adventures:

how he had spoken with Judas;

therof who lyste / otherwyse shall it not be, nor I wyl neuer do the contrary' / then Huon knelyd downe before the emperour and¹ thanked hym, and desyred hym to forgeue hym all his trespasses / 'Huon,' quod 4 the emperoure, 'god forgeue you,² and as for me, with a good harte, I do pardon you' / then the emperoure toke Huon by the hande and toke hym vp and kyste hym³ on the mouth³ in token of good peas and amytte / 'syr,' 8 quod Houn, 'great grace haue I found in you synne⁴ ye kepe⁵ your promyse / but, syr, if it maye please our lorde god / your guerdon shall be double' / 'Huon,' quod y^e emperour, 'I requyre you⁶ shewe me of your 12 newes and aduentures that ye haue had'⁷ / 'syr,' quod Huon with a good wyll, 'after that your deuyne seruyce be⁸ done, and the passyon of our lorde Iesu Chryste red' / 'Huon,' quod the emperour, 'I⁹ can 16 you thanke⁹ for that you saye' / then the emperour / toke Huon by the hand and led hym into his oratory with him / wheras they harde the deuyne seruyce wherof many lordes and knyghtes¹⁰ were sore abashed, 20 and hadde¹¹ maruayle what pylgreme it was that y^e emperoure dyd so moche honoure vnto. After that the deuine seruyce was done, the emperour retourned into his paleis holdynge Huon by the hande / the dynner 24 was made redy,¹² they wasshed theyr handes and sate downe to dynner / and when dynner was done and the tables taken up, then in the emperours presence and in¹³ all the¹⁴ lordes there, Huon shewed all his 28 aduentures.

¶ Fyrste he shewed howe he had passed the Goulfie and spoken with Iudas / and after¹⁶ howe by fortune

¹ right humbly. ² thee. ³⁻³ verie kindly.

⁴ seeing. ⁵ and vpholde. ⁶ to.

⁷ since you departed from the Citie of Bordeaux. ⁸ is.
⁹⁻⁹ giue you good thanks. ¹⁰ and Lordes. ¹¹ great.

¹² and. ¹³ of. ¹⁴ other. ¹⁵ Fol. cxxxix. col. 1.

¹⁶ afterward.

of the se he aryued at the castell of the Adamante,
and howe his company dyed there for¹ famyne : and
shewed² of the beaute of that³ castell and of the great
4 ryches therin / and after⁴ how he was borne⁵ thence
by a gryffon to a great rocke, and howe he slewe .v.
yonge Gryffons and the olde Gryffon *that* brought hym
thether, wheroft he hathe left at Cluny the fote of the
8 same / then he shewed of the fountayne and of the
tree of youth, and how he gathered therof three fayre
apples, and more he wolde naue gathered but that our
lord god commaunded hym by his aungel *that* he shuld
12 not be so hardy⁶ to gather any more, and after that he
shewed how⁷ he had passed the Goulfe of perse in
great parell⁸ / and sayd, furthermore, ‘syr, when I was
passed that Goulfe I gathered many precious stones ;
16 that⁹ I haue geuen you was one of them, the whiche
stone is of great vertue / ¹⁰then I came to the great
city of Thauris in Perse, whereas I founde a noble
admyrall, an olde auncyent knyght ; and he shewed¹¹
20 me great courtoyses, and I gaue him one of myne apples
to ete ; and as sone as he had eten therof he became¹²
as yong as he was when he was but of .xxx. yere of age /
and I thynke⁷ fro thens hether can not be founde a
24 fayrer pryncie ; and he was before of a¹³ .vi. score and
.vii. yeres of age / and, syr, because I desyre withe all
my harte to haue youre good grace, and that good peas
and ferme maye be had betwene you and me, I wyll
28 gyue you the thyrde apple y^e which ¹⁴I kepte for my
selfe, by the whiche yf ye do ete it ye shall become
agayn as yong and as lusty¹⁵ as ye were when ye were¹⁶
of the age of .xxx. yerys.’ The emperoure when he
harde that the apple that Huon wolde geue hym to ete

how he had
visited the rich
and beautiful
castle of
Adamant;

how he had slain
the griffins,

and brought to
Cluny the foot
of the old griffin ;

how he gathered
three apples of
the tree of youth ;

how he passed
the Persian Gulf,
and gathered
there many
precious stones ;

how the admiral
of Persia became
young again by
eating of one of
the apples.

Huon will give
the third apple
to the Emperor.

¹ by. ² declared. ³ the. ⁴ afterward.

⁵ caried from. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ and daunger.

⁹ which. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ to. ¹² to be. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxix. col. 2. ¹⁵ and as stronge.

¹⁶ but.

The Emperor is
joyful at the
thought he will
be young once
more,

and offers Huon
two good cities
and 60,000 men to
aid him in war.

The Emperor
eats the apple,

and becomes at
once as ruddy and
strong as a man
of thirty years.

All present
marvel greatly,

and tell the
Emperor he
should praise God,
that he ever was
acquainted with
duke Huon.

shulde cause hym to retourne to his yonge age agayne /
he was so ioyful that he neuer made suche chere before
in all his lyfe to any man as he dyd then to¹ Huon /
and sayde howe² he wolde be his frend for euer, and 4
neuer fayle hym, and sayd, ‘frend, I abandon my body
and my³ goodes at your pleasure / and I geue you two
good cityes to encrese your sygnorye / and besyde that
I promyse you if ye haue any busynes to do, I shall 8
socoure you with .lx.⁴ thousands men, and shall ayde
you as y^e father shulde do the sone. Therwith Huon
wolde haue kneled downe to haue thanked the emperour,
but he wolde not suffer hym : ⁵then Huon toke the apple 12
out of his bage and delyuered it to¹ the emperoure, the
emperoure who was sore desyrous to knowe yf he shuld
waxe yorg agayne by reason of etinge of the apple ; he
callyd to¹ hym his lordes⁶ to the entent² they shulde 16
se that maruayle / ⁵when the emperour had the apple
in his hand he put it⁷ to his mouthe and dyd eat it
euery dele,⁸ and as he was etynge therof his age
chaunged in to youthe, and by that tyme he had eten 20
all the apple / his whyght berde fell of and the skynne
chaungyd lyke a man of .xxx. yeres of age / and also
his face and all his body that before was all ryuyled⁹
and rugged and pale, became then as whyght and¹⁰ 24
ruddy, and felte hymselfe as lyght and fresshe & as
quycke to do any thynge, and as stronge as he was
when he was of the age of .xxx. yeres / wherof all that
were¹¹ present had¹² great maruayle and were¹³ ioyful of 28
that aduenture that was fallen to¹ the emperoure whom
they louyd / then they sayd, ‘a,³ syr, suche a gyfte was
neuer geuen to any emperoure or kynge / well ye ought
to praise our lord god, what so euer losse y[e]¹⁴ haue 32
had / that euer ye were aquaynted with duke Huon.’

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ fortie. ⁵ and.
⁶ and Barons. ⁷ in. ⁸ whit. ⁹ wrinkled. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ there.
¹² Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹³ right. ¹⁴ yt in text.

¶ How the emperour made good cher to¹
²Huon of Burdeaux. Ca. C.xl[=cl.]



Hen the emperour saw hymselfe waxe
 yonge agayne, he was so ioyfull that he
 wiste not what to do; then he clyppyd
 and kyssed huon more then .x. tymes,
 sayenge, 'my ryghte dere frende, I

In great joy,
 the Emperor
 embraces Huon,

8 praye you³ forgeue me all the ylles⁴ that I haue done¹
 you, and for the sorowe and payne⁵ that I haue caused
 your noble wyfe and men to suffer' / then the emperoure
 called to¹ hym two of his lordes, and sayd / 'syrs, I

and asks him to
 forgive the ills
 he has done him.

12 wyll that all the pouer people that be in my chapell
 this day be newly aparayled, and to haue mete and
 drynke suffycyent, for the loue of the passyon of our
 lorde Iesu chryst, who this day hath done me that grace

All the poor are
 to be clothed and
 fed by the
 Emperor's
 bounty.

16 that I am retourned fro age to youthe.' 'syr,' quod they,
 'your commaundemente shall be done' / ⁶they went
 & executed his pleasure. Then Duke Huon aprochyd
 to¹ the emperoure, and sayd, 'syr, I desyre humbly

Two lords
 execute the
 command.

20 your grace to delyuer my wyfe⁷ and my men out of
 preson.' 'syr,' quod the emperoure, 'it is good reason
 that I do it' / then he sente for the gayler who had the
 lady and the other prisoners in his kepynge, and com-

Huon humbly
 desires that his
 wife and men be
 delivered out of
 prison.

24 maunded hym that the lady Esclaramond & the other
 prisoners shuld be brought into the hall / the gayler
 went to the preson, & Huon with hym / ⁹when they
 came thether / Huon wente to the dore & cryed out

Huon goes with
 the gaoler to the
 prison door,

28 aloule, and sayd, 'A, my ryght swete syster, I byleue
 ye¹⁰ haue bene here¹¹ but yl loged; I haue great fere that
 by reason of y^e paynes that ye haue endurid ye can not
 long contynue / sartaynely yf ye dye I shal never haue

and cries aloud
 his fear that the
 lady cannot
 endure her
 sufferings much
 longer.

¹ vnto. ² Duke. ³ to. ⁴ and dammages.

⁵ paine before sorowe. ⁶ then. ⁷ Escleremond.

⁸ Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ here after lodged.

ioy.¹ when the lady² Esclaramond³ hard the voice of hym that spake at the dore / she stode styl and studyed what voyce it myght be : for she thought⁴ she had hard that voyce before⁵ / & when she had mused a 4 lytell,⁶ she thought it shulde be the voyce of Huon her husbond : wheroft she had suche ioy & myrth at her hart, that of a great season she coude not speke, but fell in a swoune in the preson : & when she reuyued & 8 came agayne to herselfe, she cryed out & said, ‘a, my⁷ dere lorde and husband, long haue you lefte me in payne & mysery all a lone in this stynkyng & horrible preson, in the handes of them that loue you nothyng / 12 and haue sufferyd moche payne, colde, and hunger ; and⁸ great pouerte and in great fere of dethe.⁹

¶ when Huon¹⁰ harde¹¹ his dere wyfe¹² speke¹² so pe-
tuously / sorow¹³ so closid his hart that he had no power 16
to speke one word, and the teres fell¹⁴ in his eyen¹⁵
for¹⁶ petye that he had of his¹⁷ wyfe¹⁸ / also y^e gayler
for very petye¹⁹ was constrainyd to wepe / and so went
downe into y^e preson & brought the lady vp / and 20
then Huon and she beheld eche other, and coude speke
no worde of a great season :²⁰ but ran and embrased and
kyssed eche other / & so fell downe²¹ bothe in a traunce /
and so²² laye tyll²³ other knyghtes came thether²⁴ & 24
ferid²⁴ that they had bene ded ; there was none but that
wepte for petye / then the emperor cam thether hym-
selfe, and sore wepte and repented hym selfe of the ylles
that he had²⁵ caused²⁶ the lady²⁷ to suffer :²⁸ then 28
the²⁹ lordes reuyued them / then they clyppyd & kyssyd

¹ at my heart. ² Duchesse. ³ had well.

⁴ within herselfe that. ⁵ that time. ⁶ while. ⁷ right.

⁸ haue endured. ⁹ and desperation. ¹⁰ had well.

¹¹ and vnderstood. ¹² who spake. ¹³ and greefe.

¹⁴ from. ¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheekees. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ louing. ¹⁸ Escleremond and. ¹⁹ that he had.

²⁰ space. ²¹ to the ground. ²² they. ²³ vntill.

²⁴⁻²⁴ fearing. ²⁵ Fol. clx. (xl.) col. 1. ²⁶ done to.

²⁷ and made her. ²⁸ and. ²⁹ knyghtes and.

The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she fainted for very joy.

When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde.

Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance;

the lords revive them,

together / and Huon sayd / ‘fayre lady, I requyre you¹
 pardon me² that I haue taryed so longe fro you, &
 haue lefte you in suche pouerte / Payne / & parell³ of
 4 deth. I⁴ haue seappyd,⁵ the which I⁶ thanke⁷ god
 of his grace’ / ‘syr,’ quod she, ‘we ought greatly to
 thanke⁸ god, when he hathe sente vs that grace to se
 eche other & to come together⁹ / and that y^e haue
 8 peas with y^e emperour’ / then the gayler went to all y^e
 presons, and toke out al Huons men, and brought them
 to¹⁰ hym, who had great ioye when they saw theyr
 lorde and mayster in sauegarde, and thankyd our lord
 12 god, and humblye saluted Huon, and sayd / ‘a,¹¹ syr,
 blessed be the oure of your comynge, wherby we ar
 delyuerner fro the paynes, trauayles / and pouertes /
 that we haue bene in.’ ‘My ryght dere frendes,’ quod
 16 Huon / ‘thus goeth the worlde; you and I ar bound to
 thanke⁷ god of that he sendeth to¹⁰ vs’ / then the em-
 perour toke Huon by the one hande and Esclaramond
 by the other, and led them into his palays, where as
 20 the tables were sette / and there sate downe to gether
 the emperour and Huon and the duches / and al the
 prisoners at another table / and were all rychly seruyd /
 of theyr metys and seruyces & ioye that they made, I
 24 wyl make therof but small rehersayle. And when
 they had al dyned, the emperour ordayneid ladyes &
 damoyselles to serue the duches Esclaramond, and
 ordayneid chaumbers for y^e duke and for¹¹ her, & for all
 28 the other / they were¹² sarued of all thynges that they
 desyred / and they had newe aparayle accordyng to theyr
 desgres / anone y^e newes¹³ was knownen in the citye of
 the peas¹⁴ betwene Huon and the emperour, & how¹⁵ he
 32 had his wyfe¹⁶ renderyd to¹⁰ hym, & his men delyuerner

and Huon asks
his wife's pardon
for having tarried
so long from her.

The gaoler
releases all
Huon's men,
who rejoice
greatly to see
him.

The Emperor sits
down to table
with Huon and
the duchess;
the prisoners are
at another table,
and all are richly
served.

Chambers are
prepared for them
all,

and the news of
the peace between
the Emperor and
Huon is spread
through the city.

¹ to. ² in. ³ daunger. ⁴ and. ⁵ for.

⁶ humbly. ⁷ our Lord. ⁸ almighty. ⁹ againe.

¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² there. ¹³ and tidinges.

¹⁴ made. ¹⁵ Fol. clx. (xl). col. 2.

¹⁶ the Duchess Esclaramond.

Barnard hastens
to the palace.

The lady knew
him at once.
She owes him
great love that he
has sought her
lord and brought
him hither.

Barnard tells of
Huon's sufferings.

At the end of
eight days, the
Emperor an-
nounces his
intention of
conducting duke
Huon and the
duchess to
Bordeaux to set
them in posses-
sion of their
lands.
Ten thousand
men are to
accompany him.

They depart from
Mayence, and
reach Cluny.

The abbot, having
heard no news of
Huon, had

out of preson / wherof Barnard, as he was in y^e towne
harkenyng for newes, was ryght ioyfull / & wente in
hast to¹ the palays, wheras he found Huon in his
chambre, with his wyfe y^e fayre Eselaramond / ²as sone 4
as he saw the duches, the water fell fro his eyen for ioy ;
then he saluted Huon and the duches / ²y^e lady knew
hym incontynent, and sayde / ‘a, syr Barnard, wel I
ought to loue and to cheryssh you / that ye haue so 8
sought for my lorde and husbonde as ³to bryng³ hym
hether.’ ‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘I haue done no thynge
but that⁴ I was bounde⁵ to do / ⁶great payne &
trauayle⁷ my lorde hath suffered’ / ²then he shewed 12
suche newes as he knewe, wherof many great lordes
and knyghtes had great ioy to here hym for the mer-
uaylles that he shewed⁸ / Thus,⁹ when they had bene
there the space of .viii. dayes, and that theyr men were 16
well refresshed / then¹⁰ the emperor assembelyd¹¹ his
lordes, and sayd / ‘syrs, it is my wyll to lede and con-
ducte duke Huon & the duches to Burdeaux, to set
them in possessyon of theyr londes and sygnoryes. ²I 20
wyl haue .x. M. men to go with me and them, and to
brynge me agayne hether to Magence: acordyng to
his commaundement the men were made redy / & when
the emperor had ordeyned for Huons estate as it 24
aparteyned for hym & his wyfe & his men, & when
euery thynge was redy, they¹¹ mounted on¹² theyr horses,
& the duches had a ryche lytter / then¹³ they departed
fro¹⁴ Magence / & secyd not till they came within .ii. 28
leges of the abbey of Cluny / the good abbot, who knew
nothynge of the agreement bétwene the emperor & Huon,
had gathered together of men of warre a¹⁵ .xx. M., &

¹ vnto. ² and.

³⁻³ that now at last through your tedious trauaile you haue
found him, and brought.

⁴ what. ⁵ in duty. ⁶ I am sory for the. ⁷ that.

⁸ discoursed vnto them. ⁹ Then. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ all. ¹² vpon. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ the Citie of. ¹⁵ about.

they were logyd in ¹the toune of Cluny ; and the abbot was aduertysed of the emperours comynge into those partyes, and he hard no newes of Huon, wherof he ⁴ was² sorowfull³ / & thought that the emperoure had taken Huon prisoner : then he issued out of the towne, and renged his men in good order of batayle without the town in a fayre playne, there abydynge for y^e emperoure, whome he sawe comynge.

gathered 20,000
men of war, who
are lodged in the
town of Cluny.

When he saw the
Emperor coming,
the abbot ranged
his men in order
of battle, and
awaited the
Emperor.

[¶] How the emperour aryuyde at Cluny, and how the abbot set on⁴ hym / and of y^e pease that was ther made, and how the ¹² emperour conueyed Huon to Burdeaux, & renderyd to hym al his londys, and of the partinge of⁵ the emperour, and how Huon made his prouysion to go to kyng oberon.

16 Ca. cli.

Hen the emperour saw the town of Cluny, he demaunded of Huon⁶ to whome partayned that towne / 'syr,' quod he, 'it ⁷is belonginge⁷ to an vncle of myne, who is abbot there,⁸ & we must pas that waye, and also I must nedes speke with hym or⁹ I go to Burdeaux' / the same tyme the ²⁴ abbot, who was¹⁰ on a pusaunte¹¹ courser well armed at all peces,¹² sawe the emperour comynge towards Cluny / ¹³then he sayd to his men, 'syrs, thynke this day to do wel¹⁴ / for yonder before vs we may se y^e ²⁸ emperoure our enemye comynge, wherfore we cannot scape without batayle ; I am sure he hath taken Huon

The Emperor
demands of Huon,
to whom belongs
the town of
Cluny.

It belongs to
Huon's uncle,
who is abbot
there.

The abbot saw
the Emperor
coming,
and exhorts his
men to do well.

¹ Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 1. ² right.

³ and sore displeased. ⁴ ypon. ⁵ them and.

⁶ if he could tell him. ⁷⁻⁷ belongeth. ⁸ of.

⁹ before. ¹⁰ then mounted. ¹¹ and strong.

¹² points. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and valiantly.

my nephue, but by the faythe that I owe to my lord¹
²saynte Benet, my patron / that takyng shalbe derely
 bought.' then they couched theyr speres and sporyd
 theyr horses, & com rynnyngge towardes the emperour ; 4
 and when the emperour saw them, he called Huon,
 and sayd / 'syr, yonder ye maye se men of warre
 all armed come rynnyng agaynst vs / I wote not what
 they thynke³ to do / but they seme to be oure enemyes 8
 as far as I can parseyue / ⁴they be a great nombre,⁵
 they are to be doughted and feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 'it is myne vncle the abbot of Cluny, who hath reysed
 vp his men to socoure me / for he is not aduerteysed of 12
 the peas made betwene you and me, ⁶he thynkethe⁷

ye haue taken me prisoner.' ⁸therwith the abbot
 dasshed in among the emperours company, and the
 fyrist that he mette he ran hym clene thrughe with his 16
 spere / and so he seruid the second, thyrde, and
 fourth / and when his spere was broken, he drewe out
 his sworde / wherwith he bet downe the Almaynes,
 that it was maruayle to behold hym / and then came in 20
 his men / and they dyd suche dedys of armes that
 parforce the almayns were fayne to recule,⁹ & many
 were slayne¹⁰ and cast¹⁰ to the erthe.

when y^e emperour
 saw that he was in a¹¹ great rage, and sayd to¹² Huon / 24

'syr, ye are greatly to blame to suffer your vncles men
 to sle myne' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am ryght sory
 of¹³ that they haue done / I am redy to make you
 amendes in what¹⁴ wyse¹⁴ it shall please you': ther-

28
 with duke Huon rode to¹² the¹⁵ abbot his vncle / and
 in great dyspleasure sayd, 'vncle, ye haue done¹⁶ ryght
 yll.'¹⁶ when the abbot¹⁷ parseyued Huon, he was ryght
 ioyous¹⁸ / and he embrasid hym and sayd / 'fayre 32

¹ and to. ² Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 2. ³ meane.

⁴ and. ⁵ and therfore. ⁶ surely. ⁷ that.

⁸ retire backe. ⁹ and destroyed. ¹⁰ downe.

¹¹ omitted. ¹² vnto. ¹³ for. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ so euer.

¹⁵ good. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ great euill and ¹⁷ saw &. ¹⁸ ioyfull.

The Emperor
 demands what is
 the meaning of
 the approach of
 these men of war.

Huon explains
 that the abbot
 does not know of
 the peace between
 the Emperor and
 Huon.

The abbot dashes
 in among the
 Emperor's men,
 and slays many
 of the Germans.

The Emperor, in
 a great rage,
 blamed Huon for
 these ill deeds.

Huon is sorry,
 and ready to
 make amends.

Huon rides to the
 abbot his uncle in
 great displeasure.

nephue, I thought¹ the emperor had taken you prisoner, & wold haue put you to deth / I knew not *that ye had peas with hym.*² then he made his men
 4 to retraye³ backe fro the almayns ; ⁴then he and Huon together come to⁵ the emperor ; then⁴ the abbot saluted hym, and sayde / ‘syr, I pray you⁶ pardon me in that I haue thus come agaynst you / for sartaynly I
 8 had thought ye wold haue hanged & slayne my nephue, duke Huon of Burdeaux, nor I knew not that there was any peas betwene you / therfore, syr, I requyre you pardon me / and I offer myselfe to make
 12 to you a mendes at the deuyce⁷ of your cunsayle’ / syr,’ quod the emperor, ‘I pardon you for the loue of⁸ ruke Huon,⁹ whom I take as¹⁰ my¹¹ specyall frende.’ Thus as ye haue hard the peas was made betwene the
 16 emperoure and the abbot of Cluny / Then they rode together tyl¹² they came to⁵ Cluny, where y^e emperour was receyuyd with great ioye / when the good abbot had receyuyd the emperor and logyd hym in the
 20 abbey, then he came to⁵ y^e duches Esclaramond, and embracid and kyssed her, and sayd, ‘my ryght dere nese, your comyng¹³ hether is¹⁴ to me greatly agreeable,¹⁴ well I am pleasid to se you hole and in good
 24 poyn¹⁵ & I am sore dyspleased for the great ylles¹⁶ and pouertyes *that ye haue endured, yf I myght a mended it / but syn it is the wyll and pleasure of our lorde Iesu chrys^t,* bothe you and we all ought to be content,
 28 blessed be his name’ / ‘fayre¹⁷ vncle,’ quod the duches / ‘greatly we ought to thanke and to cherysse you / for ye haue bene father and refuge of my daughter Claryet,
 whome I desyre greatly to se’ / then y^e¹⁷ abbot led the
 32 duches¹⁸ into the chambre wheras her daughter Claryet

The abbot thought the Emperor had taken Huon prisoner, and seeing him alive and safe, the abbot withdraws his men, and he and Huon go and salute the Emperor.
The abbot asks the Emperor to pardon him,

and for love of Huon the Emperor does so.

The abbot received the Emperor with much joy at Cluny,

and welcomes most joyfully the duchess Esclaramonde.

The duchess greatly desires to see her daughter,

¹ that. ² Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 1. ³ retire. ⁴ and.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ to. ⁷ aduice. ⁸ that I beare vnto.

⁹ of Bourdeaux. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ faithfull and. ¹² vntill.

¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ greatly acceptable. ¹⁵ health.

¹⁶ euils. ¹⁷ good. ¹⁸ Escleremond.

and is indeed
joyful to find her
so beautiful and
good.

They dine all
together;

the duchess
cannot take her
eyes off Clariet.

Huon tells the
duchess the
Emperor desires
to see Clariet.

The Emperor
embraces her,
and praises her
beauty.

was, who came and knelyd led¹ downe before her mother / ²when y^e duches³ saw her / it was no maruayle thoughe she was ioyfull at her harte, for when⁴she sawe her so fayre and so well endroctryned⁵ / ⁴ye may well thynke that her ioy excedyd all other / she embrased and kyssid her more then .xx. tymis, and said, ‘my dere daughter, synne I saw you laste, I haue endured great⁶ mysery / but thankes be geuen to our ⁸lorde Iesu chryszt and to his swete mother / your father and I ar come together,⁷ and haue peas withe the emperorour’ / then they went into the chambre wheras there dyner was aparayled⁸ redy for them, and there ¹²dyned together with great consolacyon, and all that dyner tyme the duches coude not cast her eyen fro y^e regardyne of her daughter Claryet / for the great beautye that she saw⁹ in her / and when they had ¹⁶dyned, the lordes and knyghtes and squyers cam to se the ladyes as they were accustomed to do ; and as they were there deuysyng,¹⁰ Huon enteryd into the chambre, and ¹¹his vncle the abbot¹¹ with hym, and they said to¹² ²⁰the duches, ¹³‘lady, ye muste come to¹² the emperoure and brynge your daughter with you, for he desyrethe greatly to se her.’ then the lady, who was redy to do her husbondes commaundement, whente into y^e hall, ²⁴and her daughter with her, where as they founde the emperorour, who receyuyd them with great ioye / and toke the young lady Claryet in his armes & kyssed her swetely, and sayd / ‘my ryght dere daughter, your ²⁸comyng hether is to me ryght agreeable¹⁴ / god parforme in you that¹⁵ fayleth ;¹⁵ as for beaulte ye fayle¹⁶ not’ / ‘Huon,’ quod the emperoure, ‘great graces¹⁷ ye ought

¹ so in text. ² and. ³ her mother.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 2. ⁵ educated. ⁶ pouertie and.

⁷ in saugard. ⁸ prepared. ⁹ and perceiued.

¹⁰ together. ^{11–11} the good abbot his vncle. ¹² vnto.

¹³ Faire. ¹⁴ acceptable. ^{15–15} which wanteth.

¹⁶ want. ¹⁷ thanks.

to render to¹ our lorde Iesu chryst, that he is so
fryndely to¹ you as to sende you such a chyld as
this lady is here before me, for I thynke that of beauty
4 this day there is no lady nor damosel² leuing in this
world that may³ compare with your 'doughter' / 'syr,'
quod Huon, 'I pray to⁵ god to parfourme⁶ that⁷
she wantethe' / great pleasure had the emperoure to
8 regarde⁸ the damoysell, and so had all other⁹ that were
there present / thus as ye haue hard, the emperoure was
reseyued at Cluny / & was greatly feasted by y^e abbote
there, for as sone as the emperoure was come thether,
12 the¹⁰ abbot sente ouer all the cuntry for ladyses and
damosels to feste the emperoure / ¹¹ there they were a¹²
.iii. dayes with great iustis and sportes / ¹¹ when they
departed there was nother lady nor damoysel but that
16 the emperoure gaue her some gyfte / the fourthe daye
after that the emperour had hard mas,¹³ and his¹⁴
caryage redy, then he and duke Huon, and the duches
Esclaramonde and Claryet her doughter, departed fro
20 Cluny, & with them the good abbot who brought them
to¹⁵ Burdeaux / for he louyd so moche¹⁶ Huon and the
Duches and Claryet whome he had brought vp, that he
wolde not abandon them so sone ; Huon sent barnard
24 before to¹⁷ Burdeaux, syngnyfyenge¹ them of the city
of the emperours commyng and his, and of the peas
made betwene the emperour and hym / Barnard
departed and was wel receyuyd at Burdeaux ; then he
28 assembelyd together all the burgesses of the citye, and
shewyd¹ them of y^e emperours comynge thether, and
with hym duke Huon and the duches Esclaramond
and claryet theyr doughter, and of the peas that

The Emperor tells
Huon that he
ought to render
great graces to
our Lord Jesus
Christ for all his
goodness to him.

The abbot sends
all over the
country for ladies
and damsels to
entertain the
Emperor.
For three days
they have jousts
and sports,
and when they
depart the
Emperor gave
each lady some
gift.

On the fourth day
the Emperor and
Huon, Esclara-
monde and her
daughter, and the
good abbot set out
for Bordeaux.

Huon sends
Barnard on first
to warn the city
of their coming.

He is well
received, and
when he has tol^d
his news to the
burgesses,

¹ vnto. ² that is. ³ is able to.

⁴ Fol. cxi. (xli.) back, col. 1. ⁵ vnto our Lord.
⁶ in her. ⁷ which.

⁹ Lords, Ladies, and Damsels. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ and.
¹² omitted. ¹³ Service. ¹⁴ baggage and.

¹⁵ vnto the Citie of. ¹⁶ well. ¹⁷ the citie of.

they send
immediately to
Blaye and
Geronell, and over
all the country of
Burdeloyes ;
all the noblemen
and burgesses
hasten to
Bordeaux to
receive their
Duke.
They ride out on
horseback to meet
him;

they salute the
Emperor,

who delivers to
them their
rightful lord,
quit of fealties
and homages.

They praise the
Emperor for his
justice to them
while they were
under him.

The Emperor is
joyful to be so
praised before
Huon.

They all ride in
state through the
streets to the
palace.

The streets are
well adornel',
and in the
windows are
ladies and
maidens singing
melodiously.

was made betwene the emperor and¹ Huon / thes newes were sent incontynent to Blaye and Geronyll- and ouer all the countre of Burdeloys / ²then all noble, men as well as burgesses came hastely to³ Burdeaux for ⁴ to receyue theyr ryghtfull lorde, duke Huon. ²when they were there assemblid, they mun⁴ted on⁵ theyr horses and rode forthe to mete the emperor and duke Huon theyr naturall lorde / they were together a⁶.vi. 8 thousandde horses / when they aproched nere to³ the emperoure, they saluted hym, to³ whome the emperour sayd openly / ' al ye syrs, noble men & burgesses that hathe before this time made to³ me feaulte and 12 homage / I delyuer you quyte in to the handes of your ryght naturall lorde, as ye haue bene before tyme / and I quyte clerely your homages & feaulties done to³ me ' / then they all thanked the emperour of his good 16 iustyce and reason that haue always done to³ them in the seson whyles they were vnder hym / the emperour was⁷ ioyfull that they so praysed him before duke Huon ; ²then they cam to³ duke Huon and to the 20 duches⁸ and to Claryet,⁹ & dyd to³ them theyr reuerence acordyng ; thus they cam to³ the citye of Burdeaux, wheras they were ioyfully receyued, & a clothe of estate was borne ouer¹⁰ the emperour, vnder 24 the which he rode, styl holdynge Huon by the hand, tyll¹¹ they came to³ the paleys / the stretes were strawed with grene herbes and russhes, and hangyd rychely / the wyndowes garnysshed with ladyes and 28 damoysels, burgesses / and maydens, melodyously syngynge / wheroft the emperoure was⁷ ioyfull / the children rynnynge in the stretes² cryenge nowell¹² for¹³ ioye¹⁴ that they had of the comynge of theyr 32

¹ Duke. ² and. ³ vnto.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 2. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ about.

⁷ right. ⁸ Escleremond his wife. ⁹ their Daughter.

¹⁰ before. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² noel, noel. ¹³ the great.

¹⁴ and mirth.

lorde & lady; when they were come to¹ the palays / On reaching the
 they alighted and wente to theyr chaumbers redy
 apoynted for them / yf I wolde reherse y^e ioyes and palace they go to
 4 sportes and solempnytes that was made at² Burdeaux the chambers
 it shulde be noyfull³ and ouer longe to declare it / for ready for them,
 the feaste⁴ was suche that no man as then leuyng had
 sene any suche, the ⁵ which endured⁶ .viii. dayes / and for eight days
 8 duringe the whiche tyme the emperoure declared to¹ there is such
 them of that countre the peas that was made betwene rejoicing as no
 hym and duke Huon, and howe he wolde delyuer man living had
 all his londes⁷ in to his handes, and clerely aquyte ever seen before.
 12 every man of theyr feaulte & hommage to hym made,
 whereof eucry man was ioyfull / & on⁸ the .ix. daye On the ninth day
 that the emperour shuld depart, he called duke Huon the Emperor
 to¹ hym, and sayd, 'my ryght dere frend, he that takes leave of
 16 I loue best in this worlde, if any warre or busynes Huon,
 hap to fal to¹ you / let me haue knowlege therof / and promises to
 and I shall send you .xl.M. men of armes and myselfe aid him in person
 in parson to come and⁹ ayde¹⁰ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon, if ever Huon shall
 20 'of y^e courtoye that ye offer me, I¹¹ thanke you, and need him.
 alwayes I shal repute myselfe as your trewe seruant
 & feythfull frend.' Then the emperour went to the Huon thanks
 duches¹² and toke his leue of her, and of¹³ Claryet her him, and will
 24 daughter, and¹⁴ kyssed them at his departyng, and so ever be his true
 he dyd all¹⁵ other ladys and damoysellis, and gaue servant and
 eche¹⁶ of them some gyfte; he gaue ryche gyttes to¹ faithful friend.
 the duches and to her daughter / ¹⁷then he toke his The Emperor
 28 leue and mounted on⁸ his horse, and so issued out of takes leave of the
 the towne¹⁸ / duke Huon & the¹⁹ abbot of Cluny duchess and her
 conueyed hym a²⁰ .ii. leges, then they toke ther leue²¹ daughter, and gives them rich
 Duke Huon and
 the abbot accom-
 pany him for two

¹ vnto. ² the noble Citie of. ³ too tedious.

⁴ and cheere. ⁵ Fol. cxlii. (*should be cxlii.*) col. 1.

⁶ for the space of. ⁷ and Signories. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ hertely. ¹² Escleremond.

¹³ the faire Ladie. ¹⁴ embraced and. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶ euerie one. ¹⁷ and. ¹⁸ citie of Bourdeaux and.

¹⁹ good. ²⁰ about.

²¹ of the Emperour and of his Lords and Knightes.

leagues, and then
return to
Bordeaux.

When he had
sojourned there
eight days, Huon
visited all his
towns and castles;
he returned to
Bordeaux, and
remained there a
month.

and retorne to¹ Burdeaux / then after that duke²
Huon had soiorned there an³.viii. dayes, he rode to¹
Geronyl and to Blames, and to¹ all other townes and
castelles, where he was receyuyd with great ioy,⁴ and 4
set offycers in them / then he retourned agayne to⁵
Burdeaux to the duches⁶ his wyfe / & after that he
taryed there³ a monethe / duke Huon deuysed with his
wyfe in the presence of the⁷ abbot his vnkle, & of 8
Bernarde,⁸ & sayd, ‘my ryght dere wyfe, he that
rememberethe not the goodnes⁹ done to¹ hym, may be
reputed as vncourtoys;¹⁰ I say it bycause ye know well
that kyng Oberon hath done¹ vs great good, & hath 12
delyueryd vs out of many great parelles of deth, and as
ye sawe but late by the .ii. knyghtes that rescued you
fro the dethe and fro the parell¹¹ that ye were in / and
ye knowe well¹² the last tyme that kynge Oberon 16

Huon reminds his
wife how Oberon
has given him
all the realm of
Fairyland, and
made him promise
after four years
had passed to go
to him, to be put
in possession of
the realm.

If Huon fail to
go Oberon will
utterly destroy
him, and now,
therefore, it is
necessary for
Huon to go.

He leaves his
wife in Barnarde's
care,
and his daughter
in that of the
abbot.

then put me in pocessyon of his realme / and he sayd
that yf I fayled my day he wolde vterly dystroy me /
ye know¹⁵ what hath fallen to¹ me or¹⁶ this by brekyng
of his commaundement / and therfore, dere lady and 24
wyf, it is necessary that I go to¹ hym ; ¹⁷ I shall leue
you with Barnarde, who shall haue the kepynge of my
londes & of you / and as for my daughter, I wyl leue
her with the abbot here, myn vnkle, / who I desyre 28
here before you / that he wyll kepe & gourne my
daughter Claryte / and with hym I wyll leue all my
ryches and precyous stones that I brough with me / to
the entent to mary her so¹² it be to a man of great 32

Huon leaves with
the abbot his
riches and
precious stones
as dowry for his
daughter.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ about. ⁴ and mirth.

⁵ vnto the Citie of. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ good.

⁸ his Cozen. ⁹ Fol. cxliii[ii]. col. 2. ¹⁰ vngratefull.

¹¹ daunger. ¹² that. ¹³ departed. ¹⁴ hym.

¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ before. ¹⁷ and.

valure / but I wyll not that she be maried to¹ any
 parsone for riches, but a parsone that is worthy² I
 wolde shuld haue her / for she hath and shall haue
 4 ryches ynough for her selfe and for a man of great
 auctoryte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod y^e abbot, 'your
 goynge shal be to³ me dysplesant⁴ yf I myght amende
 it / yf god wyll no man leuyng shall haue your
 8 daughter my nece in maryage, without⁵ he be a man of
 hye parentage and garnysshed with vertues and good
 maners; and as for your ryches⁶ she shall not nede to
 ha⁷ue any therof, for I haue treasure⁸ ynough to mary
 12 her noblye.

She is not to marry a man for his wealth, but for his worthiness.

The abbot has enough treasure himself to dower Clarier richly, and does not therefore need Huon's riches.

¶ How Duke Huon deuysed with the duches
 his wyfe of his departynge / and how she
 sayd she wold go with hym, and how he
 16 lefte his daughter and lond⁹ in the kepyng
 of his vncle, the¹⁰ abbot of Cluny, & of
 Barnarde his cosyn.

Ca. C.lii.

20  Hen the duches¹¹ hard her husbonde
 the duke make his deuyses to go to¹
 kynge Oberon, ye maye well byleue¹²
 she had great dolour¹³ at her hart, and
 then all wepynge she kneled downe
 24 before her husbonde, and sayd, 'my ryght dere lorde,
 and¹⁴ god wyll ye shall not go one fote but that I wyll
 go with you / yf ye take any yll or anoyaunce I wyll
 haue¹⁵ my part / ¹⁶yf ye haue any good aduenture I
 28 wyll¹⁷ part with you; ¹⁸for without me ye shall not

The duchess was sore grieved to think of Huon's departure, and begs him to take her with him.

She will share with him both fair adventure and ill fortune.

¹ vnto. ² and valiant. ³ vnto after displeasing.

⁴ displeasing. ⁵ except. ⁶ pearles and Ieweles.

⁷ Fol. cxliii[ii]. back, col. 1. ⁸ and ryches.

⁹ and Signories. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ Escleremond had well.

¹² that. ¹³ and greefe. ¹⁴ if.

¹⁵ Fol. cxlii[ii]. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ and. ¹⁷ haue my.

¹⁸⁻¹⁹ omitted.

The voyage will
be a hard one,

but the duchess
would rather
endure anything
than abide with-
out Huon.

As she is so
determined, Huon
allows her to
accompany him.

The abbot and
Barnard are
displeased,
and try to dis-
suade him from
this, but in vain.

Huon recom-
mends his
daughter and
lands into the
keeping of his
uncle and of
Barnard.

departe¹⁸ / for your longe absence hathe ben ryght hardle
for me to endure.' 'fayer lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray
you¹ for bere your goynge, and abyde here with your
doughter, for y^e vyage shal be sore for you to do; here 4
I shal leue Barnard² and myn vncle, the³ abbot, and
they shal be to⁴ you as faders.' 'syr,' quod she, 'I
shall haue meny ylles⁵ to abyde here without you / I
had rather to indure what so euer god do⁶ send vs to 8
gether then to abyde here without you.'⁷ thus, as⁸ ye
haue hard,⁹ for eny excusasyon¹⁰ or shewynge¹¹ that
Huon kowde shew to⁴ the duches,¹² he kowde not torne
her fro hyr opynyon, But that she wold in eny wyse 12
go with him. when Huon sawe that, he sayde, 'my
ryghte dere lady, syn it¹³ plese you¹³ to go with me and
to be contente what so euer god do sende vs, other good
or yll,¹⁴ your compayne plesythe me,¹⁵ and I am ryghte 16
ioyous¹⁶ therof' / when the good abbot and Barnard¹⁷
hard¹⁸ the wyll¹⁹ of²⁰ Huon and of the duches Esclar-
monde his wylfe, they were sore displeasyd therwith, yf
they coude in any wyse haue let it²¹ / but they coude 20
not turne hym for any thynge²² they coude do / Then
Huon sayd to⁴ the³ Abbot, 'syr,²³ I leue with you my
londes²⁴ and my doughter tyll²⁵ I retourne agayne /
the which shall be as shortly as I maye / But of force 24
nowe I am dreuen to go to²⁶ take possessyon of the
realme that kynge Oberon hathe geuen¹ me / therfore,
fayre vncle & cosyn Barnarde, to⁴ you I recommende
my doughter, whom I loue enterly, and all my londis 28
and sygnoryes, I leue all in your kepyng tyll²⁵ my
retourne / and with you, myne vncle, I leue²⁷ my trea-

¹ to. ² my Coozen. ³ good. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ sorowes. ⁶ shall. ⁷ your company. ⁸ omitted.

⁹ heere before that. ¹⁰ excuse. ¹¹ reason.

¹² his wylfe. ¹³⁻¹³ your pleasure. ¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵ well.

¹⁶ ioyfull. ¹⁷ had well. ¹⁸ and vnderstood.

¹⁹ and pleasure. ²⁰ Duke. ²¹ them. ²² that.

²³ Faire vncle. ²⁴ Signories. ²⁵ vntill. ²⁶ and.

²⁷ all.

sure¹ and precious stones for the maryage² of my daughter, whome I leue in youre kepyng' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the³ abbot, 'syn⁴ it is your pleasure, I
 4 shall kepe her as well as thoughe she were myne owne chylde.' 'Fayre³ vncle,' quod Huon, 'I pray you that the Gryffons fote *that* I brought with me,⁵ send it fro me to⁵ y^e yonge kynge Loys of Fraunce, and salute
 8 hym fro me and present it to⁶ hym to do therwith his pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the³ albot, 'or⁷ Ester be come your message shall be done' / and⁸ y^e whiche was⁸ done, and⁹ the yonge kynge was ioyfull therof / and caused
 12 it to be hanged in his paleys: and after¹⁰ by kynge Phelyp it was hanged in the holy chappell, where as it is¹¹ as yette.¹¹ Now let vs leue spekyng of the Gryffons fote and retourne to our¹² mater.

Huon requests the abbot to send the griffin's foot to the young king Louis of France as a present.

This was done, and the young king, much delighted at the gift, hung it up in his palace. King Philip after caused it to be hung in the holy palace, where it is to this day.

16 ¶ How Huon toke leue of his daughter and of the³ Abbot his vncle, and of Barnard his cosyn, and enteryd into the ryuer of geroune, and the duches with hym, and of the strange
 20 fortunes that they hadde. Ca. C.liii.

24



Hen the³ abbot and Barnard had well vnderstonde Huon and had hard his wyll¹³ / they answered, that as for his londes¹⁴ and for his daughter he shulde not nede to care / but they sayd it greatly dyspleased them, the vyage that they were in mynd to do / but syn it was his pleasure so to do it
 28 was reason that they shuld be content / ¹⁵then Huon¹⁶ ordleynd that Barnarde shulde make redy a lytel shyppe, aparayled and garnysshed with vytayles and

The abbot and Barnard promise to take good care of Huon's lands and daughter,

but are sorry that he must undertake this voyage.

Huon ordered Barnard to prepare a little boat to take them down the river Garonne,

¹ treasure *after* precious stones. ² Fol. cxliii. col. 1.
³ good. ⁴ seeing. ⁵—⁵ may be sent vnto. ⁶ vnto.
⁷ before. ⁸ ⁸ that being. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ afterwards.
¹¹—¹¹ vntill this day. ¹² former. ¹³ and pleasure.
¹⁴ and Signories. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ he.

and a great shyp
to be ready at its
mouth.

Huon takes with
him six knyghtes
and a dozen
servants.

He and Esclar-
monde embrace
Clariet,

and can speak no
word, so great is
their grief at
leaving her.

Clariet herself
makes pitiful
complaint.

The abbot gives
Huon a hallowed
stool for a parting
gift.

They sail down
the Garonne in
the little boat,
and at the mouth
embark in the big
ship.

other thynge neces¹sary, and that another great shyp shuld² be made redy at the mouthe of the see to enter³ it when they were out of the ryuer of Geroune / the whiche thynge was done / then he toke .vi. knyghtes ⁴ of his owne⁴ and a dozen saruauntes / and when Huon sawe euery thynge redy and had shewed his enterpryse to⁵ his noble⁶ men and to the men of his countre, and that euery thynge was redy,⁷ then he toke his daughter ⁸ in his armes and kyssed her more then .x. tymes, and in lyke wyse so dyd Esclaramond her mother, and her hart was so closed with sorowe⁸ that she coude speke no word / for the departyng fro her daughter / ye may ¹² well thynke that great was the sorowe there at theyr departyng, for he that had bene there and sene the doloure and petefull complayntes that the lady Claryet made for the departyng of her father and mother with ¹⁶ whome she had not bene no longe season, there is not so harde a harte but that nedys⁹ must haue taken parte of her sorowe / for there was neuer sene so heuy a departyng. Then Huon, all wepyng, embrased y^e¹⁰ ²⁰ abbot, his vnkle / who gaue Huon at his departyng a halowed stoole, the which after dyd good saruyce to⁵ Huon and to Esclaramond. Also Huon toke leue of Barnard¹¹ / then y^e duches sayd to⁵ the abbot & to ²⁴ Barnarde / ‘syrs, to⁵ you two I do recommende my daughter’ / thus Huon departed / ¹²they went to the posterne, and there they founde redy theyr lytell shyp and entered into it / & so made sayle downe alonge the ²⁸ ryuer of Gerund, and when they came to the mouthe of y^e see they toke theyr great shyppe and so made sayle and had good wynd, so that shortly they were far of fro any lond, & were in the hye se¹³ the space of ³²

¹ Fol. cxliii. col. 2. ² to. ³ into.

⁴ of his owne *after* seruauntes. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ founished. ⁸ and greefe. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ good.

¹¹ his Coozen. ¹² and. ¹³ for.

.vi. dayes,¹ and on² the .vii. daye a wynde arose with
suche an orryble tempest that they were dreuen into
the great spanysshe see, and were so far fro any
⁴ londe that they wyst not where they were / and euer
the tempeste encreasyd in such wyse that there was
neuer none suche sene nor hard³ before / the waues
were lyke mountaynes, and lyke to a swallowed in⁴ the
⁸ shyp / so *that* som tyme there entered into the shyppe
a tonne of water at ones.

With a fair wind
they sail for six
days.

On the seventh
a great storm
drives them into
the Spanish sea;
they are so far
from land, they
know not where
they are.

¶ How Huon lost all his men, and the shyp
braste,⁵ and howe he & the duches sauyd
¹² themselfe on² a borde, and came⁶ and
aryued at the castel of the monkes.

Ca. Cliiii.

¹⁶  Hen⁷ Huon⁸ and the duches⁹ his wyfe
saw¹⁰ this tourment so great & so
horryble,¹⁰ they were in great fere of
dethe / ¹¹they complayned greatly¹²
theyr daughter Claryet whom they

Huon and his wife
are in great fear
of death:

²⁰ had lefte at Burdeaux. Then Huon, who had with
hym in his bag .ix. of his good¹³ preuous stones, he
drew^e out two of them, and knewe the vertue and
bounte of them, ¹⁴he toke¹⁴ his wyfe one of them
²⁴ and sayde, 'my dere¹⁵ wyfe, holde this stone in your
hand and haue no fere / for the vertue of the stone wyl
not let you peryssh, nor me nother' / he that had hard
the cry and lamentacyons that the maryners made
²⁸ wolde haue had petye¹⁶ of them, for they sawe well
¹⁷they must be perysshed¹⁷ / Huon and Esclaramonde

but the knight
remembers that
the virtue of the
precious stones in
his hand will
preserve them.

¹ Fol. cxliii. back, col. 1. ² vpon. ³ of. ⁴ vp.

⁵ brake. ⁶ rame in text. ⁷ Duke. ⁸ of Bourdeaux.

⁹ Escleremond. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ these great and suddaine tempests.

¹¹ and. ¹² for. ¹³ deere. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and gaue.

¹⁵ and louing. ¹⁶ and compassion.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ that they should all perish and.

The ship's sides
burst and the
waves enter.

All are drowned
but Huon and
Esclaramonde.

They float safely
on a table.

Huon grieves for
the loss of his
companions.

were on¹ ther knees sore wepynge, holdyng ech other
²by the hand, humbley prayynge to our lorde Iesu
cryst to haue pete and compassyon of them, and to
brynge them to³ sum port in sauе garde of ther lyues. 4
great & horrable was the tempest, & long enduryde /
so that the helme, mast, and saylles ⁴all to brast⁴ /
and when the shyp was without a sterne to gyd yt, the
great vaues enteryd in⁵ so that the shype was full of 8
water, wherby it was constrainyd to synke into the
see, so⁶ that it was all couered with water, & all that
were within⁷ drowned and perysshed excepte Huon
and Esclaramonde, who sate together on¹ a table 12
flotyng vpon the see / so that by the grace of⁸ god
and⁹ bounte¹⁰ of the presyous stones that was⁷ on¹
them they were sauad / and when they sawe their
shyp all to peces and theyr men drowned,¹¹ and them 16
selfe flotyng on¹ the see / wherof Huon had suche
sorowe¹² that¹³ petye it was to se hym, and sayde / ‘a,
¹⁴very god,¹⁴ why was I euer borne into this world /
when I am so enfortunat that I can haue no man 20
to serue me but at last they ende theyr lyues in my
seruyce myserably. A,¹⁵good lorde,¹⁵ why doste thou
suffer me so longe to leue’ / then the duches conforted
hym as moche as she coude, and sayde / ‘a syr, leue 24
your sorowe / and pray¹⁶ to god and to y^e vyrgyn Mary
his mother¹⁶ that we myght aryue at some good porte’ /
thus the¹⁷ duches¹⁸ comforted¹⁹ Huon her husband;
how be it she was in as great fere, & not without²⁰ 28
cause / ²¹thus they floted on¹ y^e see greatly bewaylyng

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cxliii. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.

⁴—⁴ burst all to pieces. ⁵ to it. ⁶ in such sort.

⁷ were. ⁸ our Lord. ⁹ by the great. ¹⁰ and vertue.

¹¹ and perished. ¹² and greefe at his heart.

¹³ great. ¹⁴—¹⁴ good Lord. ¹⁵—¹⁵ my God.

¹⁶—¹⁶ vnto our Lord God for his mercie and his grace, and
to haue pittie and compassion of vs.

¹⁷ noble. ¹⁸ Escleremond. ¹⁹ Duke. ²⁰ a.

²¹ and.

the deth of theyr men whome they saw perysse before
theyr eyen. Then Huon, as fare of as he myght se, he
saw a castell stondyng on¹ a rocke, the which semyd
4 darke & blacke ; ²then he lauded³ god, prayenge hym
deuoutly⁴ to bryng hym⁵ thether in sau⁶ gard.

He sees afar off a dark and black castle on a rock.

then the see was peasyble / and the tempest sessed /
and the wynd fresshe, the whiche draue them in a
8 short spase to⁷ y^e porte vnder the rocke : and when
they were nere to the londe Huon and the duches
waded to⁷ the londe, holdynge eche other by the
hand : when they were on¹ the drye londe they knelyd

He and his wife
reach land,

12 downe and lyfte vp theyr eyen to⁷ the⁸ heuen, and
made theyr devout prayers to⁷ our lord Iesu chrys^t,
desyryng hym to haue petye and compassion of the
sowles of his⁹ men that he¹⁰ sawe drowned¹¹ / then they

and thank Christ
for their preserva-
tion.

16 rose vp & sawe a lytell pathe¹² to the castell warde¹² ;
they entered into¹³ the waye¹³ / ²when they came nere⁷
the castell they sawe a great ryuer goynge¹⁴ rounde
a bought¹³ the castel¹³ / and saw¹⁵ the castel¹⁶ of a⁸

The castle is very
beautiful: a great
river goes round
about it:

20 marneylous¹⁷ beautye, thynkyng¹⁵ they neuer sawe no
suche before / the towres were couered with gleterynge
golde, shynynge so bryghte as thoughe the sonne¹⁸ had
shone¹⁸ theron : also they sawe an auncyent church

the towers are
covered with
glittering gold.

24 ioynynge to the castell with a goodly steple full of
belles / the whiche began to sowne, wherof Huon had
great maruayle / for he saw nother man nor woman
comynge nor goynge / and when he had well regarded

A church is hard
by, bells ring out
from the steeple.

28 y^e castell he came to⁷ the gate and saw how¹⁵ there were
.iii. breges to pas or¹⁹ he coude enter : when Huon sawe
that he sayd, ‘ O²⁰ very god,²⁰ in all my lyfe I neuer
sawe so fayre a castell, he that is lorde therof semeth to

Three bridges are
to be passed
before the castle
is entered.

¹ vpon. ² and. ³ and praised our Lord.

⁴ humbly. ⁵ them. ⁶ Fol. exliii. col. 1. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ their. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ and perished.

¹²⁻¹² way lying straight towards the castle and. ¹³⁻¹³ it.

¹⁴ running. ¹⁵ that. ¹⁶ was. ¹⁷ great.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ did shine. ¹⁹ before. ²⁰⁻²⁰ good Lord.

be a great¹ man / for yf there were within it² xl. men
 to kepe it and garnysshed with vytailes, it wold neuer
 be wonne for any man leuyng' / so long Huon behelde
 this castell that he forgate³ his sorow, the castell 4
 pleasyd hym so well / and sayd to⁴ the duches⁵ /
 'dame,⁶ I byleue suerly this is the castell of Momur
 partaynynge to⁴ kynge Oberon, we maye well⁷ thanke⁸
 god that he hath brought vs hether / we shall 8
 se hym; ye knowe well⁹ he hathe promysed to geue
 me his realme and all his dyngnyte' / 'syr,' quod the
 duches, 'I haue hard saye or¹⁰ this that Momure is a
 great and¹¹ noble citye, & full of people of all sortes / 12
 wherfore ye may well parsayne that this is not that
 citye, it may well be that this castell is his' / 'Dame,'¹²
 quod Huon, 'the kynge hath that pusaunce that he
 may make citye or castell at his pleasure' / 'syr,' quod 16
 shē, 'I byleue it well' / then Huon toke his way to y^e
 gate / and as he wente deuysyne with¹³ Esclaramonde
 his wyfe, he sawe before hym .iii. monkes in whyghte
 aparell / & when they came to⁴ hym they sayd / 20
 'Syr duke of Burdeaux, of your comynge we are ryght
 ioyfull, for a more noble man came not here of a long
 season, god bles you and y^e duches your wyfe' / 'syrs,'
 quod Huon, 'god sauе you; I pray you¹⁴ shewe me 24
 what ye be and howe¹⁵ hathe shewed you my name,
 and who is lorde and gouernour of this castell' / 'syr,'
 quod one of the monkes, 'this castell is ours, and here
 is no gouernour but I and my bretherne / we make 28
 none answere to⁴ any lorde leuyng / therfore, yf it
 please you to enter, we shall make you as good¹⁶ chere
 as we can,¹⁷ and¹⁷ yf it please you to tary¹⁷ here a¹⁷ viii.
 or xv. dayes, ye shalbe welcome, & when ye departe we 32

¹ and a noble. ² but. ³ had forgotten. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ his Wife. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ Fol. cxliii. col. 2.

⁸ our Lord. ⁹ well. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ a. ¹² Madame.

¹³ the Duchesse. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ feast and.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

Huon thinks it
must be the castle
of Momur,
belonging to
Oberon.

Esclaramonde
doubts this.

Three monks in
white apparel
salute Huon by
name.

They own the
castle,

and invite him to
enter.

shal gyue you to cary with you mete and drynke suffy-
cyent to serue you and your wyfe for xv dayes, & ye
shall haue nede therof or¹ ye fynd out kynge Oberon' /
4 'syrs,' quod² Huon, 'of your courtoysy I³ thanke
you' / then Huon entered into the castell with them,
and came into a great hall well garnysshed⁴ with ryche
pyllers of wyghte marble vaulted aboue, and rychly
8 paynted with⁵ golde and asure, and set full of rych
precyous stones, y^e which cast a great lyght, for by
reason of the⁶ stonis at mydnyght it was as bryght as
at none dayes / Huon and Esclaramond thought⁷ they
12 neuer sawe so ryche a thynge / 'dame,'⁸ quod Huon,
'this place is delectable' / then they were brought into
a rych chaumbre wheras the tables were set,⁹ garnysshed
withe any¹⁰ thynge that a man wold¹¹ wysshe for.
16 Then came in many seruauntes, some brought in the
basyns of golde garnysshed¹² with precyous stones, and
some brought in¹³ towell and water / and they gaue the
water to¹⁴ Huon and to¹⁵ Esclaramonde to wasshe theyr
20 handes ; then they sate downe at the table, and dyd eat
& drynke at theyr pleasure / for they had there mete
and drynke at theyr wysshe / when they had eten¹⁶ and
the clothes taken vp, then there was spyces broughte /⁹
24 Huon dyd eat therof, but Esclaramond wold not¹⁷
taste therof ; then they were brought in to a gardayne
to sporte them / ⁹when they were there they thoughte⁷
they had bene in paradyse, for the swetnes of the
28 flowers and frutes vpon euery tre / and they harde
dyuers¹⁸ byrdes syng melodyously / 'syrs,' quod Huon
to¹⁴ the monkys, 'well ye ought to thanke oure lorde
Iesu chryst that he hathe geuen you suche a place to
32 serue hym in / and, syrs, I praye you when it is

Huon and his wife
are led into a hall
of wondrous
grandeur.

Servants wait on
them with basins
of gold.

A rich banquet is
served :

afterwards Huon
and Esclaramonde
are brought into a
beautiful garden.

¹ before. ² Duke. ³ most hartely. ⁴ and adorned.

⁵ Fol. cxliii. back, col. 1. ⁶ precious. ⁷ that.

⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ euerie. ¹¹ coulde.

¹² adorned. ¹³ the. ¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ omitted.

¹⁶ at their pleasure. ¹⁷ so much as. ¹⁸ kind of.

mydnyght awake me, to the entent that I may ryse to go & here your mataynes¹ when ye syng² it' / 'syr,' quod one of them, 'I shall awake you when³ tyme is that ye may come and here vs.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 4

A rich chamber is prepared for them.

'therin shall ye do me great pleasure' / then⁴ Huon and Esclaramond were brought⁵ to a ryche chaumbre well aparayled⁶ with clothes of golde & sylke, wherin was a rych⁷ bed, wherin Huon &⁸ his wyfe laye in¹⁰ 8 together: the chaumbre was¹¹ ryche, for all the nyghte it was as clere as thoughe the chaumbre had ben full of torches, by reason of³ shynyng of the precyous stones /

All the furniture was adorned with precious stone, shining like the sun.

for there was no banke¹² nor poste but that were set ful 12 of ryche stones / the ryches of that chaumbre can¹³ not be dyscryued / and therin was paynted with gold and asure all the batayles of Troye / In this ryche chaumbre and bed they slepte tyll¹⁵ the oure of mydnyght was 16 come, ¹⁴then all the monkes rose, and the bellis¹⁶ range to matens; ¹⁶ then there came a monke to¹⁷ Huon and waked hym, and said / 'syr, it is¹⁸ tyme that ye ryse,

At midnight Huon and his wife attend matins.

¹⁹ it is past mydnyght, make you redy to come and 20 here²⁰ matens' ²⁰ / then Huon rose and called vp²¹ his wyfe / ²²she arose, & thus they made them redy, and wente to¹⁷ the churche, the whiche was paued with a

The church is resplendent with marble and amber and crystal.

whight marble powdered with flowre delyses of golde 24 entermedelyd with red roses / and the vault was checkered with Ambre and Chrystall, & at euery poynt a ryche stone / wherby there was such clerenes that there neded no candelight; when⁴ Huon and⁸ Esclara- 28 monde²³ saw the²³ beautye and ryches of the churche they were sore abasshed, and made the syngne of the

¹ Seruice. ² doe. ³ the. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ in.

⁶ founched. ⁷ and sumptuous. ⁸ the Duchesse.

⁹ Fol. exliii. back, col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ faire and.

¹² bench. ¹³ coulde. ¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ vntill.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ began to ringe to Seruice. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ nowe.

¹⁹ for. ²⁰⁻²⁰ our Seruice.

²¹ the Duchesse Escleremond. ²² then.

²³⁻²³ had well seene and beheld the great.

crosse on¹ theyr forhed for the marueyles that they saw
 there / ²they entered into the quere and kneled downe
 before the hye auuter and made theyr prayers to³ god,
⁴ desyryng hym to be theyr sauegarde and to bryng⁴
 them ⁵in suertye to⁵ kynge Oberon / then the abbot
 began ⁶y^e matens,⁶ and red the fyrst lesson ; and when
 he was in the halfe therof he helde his peas, and
⁸ departed clene out of the churche / then the pryor
 began another lesson, and in lyke wyse lefte it in the
 myddes and departed out of y^e churche / thus ⁷dyd⁸
 euery monke one after another, and there were .xxxii.
¹² monkes, and in y^e myddes of every lesson and salme
 they departed out of the churche one after another.
 when Huon sawe and hard that he was sore⁹ abasshed,
 and sware that or¹⁰ the last monke departed he wold
¹⁶ knowe the cause why they dyd so / ¹¹then he went to¹²
 the last monke, who wolde haue gone out of the
 churche / and Huon toke the halowed stole that he
 had in his bosum, & dyd cast it aboute the monkes
²⁰ necke, & helde it fast with bothe his handes / when
 the monke saw how he was holden he was sorrowfull
 and angery, and dyd what he coude to haue scaped,
 but he coude not / ¹¹when he saw that he coude not
²⁴ scape, he embrased Huon, and prayed hym humbly
 to let hym go after his bretherne : ‘ sartaynely,’ quod
 Huon, ‘ out of my handes ye shall not scape tyll¹³
 ye haue shewed me why ye synge your ⁶matens⁶ after
²⁸ the maner that ye do, & euer to leue the one half
 vnsonge, and why the abbot and the other monkes do
 departe one after a nother without any word spekyng
 to¹² me, and without¹⁴ ye shew me the truth, with my
³² sworde I shall stryke your¹⁵ hede to y^e braynes ’ / then

Huon and Esclarmonde pray to God to be their safeguard, and bring them to Oberon.

Thirty-two monks take part in the service: each reads a lesson, and departs with the matins half unsaid.

Huon stops the last monk left in the church, and demands why all the others have left.

¹ vpon. ² then. ³ vnto our Lord. ⁴ conduct.

⁵⁻⁶ surely vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ Seruice. ⁷ Fol. cxlv. col. 1.

⁸ did after monke. ⁹ dismayed and. ¹⁰ before.

¹¹ and. ¹² vnto. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ except. ¹⁵ thy.

The monk refuses to reply, and Huon threatens to slay him.

In fear, the monk yields to Huon's request.

sympely the monke fayned to wepe, and prayed Huon to suffer hym to departe, and sayde, ‘syr, I am he *that* yesternyght brought you to your chaumbre, and made your bed’ / then Huon, who had his sword in the one 4 hande and the stole in the other hande, sayde, ‘without 1y^e show¹ me my demaunde, shortely I shal stryke of thy hede’ / when the monke hard that he was in great fere / and stode stylly as though he wold geue none 8 answere; ²when Huon sawe that, he lyfte vp his sword to haue stryken hym / but then incontynente the monke ioyned his han^{des} and cryed for marcy, and promysed hym to shewe hym the trouthe of his 12 demaunde.

¶ How⁴ Huon made semblant to haue slayne the monke, holdynge hym faste with the stole, to the entente he shulde shewe to⁵ 16 hym the trouthe.

Ca. C.lv.



All the monks are evil angels chased with Lucifer from paradise.

God has condemned them to various shapes and hateful offices.

Hen Huon put vp his sworde, and the monke began to speke, and sayde / ‘syr, know for trouthe that al we that 20 be here ar of the yll⁶ aungelles that were chasyd out of paradyse *with* lucyfer, who by his pryd wolde compare to⁷ god / he made vs beleue *that* we shuld be as 24 good as god,⁸ & we byleued him / but as for vs that be here in this howse god was with vs displeasyd, and therby we were condempned to be conuersante abrode in the worlde amonge men and women when we lyste / 28 and some be in lykenes of beres: ² some lyke ware-wolffes, and thus we shall be vnto⁹ the day of iudg-ment, and some other ther be that be tempters of men & women, desyryng to bryng them to dampnacyon / 32

¹⁻¹ thou shewest vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. cxlv. col. 2.

⁴ Duke. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ euill. ⁷ with.

⁸ himselfe. ⁹ vntill.

& som ther be in the ayre and foloweth the thonder-
ynges and tempestes / and some be on¹ the so and
drowne many a man and perysse the shypes wherof,
4 but late ye were in iopardye / for yf it had not bene
for the great vertue² that is in the precyous stones that
ye and your wyfe bereth vpon³ you both ye & your
wyfe had bene perished for euer / and other ther be
8 that ar ⁴in the botome of hell, wheras they tourment
the pouer sowles, and there is Lucifer and they that be
most yll⁵ with hym, and though they were ones fayre
now they be fowle and ⁶yll fygured,⁶ and they shall
12 neuer departe⁷ thense / but we that be here yet we hope
to come to⁸ saluacyon. ⁹Thus we shall be as longe as
it please god' / then Huon demaunded the cause why
they began the lessons in theyr matens¹⁰ and to leue it
16 in the myddes, and every monke to depart¹¹ one after
another. 'Syr,' quod y^e monke, 'our lorde Iesu chrys-
tath not as yet geuen vs that dyngnyte nor power to
make an ende of our deuyne seruyce / but we haue
20 that grace in this world that we haue all our desyres,
and to be conuersant amouge the people, &¹² as well as
they of the fayrey / there is nothyng but by wyssh-
ynge we can haue it incontynent / ¹³when we wyll it
24 is in oure power to make towne or castell set vpon hye
rockes closyd with ryuers berynge shypes / and we
haue mynsterels, halles, and chaumbers garnysshed and
ordeyned as ye haue sene herewith-in. Also we haue
28 wyne and vytayle, and fysshe and fleshe at our plea-
sure ; this castell that ye se and church¹⁴ was yester-
nyght made by the fayrey / but one owre before¹⁵ ye
came hether / before¹² here was nother towre nor wall
32 nor water nor rocke, and nothyng but a fayre grene¹⁶

Huon and his wife
were in great
danger from them
lately, but the
precious stones
preserved them.

They still possess
many of the
marvel-working
powers of fairies.

The castle and
church in which
they now stand,
were built in an
hour on the
previous day.

¹ vpon. ² and bounte. ³ about.

⁴ Fol. cxlv. back, col. 1. ⁵ euill. ⁶⁻⁶ misfigured.

⁷ from. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ seruice. ¹¹ so.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and church after castell.

¹⁵ that. ¹⁶ great.

medow, the whiche ye shall sone parseyue / and, syr,
we be tho that hath the conducte of al the fayrey of¹
the world. Now, syr, I haue shewed² you that we be
and all oure secretees the whiche was neuer shewed be-

The monk fears
the abbot will
punish him for
thus revealing all
to Huon.

fore to² any mortall man / wherby I shal suffer of our
abbot soche ponysshement that there was neuer so yll
aduenture *that fell to²* me before / therfor, syr, now I
ha³ue shewed² you euery thyng, suffer me to departe⁸
to² my company.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'I wyl not

Huon asks the
road to Oberon's
land.

let the go tyll⁴ thou hast shewed vnto me by what
maner of way I may go tyll⁴ I haue founde kynge
Oberon;' thus Huon and the monke talked together¹²

When daylight
comes, castle and
church have
vanished, but the
monk was still
with Huon and
Esclarmonde.

tyll⁴ it was fayre daylyght / then Huon loked abought

hym and sawe nother castell nor churche, rocke nor
ryuer, but he sawe⁵ they were in a fayre medow,
wheroft Huon and Escalaramonde were sore abasshed¹⁶

and blessed them, hauyng great maruayle of *that*
they had sene; then the monke desyred Huon to let
hym go, 'monke,' quod Huon, 'to drawe or to strogell
can not auayle the / for thou shalte not scape out of²⁰

my handes tyll⁴ thou hast shewed me y^e citye of
Momure, wheras kynge Oberon is' / 'Huon,' quod the
monke, 'I am content to do it, but fyrist l pray the take

fro my necke the stole.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'thy²⁴
resonynge can not awayle the / for thou shalte not
scape fro me tyll⁴ thou hast set bothe me and my wyfe

nere to² the citye of Momure, for *thou* shalt go with vs
fote by fote' / 'well,' quod y^e monke, 'syn it is thus,²⁸

The monk will
show them the
road to Momur,
although he longs
to escape from
them.

I am content to fulfull your pleasure / but one thyng
I say to² you, ye neuer dyd a wyser dede then that ye
wolde not let me go awaye / for yf the stole were not

wherwith ye do holde me and the presious stones that³²
ye haue on⁶ you / elles⁷ ye shuld neuer haue departed
fro hence / I thoughte to haue begyled you so that ye

¹ in. ² vnto. ³ Fol. cxlv, back, col. 2. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ that. ⁶ about. ⁷ omitted.

myghte haue let me gone my wayes whether I wolde go.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'yf I can ye shall not departe fro me tyll¹ ye haue fyrste set me & my wyfe 4 within the citye of Momure' / 'syr,' quod the monke, 'that wyll I not do, nor I can not do it though I wolde, but I shall set you both on² y^e mount of yreany,³ ⁴and fro thence ye may well se⁵ the citye of 8 Momure and all the countre of the fayrey, and then I wyll retourne to⁶ my company, who by this tyme are passe the great see of Tartary' / 'monke,' quod Huon, 'I am contente so⁶ thou⁷ set me⁸ in that plase, wheras 12 I⁹ may se the citye of Momure.

¶ How the monke bare Huon and Esclar-
mond ouer hylles & valeyes in the ayer
tyl¹ he came in to the countrye of kyng
16 Oberon.

Ca. C.lvi

 Hen the monke toke Huon¹⁰ on his¹⁰ one
arme and Esclaramond on² the other,
but al wayes Huon helde stylle the stole
a bought the monkes necke to y^e entente
that the monke shuld not begyle hym,¹¹
thus by the fayrey and enchauntement the monke
bare huon & Esclaramonde to⁵ a hye rocke to rest
24 them, and fro thence he bare them as fast as. y^e byrde
flyethe in the ayre / at last they alighted in a fayre
medowe / then the monke sayd / 'syr, in yll¹² oure I
mette with you, for ye shall cause me to suffer great
28 payne / and now, syr, I can go no further for ye be¹³
nowe in the londe of kynge Oberon, wheras we haue They reach the
no pusaunce / but fyrst I wyll brynge you to⁵ your land of king
logyng, wheras ye shall reste' / then before them they Oberon,

¹ vntill. ² vpon. ³ Hircania. ⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ that. ⁷ wilt. ⁸ vs. ⁹ we.

¹⁰⁻¹¹ vpon the. ¹¹ and. ¹² euill. ¹³ are.

and enter a rich
castle.

The monk
vanishes.

No man is in the
castle: after they
have refreshed
themselves in it,
it disappears.

Huon and his wife
wander to the foot
of a mountain,
and ascend it.

A great city lies
on the other side,
and a rich palace.

saw a castell newly made, the whiche was so fayre
and¹ ryche and stronge that yf I shulde dyscryue it
to the vtter most it were ouer longe to reherse / then
the monke toke² leue of huon³ and lefte hym⁴ in the⁴
castell that he had made / Huon sufferid hym to go and
thanked hym of his⁵ courtoysye, the monke sodeynely
vanished awaye they wyst not whether / ⁶then huon
and his⁷ wyfe entered into the castel and came into a⁸
ryche chaumbre wel apaireled,⁸ and there they founde
a table set with dyuers metes and drynkes, but there
was no man to speke vnto / then they sate downe at
the table and dyd ete and drynke at theyr pleasure / ¹²
⁶then they went⁹ thens, and when they were¹⁰ a lytell
paste¹¹ they loked behynde them and saw nother towne
nor castel, wheroft they were¹² abasshed & recommaunded
themselfe to¹³ our lorde¹⁴ Iesu chrysste,¹⁴ then they went¹⁶
forth in¹⁵ y^e medowe and coude se nother towne nor
castell, house nor village / nor man to demaunde the
way of: ⁶they went so longe that they came to the fote
of a mountayne, wheron they mounted with great payn²⁰
and trauayle; ⁶when they were on¹⁶ y^e heyght¹⁷ of the
hyll they rested them / and then within a lytell season
huon sawe before hym apere a great citye, and on¹⁶ the
one syde thereof a fayre and a¹ ryche paleys / the²⁴
walles and towers of the citye & paleys were¹⁸ of
whyghte marble polysshed, the whiche stone¹⁹ so bryght
agaynst the sonne as thoughe it had bene al of christall /
then Huon sayde to¹³ his wyfe, ‘dame,²⁰ yonder, before²⁸
vs, we may se the²¹ citye of Momure, wheras kynge
Oberon is’ / ‘syr,’ quod Esclarmond, ‘our lorde god
hath done¹³ vs a great grace²² that he hathe brought

¹ omitted. ² his.

³ and of the Duchesse Escleremond his wyfe. ⁴ them.

⁵ Fol. exlvi. col. 2. ⁶ and. ⁷ louing. ⁸ furnished.

⁹ from. ¹⁰ gone. ¹¹ way. ¹² sore. ¹³ vnto.

¹⁴⁻¹⁵ god. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ vpon. ¹⁷ toppe. ¹⁸ all.

¹⁹ did shine. ²⁰ Madame. ²¹ noble. ²² in.

vs hether in sauegarde of our parsons / then they went
 forth tyll¹ they cam nere to² the city of Momure / and
 before the citye they sawe a marueylous great ryuer
⁴ and³ depe, and two bowe shote in largnes, and⁴ was
 maruaylous plesant to behold / & when they cam to
 the ryuer syde they founde there a man with a lytell
 wessell awaytynge vpon all them⁵ that wold come to²
⁸ the citye to pas them ouer / then Huon and⁶ his wyfe
 entered into the lytel shyppe and saluted the gyder
 therof, but he wold geue⁷ none answere / but merucyl-
 ously behelde them, & when they wer ouer / the pas-
¹² sanger,⁸ who was named Clarimodes, and he was sone
 to a damoysell of the fayrey / then he demaunded of
 Huon what he and his wyfe were / and sayde, 'Me
 thynke ye be none of the fayrey / wherfore I am not
¹⁶ contente that I haue passed you ouer' / then Huon
 gaue hym none answere, but went forthe and entered
 into the citye, and as they passid they were greatly
 regardid of them within y^e citye, and sayde one to a
²⁰ nother it is⁹ maruayle to se these two parsones to¹⁰
 enter into this citye / for kynge Oberon, who lyethe
 seke in his bed, gaue great charge to² Clarimodes that
 no straunger shuld pas the reuer to enter in to this
²⁴ citye / Huon harde them and was therof ryght sorow-
 full when he harde that the kynge laye syke in his
 bed / so he passed forth and came to² the paleys / euery
 man there beheld hym and his wyfe and had great
²⁸ marueyle to se any mortal parson to enter into that
 palays,¹¹ they were therof abasshed & wiste not what to
 thynke, and¹² the same season Malabron and Gloryand
 were walkynge together in y^e hal they behelde¹³ Huon
³² and Esclaramonde enterynge into the hal and incon-

A marvellous
river runs before
the entrance to
the city;

but a little boat
awaits them and
they cross over.

The boatman was
Clarimodes, son
of a fairy damsel.

He asks Huon
who he is.

The people of the
town wonder to
see Huon and
Esclaramonde
walk through the
streets.

Oberon is sick.

They enter the
royal palace.

¹ vntill. ² vnto. ³ verie. ⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ them.
⁸ Marriner. ⁹ great. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ and. ¹² at.

¹³ saw.

Malabron and
Gloriand recog-
nize them.

Oberon hears of
their arrival,

and rises from his
bed.

He welcomes
Huon and Escla-
ramonde warmly.

He will make
Huon king of
fairyland and
Esclarmonde
queen.

Oberon takes his
bow and shoots
an arrow.

At once the
palace is filled
with fairy knights
and ladies.

Oberon is borne
on a couch into
the great hall.

tynent they knew them / and came to¹ them and embrased them / and sayde, ‘A, noble duke Huon and duches Esclarmonde, ye ar welcome of your comyng, we are ryght ioyfull’ / then Malabron wente fro them ⁴ and wente into the chaumbre, wheras y^e kynge laye seke and said / ‘ryght dere syr, your good frend Huon & Esclarmond his wyfe are come into your hall’ / when ²the kynge harde that Huon and Esclarmonde were ⁸ come, for the great ioye *that* he had, he quycely rose out of his bed. Therwith Gloryand / Huon and Esclarmond entered into the chaumbre where kynge Oberon was. ³when kynge Oberon saw them he came to¹ ¹² them, and sayd, ‘My ryght dere frend Huon, and you, my dere louer Esclarmond, of your comyng I am ryght ioyfull’ / then he embrased & kyssed them bothe more then .x. tymes, and sayd, ‘Huon, my⁴ dere frend, ¹⁶ for the great trouthe & noblenes that I fynde in you I shall make you kyng of all the fayrey, and your wyfe Esclarmonde shall be lady and quene of the same, and besyde that I wyll geue¹ you⁵ my dyngnyte.’ 20

Then the kynge had well saluted them then he sate downe on⁶ a couche & made huon and Esclarmonde to sytte downe before hym,³ then he commaunded Gloryand that incontynent he shulde feche to¹ hym ²⁴ his bowe, and when he had it in his hand he toke an arow and shot therwith / then incontynente it semed that al the world had aryued in the towne and palays / ther came thetherward⁷ so many knyghtes and ladyes ²⁸ of the fayrey that all the towne and paleys was full / when they were all assembeled together in the paleys kynge Oberon commaunded to cary hym into the great hall in his rych couche / then he commaunded scylence ³² to be kepte among them all, and then he sayde / ‘lordes and ladyes who be here assembeled all, ye knowe

¹ vnto.

² Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 2.

³ and.

⁴ right.

⁵ all.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ thether.

that euery mortall thynge cannot alwayes¹ endure / I
 speke it for my owne selfe² who² am sone to a mortall
 man, and was engendered on³ the ladye of the preuye
 4 Ile who can⁴ neuer dye, bycause she is one of the fairy
 engendered of a man of the fayrey and daughter to a
 woman of the fayrey, and where⁵ it was⁵ so that Iulius
 Seser was a mortall man, therfore it behouethe me to
 8 pas out of this worlde by the commandement of our He announces his
approaching
death;
 lorde god, who hathe ordeined that it shulde so be.
 And bycause⁶ duryng the tyme that I haue bene here
 conuersaunt with you / therfore I wyll not leue you
 12 without a lorde / but fyrist in my lyfe dayes I wyll puruey
 you of one, who shall be duke Huon, whome I loue
 well and derely, & also I wyll that his wife, the duches
 Esclaramond, shall abyde with hym / for in no wyse I
 16 wyll separate them asonder: therfore I ordeyne that
 Huon who is here presente be your kynge and lorde,
 & Esclaramond⁷ quene and lady / and fro hensforthe I
 put my realme and dyngnyte into his handes / and I
 20 wyll he vse it as I haue done in my lyfe tyme / howe
 be it kynge Arthur hath sore pressed on³ me to haue
 my dignyte⁸ & realme, but I wyll that none shal haue
 it but alonly Huon of Burdeaux, who is here present,
 24 whom I wyl crowne kynge in all your presences.

Huon will succeed
him on his
throne.

King Arthur has
pressed Oberon
in vain to bestow
the kingdom on
him.

¶ How⁹ kynge Oberon crowned Huon and
 Esclaramonde and gaue them his realme
 and dyngnite that he had in the¹⁰ fayrey,
 28 and made the peas betwene Huon & king
 Arthur. Ca. Clvi[a].

¹ long. ²⁻² because I. ³ vpon.

⁴ Fol. exlvii. col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ as it is. ⁶ of my loue.

⁷ your. ⁸ after realme. ⁹ the noble.

¹⁰ land of the.



The subjects of
Oberon sorrow-
fully assent.

Oberon places
crowns on the
heads of Huon
and Esclar-
monde, and
delivers to Huon
his horn, napkin,
cup, and arnours.

On a mountain
hard by a great
number of men
and tents is seen.

King Arthur and
his men are there:
they have come
too late to receive
Oberon's king-
dom.

Hen all¹ the people of the fayrey,
²knyghtes and ladyes, had well harde
and vnderstonde kyng Oberon, they
were right syrowfull³ that he ⁴shulde ⁴
leue them, and sayde / 'syr, syn it
is your pleasure and that it is your wyll / of reason we
must be content to receyue Huon of Burdeaux for oure
kyng, and dame⁵ Esclaramonde his wyfe for oure ⁸
quene' / when the kyng vnderstode hys lordes and
people, then he caused to be brought thether .ii.
crownes / y^e one was set on⁶ Huons hede and the
other on⁶ Esclaramondes hede / then Oberon sent for ¹²
his horne / his¹ napkyn and cup / and the good
harnays: ⁷ he delyuered them to⁸ Huon to do with
them his pleasure / great ioye and feast⁹ was made in
the palays of¹⁰ the knyghtes and ladyes of the fayry; ¹⁶
then kyng Huon loked out at a wyndowe and sawe on⁸
a mountayne that he past ouer at his comynge thether,
¹¹great nombre of tentes and pauylions. then¹² he sayd
to⁸ kynge Oberon, 'syr, on⁶ yonder mountayne I se¹¹ ²⁰
great nombre of men assemblyd, and many tentes and
pauylions pyghte vp' / 'Huon,' quod kynge Oberon,
'know for trouthe¹³ it is kyng Arthur, who wenethe to
haue my realme and dyngnyte, but he comethe to late / ²⁴
for the promyse that ye made⁸ me ye haue kept,
therfore he faylethe and comethe to late / for yf ye had
not com I had geuen hym my realme and dyngnyte /
I knowe well¹³ he wyll be here sone to se me / ¹²he wyll ²⁸
be sorowfull and angery of your comynge hether / but
yf I canne I shall do so moche that ye shall be bothe
in peas and reste, for¹⁴ reason¹⁵ is that he do obey you.'
Therwith kynge Arthure and all his cheualrey entered ³²

¹ omitted. ² both. ³ in. ⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 2.

⁵ Madame. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ Armour and. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ feasting. ¹⁰ by. ¹¹ a. ¹² and. ¹³ that.

¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ it.

in to¹ Momure, & cam & alyghted at y^e palays, and
with hym his syster, quene Morgan le feye, and Transelyne theyr nese / they came and saluted kynge
Oberon, who receyued them with great Ioye, and
sayde / ‘syr² kynge Arthur ye³ ar welcome, and
Morgan your syster, and Transelyne your nese / and
syr, I praye you⁴ shewe me what fayre chylde is that
I se there before your syster Morgan’ / ‘syr,’ quod
Arthur, ‘he is called Marlyn, & is sone to Ogyer
y^e dane / who hath wedded my syster Morgan, and I
haue lefte hym in my countre to rule it tyll⁵ I
retourne’ / ‘syr,’ quod kynge Oberon / ‘y^e chyld shall
haue good fortune, he shalbe in his tyme feryd &
doughted / for Ogyer his father is a good and a
valyant knyght: And syr⁶ kynge Arthur, ye ar
welcome, & of your comyng I am⁷ ioyous⁷ / I haue
sent for you to shew you the pleasure of our lorde
⁸Iesu Chryst⁸ that I shall departe out of this worlde,
and to the entente that ye shulde be contente with⁹
that I haue geuen you¹⁰ in the fayry so moche dynnyte
and pusaunce, wherwith I desyre you to be content /
syr¹¹ beholde here duke Huon of Burdeaux and his
wyte y^e duches Esclaramonde, to¹² whome I haue geuen
my realme and my dingnyte, to vse it as I haue done
¹⁰ here before: ¹⁰ and therfore I praye and commaunde
you that ye wyl obey hym as kynge and souerayne of
al the fayry, and you to loue¹³ together with good lone
and peas’ / when kynge Arthur hard kynge Oberon,
he answered fersly, and sayd / ‘syr, I haue well hard
you; and ye knowe well that your realme & dynnyte
ye¹⁴ haue geuen¹⁴ me after your deces, and now I se¹⁵
ye haue geuen it to duke Huon / syr, let hym go into his

King Arthur
comes to Oberon's
palace with all his
company.

Oberon welcomes
them.

Merlin is with
the new-comers:
he is son of Ogier
the Dane, and
Arthur's sister
Morgan.

Oberon tells
Arthur how his
realm has been
bestowed.

Arthur is angry
at Huon's future.

¹ the Citie of. ² great. ³ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1.

⁴ to. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ noble. ⁷⁻⁷ right ioyfull.

⁸⁻⁸ God. ⁹ in. ¹⁰ heretofore. ¹¹ for. ¹² vnto.

¹³ liue. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ gaue. ¹⁵ well.

owne countre and ¹to the¹ citye of Burdeaux wheras he hathe lefte his doughter Claryet, and let hym go and marry her, for as here he hath no thynge to do; I had rather be clene exyled for euer and chased out of ⁴

He will not obey
the new fairy
king.

my realme / then I shulde obeye hym or do² hym³ homage / for he shall haue no ⁴thynge to do ouer me without he wyn it with the poynte of the sworde' / when duke⁵ Huon⁶ harde kyng Arthur of Bretayne, ⁸

Huon tells Arthur
that he will force
obedience from
him.

Oberon keeps
peace between
them : if Arthur
prove disobe-
dient, he shall be
transformed into
a werwolf.

Arthur yields to
Oberon, and begs
forgiveness.

¹⁻¹ vnto his. ² vnto. ³ any.

⁴ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 2. ⁵ Kinge. ⁶ had well.

⁷ that. ⁸ euill. ⁹⁻⁹ and.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ those parts.

¹¹ of all.

that ye know¹ yf it were not for the loue of your
syster who hath desyred me to pardon you / elles²
I wold haue shewed you the power that I haue in the
4 fayry / the whiche fro hens forthe I do geue to³ duke
Huon of Burdeaux, & all the dynnyte & pusaunce that
I haue vsed⁴ all my lyfe.' Then duke Huon ryght
5 humblye⁶ thankid kynge Oberon of his curtoysye.

8 ¶ Of the ordynaunces that⁷ kyng Oberon
made before he dyed. Ca. C.lvii.

12  Hen⁸ Oberon had deposed hymselfe of
his realme and dynnyte, and that he
had put al his pusaunce into the
handes of Huon, then he sayde to³
kyng Arthur / 'syr, bycause I desyre
with all my heart that after my dysces Huon and you
16 shulde leue together in good peas and loue, I geue you
all my realme of Boulquant and all the realme that
Syble holdethe of me, to do therwith at your pleasure,
and of all the fayryes that be in the playne of Tartare /
20 and I wyll⁹ ye haue as moche pusaunce there as Huon
hath here. Prouyded that here before me ye make
homage to³ hym & ²to² that good peas and loue maye
be betwene you' / then Arthur, Morgan, and Tran-
24 selyne, and all¹⁰ other lordes¹¹ that were there thanked
kyng Oberon, and sayd how they neuer hard nor saw
so rych a gyfte geuen before as that kynge Oberon had
geuen to¹² Arthur. Then kynge Arthur, in the
28 presence of⁸ Oberon, came and made homage & kyssed
duke Huon ²on the mouth / ²then⁸ Oberon and all
other had therof great ioye bycause of the peas made
betwene thos two kynges, ¹³great feaste¹⁴ and ioye was

Oberon promises
to give Arthur
his land of
Boulquant,

and all the fairies
of Tartary are to
be under his
control.

Arthur makes
peace with Huon.

¹ well after ye. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ in.

⁵ Fol. cxlviii. col. 1. ⁶ ryght humblye after Oberon.

⁷ the noble. ⁸ King. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the.

¹¹ and Ladies. ¹² vnto kynge. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ feasting.

Oberon's end
approaches.

He calls Huon,
Arthur, Gloryand,
and Malabron
before him.

He tells Huon
how all his
powers devolve
on him,

and bids him
establish a new
abbey where he
himself shall be
buried.

Huon thanks
Oberon humbly.

made in the paleys, for all the moste noble lordes and ladyes of the fayry were there assembelyd, there was great solempnyte made / Thus as they were in this great ioye kynge Oberon, felyng that ¹his last ende ⁴ aproched, ²he knewe y^e oure and day³ / then seyng that in his lefe dayes⁴ he had prouyded a kyng for his realme, he⁵ thankyd our lorde ⁶Iesu chryst⁶ of the graces that he had geuen hym in this worlde / then ⁸ he callid before hym Huon of Burdeaux, and kynge Arthur, & Gloryand, and Malabron, and sayd / ‘syrs, I aduertyse that longe I shall not abyde among you / therfore Huon, for your bountye and noblenes wher- ¹² with alwayes⁷ ye haue bene endowed, I haue chosen you amonge other to haue the kepynge and syngnary / and the mynistracyon of al y^e fayrey as well of the countre of the⁸ warwolfs as of other thynges ¹⁶ secrete, reserued⁹ to be shewed to any¹⁰ men / and also I haue geuen you my dyngnyte and pusaunce to do¹¹ as I haue done in my tyme ; & ¹²therfore, syn¹² I haue thus chosyn you / therfore I wyl that¹³ I depart out of ²⁰ this world / that ye do make a newe abbey of monkes, the which I wyl be set here in this¹⁴ medow¹⁵ before this citye, bycause al my dayes I haue loued this citye / and I wyl that in the church of the same abbey ye do ²⁴ bury my body as rychly as ye shall thynke conuenyent / and I recommaunde to¹⁶ you all suche as hathe well serued me, and I wyl¹⁷ ye retayne them into your seruyce / when¹⁸ Oberon had said as moch as plesed ²⁸ hym, Huon answerid and sayd / ‘dere syr, of the great goodnes and honours that ye haue done to¹⁶ me, I thanke you / and all that ye haue ordeyned or wyl do by the grace of ⁶our lorde Iesu chryst⁶ it shal be done ³²

¹ Fol. exlviii. col. 2. ² for. ³ day before hour.

⁴ tyme. ⁵ humbly. ⁶⁻⁶ god. ⁷ always after bene.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ and not. ¹⁰ mortall. ¹¹ therewith.

¹²⁻¹² because. ¹³ when. ¹⁴ the. ¹⁵ heere.

¹⁶ vnto. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ King.

in suche wyse that my sowle shal bere no charge for it
at the day of Iugment.' when the lordes and ladyes
that were there assembeled hard the wordes of kynge
 4 Oberon / and sawe ¹clerely how¹ his last ende aproched
²nere / y^e cryes and clamours *that was*³ there made
 was⁴ maruel to here, and spesyally ther was suche
 wepyng and cryeng⁵ in the cete that⁴ pete it was
 8 to here,⁶ for they wer aduerteysid how⁷ king Oberon
 drewe faste⁸ to his laste end, who lay in a ryche Oberon dies.
 cowche in the myddes of his palayes makynge his
 prayers to⁹ our lorde¹⁰ Iesu cryste,¹⁰ and holdynge Huon
 12 by the hande, and at¹¹ laste¹² sayde, 'my¹³ dere frende
 Huon, pray for me' / & then he made the synge of y^e
 cros¹⁴ recommending his sowle to⁹ god, the which
 incontynent was borne in to paradyce by a greate
 16 multytude of angelles sent fro¹⁰our lord Iesu chryst,¹⁰
 who at ther depertynge made such shynyng and
 clerenes in y^e palays that ther was neuuer none suche
 sene before / and there with there was so swete a smell
 20 *that* euery man thought⁷ they had bene rauysshed in
 to paradysc, wherby they knewe suerly that kynge
 Oberons sowle was sauued / when kynge Huon, & kynge
 Arthur, & quene Esclaramonde / Morgan le faye and
 24 Transelyne / and kynge Carahew / Gloryand and
 Malabron / and all other knyghtes and ladyes,¹⁵ when
 they¹⁵ knewe that kynge Oberon was dede /. there is All in the palace
 28 complayntes that was³ made there for the dethe of weep bitterly.
 kynge Oberon / then his body was taken and borne to
 the plase where his sepulture was deuyised / the whiche
 kynge Huon caused to be made ryght rychely / &
 32 founde there an abbey as kyng Oberon had deuyised.

His soul is borne
at once to para-
dise by a great
multitude of
angels.

All in the palace
weep bitterly.

Oberon is buried
in the new abbey
as he willed
before his death.

¹⁻¹ well that. ² Fol. exlviii. back. col. 1. ³ were.

⁴ great. ⁵ lamentations. ⁶ it. ⁷ that.

⁸ neere vnto. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god. ¹¹ the. ¹² hee.

¹³ right. ¹⁴ and. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted.

At the funeral
banquet are three
crowned kings,
and two beautiful
queens.

At length kings
Arthur and
Carahew take
their leave,

and king Huon
and queen
Esclaramonde
rule over fairy-
land.

After the buryall / they retourned to y^e palays, wher as
the tables were set, and there sate .iii. crowned kynge
& two excellent quenes ful of great beauty ; at the
hede¹ of the table sate kynge Huon, and nexte² hym 4
kynge Arthure, and then ³kynge Carahew and the two
quenes / & the other ladyes departid and went and
dyned in ther chambers / ⁴they were all serued of
euyer thynge that was nessessary. And after dyner 8
and grace sayd / kynge Arthure and kynge Carahew
toke theyr leue of kynge Huon and of quene Esclaramonde /
and so departid euyer man in to his owne
couentre / and Morgan and Transelyne taryed a sertayne 12
space with quene Esclaramond in great ioy and solas.
Now let vs leue spekyng of kynge Huon and of quene
Esclaramonde, who taryed stylly in the fayrey, and shal
do vnto⁵ the day of Iugemente / and let vs retourn to 16
our⁶ mater and speke of y^e fayre Claryet, doughter to²
kynge Huon, who was at the⁷ citye of Burdeaux.



¶ Howe the kynge of Hongary & the kynge
of Engelond and Florence, sone to² the 20
kynge of Aragon, desyred to haue in
maryage the fayre lady Claryet / and how
she was betrayed by Broharte / and how
syr Barnarde was drowned, & of the ylles⁸ 24
that the traytoure Brohart dyd to² the⁹
lady Claryet / and how he dyed at the
laste. Ca. C.lviii.

Ca. C.lviii.

¹ vupper end. ² vnto. ³ Fol. cxlviii. back, col. 2.

⁴ and. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ former. ⁷ noble. ⁸ euils.

⁹ faire.

4



E haue harde here before how kynge
Huon & quene Esclaramonde, when
they departid fro¹ Burdeaux they lefte
theyr daughter in the kepyng of the
good abbot of Cluny, her vngle / who

Clariet was left at
Bordeaux in the
care of the abbot
of Cluny.

grew and dayly amended in suche a wyse² that when she
came to the ³age of .xv. yere, for her excellente beauty
8 her renome was so great in every countre that there
was nother kynge nor duke but ⁴that⁴ desyred to haue
her in maryage / so that the abbot and Barnard her
cosyn had great busines to giue eche of them theyr

When she was
fifteen years old
she had every
king and duke in
Europe for her
suitor.

12 awnswere to be contente / one was the kynge of
Englond, another the kynge of Hungarye, and the
thyrd⁵ was Florence, sone to⁶ the kynge of Aragon /
But specyally the kynge of Hungarye wold haue had

There were the
kings of England
and Hungary,
and Florence, son
of the king of
Aragon.
The king of
Hungary was
especially
importunate.
The abbot wants
to consult Huon,
and defers his
answer to the
Hungarian and
other envoys till
St. John's day.

16 her / the⁷ abbot answered the kynge of hungryes
embassadours and⁸ to all the other, that vntyll he had
haerde some worde⁹ fro¹⁰ duke huon her father, he could
not agre to no¹¹ mariage for her / but yf they wolde
20 retourne agayne by the feast of saynt Iohnn nexte
folowinge, then he wolde be contente to holde a daye
of communycacyon of maryage in the towne of Blaye /
wherto the kynge of Hungarye was contente, and

He invites the
suitors to Blaye
to hear his
decision.

24 so were all the other embassadours / and when the day
came the good abbot toke his way to⁶ Blaye to be
there agaynst the comynge of the kynges of Englond
⁴and of ⁴hungarye / and Florence, sone to the kynge of

28 Aragon / the⁷ abbot lefte the lady Claryet in the
kepyng of Barnarde her cosyn, who enterely¹² loued
her / ¹³when the abbot was come to⁶ Blaye, ¹⁴the abbot¹⁴
made the towne to be hanged rychely for the comynge
32 of the sayd kynges. And y^e. iii. daye after the abbot

¹ the Citie of. ² sort.

³ Fol. cxlviii, col. 1 (*should be xlvi.*). ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ other. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ good. ⁸ so. ⁹ newes.

¹⁰ for in text. ¹¹ any. ¹² entirely after loued her.
¹³ and. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ hee.

The king of
England comes
first, and goes
away hunting:

next arrives the
king of Hungary:

and lastly
Florence.

A traitor of
Bordeaux, named
Brohart, knew
that the abbot
had decided that
Clariet should
choose a husband
for herself.

Brohart wants
Clariet for
himself,
and returns from
Blaye to
Bordeaux.

came therethen / fyrist came to the towne the kynge of Engelonge, who anone after that he was alighted and somewhat rested, he lepte on¹ his horse agayne and wente a huntyng into the laundes / then after came the 4 kyng of hungarye in goodly araye; he alighted at the paleys, whereas the abbot receyued hym with great ioye / then after² entered Florence with a noble company. The abbot did salute them all one after 8 another, sayenge howe⁴ he and the hole towne were at theyr commaundemente, & they thanked hym. There was a false traytoure borne in Burdeaux, who had harde all the conclusyon that the abbot had taken with 12 these prynces / and that was that they shulde se the lady / and he that pleased her best shulde haue her in maryage / this traytoure that harde that conclusyon thought in⁵ hymselfe that he wold let that mater yf he 16 coude, and haue her hymselfe / this traytours name was Brohart / he departed fro Blaye sore desyryng to atayne to his false enterpryse; he toke a lytell shyp and sayled incontynent to⁶ Burdeaux / then in haste 20 he⁷ toke londe⁷ and fayned hymselfe as though he had great busynes to do; so he came to the paleys wheras he founde⁸ Barnarde⁹ and y^e lady⁹ lenyng^e in a wyndow deuysynge together. Then Broharte saluted 24 the lady¹⁰ and Barnarde al smyling. ‘Brohart,’ quod Barnard, ‘the mater must be good that I se you come smylynge / I praye you¹¹ shewe¹² vs¹³ how dothe the¹⁴ abbot of Cluny, and how hath he receyued the prynces 28 that be come to Blay’ / ‘Barnarde,’ quod the traytour, ‘know for trouthe that in all your lyfe ye neuer saw suche noblenes as is nowe in y^e towne of blay, and therfore, syr, hastely or¹⁵ the mater goeth any further, 32

¹ vpon. ² afterward. ³ Fol. cxlviii[ix]. col. 2.

⁴ that. ⁵ within. ⁶ vnto. ⁷⁻⁷ went on shoare.

⁸ the faire ladie clariet. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ after Barnard. ¹¹ to. ¹² vnto. ¹³ mee.

¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ before.

the¹ abbot of Cluny, who is vncle to my lady here
presente / he² sendethe you worde by me that inconty-
nent as sone as nyght comethe *that* preuely my lady
4 Claryet be made redy and apareyled and dysgysed lyke
a man / and you & I to brynge her to³ bley to her
vncle the abbot of Cluny / and that tomorrowe by⁴
none ye ordeyne damoyselles to come⁵ after and to
8 brynge with them all her ryche robes and aparayle
to aray her therin when tyme shall be, and that we
take with vs one⁶ of her apareyles to put on her when
she come there tyll⁷ all her other aparayle comethe /
12 and the cause why *that* her vncle sendeth for her now
so preuely is that she shulde se all them that desyreth
her in maryage, for out of y^e chaumbre wheras she shal
be in she shal se them all one after another⁸ thrughe a
16 lateysc⁸ wyndowe' / when Barnarde hard the vnhappy
traytoure / wenynge⁹ he had sayd¹⁰ trouth,¹⁰ bycause he
was a man of credens, therfore he byleued his wordes.
Alas, why dyd he so, for a more¹¹ traytoure ther was not
20 fro thense to Rome, his father and his bretherne were
so all / but Barnarde byleued hym bycause he wente
with the abbot / then Barnarde sayde to³ Claryet /
'lady, ye must make you redy to departe as sone
24 as nyght comethe / and ye muste be apareyled as
Broharte hathe shewed, to the entente that ye be not
parseyued tyll⁷ ye come to Blaye to your vncle the
abbot' / 'Barnarde,' quod the lady, 'syn it is the
28 pleasure of myne vncle and of you it is reason that I do
it' / then she went into her chaumbre and aparayled
her with her preuy demoyselles, & they laughed at her
when they sawe her in a mans apareyle / and the yl¹²
32 traytoure dyd so moch that he gote a lytell shyppe and

He tells Barnard,
who guards
Claret, that she
is to go with him
to Blaye disguised
as a man,

and that her
maids are to
follow the next
day with all her
apparel.

She is secretly to
see her suitors at
Blaye.

Barnard believes
Brohart,

and bids Claret
depart.

Claret is
disguised.

¹ good. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ about.

⁵ Fol. cxlviii. [ix.] back, col. 1. ⁶ some. ⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁹ out at a secret. ⁹ that all that.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ had been true. ¹¹ vild. ¹² cruell.

brought it redy to the posterne of y^e paleys, and he had
gote redy a great stone and tyed thereto a corde / then
he came to¹ Barnarde and sayd / ‘syr, it is² tyme to
departe, that we maye be at blaye or³ it be mydnyght’ / 4
then Barnarde came to the lady, whome he founde
redy to departe, and sayd, all smylyng, ‘fayre lady, ye
resemble well to be a gentyll squyre’ / bar⁴narde put
his sworde aboute hym, and toke the lady by the arme 8
& sayde / ‘come on companyon, it is tyme we go’ /
Brohart wente on before, and barnarde and the
damoysell⁵ went after arme in arme, and so went⁶
to the posterne so preuely that no man parseyued them / 12
then Brohart entered in⁷ fyrste and toke Claryet by
the hand and led her to the ende of the shyp, ⁸then
Barnarde entered / broharte softly let the stone slyp
into the water and held the cord styl in his hande, and 16
sayd to¹ Barnard, ‘syr, I do this bycause the shyp
shall not go to faste tyll⁹ we be paste the medyll of the
streme’ / and sayd to¹ Barnard, ‘syr, holde you this
cord in your hande tyll we be paste the heye streme / 20
and then we shall drawe it vp agayne.’ Barnarde, who
thought none yll, dyd as the traytour sayd / then they
toke the helme in theyr handes, and so departed along
the ryuer of Gerounde.

Brohart deceives
Barnard.

They pass down
the Garonne.

24

¶ Howe the traytoure Broharte drowned
Barnarde, and of theyr aduentures / and
howe Broharte was slayne. Ca. C.lix.



Hen Brohart sawe that they were fare 28
of fro y^e towne, & that y^e nyght was
darke, he came to¹ Barnarde & sayde,
‘syr, quyckely drawe vp y^e stone by
the corde out of the water’ / then 32

¹ vnto. ² full. ³ before.

⁴ Fol. exlviii[x]. back, col. 2. ⁵ Ladie. ⁶ on.
⁷ to the shippe. ⁸ and. ⁹ vntill.

Barnard stowpyd downe lowe to drawe it vp / then
 Brohart toke barnard by ¹the lege or¹ he was ware,
 and with all his strengthe he tombelyd ²Barnarde³ ouer
⁴the⁴ bourde into the water, wheras he was drowned, the
 whiche was great petye / for a more treuer knyght
 coude not be founde / when the⁵ lady Claryet saw that
 Brohart had cast barnarde ouer the⁵ bourde she gaue
⁸a great crye, and she came to⁶ Brohart and drew hym
 by the here / when⁷ the traytour saw that y^e lady tare
 his here, he toke her by the armes so fersly that he
 caste her to y^e shyp botom,⁸ & dyd ⁹all to⁹ bete her,¹⁰
¹²& sayde that her cryes and wepynges coude not ayde
 her, for whether she wold or not he wolde haue his
 pleasure of her / when y^e lady harde the false traytour
 she was in great fere, & began sore to trymble, making
¹⁶her praiers to our lord ¹¹Iesu christ¹¹ and to the vyrgyn
 mary⁹ to defende her fro dyshonour and to brynge her
 out of the handes of that false traytour her enemy /
 then the vnhappy traytour came to⁶ her and sayde /
²⁰that it were better for her to fulfyll his pleasure with
 good wyll and loue rather then by force, or elles to¹²
 caste her into the ryuer of Geroune / 'O false traytour,'
 quod she, 'as longe as thou leueste thou shalte never
²⁴haue ioye nor pleasure of my body' / then the false
 morderer dyd bete the lady, that pety it was to se ; ¹³so
 he lefte her lyenge¹⁴ in a maner ded ; when he sawe⁷ it
 wold be no better he was very, and so fell on¹⁵ slepe /
²⁸the shyp wente forthe by force of the streme, and
 by that tyme it was fayre daye / so fare the shyp went
 that nyght that they were nere to the ende of the
 ryuer of Geroune / and y^e lady sore wepyng behelde
³²the traytour how he slepte, and sawe¹⁶ by hym a lofe of

Brohart, by a
wicked device,
throws Barnard
into the river,
and he is drowned.

Clariet cries out,
and tears
Brohart's hair.

Brohart flings
her to the ship's
bottom, and beats
her.

He will by force
dishonour her,
or drown her.

Clariet resists,
and Brohart beats
her till she is
nearly dead.

The traitor then
falls asleep;

Clariet revives;

¹⁻¹ one of his legges before. ² Fol. exlv[1]. col. 1.

³ him. ⁴ ship. ⁵ faire. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ that.

⁸⁻⁹ bottom of the shipp. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ cruelly.

¹¹⁻¹¹ god. ¹² he would. ¹³ and.

¹⁴ lying after maner. ¹⁵ a. ¹⁶ lying.

she sees him
sleeping with a
loaf of bread at
his side, of which
she stands in
great need.
She weeps
bitterly,
and prays to God
for aid.

The ship enters
the sea,

and is carried to
a little island.
Brohart awakes,

and entreats
Clariet to yield to
him.

But he curses God
when he perceives
that they have
reached a deserted
island.

Clariet leaves the
boat,
and runs up the
rock.
Six thieves lie hid
there.

brede / the famyne that she was in constrainyd her to take and to eat it, for she had suche famyne that she coude bere¹ it no lenger / then she made her prayers al² wepynge to our lorde god, reuyryng hym⁴ to kepe and defende her virgynyte and to preserue her fro that false tyrant who had betrayed her / so fare wente the shyp *that* it enterid into the see / the wynde was great, and they had nother helme nor sayle to ayde⁸ them selues with all / then the wynd toke them and draue them to a lytell port vnder a hye rocke in a lytell Isle / then Brohart awoke and was glad when he saw they were aryued nere to the londe / for he knew¹² ryght well the countre; ³then he sayde to the ladye / 'thou seest well⁴ thou haste no pusaunce to go agaynst me wyll / the whiche thou must nedes fulfull / for thou canste not haue any socoure of any man or woman¹⁶ leuyng, nor al thy defence cannot auayle the, thou seest well we be in an Isle wheras the see goeth rounde abought it / wherfore I haue great dought that we shall never depart⁵ hens: therfore dysmay you not,²⁰ for as nowe I wyll do the no hurt.' This thefe, when he saw that he was in this Isle, he began to curse god⁶ and his mother,⁶ and the owre that euer he sawe Claryet / for the false traytour saw well that he muste²⁴ dye there⁷ for hunger⁷ and rage / for there was no shyp to enter into the see, therfore he had then no wyl to do any yll to the lady / the which was by the grace of god, who wold not that the lady shuld be dys-²⁸ honored / ³when she sawe that they were so nere the londe, sore wepynge she issued out of the bote, and ran vp the rocke. Now god defende her,⁸ the same tyme there was on⁹ the mountayne .vi. theues who laye³² to spye the marchauntes / and they had a lytell galeyn

¹ forbear. ² Fol. cxlv[1], col. 2. ³ and. ⁴ that.
⁵ from. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷⁻⁷ by famine. ⁸ for.
⁹ vpon.

lyynge in a lytell corner of the rocke nere to them, and had couered it with boues and grene leues; when Brohart saw the ¹damoysell ryn awaye he cryed as ⁴ loude as he coude, and said, 'by god, dame,² your fleyng shall not awayle,³ for whether thou wylte or not this nyght I wyll haue my wyll⁴ of the' / the .vi. theues who were on⁵ the mountayne etyng of ther ⁸ mete, when they harde Broharte cryenge after the damoysell, they were sore abasshed, and were in great fere *that* they had bene spied. Then the damoysell, who ran vpon the mountayne, when she sawe them she ¹² sayd, 'A, syrs, I pray you haue petye of me and ayde and soeoure me agaynst this false traytoure, this nyght passyd he stole⁶ me awaye out of the cetye of Burdeaux, ⁷I am daughter to noble duke Huon' / when these ¹⁶ theues harde the damoysell they rose vp all and thought sit had bene some feyned mater to haue begyled them, but when they sawe Broharte folowe after the lady / then the mayster of the theues stepte forth and said, ²⁰'how is it that thou arte so hardy to come vpon vs / thou arte come hether to spye vs, but we shall neuuer be acused by y^e / thou arte but yll come to this brydale' / when the traytour broharte sawe the .vi. theues he was ²⁴sore abasshed, and sawe well how⁸ he shulde be fayne to defend hym selfe / then he drew out his sworde and strake the mayster thefe⁹ so on⁹ the hed that he clauie hym to the tethe / ⁷when the other .v. theues sawe ²⁸theyr maister slayne they were¹⁰ sorowful,¹¹ then they assembeled¹² Brohart on all sydes / and he defended hymselfe so well *that* or¹³ he was stryken to the erthe he slewe .iiii. of them, and in the meane tyme whyles ³²they fought / the lady Claryet came to the place

Brohart threatens
her from the boat,

and his voice
rouses the thieves.

Clariet sees them,
and begs them to
have pity on her.

They stop Brohart
in his pursuit of
Clariet.

Brohart draws his
sword, and kills
the master thief.

The other thieves
attack the traitor,
but before they
struck him down,
he killed four of
them in all.

¹ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 1. ² madame. ³ you.

⁴ pleasure. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ did steale. ⁷ and. ⁸ that.

⁹⁻¹⁰ such a blow vpon. ¹⁰ right. ¹¹ and angrie.

¹² assailed. ¹³ before.

Clariet finds food and drink in the thieves' place, and eats and drinks.

The thieves make Brohart confess his evil intentions.

Then they bind his feet, and hang him by his feet to a tree: under his head they light a fire, and thus he ends his life.

The two thieves who are left alive learn from Clariet all her story.

They give Clariet rich apparel, and admire her beauty.

wheras the theues had bene, & there she founde mete and drynke plente / ¹when she sawe the mete she was² ioyfull, and thankyd god therof, & dyd eate ³and drynke at her pleasure / and she saw how the theues ⁴had cast Brohart to the erth, wherof she was ioyful, howbeit she knewe not what company she was com⁴ to no[r]⁵ in whose handes she was aryued in ; when the theues had cast Brohart to the erth / they made hym ⁸to shew where he had taken y^e damoysell / and he shewed them all the mater, and howe he had taken her to the entente to haue dyshonored her & to haue had her to his wyfe, and to haue caryed her into some ¹²straunge place vnknownen / when y^e theues hard what Brohart had sayde / they sayde, 'O thou vntrewe and false traytoure, there is no tourmente in the worlde so crewel but that thou haste deserued a worse payne, and ¹⁶therfore by vs thy deserte shalbe rewarded ' / then they toke and bounde fast his fete, and hanged hym vp by the fete on⁶ a tre / then they made a fyer, and vnder his hede they made a great smoke, & so made hym to ²⁰dye in great doloure⁷ / thus ended the traytoure Broharte myserably his dayes / then the two theues came to the place wheras Claryet was, and they demaunded of her estate / and she shewed them all the ²⁴manner, and how she was taken by y^e traytour Broharte, and she shewed⁸ them what she was / then the theues caused her to put of her clothes that she was in, and dyd⁹ on her other ryche aparayle / ¹when they saw her ²⁸so aparayled they thoughte¹⁰ no lady nor damoysell in the worlde coude pas her in beaute, for she was come agayne to her beaute, for¹ she thoughte herselfe well assured bycause she was delyuerered fro¹¹ Brohart / ³²when one of these two theues sawe the great beaute

¹ and. ² right. ³ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 2. ⁴ in.

⁵ not in text. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ and paine. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ to put. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ the false Traitor.

of this damoysel, he sayd to¹ his felawe / 'this nyght I
wyl haue my pleasure of her' / the other sayd² ³he
welde not suffer that / and sayd howe he was y^e fyrste
4 that ouerthrue Brohart who had stollen her awaie;
then y^e other drewe out his dager and strake his felawe
into the body to the ha[r]te⁴ / & when he felte
hymselfe streken to the deth he toke corage on hym
8 and drew his sworde and stroke the other on the hed to
the braynes, and so he fell downe dede / and the other
that was wounded to the deth fel downe in lyke wyse
by his felaw ded, and so therby the ⁵mayde⁵ Claryet was
12 ⁶there all alone / when she sawe herselfe so all alone in
the Isle wheras was⁷ non habytacyon / she began then
petuously to⁸ complayne, sayeng, 'O ⁹very god,⁹ I pray
the by thy grace to haue of me pety,¹⁰ and I requyre
16 the humbely where so euer I go to sauue and defende my
vyrgynyte & ayde me ¹¹to¹¹ come to sauegard.' Nowe
let vs leue spekyng of the fayre Claryet & retourne to
speke of the kynges & prynces that were at blaye
20 abydyng the comyng thether of the¹² lady Claryet.

One of them longs
to have his
pleasure of her :
but the other will
not allow that, as
he was the first to
kill Brohart.

They fight, and
both are slain.

Claryet, finding
herself all alone,
prays to God to
 pity her.

¶ Of the great sorowe that was made at
Blaye by the abbot of Cluny and by the
prynces of the noble citye of Burdeaux for
24 the fayre¹³ Claryet that was stollen away,
& of the sorow that was made when they
saw Barnarde brought in dede by .vi.
men. And of y^e ponysshement that was
28 done to y^e lynage of¹⁴ Broharte. Ca. C.lx.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ Fol. cli. col. 1. ⁴ hafte in text.

⁵⁻⁶ faire Ladie. ⁶ left. ⁷ no after habytacyon.

⁸ weepe and. ⁹⁻¹⁰ good Lord. ¹⁰ of me after pety.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that I may. ¹² faire. ¹³ Ladie.

¹⁴ the Traytour.

The abbot of Cluny and Clariet's royal suitors at Blaye resolve to send for her from Bordeaux.

The abbot admires the kings, and especially Florence.

The maids and knights whom Brohart had bidden follow Clariet to Blaye, arrive there.

The abbot thinks Clariet is with them;

but when he learns their story, how Brohart took Clariet from them, he swoons.



Hen these kynges and prynces were aryued at Blaye, & had spoken with the¹ abbot of Cluny / they concludyd betwene them .iii. *that the lady should* ⁴
be sent for, & he that she wold frely chose shulde be her husband / for eche of them thought themselfe moste fayre / & thought² ³there coude not be founde .iii. goodlyer yonge princes then they were / ⁸ but speccially Florence, sone to the kynge of Aragon, was most fayrest. And y^e same tyme that they were determynyd to sende to y^e citye of Burdeaux for the lady Claryet,⁴ came thether the knyghtes, squyers / ¹² ladyes and damoyselles apoynted oy Broharte, thynkyng to haue found there y^e fayre Claryet, and they brought her robes and iowelles to aparaile her withal, as Brohart had deuysed / they cam and lyghted at the ¹⁶ palays. the abbot of Cluny beyng at the gate, & seyng ladyes and damoyselles comyng, thoughte² it had bene his nece, the fayre⁵ Claryet; he wente incontynent to⁶ them / and demaunded where his nece ²⁰ Claryet was / 'syr,' quod the knyghtes / 'we thynke to fynd her here with you / for yesternyghte late the lady departed fro the citye of Burdeaux to come to you / and Brohart came for her, who with syr Barnarde ²⁴ wente with her, and they commaunded vs that we shulde not fayle to be here with you at this oure' / then they shewed all the maner how Brohart came and⁷ had sayde to⁶ them / and when the¹ abbot of ²⁸ Cluny hard them / he fell sodaynely to the erth in a swoune, so that all that were there present thought² he had bene dede / then at last he reuyued and cast vp⁸ a great crye, and sayd, 'A, my ryght dere nese, I ought ³² to be sorowful thus to lese you in such⁹ maner, *that*¹⁰

¹ good. ² that. ³ Fol. cli. col. 2. ⁴ there.

⁵ Ladie. ⁶ vuto. ⁷ what he. ⁸ out. ⁹ this.

¹⁰ I.

wold to our lorde¹ Iesu chrys^t that I were vnder the erth, for I wolde lyue no lenger in this world / a, thou false traytour Brohart, thy kyn² dyd neuer good /

4 O Barnarde, wher is becom your noblenes, yet I can not byleue that ye be anything culpable³ / anon thes newes were knowen i[n]³ the town, so that all the kynges & princes were aduerteysed of the ⁴mater / ⁵they came 8 hastily to the paleys wheras they founde the abbot in sore wepynges, whome they had slayne &⁶ it had not bene for y^e good renoune that they knewe to be in hym / therfore they forbare hym / then euery man

The kings are wrathful with the abbot.

12 mounted on⁷ theyr horses & rode toward⁸ Burdeaux, wheras they founde the burgesses and the comon people in great cryes and wepynges, bewaylyng for⁹ duke Huon & the duches Esclaramonde,¹⁰ and¹¹ Claryet

All ride to Bordeaux, where the people are weeping for the loss of Huon, Esclaramonde, and Clariet.

16 theyr doughter, who was lost and betraied by Brohart / when the abbot of Cluny and all¹² the other prynces were entered in to Bordeaux and sawe suche sorowe made there that¹² they all fell to wepynge / & as they 20 were in this sorow there came thether .vi. men bryngyng with them syr Barnarde dede, whom they had found drownid in the ryuer of Geroune / if y^e sorowe was great before, then it was renewed when they sawe

Barnard's dead body, found in the Garonne, is brought into the city.

24 Barnarde dede ; if I shulde reherse the sorow that was made that daye in the citye of Burdeaux as well of the prynces as of the abbot and comon people, it shuld be ouer¹³longe to reherse / then the kynges and prynces,

28 well aduerteysed of the lyngnage and parentes issued of y^e blode of Brohart, and how alwayes they haue bene full of treason, they were serchid out in euyer plase in the citye, as well men as women and chylldren there

Brohart's kindred had always been full of treason, and they are all sought out, men, women, and children, to the number of

32 were found out to the nombre of .lxx. persons / they

¹⁻¹ god. ² kindred. ³ iy in text.

⁴ Fol. cl. back, col. 1. ⁵ and. ⁶ if. ⁷ yppon.

⁸ the Citie. ⁹ the noble. ¹⁰ his wife. ¹¹ for.

¹² omitted. ¹³ too.

70, and cast into
the Garonne.

The suitors then
leave Bordeaux,

and the abbot
causes Barnard
to be buried.

were all taken and caste in to the reuer of Geroune, to the entent *that* none shulde be lefte alyue of the¹ kynrede, and neuer² to be had in remembraunce / after this³ done y^e kynges and prynces departed out of 4 the citye & rode in to theyr⁴ countrees ryght sorowfull and sore dyspleased for the lesyng of the lady Claryet ; and the abbot abode stylle at Bur⁵deaux and buryed Barnarde, who was⁶ sore complayned⁷ of all⁸ the 8 people. Now let vs leue spekyng of them and retourne to y^e⁹ lady Claryet who was all alone on¹⁰ the mountayne.

¶ How the lady Claryet all alone cam to the 12
see syde, wheras aryued the kyng of Granad
in a ship, who toke awaye claryet / and of
other maters.

Ca. C.lxi.



Ow sheweth the story¹¹ *that* after y^e 16
theues were slayne & Brohart dede,
the lady Claret abode alone vpon
the mountayne with the dede men ;
she wept petyously, & sayd, ‘O 20
12 very god,¹² in what owre was I borne in / alas what¹³
hap & desteny haue I / it had bene better for me
neuer to haue bene borne, for I se wel here I must dye /
alas, I wote not whether to go, for in this Isle is nother 24
man nor woman to whome I maye go for any refu¹⁴ge.’
thus sore complaynyng y^e lady went downe the
mountayne, and by that tyme the shyppe that she came
in was floted awaye / and as she loked into the see she 28
saw a great shyppe comyng towards that¹⁵ porte for
fresshe water and for wode / ¹⁶when she sawe that she
was ioyful, & thanked our lorde Iesu chryszt ; ¹⁶she

¹ that. ² more. ³ was. ⁴ owne.

⁵ Fol. cli. back, col. 2. ⁶ were. ⁷ for. ⁸ omitted.

⁹ faire. ¹⁰ vppon. ¹¹ Historie. ¹²⁻¹² good Lord.

¹³ ill. ¹⁴ Fol. clii, col. 1. ¹⁵ the. ¹⁶ and.

Claret fears she
must die on the
deserted island.

A great ship
approaches her,
and she is joyful.

thoughte they had bene chrysten men / but they were
 Sarasyns and paynymes / & with them was a kynge
 who was theyr lorde & souerayne, he was kynge of
 4 Granade, and was retournyng into his countre, but he
 had suche fortune on¹ the see that he was constrainyd
 to come thether; then they cast theyr ancre and toke
 lond, and the kynge, when he saw the damoysell² on¹
 8 y^e see syde, he demaunded of her what she was and
 of what countre / 'syr,' quod she, 'syn ye wyll knowe
 of myne estate I shall shew you' / then y^e yonge³ lady
 shewed before all them that were there present how she
 12 was doughter to duke Huon⁴ of Burdeaux, and shewed
 all the aduenture that was fallen to⁵ her / when the
 kynge Sarasyn⁶ harde that he was⁷ ioyfull, and sayd /
 'fayre damoysell,² it is happy for you that I haue
 16 founde you, for I haue no wyfe, ye shall be my wyfe
 and lye withe me this nyghte / but fyrste ye muste
 renewe⁸ your law and byleue in¹ y^e lawe of Mahomet,
 on¹ whome I do byleue' / when the⁹ lady harde the
 20 paynyme kyng she sayd, 'god forbede that I shuld leue
 the lawe of Iesu Chryste to byleue ¹⁰on¹⁰ Mahomet,
 I had rather haue all my members drawen one pece fro
 another with wylde horses then to be wyfe to suche a
 24 man as ye be' / when the kynge harde y^e damoysel
 that she set so lytel³ pryce³ by hym he had great
 dyspleasure therat, & lyfte vp his hand and gaue her
 on¹ the cheke¹¹suche a blowe that y^e blode ran out of
 28 her mouthe & nose, so that she fel to the erth, wherof
 he was sore blamed of his men / and he said to⁵ them,
 'whye, syrs, ¹²hard you not¹² how she dyspysed our
 lawe and set no more by me then yf I were¹³ a boy';
 32 then he commaunded that they shuld take & cast her

It belongs to the
 saracen king of
 Granade, who is
 on board.

He sees Clariet,
 and asks her her
 name and
 country.

He offers to
 marry her, but
 orders her first
 to become
 Mahomedan.

Clariet declares
 she will never be
 the king's wife.

The king in anger
 strikes her on the
 cheek.

¹ vpon. ² Ladie. ³ omitted. ⁴ Huon, duke.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ Sarazin kinge. ⁷ right. ⁸ deny.

⁹ faire. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ in the law of. ¹¹ Fol. clii. col. 2.

¹²⁻¹² did you not hear. ¹³ had been but.

He bids his men
cast her in the
sea;
but they carry
her on board ship.

When the ship
sails away, the
king sees her on
board, and
threatens to have
his pleasure of
her.

She kneels before
him and begs for
mercy.

She prays to the
Virgin,

and a great storm
rises to aid her.

into the see / and he departed fro her in great displeasure *that* she answered hym so rudely / then the sarasyns came & toke the lady rudely and caried her into the shyp, and so saued her, that¹ the kyng knew 4 not therof / then when the kynge cam agayne to the shyp they hoysed² in³ theyr ancles and made⁴ sayle, & had good wynd ; then as the kynge walked vp & downe in the shyp he sawe the damoysell within the 8 shyp, wherof he was⁵ abasshed, for he⁶ had⁶ thought that his men had drownid her / then he regarded⁷ her and thoughte that he neuer sawe so fayre a damoysell,⁸ & so he desired her with all his hart, and sayde to⁹ 12 her, ‘fayre damoysell,⁸ now ye be here your denyall shall not auayle you, for this nyght ye shall lye with me⁶ al nakyd⁶ / wher¹⁰ Claryet harde the paynyme kynge / deuoutly she called on¹¹ our lord¹² Iesu chrys¹² 16 & humbely requyryng hym to preserue her virgynyte & to bryng^e her out of the handes of y^e sarasyns / 13 then she kneled downe before y^e kyng, humbely desyryng hym to haue marcy¹⁴ of her, & said how she 20 was content to folowe his pleasure as sone as he came into his owne contre / ‘wel,’ quod the kyng, ‘whether ye wyl or not ye must suffer my pleasure / for I wyl not depart fro ye tyl¹⁵ ye¹⁶ haue lyen with me¹⁷ one 24 nyght / and that I may holde you in myne armes’ / 13 when she vnderstoode hym she began sore to wepe, desyryng¹² the vyrgyn Mary¹² to socoure and ayde¹⁸ her at that tyme / for otherwyse she saw¹⁹ well she was but 28 lost / therwith there²⁰ rose vp²⁰ so great a wynde and so horrifyble that the see that was calme and peasable began to ryse⁶ and swell⁶ so maruaylously that the

¹ but. ² drew. ³ vp. ⁴ hoysed vp. ⁵ sore.
⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ looked vppon. ⁸ Ladie. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ the faire Ladie. ¹¹ vppon. ¹²⁻¹² god. ¹³ and.
¹⁴ pittie. ¹⁵ vntill. ¹⁶ I. ¹⁷ you.
¹⁸ aide before succour. ¹⁹ Fol. clii. back, col. 1.
²⁰⁻²⁰ arose.

wawes were as hye as mountaynes, and the wynde¹ so great that whether the sarasyns wolde or not it behoued them to abandon theyr shyp to y^e wynde² and

The king and all his men think they will die.

4 wether,² wherof they were in suche fere that the kynge and all other had great doute of the³ dethe;

⁴theyr sayle was all to torne with y^e wynd, & nere hande the shyp perysshed, they cryed⁵ vp on theyr god

The king is sore afraid.

8 Mahomet for socour and ayde; the kynge was in such fere that he had⁶ no lyste to desyre the fayre⁷ Claryet

of her loue, who was sore afrayde & pale for fere / this tourmente and tempeste endured all the nyghte / &

12 they were dreuen the same nyght be yonde valence y^e great / and in the mornynge they sawe y^e towne of

Tours, to the whiche porte the wynde draue them / ⁸when the paynynms saw that they were aryued there

The next day the wind drives them to the town of Tours,

16 they were⁹ sorowfull, for they knew well¹⁰ the towne was christened / they saw no maner how to eschew it,

but they had rather to be as sclaves all theyr lyues then to be drownyd in the see / the same tyme ther was

20 aryued at the same porte a noble knyght namyd syr Peter of Aragon; ⁸when he saw the other shyp

comynge to the porte by constrainte of the wynde, and sawe well without it were socoured the shyp shuld be

where a brave knight, Sir Peter of Aragon, had just arrived.

24 perysshed agaynst the rocke, wherby they within and all the ryches shulde be perysshed and drowned / then

he cryed to the Galeyres that laye in the porte to go and socoure the straung shyp / ⁸then the maryners

The Saracens' ship is nearly wrecked, when Sir Peter goes in his galleyes to her rescue.

28 wente to the see and came to the shyppe.

¹¹¶ when the Sarasyns sawe that they were in fere

to be slayne, then there came two paynynms to the damoysell to haue taken her and to haue cast her into

The Saracens fear the Christians will slay them, and endeavour to fling Clarinet overboard; but she clings to the mast, and cannot be moved.

32 the see. Then she toke the mast of the shyppe in her armes and helde it so faste that they coude not drawe

¹ was. ²⁻² omitted. ³ their. ⁴ for.

⁵ and called. ⁶ now. ⁷ Ladie. ⁸ and. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ Fol. clii. back, col. 2,

her fro it / then the Aragonys began to aproche to the shyppe, and cast their hokes to ioyne to gether. The lady in the shyppe had great fere / the whiche was no maruayle / howbeit she was ioyfull when she knew¹ 4 they that came were chrystened / then the Aragonoys by the cordes and ropes enterid into the shyppe / ²when Peter of Aragon & his company were entered into the shyp he sawe the damoysel³ sore wepyng / 8 then he demaunded of the Sarasyns where they had get⁴ that prynces / ‘ryghte nowe⁵ I sawe howe ye wold haue taken & cast her into the see and⁶ I had not come hastily’ / then one of them sayd / ‘syr, we be of 12 Granade, and fortune of y^e see hath dreuyn vs hether, we be redy to be your sclaves or els to pay raunsome at your pleasure.’ ‘Paynyme,’ quod peter, ‘all the golde in y^e worlde shall not saue your lyues / none of 16 you shal scape’ / then he commaunded that they shulde all be slayne, and that none shulde⁷ scape alyue, the which was done incontynente / all were slayne excepte the kynge, of whome Peter of Aragone de- 20 maunded whye he wolde haue drowned that noble damoysell, and where they⁸ founde her / ‘syr,’ quod y^e kyng, ‘we knowe her not / nor what she is, for we founde her all alone vpon a rocke in an Isle within the 24 see. And when I sawe the great beaute and bountye that was in her I couetyd her, and caused her to be put into my shyppe, thynkyng to ha[ue] hadde my pleasure of her, but she wolde⁹ in no wyse suffer me / wherfore 28 I was displeasyd withe her’ / ‘well,’ quod Peter, ‘ye shall be slayne and go after your men with out ye wyl byleue in Iesu chryst and renounce the lawe of Mahomet’ / ‘syr,’ quod the paynyme, ‘I had rather¹⁰ be 32 slayne all quycke then to leue my holy law and to take

The Arragonese
enter the ship
and see her
struggling with
the men.

Peter asks the
Saracens how she
came there.

In anger at their
cruelty, he and
his sailors slay
all the Saracens
except the king.

The king tells
Peter how he
found Clariet.

Peter replies that
he must accept
Christ or die.

The king refuses
to abandon
Mahomet.

¹ that. ² and. ³ Ladie. ⁴ gotten
⁵ (quoth hee). ⁶ if. ⁷ shall. ⁸ had.
⁹ Fol. cliii. col. 1. ¹⁰ to.

that byleue that ye ar of' / when Peter hard hym saye
so he gaue hym with his sworde suche a stroke on¹ the
hede *that* he clae it to the tethe, and the kynge
4 fel downe dede, wherof y^e lady Claryet was² ioyfull.

and Peter killis
him.

Then Peter came to³ her and demaunded what she was
and where the paynyme⁴ founde her / 'syr,' quod the
damoysell,⁵ 'I was borne in a parte of fraunce in a
8 towne named Nauntes, in bretayne. ⁶My father was of

Clariet tells Peter
a false story of
her misfortunes.

Lisbon, and he had great desyre to se his frendes, so he
entered into a shyp and two of my bretherne and my
selfe & dyuers other marchauntes together, & when we
12 had thought to haue entered into y^e hauen at Lysbone,

a great horryste wynde toke vs so that we were fayne
to abandon our shyp and to let it go by the grace
of god and at the wyl of the wynde and wether / then

16 we passed the straytes of Marocke, and then our shyppe
ran agaynst a rocke & brast⁷ all to peces, so that my
father and all that were in the shyppe were drowned /

and by the grace of god I sate on⁸ a sack of wolle and
20 helde me faste, & then the waues brought me to the
lond syde, wherof I thanke god / and within an owe
after this hethen kynge aryued there with his company
by fortune of the se, and so they toke me into theyr

24 shyppe / and the kynge sore⁹ enforced hymselfe to
haue had his pleasure of me / and then by fortune
of another tempest we aryued here, wheras ye haue
slayne hym and all his.¹⁰ ¹¹'fayre damoysell,' quod

28 Peter of Aragon, 'ye maye thanke god that ye be come
into myne handes' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I knowe well¹² yf
ye had not bene I had bene loste for cuer / & therfore,

She offers to
serve Peter, who
has saved her,
as a maid of his
household.

syr, as longe as god¹³ hath geuen¹³ me lyfe I wyll be
32 gladde to serue you as the moste lowest chaumberer¹⁴ in

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ vnto. ⁴ had. ⁵ Ladie.
⁶ and. ⁷ burst. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ men.

¹¹ Fol. cliii. col. 2. ¹² that. ¹³⁻¹³ shall giue.

¹⁴ Chamberlaine.

your house, and put my body and honeste into goddes handes and youers' / 'fayre damoysell,' quod Peter,

Peter promises to protect her.

'as long as I leue ye shall not lacke / for by the grace of god your body and youre honoure shall be well 4 saued / and peraduenture ¹maye¹ haue such a husband that ye shall thynke your selfe² happy / our lorde³ dyd⁴ you a great grace when ye fell into my handes.'

Then Peter of Aragon toke the damoysell by the 8

He sails with her to Tarragona, where the king of Arragon was staying.

hande and commaundyd to hoyse vp the sayles, and to retourne to⁴ Taragon, a citye betwene Barselone and Valence the great / wheras then was the kyng of Aragon / ⁵so longe they sayled nyghte and daye that at 12

the laste they sawe the towers of Taragone, wherof they thanked god / and as they aproched ⁶vnto⁶ the citye the kynge of Aragon was in his palais lokynge out at a wyndowe / then he sawe comyng in the see .vi. galeys 16 and a great shyppe, wherof he was abasshed, and maruayled what it myght be / for he knewe them not bycause of the great shyppe / then they *that* knew them came to the kynge and sayde how it was his 20

The king learns of his cousin Peter's approach, and goes to the shore to meet him.

cosyn, Peter of Aragon, ⁷the whiche⁷ is comen home in sauctye, thanked be god. Then the kynge and his lordes with hym wente downe and wente to the see syde, where as they founde the noble man, Peter of 24

Aragon his cosyn, and all his compayne with hym.

Then the kyng embraced hym and sayd, 'cosyn, ye are ryght hartely welcom, I am ioyfull ⁸of your good aduenture. I pray you, cosynne, shewe me where 28 haue ye get this great shyppe that semeth to be so ryche' / then peter shewed⁴ hym all the aduenture, and how he rescued the damoysel out of the handes of the Sarasyns / and he shewed her to⁴ the kynge, and 32 sayde / 'syr, I byleue in this world there is not a

Peter relates his adventures.

¹⁻¹ you shall. ² right. ³ god. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ and. ⁶⁻⁶ neere to. ⁷⁻⁷ who.

⁸ Fol. cliii. back, col. 1.

fayrer, swetter, nor more gracieous,¹ nor none that semeth more to be extraute of a hye lynage' / the kynge behelde the damoysell, and she kneled downe
4 before hym / 'fayre damoysell,' quod the kynge, 'I praye you shewe me what ye be and of what lynage / and fro whence ye come' / the damoysell,² who was in great fere to name herselfe trewly / for fere lest she
8 shulde be in yll handes / ³then she³ caste downe her hede⁴ and began to wepe so that the teres fell fro her eyen, and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you desyre no suche thynge of me at this tyme, for I know not who is my

12 parente nor of what lynage I am of' / when the kynge vnderstode the damoysel and sawe how she wepte he had great petye of her, and comforted her as moch as he myght⁵ / then Peter shewed⁶ the kynge al that
16 the damoysell had shewed hym / before, a[n]d⁷ howe³

'she was founde by the sarasyns,⁸ whome I haue slayne, she was happy that she fell in⁹ my handes / for by the grace of god I shall se her well maryed and set forthe' /

20 then the kynge and Peter wente fro the shyppes into y^e towne, & causid the damoysell to be brought after them with two Ientylmen in to Peters logynge, and as she passed thrughe the towne she was regarded with
24 ladyes and damoyselles, and they al praysed her beautye, sayeng one to another that there was neuer a fayrer² borne / nor more lykely to become of a noble blode. ¹⁰Great feast¹¹ was made in the citye for y^e

28 comynge home of Peter of Aragon, and of the damoysell that he had brought with hym ; the same tyme Florence y^e / kynges sone had bene on¹² hontynge, & cam home, and when he was in the towne and saw
32 the stretes hanged and the ladyes & damoysels & other makynge so great ioye and feast¹¹ / he was abasshed,

The king asks of Clariet her lineage and country.

Clariet hesitates to tell, for she does not know whether he is friend or foe.

Peter tells the king all he knows of her.

She is taken to Peter's lodging.

All the townspeople admire her beauty,

and there is great feasting made.

Florence, the king's son, returns from hunting, and he wonders at the merry-making.

¹ creature. ² Ladie. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ presently.

⁵ could. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ ayd in text. ⁸ (quoth he).
⁹ to. ¹⁰ Fol. cliii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ feasting. ¹² a.

and demaunded of a burges yf there were any newe weddynge / and ¹what they were¹ that the people made so great ioye and feast⁴ / 'syr,' quod the burges, 'the feast that is made nowe and the ioye is for the comyng ⁴

He is told of
Peter's capture of
the Saracen ship.

home of Peter of Aragon, who hathe bene so longe out, for that god hath sent hym good aduenture, for he hath wonne and conquered the great shyppe of Malyke,² wherin was y^e kynge of Granade, great ryches he hath ⁸

wonne, and he hath slayne all the sarasyns that were in the shyppe.' Then Florence restid not tyl he came

He goes to Peter's
lodging and sees
Clariet.

to his cosyn, Peter of Aragons logynge, & made hym good chere, and said, 'cosyn, ye are welcome home, ¹²

and I am ryght ioyous³ of youre good aduenture' / 'syr,' quod Peter, 'I thanke god I haue had good hap⁴ / &, syr, I shall shewe you one thynge that I

haue wonne wherof I am moste ioyfull.' then he ¹⁶ shewed hym the damoysell who was sober and sad, and shewed hym how he wannte her / when Florence

Florence is struck
by her beauty,

saw the damoysell his harte sprange for ioye / and y^e more he beheld her the more fayrer she semyd. And ²⁰

the damoysell behelde hym ryght humbely / & she thoughte⁵ she neuer saw⁶ so fayer a⁶ yonge man before,

nor better made nor formed of all his membres.

and Clariet ad-
mires his beauty.

Florence that⁷ behelde the damoysel, by reason wherof the darte of loue strake hym to the harte / wherof the wounde coude not lyghtely be helyd / I ⁸maye well

saye that in all the worlde in that tyme coude not be founde agayne such two⁹ parsones, for the great beaute ²⁴

wherwith they were garnysshed coude not be dyscryued / for god & nature had no thynge¹⁰ for gotten in fourmynge

They fall deeply
in love with one
another.

of them / swetely they regarded ech other / at that tyme yf Florence had knownen that she had bene the ²⁸

fayre Clariet of Burdeaux he wolde haue maryed her

¹⁻¹ wherefore it was.

² Maliga.

³ ioyfull.

⁴ fortune. ⁵ that.

⁶⁻⁶ a fairer.

⁷ so.

⁸ Fol. clivii. col. 1.

⁹ such.

¹⁰ nothing after forgotten.

incontynent; she was greatly taken in the loue of Florence, and so was he with her, then he desyred with all his harte to knowe what she was / for his
 4 hart gaue hym that she shulde be come of some noble blode, and sayd to¹ hymselfe that he desyred moche to know it, and that in all the world ther was no thynge he loued so well, & thought that without her loue
 8 he coude not longe endure / thynkyng to desyre her to take hym for her louer, and *that* yf she refuse hym that shorte shulde be his lyfe / but he² thought to be so bold as to speke to her. Thus Florence, taken with
 12 y^e fyre of loue, toke the fayre damoysell by the llyly whyght hande & caused her to sit downe by hym / then he drewe her a lytel aparte to the entent *that* none shulde here hym / ³then he sayd, ‘fayre damoy-
 16 sell, ye be welcome into these partyes / I pray you
⁴shewe me what ye be, and of what lygnage’ / ‘syr,’ quod the damoysell, ‘lytell shal you wynne when ye
 know the sartayne what I am / but synne it pleaseth
 20 you to knowe it² I shall shewe you / syr, know for trouthe I am daughter to a pouer honest man of the counstre, and in dayes passed was one of the chaumberers with the duches Esclaramond of Burdeaux; And, syr,
 24 by great treason I was stollen awaye / wherby syn I haue suffered moche pouertye, so that yf god & this noble⁵ man, Peter of Aragon, had not rescued me I had bene loste for euer / & therfore, syr, synne I am pouer
 28 and desolate / I requyre you in the honoure of our lorde⁶ that ye wyll not requyre me of any velany of my body and honeste nother in dede nor worde / and, syr,
 I byleue surlye no more ye thynke to do / for I had
 32 rather be hewen al to peces then any creature shulde haue pleasure of my body without I were maryed’ / ‘fayre damoysell,’ quod he, ‘I swere by god that me

Florence asks of
her her history.

She falsely tells
him she is a poor
man's daughter,
and a servant of
the duchess
Esclaramonde.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ and. ⁴ to.

⁵ Fol. cliiii. col. 2. ⁶ god.

Florence promises
to protect her
from all dis-
honour.

created that of me nor of any other leuyng man ye shal
not be desyred agaynst your honoure / for I knowe no
man leuyng *that* wolde requyre you of any dyshonour
or saye any thynge that shulde not be agreeable to you, 4
but I shall make hym to dye of an yll dethe / and I
wyll that ye know¹ fro hensforth I wyll be your trew
louer / and none shall make departure of vs two / and

If his father were
dead he would
marry her.

yf it were so that my father were dede I wold neuer 8
haue other wyfe but you' / 'syr,' quod the damoysell,²

Clariet begs him
to dismiss such a
thought.

'I pray you forbere spekyng of any such wordes / for
it were not mete for the sone of a Kyng so to lowe³
hymselfe as to set his loue vpon so pouer a mayd 12
as I am / ⁴ye set your harte⁵ in to lowe a place⁵ / for yf
y^e kynge your father parseyue any thinge *that* ye shuld
set your loue on⁶ me, he wolde sone put me to dethe' /
therwith she caste downe her hede and sayd to her selfe / 16

She secretly
regrets that
Florence does not
know her true
rank.

'O ⁷very God,⁷ yf this yong prynce knew surerly what I
were, yt myght well be that he wolde haue me in
maryage / as yet in all my lyfe I neuer set my loue
vpon any parson but this yonge man whome I neuer 20
saw before, ⁸ maketh me to thynke that⁹ I neuer
thought before / so¹⁰ that it maketh my blode and all
my membres to trymble / I am in worse case for his
¹¹ loue then he is for me' / therwith she began sore to 24
wepe / when Florence sawe her he was ryght sorowfull,

Florence begs her
to take him for
her servant, and
confesses his love.

& sayd, 'fayre damoysell, I requyre you to take me
for your trewe and faythfull seruaunte / otherwyse
I can not se how I shulde¹² leue longe' / 'syr,' quod 28
she, 'I am wel content to graunt you my loue / for¹³
that your dede and thought be vpon goodnes and
honour / for yf I may parseyue in any maner that your
thoughte be otherwyse ye haue loste my loue for euer.' 32

¹ that. ² Ladie. ³ debase. ⁴ beware how.

⁵⁻⁵ to loue. ⁶ vppon. ⁷⁻⁷ good Lord. ⁸ it.

⁹ which. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ Fol. clivii, back, col. 1

¹² shall. ¹³ so.

'Fayre louer,' quod Florenee, 'haue no doughte therof
that euer I shall haue any thoughte of velany agaynst
you.' Thus as ye haue harde was the fyrste aquaynt-
4 aunce betwene these two louers, that is to saye, the
fayre Claryet daughter to duke Huon of Burdeaux,
& of Florence son to y^e kyng of Aragon.

¶ Howe the kynge defended¹ his sone Flor-
ence that he shuld not be so hardy² to
fal aquaynted withe the fayre damoysel³
Claryet / and how Florenee promysed the
kyng, his father, to delyuer into his handes
12 the kyng of Nauerne⁴ presoner, in case⁵ he
wyl⁶ be content at his retourne that he
may⁷ haue the new found damoysel / the
which thing the kyng promysed / but he
16 dyd it not, for he made the damoysel to
be taken, and had drowned her if Peter
of Aragon had not bene, who rescued⁸
her.⁹

Ca. C.lxii.

20 ¹⁰  Hen Florenee had long deuysed with
the damoysell / he toke¹¹ leue of her
and of Peter of Aragon his cosyn,
and then he retourned to the kyng
24 his father, and the nexte day he wente
agayne to the damoyselles lodgyng / so ofte he
resorted thether that¹² brute ran in the palays and also
in y^e towne how that Florenee was amorous of the
28 damoysell that Peter of Aragon had brought thether /
¹³y^e mater at the last was shewed to kyng Garyn his
father / wherwith he was so sorowfull that he was all

The next day
Florence visits
Clariet again,
and so often he
came that all sail
that he was in
love with her.

¹ forbade. ² as. ³ Ladie. ⁴ Nauarre. ⁵ that.
⁶ would. ⁷ might. ⁸ and sauied. ⁹ from the death.
¹⁰ Fol. cliii, back, col. 2. ¹¹ his. ¹² great. ¹³ and.

The king, his
father, learns the
rumour, and
angrily swears to
slay Clariet if it
be true.

Florence confesses
his visits to
Clariet to the
king.

The king warns
the young man to
avoid her.

Florence pleads
that it is the part
of youth to love,

in a rage, and sayde to¹ hymselfe / ‘a, good lord, this new founde damoysell shall² wynne my sone yf she can and get hym fro me; I knowe well by reason of the great beautye that is in her my sone shall² be 4 enamoryd of her, but by the lorde³ I beleue on⁴ yf I se that my son other go or come to⁵ her, as it is sayd he dothe, that aquayntauns shall be derely solde⁶ / for with myne owne⁷ handes I shall sle her’ / ryght sory 8 & angery was kynge Guaryn with his son Florence and with the damoysell / ⁸he sente for his sone / & when he was before hym, the kynge demaunded hym fersly for whense he came / ‘syr,’ quod Florence, ‘I haue 12 bene a sportyng in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons house / and haue passed the tyme there with the newe come damoysel / the moste fayreste that euer was borne, and⁹ the moste ientylest and best taught, ryghte fayre 16 and swete ar her deuyses.’ ‘Florence,’ quod the kynge, ‘I charge the in as moche as thou fereste my dys- pleasure, that thou come no more at her, beware that thou fallest not¹⁰ in amours with¹⁰ her / yf thou do 20 thou werte neuer so yll aquainted with any loue, nor there neuer came so yll aduenture to the damoysell yf she draw the to loue her / for yf I may knowe that thou goest thether any more I shall set her in such a pryon wheras I shall cause her to ende her dayes myserably’ / ‘father,’ quod Florence, ‘me thynke ye do great wronge to let¹¹ vs to playe &¹²to deuyse¹² together in all goodness & honour, god forbede¹³ that I shuld 28 entende any wayes to¹⁴haue her and¹⁴ disceyue her; dere father, remember¹⁵ ye haue bene yong, therfore suffer that youthe may pas the¹⁶ tyme in goodness and honoure with vs as it hathe done with you / now ye 32

¹ within. ² wyll. ³ god that. ⁴ vppon.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ bought. ⁷ Fol. clv. col. 1. ⁸ then.

⁹ and and in text. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enamoured of. ¹¹ forbid.

¹²⁻¹² sport. ¹³ defend. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ that.

¹⁶ their.

are a¹ .iiii. score yere or more ye ought to thinke of no
thyng but to serue god, and eat, & drinke, and slepe;
it ought not to trouble you thoughte our youthe pas the
4 tyme in good warkes / ye ought to be content *that we*
loue by amours as ye haue done or² this / for to the
damoysell I bere all honoure, ³I wyll loue her how so
euer yt be taken fayre or fowle / ther is no man leuyng
8 shall let me as longe as lyfe is ⁴in my body / she is
fayre and ientyll / and it is sayd how⁵ I am fayre, and
⁶how⁶ that it were a mete copyll of ⁷ vs twayne⁸ to be
ioyned together in maryage, ³therfore, father, I praye
12 you blame no more me nor the damoysel, for in all
that I can⁹ I am ¹⁰hers¹⁰ and she is myne.'

as all old men
have done when
young.

He loves Claric
honourably,

and begs his
father to favour
their union.

' when the kynge¹¹ vnderstode his sone, in great
yre and displeasure he sayd, 'O thou ungarcous lad,¹²

The king is very
angry at his
words.

16 lytell thou praysest or honourest me in that thou wylte
do thus agaynst my wyll ; knowe for sartayne yf I may
lyue¹³ tyll tomorowe in y^e mornynge I shall make a
departure of your two loues' / when Florence hard his
20 father, he sayde / 'my dere lord and father, and¹⁴ god
wyll ye shall not do as ye haue sayd / for yf ye do
with myne owne handes I shall slee my selfe, for I
wyll not lyue one day after' / when the kynge hard
24 that he was¹⁵ sorowfull for fere of lesyng of his sone /
& studyed in¹⁶ hymselfe what to do / then he sayde,
'fayre sone, take thyne armure and go and seke
aduentures as I haue done in my tyme, then I shall
28 mary the to some wyfe, suche one as thou canste finde
in any countre, thoughte she be neuer so great or noble
I shall cause the to haue her / yf thou wylte leue¹⁷
& forsake this newe founde damoysel / for by her no
32 welthe nor honoure can come to¹⁸ the / it shulde be a

If aught happen
to Claric,
Florence will slay
himself.

The king loves
him too well to
put his life in
peril, and bides
him go abroad
and seek adven-
tures.

¹ about. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. clv. col. 2.
⁵ that. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ for. ⁸ two. ⁹ doc.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ her Louer. ¹¹ had well. ¹² Son. ¹³ but.
¹⁴ if. ¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ leue *after* forsake.
¹⁸ vnto.

great yl¹ to² me³ / that after my dayes it shuld be
 said that a new found damoysell shuld be lady &
 quene of my realme / thou knowest well howe thyne
 vngle, the kynge of Nauerne,⁴ maketh me great warre / 4
 for a debate that is lately fallen betwene hym and me /
 I know wel now at this moneth of Apryl he wyll come
 & inuade my realme /⁵ ther⁶fore, fayre⁷ sone, seke for
 some other wyfe and let thys foley pas ; then I shall 8
 make thee a knyght, and then helpe to ayde & defend
 my realme agaynst the kynge of Nauerne⁴ thyne vngle /
 thou arte byg and stronge ynougue to defend my
 londe.' 7 'Father,' quod Florence, 'speke no more to² 12
 me, for I wyl neuer haue⁸ other wyfe but this fayre
 damoysell, whome I loue enterly' / 'sone,' quod the
 kynge / 'thou abaseste thy selfe ouer lowe, nor there is
 no frende nor kynne⁹ that thou haste that wyll kepe 16
 any company with *thee*, but they wyll clene fle fro the ;
 therfore, fayre⁷ sone, put away fro the this foly /
 beware in as moche as thou thynkest to haue my realme
 after my disceas, and on¹⁰ the Payne to be banysshed¹¹ 20
 take not her agaynst my wyll.'

THEN the kyng called to² hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, and charged hym that yf Florence his sone came any more to his logynge that he shulde 24 incontynent¹² shewe it hym¹² / 'for I promyse¹³ by the faythe that I owe to² our lorde¹⁴ Iesu chryst,¹⁴ yf he come thether any more I shal cause the damoysell that is in your howse to be slayne.' Florence was ryght 28 sorowfull when he hard the pleasure of the kynge his father ; thus as the kynge rebuked his sone there came in a knyght and kneled downe and sayd : 'syr, I haue brought you yl tydinges, for the kynge of Nauerne⁴ 32

The king of
Navarre threat-
ens Arragon;

Florence shall
fight against him.

But Florence will
have no wife but
Clariet.

A messenger
brings news that
the king of
Navarre has
ravaged Arragon,

¹ euill. ² vnto. ³ thee. ⁴ Nauarre. ⁵ and.
⁶ Fol. clv. back, col. 1. ⁷ good. ⁸ no. ⁹ kindred.
¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ out of my Countrey. ¹²⁻¹² tell him of it.
¹³ (quoth hee). ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ god.

is entered into your realme, and settethe all your countre
in flambe and fyre, and nere to your citye they be
to the nombre mo then .xxx.M. men, besyde the great
4 batayle *that cometh after*, wherin ther is a¹ .lx.M.
men / they exyle your countre, ²they sle men, women
and chylldren ; they spare nother yonge ³nor olde, it is
⁴nede that ye make haste & to bryng your men
8 together to resyste your enemyes' / when kyng Gauryn
hard the messanger he was⁵ sorowful ; then he called
to⁶ hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, who was his chefe
constable, and sayde, 'syrs, make redy our men to
12 resyste our enemyes' / then he called to⁶ hym Florence
his sone, & sayd / 'fayre sone, take thyne harnays⁷ and
shewe thy vertue agaynst thyne enemyes who wasteth
my realme. ²Take on⁸ the chefe charg and lede myne
16 host / for I haue no pusaunce nor strenth to do it, for⁹
the great age that I am of ; I haue leued so longe *that*
I can no more ryde / therfore defende thou the londe
that thou shalte holde after me, and then doest thou
20 ¹⁰wysely' ¹⁰ / 'father,' quod Florence, ¹¹'not and god
wyll I shall put my harnayes¹¹ on my backe to defende
your lond without¹² ye wyll geue me in maryage
y^e fayre damoysel¹³ in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons
24 house / yf ye wyll do me that courtoysye and promyse
me to do it / I shall delyuer into your handes your
enemye as presoner to do with hym your pleasure,
otherwyse loke not that I shall do anythyng.' when
28 the kynge saw that his sone wold none otherwyse do¹⁴ /
then he commaunded all his other men, euery man, to
arme him¹⁵ & go and resyste his enemyes / the which
they dyd incontynent ; ²they issued out into the feldes
32 mo then .x.M. men, &¹⁶ Peter of Aragon had the ledynge

and is slaying
with 30,000 men
all the
Arragonese.

Florence is
ordered by his
father to lead the
host against the
enemy;

but he will not go
unless he is per-
mitted to marry
Clariet.

The king orders
his men to set out
under Peter of
Arragon.

¹ about. ² and. ³ Fol. clv. back, col. 2. ⁴ great.

⁵ right. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ armour. ⁸ vppon.

⁹ because of. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ as a wise man should doe.

¹¹⁻¹¹ by the grace of god I will put no armour. ¹² except.

¹³ that is. ¹⁴ do *after* wold. ¹⁵ self. ¹⁶ Sir.

They meet the army of Navarre,

and although they fight bravely are forced to retire.

The men of Navarre pitch their tents outside Tarragona.

Florence is advised again to lead the army: and on his refusing, unless his request be granted, the king falsely yields to him.

The king intends to drown Clariet while Florence is fighting.

of them, and they were not out of the towne two leges but they encountered theyr enemyes / there were many speres broken and many a knyght beten to the erth & slayne,¹ theyr bodyes lyenge without sowles amone 4 the horse fete / ryght valyauntly² bare hymselfe that day² Peter of Aragon.³ But he [h]ad⁴ not strenthe⁵ suffycyent, but⁶ ⁷his enemyes encreasid, wherfore he was constrainyd to recule⁸ backe towardses y^e city / 8 howbeit or⁹ he entered he dyd great¹⁰ domage to¹¹ his enemyes / when the Nauernoys saw the Aragonoys reculed⁸ into the citye, then they pyght vp theyr tentes and pauylions aboute the towne / ¹when kynge Gauryn 12 sawe his men retournyd, then he called his sone Florence and sayde / ‘sone, take thyne harnays¹² & go ayde and¹³ defend the londe, the which partayneth to the after my dysses’ / ‘syr,’ quod Florence, ‘that shall¹⁴ I neuer 16 do without fyrist ye promyse me to geue me the fayre damoysel in maryage, by that couenant that I shall delyuer into youre handes as presoner myne vnkle the kyng of Nauerne’ / when the kynge¹⁵ hard hym he 20 mused a lytell, and sayd / ¹⁶‘sone, I graunt the thyne desyre so that thou wylte delyuer me thyne vnkle the kyng of Nauerne to do with hym at my pleasure / therfore take thyne armure & make the redy, thyne 24 armure is good and thy sworde is with the best, and yf thou canst do as thou sayste thou shalt haue y^e fayre damoysell’ / howbeit he sayd to hymselfe preuely that he had rather¹³ lese one of his handes / then a straunger 28 shuld be quene after hym, for as sone as my son¹⁷ shall be issued out of the citye I shall cause the damoysell to be drowned in the see / for I wyll not suffer her to lyue though I shuld be disherited for it. Then Flor- 32

¹ and. ²⁻² did Sir. ³ behaue himselfe that day.

⁴ gad in text. ⁵ ynough. ⁶ for.

⁷ Fol. cli. [lvi.] col. 1. ⁸ retire. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ losse and. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² Armour. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ will.

¹⁵ his father. ¹⁶ My. ¹⁷ (quoth hee).

ence, herynge his father promysyng hym to haue the
damoysell, he was ryght ioyfull. But he knew not the
inward yll wyll of his father, then he sayd / ‘syr, then
4 I requyre you¹ sende for my louer hether / to the
entent that she may gyrdle about me² my sworde,
wherby I shall be the more bolde & hardy when I
come into the batayle’ / y^e kyng³ dyd as his sone
8 requyred, but the sone knewe not the fathers thought ;
y^e kyng^e sente two knyghtes for the damoysell /
4 when she came there she was greatly regarded of all
them that were there / for they had neuer sene a fayrer,

12 nor one that seemed to be extraucte of a hye generacyon /
when Florence saw her in the palays his harte rose vp,
and⁵ ran⁶ and clypped⁷ and kyssed her, and the
damoysell⁸ suffered hym with⁹ good wyll / wherwith

16 the kynge had at his hart suche sorow that he had
nere¹⁰ ronne vpon them, but he forbare it bycause
he sawe his sone redy to go agaynst his enemyes /
11 he then ayded¹¹ to arme his sone rychely, and in
20 lykewyse so dyd the¹² damoysel / when kyng gauryn
had made his sone redy the damoysell¹³ gyrtle¹⁴ aboute
hym¹⁴ his sworde / then the kynge drewe it out of the
shethe and therwith made hym knyght / 4 then his hors

24 was brought to¹⁵ hym / and he lepte lightly vpon hym /
16 his spere in his hand and helme on¹⁷ his hede, and
shyld aboute his necke. Then Florence sayd to¹⁵ the
kyng his father / ‘syr, I leue with you my louer¹⁸

28 whome I loue best in all this worlde. I leue her
in your kepynge, for if our lord god geue me that¹⁹
grace that I maye retourne, I shall bryng to¹⁵ you myne
vnkle, the kyng of Nauerne, as a prisoner.’ The
32 kyng graunted to¹⁵ his sone all that he wolde desyre /

But for the present Clariet is summoned to gird on her lover's sword.

The beauty of the lovers excites general admiration, but the king sees with sorrow Florence and Clariet embrace.

The king knights Florence with the sword that Clariet had girded on.

Florence promises to capture the king of Navarre.

¹ to. ² about me after sword. ³ Fol. cli. [lvi.] col. 2.
⁴ and. ⁵ he. ⁶ vnto her. ⁷ embraced. ⁸ Ladi
⁹ a. ¹⁰ hand. ¹¹⁻¹¹ then he helped. ¹² faire.
¹³ did. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ after sworde. ¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ with.
¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ Loue. ¹⁹ the.

His father orders
his men to do
Clariet all honour
until Florence be
out of the city,
when they are to
drown her.

but he shewed¹ not the inward intencyon that he was purposed to do. Then the kyng commaunded .x. of his knyghtes to se the gydynge of the damoysell and to honoure her as moche as they myghte / tyll² his sone ⁴ were out of the cetye / and then to drowne her in the see, to the entente that neuermore tydynge shulde be harde of her.

How florence wente to fyghte with his ⁸ enemyes / and howe⁴ Peter of Aragon retourned towardes the towne to brynge thether prisoners, and how he rescued the ⁵ damoysell Claryet fro drownyng, and how ¹² after⁶ kynge gauryn made⁷ the damoysell to be closed up in⁸ prison. Ca. C.lxiii.



Hen Florence was armed and mounted he toke vp his horse fresly before y^e ¹⁶ damoysell and blessed hym and toke⁹ leue of the kyng and of his louer¹⁰ / and so departed and rode to the gate, and all that euer¹¹ saw hym sayd how they neuer sawe ²⁰ so goodly a knyghte, nor more semyng to be fered / then he issued out of the gate and yode¹² towardes the tentes of his enemyes with .x.M. good knyghtes and hardy: the ladyes and damoyselles went to the walles ²⁴ of the citye to beholde the newe¹³ knyghte / when the Nauernoys sawe hym comynge / ther cam agaynst hym mo then .xv.M. men: & they came downe in a valey by couerte: to haue cut hym the waye betwene the ²⁸ hoste and the towne / but the valyaunt knyght,⁴ Peter of Aragon, who was with Florence / spyed them / and so made haste to be afore them: and when he sawe⁹

Florence leaves
the city with more
than 10,000
knights.

Fifteen thousand
men of Navarre
soon set upon
them.

¹ knewe. ² vntill. ³ Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 1.
⁴ Sir. ⁵ faire. ⁶ afterward. ⁷ caused. ⁸ a.
⁹ his. ¹⁰ Loue. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² roade. ¹³ young.

tyme to set on¹ his enemyes. Florence, who was sore
desyrous to fulfull his promyse to the kynge his father,
toke his spere and incounteryd with a knyght with
4 suche vertue that he ran hym clene thrughe, and
2 with drawynge out of his spere the Nauernous fell
downe dede / then Florence sayd / ‘god hath geuen me
a good begynnyng’ / then he drewe³ his sworde and
8 strake another on¹ y^e helme that he claue his hede to
the tethe / and the thyrd & fourth he made doulour-
ously to dye,⁴ he neuer sessed tyll⁵ he had slayne .x.
of his enemyes / *thus under y^e medowes of Courtoys*

Florence fights
valiantly.

12 was on⁶ horyble batayle betwene y^e Nauernois & Ara-
gonoys / where there was on¹ both partyes suche slauter
that it was⁷ marueyle to behold it / anone Florence
sworde was well knownen, for by the forse of his armes
16 he brake the great presses, for on¹ whome so euer his
stroke light he was other slayne or cast to the erth,
euyer man fered hym so⁸ that none dyrst abyde nor
aproche⁹ to¹⁰ hym / the same tyme *that Florence was*

He kills ten of
the enemy.

20 in the batayle doyng of marueyls the fayre damoysell
Claryet was on¹ the walles of the citye with other
ladies and damoyselles / regardynge the hye prowes
that Florence dyd in the felde, & the ioye that she
24 had therof was sone retourned¹¹ vnto sorowe a[n]d¹²
weypynges / for kynge Gauryn who coude not for gette
the mortall hate that he had to the damoysell. ¹³he¹³
called to¹⁰ hym .x. knyghtes of them that were secrete

None whom he
meets escapes his
sword.

28 with hym, and sayd, ‘syrs, this new founde damoy-
sell withe whome my sone Florence is in hote amours /
she dyspleaseth me so moche *that I can not fynde in*
my harte to loke on¹ her. My sone thynketh to haue
32 her in maryage at his retourne / but as long as he
leuethe he shall neuer se her more what soeuer fal

Clariet watches
him from the
walls of the city.

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 2. ³ out. ⁴ and.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ a. ⁷ great. ⁸ much. ⁹ neere.
¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ turned. ¹² ayd in text. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

The king of
Arragon calls ten
knights to him,

and bids them
cast her in the
sea.

The knights, with
heavy heart, visit
Clariet.

She demands
their will.

They tell her she
must die, and
bind her hands.

She begs them to
have mercy on
her, but they are
deaf to her
entreaty.

She is taken to
the seaside by
four men.

therof / therfore go your waye and take and cast her into the see amone the greatest wawes that ye can fynde' / when these knyghtes vnderstode the kyng, who commaunded them to do¹ this murder, they were ryght⁴ sorowfull at theyr hertes / but they durste not saye naye, nor do agaynst his wyl, for³ they had they knew well² they shulde dye, for³ they knewe well² there was nother marey nor ptye in hym / therfore they⁸ durste make no semblant to the contrary / they fered so sore⁴ to dysplese hym / then they wente and toke the damoysell wheras she was / 'syrs,' quod she, 'what wyll ye⁵ with me, wherfore⁶ take ye⁶ me, let¹² me go; yf ye wyll⁷ any thyng with me, shew me' / they sayd, 'damoysell, speke no more / for your ende is come, ye shall neuer se fayre day more:'³ when she saw that she was so taken with .x. men, who went¹⁶ thretenyng to sle her, she then cast out a great crye, & desired god⁸ and our lady⁸ to ayde and socoure her / then they bounde the damoyselles handes with a cord, in suche wyse⁹ that her whyght tender skynne braste¹⁰ 20 & they bounde her so sore that the blode droppyd out at her nayles / 'syrs,' quod she, 'I crye you marey / lytell shall ye wynne to sle me, ye shall do great synne, syn¹¹ I haue not deserued it:' 'dame,'¹² quod they, 24 'your wordes can not auayle you / the kynge wyll not that ye shall make anaunte to haue his sone in maryage / for ye shal be drowned in y^e see whether ye wyll or not, your wepynge shall not ayde you' / then .iiii. 28 rebaudes toke and bounde her, and drewe her by the fayre⁸ here of her hede, & led her towards y^e se syde to haue drowned her / but often tymes it is sayde that¹³ god wyll haue sauyd can not be perysshed. This¹⁴ same 32

¹ Fol. clvii, col 1. ² that. ³ and. ⁴ much.

⁵ doe. ⁶⁻⁶ doe you take. ⁷ haue. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted

⁹ manner. ¹⁰ burst. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² Madame.

¹³ which. ¹⁴ The.

season Florence was in the batayle, wheras he fought
with his enemyes, and¹ Peter of Aragon had take[n]²
many prisoners, and he came to³ Florence and sayde /
4 'a, syr, I requyre you let vs retourne to the citye /
and be content⁴ with that ye haue done this day: for
yonder ye may se comyng all the hole hoste of the
Nauernoys agaynst whome it is not possible for vs to
8 endure / for they are mo then .lx. thousand men, and
they all hateth vs to the deth / ye haue done ynough,
ye⁵ ought to be content / yf they take you none can
saue your lyfe' / 'cosyn,' quod Florence, 'I pray you
12 or⁶ I departe, let me iuste ones with myne vncle the
kyng of Nauerne, whome I haue promysed to yelde as
presoner to³ the kyng my father / & therby I shal
haue in maryage the fayre damoysel, my louer,⁷ and
16 for the loue of that fayre damoysell I shall make many
a Nauernoys to lese theyr lyues.' 'Syr,' quod Peter,
'syn ye desyre your owne deth / so moche I am sory
therof / but I wyl no longer tary here, for it is not
20 possyble for vs to tary here without we wyl be slayne
wylfully / & I haue here many prisoners, I will go
lede them in to the citye and then I shall retourne
agayne to³ you / to the entente that yf other you or I
24 be taken presoner by them we maye be redemed agayne.'

Then Peter wente to the citye with all his prisoners;⁵
when he was come into the citye / he hard a great
noyse abought the market place, wherof he had great
28 maruayle, and wente therethen / and then he sawe there
.iiii. fowle glotons⁸ drawynge the fayre damoysell
Claryet towardes the see syde to drowne her / when
he saw that he was neuer so sorowful in all his lyfe
32 before / and incontynente⁹ let go his prisoners and
drew out his sword and cryed to³ them that led the

Meanwhile, Peter of Aragon urges Florence to return to the city, since they have done sufficient injury to the enemy for the day: and reinforcements are coming to aid Navarre.

Florence begs for one joust with his uncle, the king of Navarre.

Peter will not tarry, and resolves to lead his prisoners back to the city.

He meets Clariet being dragged to the sea side.

He lets go his prisoners, attacking those who had Clariet;

¹ Sir. ² takey *in text.* ³ vnto.

⁴ Fol. cvlii. col. 2. ⁵ and. ⁶ before. ⁷ Loue.

⁸ villaines. ⁹ did.

he kills all the
four.

Clariet begs his
protection.

He cuts the cords
about her.

Clariet weeps bit-
terly in fear.

Peter leads her
to his lodging,
and visits the
king.

He asks him why
he would slay
Clariet, and bids
him lay no hand
on her, for she
is his.

damoysell: ‘a, ye ¹ fowle horson¹ theues, let *that*
damoysel go whom I brought for beyond y^e se: ye
dyd neuer such foly in² your lyues,’ and therwith he
strak so³ y^e fyrst with his sword⁴ *that* his hede flew ⁴
⁵ fro the body, and the seconde he claue to the teth /
and the .iii. and .iiii. he slew / when the ⁶ damoysell ⁶
saw the erle Peter, ryght petuously⁷ she began to crye,
and sayd / ‘syr, I requyre you haue petye of me, & ⁸
helpe & ayde me as ye haue done or⁸ this tyme, other⁹
lord nor mayster I haue none but you / syr, for god
sake vnbynde me and put me out of this Payne that I
am in’ / then Peter wente to the damoysell and cut ¹²
y^e cordes a sonder, wherwith she was bounde: and for
the sorow that she was in she fell downe in a swoone:
then Peter toke her vp and sayde / ‘fayre damoyselle,
¹⁰ take comforde in you,¹⁰ I shal ayde¹¹ to sauе you;’ ¹⁶
the damoysel¹² wept petuously and sayde to herselfe /
‘a, Huon of Burdeaux, my dere father, the great paines
and pouertes that ye were wonte to suffer ye haue left
me, now enheryter to the same / alas, I knowe not ²⁰
where you nor my mother is, I bylue I shall neuer se
you more’ / then Peter of Aragon toke the damoysell
by the hande and led her to his logynge in the towne /
then he wente to the palays, wheras he found kyng ²⁴
Guaryn, to¹³ whom he sayd / ‘o, thou olde dotynge
fole, wherfore or for what cause wolde you haue slayne
the damoysell, and she is none of yours / she is myne,
I wan her vpon the see and sauēd her lyfe, ye can ²⁸
make no clayme to her.’ Thus as Peter spake to the
kyng there entered into the palais two knyghtes, and
they sayde to the kyng / ‘syr, before you is the erle
Peter, your cosyn, who hathe delyuered and rescued y^e ³²

¹⁻¹ false. ² all. ³ omitted. ⁴ in such sort.
⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 1. ⁶⁻⁶ faire Ladie. ⁷ pitifully.
⁸ before. ⁹ neither. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ be of good cheere, for.
¹¹ helpe. ¹² faire Ladie. ¹³ vnto.

newe founde damoysell, & hath slayne the .iiii. men
 that shulde haue drowned her in the see' / when kyng
 Guaryn saw the erle before hym / ¹sayd, ²' how arte²
 4 thou so hardy³ to ⁴haue slayne⁴ my men for doyng of
 my commaundemente' / then he ⁵cryed to his men and
 sayd / 'syrs, I charge you take this velayne here who
 hath done me this offence, for I shall neuer haue ioye
 8 at my harte tyll⁶ I see hym hanged a hye on⁷ yonder⁸
 rocke' / then⁹ men stepte forthe to haue taken the erle
 Peter / & when he saw that they aproched nere to¹⁰
 hym, he drewe his sworde and clae the hede of the
 12 fyrist to the tethe, and he slew the seconde, thyrde,
 and fourthe / he bette downe¹¹ to the erthe / then the
 other fled awaye so that there was none that durst
 aproche nere to¹⁰ hym / for they were vnarmyd and he
 16 clene¹² armyd / then he cam to the kynge and sayde /
 'a¹³ false olde dottarde, full of syn and outrage / how
 dare ye thynke to do such an outrage, ye are not
 worthy to bere a crowne; your sone Florence ought to
 20 haue it / for a traytour ought to holde no realme; full
 derely ye shall abyte the yll wyll of the damoysell' /
 and the more to make hym abasshed he made sem-
 blaunte to ryn vpon the kyng with his sworde / who
 24 for fere of hym ran into his chaumbre and shote fast
 the dore after hym / and the erle Peter stondyng
 without, sore thretened the kyng / then the kyng
 sayde, 'cosyn Peter, I crye you marcy, yf I haue done
 28 yll¹⁴ / I am redy to make a mendes at your pleasure, I
 was sore dyspleasyd with my sone, and therfore I
 thought to be reuenged on⁷ her that hath caused all
 this / I shal make amendes / but by the grace of¹⁵ our
 32 lorde Iesu chryst¹⁵ my son shal neuer haue her in

The king orders
Peter to be
arrested and slain.

But the knight
draws his sword,
and slays all who
would lay hands
on him.

He bitterly re-
proaches the king,

and pretends as if
he would kill him.

The king rushes
from Peter to his
chamber, and
shuts the door.
Peter threatens
the old man from
without, and the
king promises to
do his will,

¹ he. ²⁻² why wert. ³ as. ⁴⁻⁴ slay.

⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vppon. ⁸ a.

⁹ his. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ more. ¹² well. ¹³ thou.

¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ god.

although he will
not consent to
Clariet's union
with his son.

maryage to dye, therfore I wyll neuer consent that a newe found damoysell should be herytes of suche a realme¹ as is² the realme of Aragon.' Then syr Peter answered and sayde / 'syr, beware, blame her no more, 4 be contente with that ye haue done all redy / it may be *that* this³ damoysell⁴ is of as hye a lyngnage as is⁵ your sone, wherfore such tyme myght⁶ come that ye shulde⁶ derely be rewardyd / paraduenture, the damoy- 8 sell was stollen away by some yll tyraunte / she hathe bene yll loged⁷ with you, when ye wolde so crewelly haue slayne her' / 'cosyn,' quod the kyng, 'the mater

*He pardons Peter
the murder of his
men.*

He will keep
Clariet in prison,
and tell Florence
she is drowned ;
as soon as Flor-
ence has forgotten
her or married
another she shall
be sent in safety
to a foreign
country.

*Peter agrees to
the king's plan.*

*Clariet is im-
prisoned, but well
cared for.*

*Florence is to
know nothing of
her whereabouts.*

is yl come to pas, for her sake ye haue slayne⁸ of my 12 men / the whiche I pardon you / but as for the damoy- sell I wyll set her in pryson in a towre / out of the whiche she shall not departe, and I wyll shewe my sone that she is drowned in the see / and I wyll kepe her in 16 pryson tyll my sone haue forgoten her, or elles haue⁹ taken a nother wyfe / then I wyll delyuer her & sende her into some other countre, where as she shall be better entreated'⁷ / when the erle Peter harde the 20 kyng saye so, he agreed to his sayenge, and thoughte that aduyse to be good / & was content with that he had sauyd her lyfe / then the kyng opened his³ chaumbre dore & so came into the palays / then he sente for 24 the damoysell / and then she was set in pryson in a towre / and y^e kyng commaundid to a secrete saruaunt that he shuld se that the damoysel shuld lacke¹⁰ no thyng for her leuynge, and charged hym on¹¹ payne of 28 his lyfe to kepe the mater secrete / and he charged all tho *that* knewe therof in any wyse to shewe Florence, his sone, no thyng of her / then he closed vp the dore with stone to the entent that she shulde not issue out, 32 & lefte no thyng open / but a lytell wyndow towards

¹ Kingdome. ² is after Aragon. ³ the.

⁴ Fol. clviii. col. 1. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ may. ⁷ entertained.

⁸ many. ⁹ hath. ¹⁰ want. ¹¹ vpon.

the tewne of courtoys, wherein her mete was put in¹ / other wyndowes there were openyng vpon the feldis, the whiche gaue great lyght into the house. Thus the 4 fayre² Claryet was closed vp in to the towre / where as she had good³ leyser to wepe and wayle. Now let vs leue spekyng of the damoysell and speke of Florence, who was in the batayle.

8 ¶ How Florence dyscomfyted his enemyes, & toke the kynge of Nauerne & led hym into the towne, & delyuered hym to the kyng his father / and how florence delyuered 12 hym agane quyte bycause⁴ his father shewed⁵ hym that the⁶ damoysel was drowned.

Ca. C.lxiii.

E haue well harde here before how the erle, Peter of Aragon, departed fro Florence and retourned into the citye, for he coude not cause Florence to leue the batayle, wheras he dyd mar-

16 20 uayles for the loue of the fayre² Claryet, whome he trusted to wed: he slew so many of his enemyes that the feldes were couered with the dede bodyes / when the kynge of Nauerne, his vnkle,⁷[s]awe that, he was⁸

Florence does
marvels on the
battle-field.

24 sorowfull to se his men so slayne / then he came agaynst Florence his nephue, and sayd / 'a, thou vnyknyd nephue, cursed be thou,⁹ I shall neuer haue ioye at my harte as longe as I se the alyue / thou hast 28 done me this day great domage, I had rather dye an yll deth¹⁰ with out I were¹⁰ reuenged vpon¹¹ the / wherfore I requyre the to iuste with me / I chalenge thy londe, the whiche shall be myne / thou shalte neuer be lorde

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges him to
combat.

¹ omitted. ² Ladie. ³ Fol. clviii. col. 2. ⁴ that.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ faire. ⁷ Fol. clviii. back, col. 1. ⁸ right.

⁹ you. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ then not to be. ¹¹ of.

therof.' Florence answered and sayd, 'I shall not refuse the Iustes' / then he put vp his sworde, & toke a great spere / and so ran agaynste the kynge his vnkle / and y^e kynge came agaynst hym / ¹they met 4 together so rudely that the kynges spere brake all to peces / but Florence spere was byge, wherwith he strake the kynge so rudely that he fell to the erthe with his fete vpward, & he fell so rudely² that he laye 8 in a traunce,³ so that or he coude releue³ Florence toke hym by y^e ventayle of his helme, and sayd, 'Nauer-noyse, or I slepe I shall render⁴ you prisoner into the handes of a fayre damoysell, whome I loue enterly / ⁵ 12 in all the worlde there is none lyke her in beautye, yf ye refuse thus to do, with my sword I shall inconty- nent stryke of your hede fro the shulders' / the kynge sayd he was content to fulfull his pleasure, & to yelde 16 hymselfe prisoner / then Florence toke his sworde fro hym, and made hym to mounte on⁶ his horse / and made hym to [r]yde⁷ before hym towardes the towne, and delyuered hym to the kepynge of .x. knyghtes / 20 and Florence rode after with his sworde in his hande al blody / y^e crye and noyse began to be great among the Nauernoys / they enforsyd them on all partyes to haue rescued theyr kyng, but they coud not come in tyme / 24 for by that ⁸tyme Florence was within the gates of the citye, wheras he was well⁹ receyued.

Florence soon strikes the king to earth, where he lies in a trance.

The youth tells his foe that he will give him as prisoner to a fair damsel.

The king yields, and rides before Florence into the town.

The men of Navarre do not rise up in time to rescue their king.

¶ when the Nauernoys saw how they loste theyr payne,¹⁰ and how theyr kynge was entered into the 28 citye they were¹¹ sorowfull, and came before the barryers & skyrmysshed, and wan but lytell, and so retourned with small profyghte and sorowfull for the losse¹² they had receyued that daye, for the feldes were couered 32

¹ and. ² sodenly.

³⁻³ and before he could be recovered. ⁴ deliuer. ⁵ for.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ dyde *in text.* ⁸ Fol. clviii. back, col. 2.

⁹ right ioyfully. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ right. ¹² that.

with dede men / thus they retourned to theyr tentes
and pauylyons, and the Aragonoys entered into the
citiye of courtoys with great ioye / ¹when they were in
4 the citye, then Florence toke the kyng of Nauerne, his
vncle, by the hande, and ledde hym to the palays, and ²
alyghted & wente into the hall, wheras he founde kyng
Guaryn his father, who had great ioye of his comynge /
8 when he sawe his sone Florence bryngynge his enemye
presoner / he embrased his sone, and sayd, 'My ryght
dere sone, I am ryght ioyous³ of your comynge' /
'father,' quod Florence, 'I haue done so moch by the
12 ayde of our lord Iesu chrys that I haue taken your
enemye prysoner, whome I render into your handis to
do with hym at your pleasure. Now I wyll ye kepe
your promyse with me syn I haue quyt myne / nowe it
16 is tyme that ye delyuer to⁴ me the damoysell, whome
I shall make quene and lady after your dysces' / when
the kynge vnderstode his sone he was al in a rage, and
sayd / 'fayre son, leue thy folly & take suche a wyfe
20 accordyng to thyne estate, & thynke no more of that
new foundelyng, for knowe for trouthe I haue caused
her to be caste in⁵ y^e see, wheras she is drowned /
Thou arte a fole to thynke that I wyll⁶ suffer after my
24 dysses that a poore caytyfe, newe founde, shulde be
lady and quene crowned of such a realme / beware in
as moche as thou thynkest to dysplease me / *that tho'*
be not so hardy⁷ to speke or to⁸ rememb're eny mor
28 the newe founde damoysel' / when Florence harde y
kyng his father saye how the damoysell was drowned
in the see, his blod mounted into his face / and
his harte was so opressed and so heuy that he had no
32 power to speke / & suche a marueylous colde swete
toke hym that there was no vayne nor membre in

The army of
Navarre retires to
its tents, and the
army of Arragon
enters the city.

The king of
Arragon warmly
welcomes Flor-
ence, who enters
the palace with
his prisoners.

Florence demands
Clariet.

His father bids
him have done
with such folly,
and tells him that
Clariet is
drowned.

Florence is over-
come at the
words.

¹ and. ² there. ³ ioyfull. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ to. ⁶ Fol. clix. col. 1. ⁷ as.

⁸ omitted.

He falls to the ground in a trance.

He revives, and curses his father.

He will go to the place where she was drowned, and share her sepulture.

He invites the king of Navarre and his prisoners to aid him to revenge himself on his father.

his body but trymbelyd for sorowe¹ and anger that was in hym / so that he had no power to sustayne hymselfe, but fell downe to y^e erthe in a great traunce / ²so² that euery man there wente³ he had bene dede, and ⁴ euery man complayned for hym / ⁴specyally y^e kynge his father was⁵ sorowfull, and wold as then that he had neuer begonne that mater / when Florence cam agayne to hymselfe, he sayd / ‘O ⁶very god,⁶ the erthe ought ⁸ to be cursed when it sustayneth such a ⁷kyng ⁸traytoure⁸ that hathe done suche a case⁹ / great pareyle it is to be conuersaunt with hym’ / then Florence loked vpon the knyghtes aboute hym, and sayde / ‘syrs, ¹² I requyre you for all the loue that⁸ ye ought of reason to bere me / bryng me to y^e sam place where as she whome I loue parfectly was perysshed and drowned / for other sepulture I desyre none / but the same that ¹⁶ she hathe: for the loue of her it shall please me well to be vnder couerte vnder the wawes of the se where as my louer¹⁰ is, to the entente that of me there be harde neuer more remembraunce’ / Then he behelde the kynge ²⁰ of Nauerne his vncle, whom he had taken presoner, & sayd, ‘syr kynge of Nauerne, thou arte ¹¹my presoner / but yf thou wylte ayde me to be reuenged of this treason that my father hathe done, I shall ¹² let the ²⁴ go agayne franke¹³ and quyte’ / ‘fayre nephue,’ quod he, ‘leue that foly and speke no more therof / for it touchethe moche your honoure / and ye shall be blamed of all them that here spekyng therof.’ ‘Syr,’ ²⁸ quod Florence / ‘what is that ye saye, ye know wel ye are my presoner, and that it lyethe in me whether ye shall lyue or dye.’ ‘Fayre nephue,’ quod the kynge, ‘I wyll well agree to your wordes / but yf ye ³²

¹ sorow *after* anger. ²⁻² in such sort. ³ thought.

⁴ and. ⁵ right. ⁶⁻⁶ good Lord. ⁷ trayterous.
⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ deede. ¹⁰ Loue. ¹¹ Fol. clix. col. 2.
¹² then. ¹³ free.

wyll beleue me / byleue the kynge youre father, & leue
 to do after your owne wyll' / 'what,' quod Florence,
 'ye know wel that in me it lyethe to stryke of your
 4 hede without ye wyll agre vnto my wyl and pleasure,
 the whiche thynge I wyll do without¹ incontynente ye
 swere the deth of kyng Guaryn my father / and *that*
 nener to take peas with hym tyl² ye haue brought hym
 8 to the deth / on³ this condycyon I shall set you
 in sauegarde / for the traytoure hathe dysceued me of
 the thynge that I loue best in this world.' Then y^e
 kynge of Nauerne sayd / 'fayre⁴ nephue, ye ar as yet
 12 yonge, I can not tell whether youre wordis and promyses
 are stable and ferme or not / for the youth that I se in
 you and also for the great dyspleasure that ye be in⁵ as⁵
 nowe / ⁶therfore, fayre nephue, I haue great fere that
 16 ye shulde begyle me.' 'Syr,' quod Florence, 'god
 forbide that I shulde be so dysceyuable of my promyse
 to promyse you any thynge and fulfull it not, what so
 euer shulde fall therof.' At this tyme there were but
 20 fewe parsons in the palays with the kynge / for all the
 lordes and knyghtes were gone in to the towne to theyr
 logynges to refresshe⁵ & to rest⁵ them of theyr trauayle
 & ⁷werynes / therfore the kynge was in his palays with
 24 a small company / y^e which Florence had well espyed /
⁸there⁸ were a⁸ sartayne of Florence knyghtes aboute
 hym, to⁹ whom he sayd, all wepyng / 'syrs, incontyn-
 ent go and get me my horse, and also the kynge
 28 of Nauerne his hors redy at the gate' / the which was
 done; when they were come then Florence sayde to⁹
 the kynge of Nauerne his vnkle /¹⁰ 'if ther be eny
 corage in you to be sauе and out of damage¹¹ take this
 32 sword in your hande, and let vs leue this vnhappy
 kynge to vse his dayes in sorowe / and come on and

The king, his uncle, counsels him to obey his father's will.

Florence threatens his life: unless he swears the death of the king of Arragon in his behalf, he must die.

The royal prisoner fears that Florence will deceive him.

There were few people about the palace.

Florence orders horses for himself and the king of Navarre.

He gives a sword to his prisoner, and bids him follow him.

¹ except. ² vntill. ³ vpon. ⁴ Deere.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ and. ⁷ Fol. elix. back, col. 1.
⁸⁻⁸ was. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ good vnkle. ¹¹ seruage.

folowe me' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kynge of Nauerne / 'I haue great fere that ye wyll begyle me' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'thynke it not, but come on¹ after me & ye shall se what I wyll do' / then Florence 4 departed and the kynge of nauerne with hym; they lepte on² theyr horses / when they were on² theyr good horses ther was no man at that tyme in the towne abrode to let Florence of his enterpryse / but thus they 8

Outside the town,
Florence again
exacts a promise
from the king of
Navarre to slay
his father.

passed bothe tyll³ they were without the towne / then Florence sayd to the kynge his vnkle / 'syr, nowe ye knowe well that I haue broughte you out of this towne, and therfore I requyre you agayn that ye never 12 take peas with the kyng my father, tyll³ ye haue slayne him' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng, 'that⁴ ye requyre me to do I shall fulfull it, and thus I recomende you to god:' when the kyng saw hym selfe 16 so well delyuered he was ioyfull / & so rode tyll³ he came to his hoste, wheras his men receiued hym with great ioy, & they demaunded how he was scaped out of the handes of Florence / then the kyng shewed all the 20 maner howe Florence deliuered hym, wherof they had great maruayle, and had great ioy of his comyng; ⁵and to accomlysse his promyse to Florence his nephue / he sente to all his realme of Nauerne, to all his frendes 24 and alyes⁶ to come and ayde hym. Now we shall leue spekyng of the kyng of Nauerne, and speke of Florence his nephue.

*Then the king
joins his army,*

*and summons all
the men of his
realm to attack
the king of
Arragon.*

¶ How kyng Guaryn put Floren[ce] his sone 28 in⁷ a towre in preson / and howe the damoysel scapyd out of the towre and spake with Florence, her louer, at an arche vpon the gardayne syd, and how they were 32

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ vntill. ⁴ which.

⁵ Fol. clix, back, col. 2.

⁶ other.

⁷ to.

spyed / and how she thought to haue
drowned herselfe. Ca. clxv.

4  Hen Florence had delyuered the kyng
of Nauerne his vnkle, whom he had
taken before in the batayle / then he
returned agayne into y^e citye and so
rode tyll he came to the palayes, wheras

8 he founde the kynge his father,¹ and sayde, as a man
almoste out of his mynde² / 'O, thou false traytour,
thou hast done so moch thrughe thyne ylues, that I
had rather desyre the³ dethe then the³ lefe' / Then he

12 sayd to the knyghtes that were there presente / 'syrs,
I praye you bryng me to the see and caste me therin
in the same place, wheras my louer⁴ was cast, for I
wyll not lyue one owre lenger / yf ye do not this I

16 shall sle myselfe withe myne owne handes' / when
kynge Guaryn harde his sone saye so, he was ryght
sorowfull / and spake fersly to⁵ his sone, & com-
maunded to take hym and to sette hym in pryon in the

20 towre, in suche wyse that he may be sure of hym / and
sayd, 'well I oughte to be angery in my harte when this
boy, myne owne sone, thus delethe withe me: but by
the faythe that I owe⁶ to my⁶ lorde, ⁷saynt Iames⁷ /

24 the dyspleasure that he hathe done to⁵ me he shall
derely abyte it / for as longe as he leueth he shall haue
no fote of my londe' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'by you
nor by your londe, nor by any thynge that ye can do,

28 I set not therby a boton, for I had rather dye then
lyue.' There was no man presente but that wepte
petuously⁸ for petye / ⁹when Florence sawe them
wepe, he said to⁵ them / 'syrs, com to⁵ me, tak of my
32 harnays¹⁰ & put me into the handes of the kynge my

Florence returns
to his father and
reproaches him.

He orders his men
to cast him in the
sea, in the same
place where
Clariet was
drowned.

Florence is
ordered to prison
by the king.

¹ Fol. clx. col. 1. ² wits. ³ thy. ⁴ Loue.

⁵ vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ vnto our. ⁷⁻⁷ god. ⁸ greateously.

⁹ and. ¹⁰ armour.

father, for I wyll not that any of you shuld haue any displeasure for my sake / lette me bere the blame my selfe syn¹ I haue lost the thynge that I loue best² / then the knyghtes came to³ Florence and vnarmed hym 4 and delyuered hym to y^e kyng his father / then the kynge toke hym by the hand and led hym forth rudely, and sayd howe he wolle set hym in suche a place out of the which he shuld not com of a longe space. The 8 erle Peter of Ara³gon had great sorow, but he durst speke no word / the kynge hymselfe led hym to the great towre, and there lefte hym sore wepynge and makynge great sorow for his louer⁴ that⁵ he had lost / 12 he made such sorowe that petye it was to here / & when the nyghte came and that he remembered the damoysell his sorowes began to renewe. And as wel as he made sorow for his louer⁴ / y^e⁶ damoysel Claryet, 16 who was in the same towre muryed⁷ vp in prysyon, she harde the complayntes that Florence made / and so long she herkenid that at the last she thought⁸ she knew y^e voyce, and sayd / ‘O, ⁹very god,⁹ what may 20 this be, who is this that I here thus complayne ; me thynke I haue hard or¹⁰ this tyme¹¹ that voice,¹¹ ¹²me thynke it shuld be he that loued me so wel : I wyll not leue serching tyll¹³ I maye knowe the trouthe.’ 24 Then y^e noble¹⁴ damoysel came to the dore that was newly muryd⁷ vp / wherby the morter was not fully drye, and she scraped with her fyngers and with a lytell knyfe that she had, so that at¹⁵ laste she scraped 28 out a stone. Then she assayed to pull out mo / so moche she dyd with her fyngers and¹⁵ knyfe that she made a great hole in the newe wall / so that she creped out and went in to the gardayne, the which isyued to 32

¹ seeing. ² vnto. ³ Fol. clx. col. 2. ⁴ Loue.

⁵ whom. ⁶ faire. ⁷ immured. ⁸ that.
⁹ ⁹ good Lord. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹⁻¹¹ before this tyme.
¹² and. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ the.

His armour is removed, and his father takes him roughly by the hand.

He leads his son to the great tower.

Florence complains of his hard fortune, and Clariet overhears him, for she was shut up in the same tower.

She scrapes away the bricks in the wall with her fingers and a little knife, and enters the garden that is round about the tower.

the towre / and then she felte by her a rosyer, vnder
 the which she sate her downe / the mone shone bryght,
 wherby the gardayne was as lyght as thoughe it had
 4 bene clere daye. Then she toke a fayre rose in her
 hande, the which smelled swetely, & sayd / ¹ O, very
 God,¹ I wolde² it were your³ pleasure that my louer
 were here by⁴ me, I thynke he be not far⁵ hence / I
 8 wysshe with hym this swete rose, so *that* he knewe² it
 came fro me / I wyll not leue serchynge till⁶ I naue
 found hym / yf I can not ⁷ fynde hym in doloure &
 mysery I must ende my dayes' / the same tyme that the
 12 damoysell complayned thus in the gardayne, Florence
 who was in the towre / and harde the⁸ damoysell in
 the gardayne, he knew her well by the voyce, and sayd,
 'O, very⁹ god, what is it that I here, yonder in the
 16 gardayne: 'dere louer,' quod the damoysell,¹⁰ 'it is she
 whome ye do loue so well / I am issued out of the
 towre, wher in I haue bene in great mysery / ¹¹ I can
 not tell what wyll fall therof / conforte me or elles I
 20 shall dye here in great sorowe:' when Florence harde
 the voyce of his louer¹² / he had suche ioye at his harte
 that he forgate all his dolour / when he saw that she
 was not dede / then he sayd to¹³ her: 'a, my ryght
 24 swete louer¹² whether wyll ye go / for yf the kynge, my
 father, know that ye be scaped out of the towre incon-
 tynent, he wyll sle you, he wyl haue no petye of you,
 and I can not ayde¹⁴ you. ¹⁵ Fayre louer,¹⁵ I praye
 28 you gather me some flowers, and caste them in at this
 wyndowe / I shall pas my dolours the better when I
 haue in my handes any thyng that comethe out of
 yours' / then the damoysell gathered roses and Flowers,
 32 & dyd cast them into her louer: wher of Florence had

She takes a rose
in her hand, and
declares that she
will find her lover,
whose voice she
has heard.

Florence recog-
nizes her.

He fears that his
father will slay
her when he finds
that she has
escaped.

He begs her to
gather flowers for
him.

¹⁻¹ Ah, good Lord. ² that. ³ thy. ⁴ with.

⁵ from. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. clx. back, col. 1. ⁸ faire.

⁹ good. ¹⁰ faire Ladie. ¹¹ and. ¹² Loue.

¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ succour. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ Sweet loue.

The wall of his prison is too thick to allow him to take Clariet by the hand.

One of the watchmen discovers them talking to each other, and warns them to be silent.

More watchmen follow and find the hole in the wall, through which Clariet made her way,

and declare that she has fled away.

In despair Clariet leaves the garden of the tower and climbs a rock by the sea, thinking to drown herself.

great ioye / when he had receyued them fro her, and kyst them often tymes : then he came to the wyndowe thynkyng to haue taken his louer¹ by the hande, but he coude not,² for² the wall was to thycke, wheroft they were bothe sory / the same tyme whyles they were thus deuysyng together, the wache men came abought, whome the kyng had sent thether to spye and knowe if Peter of Aragon dyd sende to³ those prisoners any comforte or ayde / when he came thether he⁵ harkened and harde the voyces of thos⁶ two persons, and harde well theyr wordes, and wepte for⁷ petye of them : then swetely the wache man called to⁸ them, & sayd, ‘hold your peas, for yf ye be spyyed ye can not scape the deth ; I haue great petye of you both : I pray to⁸ god preserue you, for I canne not² ayde nor² comforte you’ / Then they held theyr peas and so wente a sonder to the entent⁹ they shuld not be harde nor sene / then¹⁰ thether came two other wache men, sente thether by y^e kyng to se yf any body came to the towre to ayde or comfort the two prisoners / when they were come nere to y^e towre they saw the newe made wall broken / then they sayde eche to other, suerly the damoysell is fled and hath broken¹¹ pryon / then they cryd out and made a¹² scrye,¹² and said the damoysel is fled out of the towre / when the damoysell, beyng in the gardayne, harde the noyse that the spyes made she was in great fere and doubte, the which was no maruayle, then incontynent as preuely as she coude she wente fro the towre and wente to the ende of the gardayne / wheras there was a hye rocke, & vnder the rocke a great water and depe, she clame¹³ vp² vpon the rocke and sayde : ‘A, Florence, my dere louer, this day shall be the departyng of vs two / it must behoue me

¹ Loue. ²⁻² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ they.

⁶ Fol. clx. back, col. 2. ⁷ meere. ⁸ to after god.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ ther came. ¹¹ out of. ¹²⁻¹² great crye.

¹³ did clime.

to dye for your sake' / she saw in the gardaine a great
nombre of torches lyght and men sekyng all abought
for her, wherof she was afrayed and not without a
4 cause / for she knew wel¹ yf she were taken she were
lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on² our lord god
and on the³ vyrgyn Mary³ for ayde and conforte, &
sayd: 'alas, yf I be taken I can not scape fro the
8 marterdome of deth, but synne it is thus that we must
nedis depart for euer, I had rather be drowned then be
ta⁴ken;' therwith she made the syngne of y^e crosse,
recommendynge herselfe to oure lorde⁵ Iesu chrys⁵

*She sees men
with torches seek-
ing her below,*

*and prays to the
Virgin for aid.*

12 and therwith tombled downe the rocke to haue fallen
down into the water / but as she fell she fell⁶ in a
great busshe by the waye / wherby she was prycked in
dyuers places on her face and handis so that the blode
16 folowed, wherby she felte such payne *that she swouned* /
then the noyse ran thrughe⁷ the paleys how¹ the
damoysell was scapyd out of the towre / so⁸ that the
kynge was aduertised therof, ⁹wherof he⁹ was sorowful,
20 & made promyse that erle Peter of Aragon shulde lese
all his londes & goodes, as he thoughte that by his
meanes she¹⁰ scaped the pryson.

*She throws herself
from the rock,
but falls upon
bushes, and her
life is saved,
although she
swoons.*

*The king learns
news of her
escape, and blames
Sir Peter.*

¶ How the fyrist wacheman found out the
24 damoysel, and led her into a great wode
therby / and after¹¹ the same wacheman
delyuerner out of pryson Florence,¹² and
shewed hym the place wher the damoysel
28 was, and howe florence and claryet entered
into the see / & how the kyng went after
his sone, & the wacheman taken. Ca. clxvi.

¹ that. ² vpon. ³⁻³ holy Ghost.

⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ god. ⁶ lighted. ⁷ out.

⁸ in such sort. ⁹⁻⁹ who. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ afterward.

¹² Florence *after* deliuerner.

The first watchman who had spied Florence and Clariet talking, finds Clariet.



Hus as the brute was in y^e palays for¹ scapyng of the damoysell / the fyrist wache man that fyrist had spyyed y^e.ii. louers together / he² went all aboughte 4 in the gardayne to seke³ yf he coude fynde the damoysell : he sought so moche that he founde the damoysell, where as she laye in the busshe in great parayle to be drowned / this wacheman⁴ was a 8 wyse man, and as preuely as he coude he issued out of the gardayne and went downe to the water syde, and there he founde a lytell bote & entered into it / and so passed the vyne gardayne as preuely as he coude, so 12 that none harde nor sawe hym : and when he was agaynst the busshe wheras the damoysell was / then² he spoke to her softly, and sayd,⁵ ‘damoysell, be not abasshed, for yf I may in any maner of wyse, I shall⁶ 16 ayde you / come downe and enter into this bote, and I shall set you in the foreste, and tary there tyll⁷ I brynge to you Florence, your louer / the whiche I shall do by the grace of Iesu, for yf I can by any maner of 20 menes / I shall brynge hym out of¹ daunger that he is in / bycause I haue alwayes loued hym, and for the goodnes that he hathe done to me I shall nowe rewarde it’ / when the damoysell harde the wacheman / for 24 ioye therof she forgate all her sorowe, and incontynente as well as she myght she issued out of the busshe and went downe the ryuer syde. Then she entered into the bote, & the wacheman set her ouer & lefte her in y^e 28 forest, y^e which ioyned to the water syde / then he toke his leue of her, and sayd / ⁵‘damoysell, tary here tyll⁷ I retourne agayne to you.’ ‘Frend,’ quod the damoysell, ‘I praye to⁸ our lord⁸ ye may so spedē as 32 to brynge hether my louer, and to set hym out of daunger ;’ and so he departed and entered agayne into

¹ the. ² omitted. ³ see. ⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 2.

⁵ Faire. ⁶ will. ⁷ vntill. ⁸⁻⁸ god that.

He promises to take her to a forest, and there bring Florence to her.

She enters the boat in which the watchman has come to her, and disembarks at the forest by the waterside.

the gardayne, harkenyng towardes the palays, where as there was great brute made for the seapynge of the damoysell ; but there was no dought made of Florence,
 4 because the tower that he was in was ¹so¹ stronge and thycke. Also the chambre that he was in was not towarde the palays, but it laye open agaynst the gar-
²den ; then the sayd wacheman came to y^e wall syde,
 8 where as there was a strayte lope³ into Florence chaum-
 bre, and he had two gotes fete in his handes / then he
 callyd Florence, and sayd / ‘syr, yf ye wyll be with
 your louer⁴ who taryeth for you in the forest, wheras I
 12 haue lefte her in sa[ue]garde / helpe yourselfe that ye
 were out of this towre / take here this gotes fote and
 do you so moche there within to enlarge the lope that
 ye myghte⁵ issue out / and here without I shall make
 16 the hole wyder’ / when Florence vnderstode y^e wache-
 man he was never so ioyful in al his lyfe / when he
 harl the man say that his louer⁴ was in sauergarde /
 then they laborid so sore that they made the lope so
 20 large that Florence issued out / ⁶then the wacheman
 brought Florence to the stable, wheras some of the
 kynges horses stode / speyally there was one ⁷there⁷
 coude⁸ be founde ¹no suche¹ / this wacheman, who had
 24 great affecyon and desyre to do seruyse to this yonge
 lorde, dyd so moche *that* he brought to⁹ Florence his
 harnais,¹⁰ his shylde and his helme, and his sworde and
 a good spere / and so Florence armyd hym and lept
 vpon the good horse / then the wacheman shewed hym
 the place in the forest, wheras he had left the damoy-
 sell / and then he toke his leue of Florence, who
 sayde, ‘frynde, the seruyce that ye haue done me shall
 32 be well rewarded in tyme to come :’ then he rode
 forth and lefte not tyll¹¹ he came there,¹² as his louer⁴

The same
watchman shows
Florence how he
may escape.

Florence issues
forth from the
tower; he is
brought by the
watchman to the
king's stables,

is armed and
mounted on the
best horse.

He reaches the
forest, and finds
Clarinet.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² Fol. clxi. back, col. 1. ³ hole.

⁴ Loue. ⁵ may. ⁶ and. ⁷⁻⁷ whose lyke. ⁸ not.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² where.

was ; ¹when he saw her his ioye was renewed, then he alighted and kyssed his louer,² & when he sawe that she was so blody he had great petye of her, and sayd / ‘dere louer,² it is nedefull that we departe or³ the 4 daye come / therfore make you redy and lepe vp behynle me’ / ¹then Florence moun⁴ted and she lepte up behynde hym and so departed as sone as they myght ; when they were in the feldes the damoysell 8 lokyd backe to⁵ the citye ⁶ward⁶ / and she saw⁷ great nomber of men issued⁸ out / then she said to⁹ Florence / ‘syr, I se wel¹⁰ we be loste, for I se moche people issued⁸ out of the citye, it is not possyble for us to be sauid, 12 but that we shall be taken, and specially I can not scape ; I se well *that* nowe our loue shall depart / your father is fell and crewell, I knowe well¹⁰ he wyll sle me :’ then the wacheman came rynnyng after Florence 16 for fere that he had of the kynge / but he coude not ouertake Florence / who fled with his louer² behynde hym as fast as he myghte costynge¹¹ the see syde / for Florence knew well the preuy wayes, for¹² he had often 20 tymes vsed the wayes when he was wonte to go a hawkyng or huntyng, so long he rode that he came to a lytel porte, where ther was a shyppe redy to depart / then Florence alighted and his louer² with 24 hym, & tyed his hors to a tree, ¹then he toke the damoysell by y^e hand and came to the mayster of y^e shyp and agreed so with hym that he and his louer² entered into the shyppe / then they hoysed vp theyr 28 sayles and so went¹³ fro the lond / the wacheman came to the see syde trustynge to haue founde Florence there / ¹he was ryght sorowfull when he saw them so far in¹⁴ y^e see : he was in great fere of¹⁵ his lyfe. Then 32

She mounts the horse beside her lover, and they ride away.

Men are seen in pursuit.

They coast along the seaside of the forest,

and come to a little port, where a ship is ready to set sail.

The master takes them on board.

The watchman arrives on the shore when they have left, and sorrows much, for he is in fear of his life.

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ before. ⁴ Fol. clxi. back, col. 2.

⁵ towards. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ a. ⁸ issuing.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ toward. ¹² because.

¹³ sayled. ¹⁴ on. ¹⁵ loosing.

kynge Guaryn came thether with a great nomber, and
when he sawe the shyp so farre in the see, he sayde /
'a, good lorde, now haue I loste my sone / for I knowe
4 well he is gone in yonder shyp and the damoysell with
hym / by the faythe that I owe to¹ our lorde Iesu
Chryste the² wacheman shall lese his hede' / then the
wache³ man was taken and fast bounde, so that the
8 blode came out at his fyngers endes, and sayd all
weypynge, 'a, ⁴very god,⁴ in an yll oure I was ac-
quaynted with Florence and his louer⁵: also for the
goodnes *that* I haue done I shall haue a small rewarde,
12 this day I am lyke to lese my lyfe for loue of my lorde.'

The king of
Aragon sees the
ship, and learns
that his son with
Clariet is on
board.

He orders the
watchman to lose
his head.

¶ Of the great debate that was in the palays
for the wachemans sake, whomme the kynge
wolde haue had to be hanged / and how
16 the kyng of Nauerne took the citye of
courtoyse / and how he departed⁶ thence.

Ca. C.lxvii.

20  Hen the erle, Peter of Aragon, sawe the
wache man taken by whome Florence
and his louer⁵ wer sauued / he was
sory to se the man so sore be⁷ten and
entreated⁸ / then he wente in hast to
24 the kynge, and sayd / 'syr, ye shewe well by your
workys that ye haue but small reason to suffer thus
this poore man to be beten, and that ye wolde put hym
to deth / for the goodnes that he hath done to your
28 sone therin⁹ he hath done but as he shulde do, and
lyke a trewe seruaunte; ye ought the better to loue
hym, ye shall do yll to put hym to deth / I wyll¹⁰ ye
knowe¹⁰ yf ye put hym to deth I wyll neuer¹¹ serue

Sir Peter pities
the watchman.

He pleads for him
with the king.

¹ vnto. ² this. ³ Fol. clxii. col. 1. ⁴ ⁴ good Lord.

⁵ Loue. ⁶ from. ⁷ Fol. clxii. col. 2. ⁸ threatened.

⁹ therein *after* done. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ not.

If he is slain, Sir Peter will join the king of Navarre.

The king of Arragon is obdurate.

The watchman's kindred kneel before the king, and implore him to have mercy.

Sir Peter declares the man shall not die unless by judgment of the lords and council.

The watchman is sent to prison, and the king goes to his palace, followed by Sir Peter and the knights, who loved him.

The king orders a scaffold to be erected.

Sir Peter orders the watchman's friends to go to a tower and arm themselves with the armour they shall find there.

you one daye lenger; But I wyll rather go to the kynge of Nauerne, and¹ to mayntayne his warre agaynst you / when the kyng hard hym so to threte hym, he sware by god he shulde repent it, and how⁴ there shuld no man sauе the wachemans lyfe: then the poore man embrased the kynges leg & cryed for marcy / but the kyng sware and made promyse howe he shuld be hanged without marcy / when the erle Peter harde that he was² sorowfull / the poore man wepte & behelde the people that were there assembeled / and desyred them to praye for his sowle / sayenge howe he shuld dye for sauynge of his lorde / there were many¹² of y^e pore mans kyn,³ they knelyd all downe before the kyng desyryng hym to pardon hym / the kyng answered *that he wold not* / when the erle Peter harde that he sayd to the kyng, 'syr, suerly he shall not dye¹⁶ without it be by iugemente as your lordes and counsayle shal ordayne:' when the kyng hard that he was sore dysplesyd, and so entered in to the citye and set the wacheman in pryon / then he wente to his palays,²⁰ and Peter folowed hym, & accompanied with many other knyghtes such as loued hym, and in lyke wyse so dyd the poore mannes kyn³ / when the kyng was in his palays he commaunded⁴ a scaffolle to be made, wheron²⁴ he wolde haue the wacheman to lese his hede / when his kynsmen harde that they cryed for marcy / but the kyng wold do no thyng at theyr desyre / when⁵ erle Peter sawe the yll wyll of the kyng he made a token²⁸ to the wachemannes frendes, who were in nombre⁶ a .C. and .I., *that they shuld go to such a towre, where⁷ was great plente of harnays,⁸ and to breke it vp and to arme them, and so they dyd, and came agayne to the 32 palais; and when the kyng sawe them comyng*

¹ helpe.

² verie.

³ kindred.

⁴ Fol. clxii. back, col. 1.

⁵ the.

⁶ about a.

⁷ there.

⁸ Armour.

armyd / he cryed to his men that they shuld arme them and to take them that were so bolde to come in¹ his presence all armed ; and when every man was 4 armed they came agayne to the palays to haue taken the wachman and all his kynred / but then² the wacheman and his frendes, who were redy in armure, set vpon the kyngis men : & also Peter of Aragon and his 8 company ayded them / so that there was great, so great a skyrmyssh in the palays that it was petye to se it, they cut of armes, legges & hedis, eche of other / fynally the kyng and his men were so sore constrainyd 12 that of force they abandoned the palays and fled awaye / and the kyng fled into his chaumbre for sauergarde. Anone the newes ran in the towne that the kyng was sore assembeled³ in the palays and⁴ iopardy of his 16 lyfe / then all the communalte wente & armed them / and sowned the larom bell, there was suche a noyse and brute as though all the world had bene lost / then a spye went out and shewed the kyng of Nauerne howe 20 kyng Guaryn was assembeled in his palays within the citye bycause of a wacheman whome⁵ y^e kyng wolde put to dethe bycause⁶ he had delyuered out of preson Florence and the da⁷ moysell his louer :⁸ then the kyng 24 of Nauerne, ryght ioyous⁹ of those newes, commaunded hastely his men to be redy in harnays¹⁰ / for he sayde⁵ it was tyme then or elles neuer to assayle the citye / 'great desyre I haue¹¹ to be reuenged of this kinge who 28 had wedded my syster / whome he hathe slayne, I shall neuer haue ioye at my harte / tyll¹² I be reuenged' / then every man armed them / and so assembeled together with baners dysplayed, and so came in good 32 order towards the citye to assayle it / but when they within the towne hard the crye and noyse without,

They return to
the palace and set
upon the king's
men.

Sir Peter aids the
former.

The king is driven
from his palace.

All the city is in
commotion.

News of the riot
is taken to the
king of Navarre.

He orders his
men to assail the
city.

¹ to. ² omitted. ³ assaulted. ⁴ in. ⁵ that.

⁶ in that. ⁷ Fol. clxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ ioyfull. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ (quoth he). ¹² vntill.

At the approach
of the men of
Navarre the strife
in the palace
ceases.

The king of
Arragon and his
lords came forth
to give battle to
Navarre.

But the men of
Navarre defeat
the men of
Arragon, and
enter the city.

The king of
Arragon takes
refuge in a church,
but he is never-
theless taken
prisoner.

He reproaches his
enemy with sacri-
fice in seizing him
in the church.

The king of
Navarre admits
the sin, and pro-
mises to release
him if he will
pardon the watch-
man.

& sawe theyr enemyes comynge towardes them / they
wente and shewed it at y^e palays, wherby the stryfe
there ceased / & then the kynge and all his lordes, with
all his people, issued out in batayle / then there began 4
a sore batayle, and many a man slayne and maynid /
but there were so many Nauernoys, that whether kyng
Guaryn wold or not, parforce they were fayne to
abandon the vycotry to theyr enemyes / and were fayne 8
to flee into the towne: but theyr enemyes folowed
them so nere that the kyng of Nauerne and his men
entered in with them / then the kyng of Nauerne
commaunded¹ none to² be slayne without they were 12
found in defence / for he sayd he caryd not so he
myght be reuenged of the kyng. Then the Nauernoys
spred abrode in the citye takynge prisoners / then kyng
Gauryn fled to the mynster churche / then he stode in 16
the churche dore to make defence / but it coude not
auayle hym, there was so many of his enemyes that he
fled to the hyeaulter for sauegard / but y^e kyng of
Nauerne, who was entered into the churche, com- 20
maunded his men to take Guaryn / y^e whiche they
dyd / ‘syrs,’ ³quod kyng Guaryn, ‘ye do me great
wrongs to take me in this holy place, whereas euery
man shulde be sauyd / aboue all thynges y^e house of 24
god ought to be refuge for euery man’ / then y^e kyng
of Nauerne, who was holden for a good holy man /
heryng what kyng Guaryn sayd, he knew well¹ he
sayd⁴ trouthe, and repentyd hymselfe, and sayd / 28
‘fayre brother,⁵ for the offence that I haue committed
agaynst our lorde god ⁶Iesu chrysste,⁶ I shall amend it
to the doble / so that ye do pardon the wacheman that
hathe delyuered my nephue Florence out of your 32
preson / I shall then shew you this courtoysye; for the
offence that I haue made I and all my men shall issue

¹ that.

² should.

³ Fol. clxiii. col. 1.

⁴ the.

⁵ Nephewe.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

out of this citye without takynge of any prisoner or
any maner of goodes / for the loue of my nephue
Florence, whome I loue enterely, and for the goodnes
4 of the people I shall go to my tentes without, and
I wyll graunte you a truse to endure for a moneth / and
I promyse you the monethe ones expyryd / I shall
aproche agayne so nere to this citye / that as long as
8 lyfe is in my body I shall not departe tylly¹ I haue
taken this citye and you, whome I take for myne
enemye / to haue you as my prisoner / for I shall neuer
haue ioye at my harte tylly¹ I haue reuengyd the deth
12 of my syster, your wyfe' / then kynge Guaryn sayde /
'syr² kynge of Nauerne / of the courtoysye and bountye
that ye shewē³ me I thanke you / and as for the wache
man, I do pardon hym all myne yll wyll / and wheras
16 ye saye *that* ye wyll come so nere my citye to wyn it /
when *that* cometh, by the grace of god & by the helpe
of my trew subiectes I shall do y^e best I can to defende
my selfe and my citye' / then the kyng of Nauerne
20 issued out of ⁴the church, & lepte on⁵ his horse and
rode to the gate and taryed there tylly¹ all his men were
clene auoyded out of the citye, to y^e entent *that* none
prisoners nor goodes shulde not² be had⁶ out of the
24 citye, wherof his men were angery, & specially they
that were poore / the other caryd not greatly bycause
y^e .ii. kynges had bene so long frendes together / wher-
fore y^e warre dyspleasid them, and⁷ were sory that it
28 enduryd so longe / when the kynge of Nauerne saw
that all his men were issued out of the citye / then he
withdrew hym into his tent / then he closyd in the
citye with a sege abydynge tylly¹ the truse were⁸ ex-
32 pyryd. Nowe let vs leue to speke of this warre
betwene these two kynges, & speke of Florence, who
sayled vpon the see with his louer Claryet.

There shall then
be a month's
truce, after which
the war shall
begin again.

The king of
Arragon pardons
the watchman.

The men of
Navarre depart
from the city,

and close the city
in a siege till the
truce should be
expired.

¹ vntill. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. clxiii. col. 2.

⁵ vpon. ⁶ caried. ⁷ they. ⁸ was.

¶ How the shyp wherin Florence ¹ and his louer was in¹ was taken by the sarasyns, and all theyr company taken and slayne, and led to the castel of Anfalerne. 4

Ca. C.lxviii.



The master of the
ship in which
Florence had
taken refuge
learns his
history;

he puts himself
and his ship
under Florence's
orders, so that he
may go where his
father may not
find him.

The master offers
to take him to
Marseilles.

He story² sheweth that after that Florence was departed out of his countre with his louer³ Claryet; how be it he 8
knew not what she was / so it was that the mayster of the shyp that he was in was of Marcyl⁴ / when he

knew that Florence was sone to kynge Guaryn of 12 Aragon, & that he had put his truste in hym, then he came to⁵ Florence & sayd / 'syr, the goodnes and honoure that I se in you causeth me to say to⁵ you that⁶ I wolde not do to another; I wel perseyue by 16 you that ye are in great dought of y^e kynge your father, leste he shulde folowe you to get you agayne / ⁷syr, to the entente that ye ⁸shall be well assured of me and of my maryners, I put in to your handes my selfe, my 20 shyppe, and all my maryners / and I wyl⁹ they obeye you as they haue done me, and that ye be maister ouer vs al. And, syr, neuer thynke that the kynge of Aragon, your father, shall trouble you / we be¹⁰ farre 24 ynough fro hym: by y^e grace of god we shall so conducte you that we shall bryng you to the holy sepulture, & after bryng you¹¹ to marcyll⁴ / and then fro thence ye maye go whether as it plese you' / 'syr,' 28 quod Florence, 'of the honour and great courtoysye that ye offer me, I thanke you' / then all they that were within the shyppe sayde, 'syr, refuse not to be oure mayster / for yf the wynde had not bene agaynst vs we 32

¹⁻¹ was and his Loue. ² History. ³ Loue.

⁴ Marsellis. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ which. ⁷ but.

⁸ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ are. ¹¹ bothe.

had bene farre of by thys tyme / syr, haue no doubte
we shall all obeye you and do as ye commaunde vs, syn
it is our maysters pleasure' / 'syrs,' quod Florencee, 'I
4 thanke you of your offer, god suffer me to deserue it' /
Florence was ioyfull of the good aduenture that god had
sent hym. ¹Thus he and his louer² sayled ioyfully in
the see of Aufrike. So longe they sayled *that they*
8 paste the Isles of Corse, and Sardayne, & Cesyll, and
on a wednysdaye betymes they aryued nere to y^e Isle of
Candy / there ther³ arose vpon them a maruaylous
great wynd and tempest, so that parforce they were
12 dreuen to the coste of Barbary ; the tempeste was
so great that euery man was in fere of drownynge / the
wawes were great & ferfull / the damoysell was in
great doubte when she saw the maryners in suche fere :
16 ¹she called deuoutly vpon our lorde Iesu chrysste, desyr-
ynge hym to haue petye of her and to bryng them to
a good porte / when Florence perseyued his louer² and
all his⁴ maryners ⁵in suche fere as they were ³in ³
20 he comforted them the best he myght⁶ / but it auayled
not, for the wynde draue them whether they wold
or not towardes Bongy, nere to a citye namyd as then
Aufalerne, where as they were fayne to caste theyr
24 ancre in great fere of lesynge of theyr lyues / then ther
fel on them a galey wherin were a .C. sarasyns / & another
great shyp wherin were mo then .iiii. C. men, & they
all fell vpon Florence shyp / when Florence sawe bothe
28 the shyppe and galey to set vpon his shyp / the
mayster of the shyp and the maryners began to wepe,
and sayd to⁷ Florence, ⁸'syr, you & we all ar lost, we
shall be all sclaues with y^e sarasyns : yonder galey and
32 shyp ar full of sarasyns, and they are redy comynge to
set vpon vs' / when Florence hard that, he sayd, 'syr,

They sail in the
sea of Africa,

and arrive there
on the island of
Candia.

Then a storm
drives them to
the coast of
Barbary.

The wind alarms
all the sailors and
Clariet.

A large galley and
a ship come
towards them.

They are Saracen
vessels.

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ omitted. ⁴ the.

⁵ Fol. clxiii. back. col. 2. ⁶ could.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Ah.

Florence implores
all to place their
trust in God.

be not abasshed / ¹whom god wyll ayde² can not be
perysshed / no mortal man can hurt hym, let vs put our
trust in hym, and take suche grace as he wyll sende
vs / the great nombre of people can not hurt vs yf god ⁴
wyll ayde vs / let vs shewe our selfe lyke men, they be
without lawe and without fayth / and we byleue in
god ;³ let vs arme our selues and shew our selues lyke
men to defende our lyues' / when the mayster and the ⁸
maryners harde Florence, they sayd / 'syr, ⁴in the
sauegard of our lorde Iesu chrys, and vnto⁴ you we
commyt our selues' / then they all armed them / and
euery man stode at theyr defence / then Florence sayde / ¹²
'syrs, let vs all thynke that ve nowe do fyght for our
lyues, and therfore let vs not be abasshed, euery man
thynke to do his beste that he can / I loue by amours /
beholle her here ⁵by me⁵ by whome I am so moued to ¹⁶
do well / and to defende bothe her & me' / 'syr,' quod
they, 'shame haue he *that* ⁶fayntethe' / then the shyp
and the galey came nere to Florence shyppe ; then the
shotte of both partyes flewe so thycke as though it had ²⁰

He bids them
fight vigorously
for their lives.

bene snow : there was a great bataile betwene them,
great herte was done with castynge downe⁷ of barres
⁸out of⁸ the toppes / two tymes Floren[ce] entered into
the shyppe of his enemyes, wheras he dyd maruellous, ²⁴
and slewe so many sarasyns that the water was red with
the blode of them that were slayne of bothe partyes /
there was an orryble batayle / many of Florence men
were slayne / the good maister was slayne and the ²⁸
most parte of his men. Also fro the lond there were

The battle begins
sharply.

Florence works
marvels.

But many of his
men, with the
master of his
ship, are slain.

Bombs are hurled
on Florence's ship
from the shore.

shot bombardis and gonne at Florence shyppe, so that
therby, and with the great barres of Iron the shyp was
sore empayryd, for it was stryken thrughe in a .C. ³²
places, so⁹ that the see enteryd with great abundaunce /

¹ hee. ² sauе. ³ by whome we trust to be saued.
⁴⁻⁴ to. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. clxiiii. col. 1. ⁷ out.
⁸⁻⁸ from. ⁹ in such sort.

when the damoysell sawe that mortall dyscomfyture,
how there company were slayne and theyr shyp nyne full
of water, & sawe no mo parsones lefte alyue with
 4 Florence but .vi. parsons,¹ she was then in great fere /
and she thought she had rather enter into the sarasyns
shyppe then to be drowned in the see / she sawe the
galeye, the whiche laye ioynyng to the shyppe, she
 8 lepte into the shyppe to sauе her lyfe ; when Florence
sawe his louer² in the galey he was nere out of his
mynde³ for sorowe, and he sawe well⁴ yf he taryed styl
in his owne shyppe he shulde be drowned / then he
 12 lepte in to the galey whereas his louer² was / and there
he slew many a sarasyn, but there were so moche
people that with force of darteres and speres he was
borne downe / then they toke and bounde his handes
 16 so sore that the blode ran out at his nayles. Thus
Flo⁵rence was taken and all his men slayne and
drowned excepte some that were taken / then Florence
wept for petye of them, and sayd / ‘a, my father, how
 20 falsely haue you wrought agaynst me / thus by your
foly I am in great daunger / I shall neuer retourne in
to my countre without god helpe me’ / often tymes he
beheld his louer² / whome the sarasyns dyd sore bet
 24 and yll entrete⁶ / wheroft Florence had suche dys-
pleasure that he was nere hande out of his wyttes.
 ‘Alas,’ quod Florence,⁷ ‘I oughte greatly¹ to be sorow-
full to se her that I loue best so sore beten and
 28 tormented before my face / O cursed dethe, why
sufferest thou me to lyue to see this⁸ that my louer²
shulde be thus delte with, and yet I can not helpe nor
socoure her,’ therwith he wepte, and sodaynely fell in
 32 a swoune amonge the handes of the sarasyns / when the
damoysell sawe her louer fallen in a traunce, and sawe

The ship is nearly shattered : only six with Florence are left alive.

Clariet is very
fearful, and think-
ing the ship she
is in will sink,

leaps into the
Saracen's galley.

Florence follows
her in great
alarm, and he is
taken prisoner.

Clariet is beaten
and maltreated.

Florence prays
for death,

and falls down in
a swoon.

¹ omitted. ² Loue. ³ wits. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. clxiiii. col. 2. ⁶ threaten.

⁷ he. ⁸ day.

Clariet comes to him, and thinks him dead.

She laments her cruel fate,

and falls down in a trance beside her lover.

Sorbare, the captain of the town and castle on the shore, enters the galley, and pities the lovers, for he was a secret Christian.

Florence and Clariet are delivered into his hands, and he takes them to the castle.

The other prisoners are sent to various towns, and cruelly ill-used.

hym so pale of colour / she came to¹ hym / and she wente² suerly that he had bene dede, and also the sarasyns sayde the same. Then she cryed out, and said, ‘O³ very god,³ why do you consente the dethe of⁴ my louer, seyng that we must thus depart for euer, it is no thynge the Payne and yll that I suffer / but my sorowe is for the dethe of my louer here before me / I ought to be sorowfull when the moste fayrest,⁴ &⁵ 8 swetest⁶ / & most⁵ ientylest creature of all y^e worlde is thus dede and loste for euer, and the most valyauntest knyght that euer was borne,’⁷ therwith she fell downe in a traunce by her louer /⁷ All that sawe them thought¹² suerly that they had bene both dede without any recouer, and had great petye and compassyon of them / then he that was the capetayne of the towne & castall, who was named Sorbare, cam⁸ into the shyp, and sawe¹⁶ where Florence & his louer⁹ laye one by another as dede, he had great petye of them, for he was a good chrysten man / but he durste not be¹⁰ knowed¹⁰ therof for fere of sleynge / he loued well god, and dyd after¹¹ 20 good seruyce in chrysṭendome / for by hym the sayd two louers were saued fro the dethe, as ye shall here after¹² / when these .ii. louers were come agayne to themselves / the sarasyns then delyuerged them bothe²⁴ into the capetayns handes /⁷ when Florence saw his swete louer⁹ by hym, he embracid and kyssed her swetely / the capetayne sorbare, when he sawe the youthe of these two louers, he had great petye of them / 28 but he made therof no semblaunt¹³ / he toke them bothe into the castell with hym, and the other prisoners such as had taken them, brought them into dyuers towers, wheras they were kepte in great mysery / for³²

¹ vnto. ² thought. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ faire.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ sweet. ⁷ and.

⁸ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1. ⁹ Loue. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to knowe.

¹¹ afterward. ¹² heareafter. ¹³ semblance.

the sarasyns had no pety of them byecause they were chrystened.

¶ Howe Sorbare the capetayne comforted
4 Florence and Claryet / and howe there
aryued .iiii. shypes with chrysten men by
fortune of the see, and how Florence was
knownen by them. Ca. clxix.

8 Hen the capetaine of the castell was
within the castell, and Florence and
his louer¹ with hym / he sayde to
them / 'frendes, I haue great petye of
12 you. shewe me what ye be and what
fortune hath brought you hether, syn² ye be³ yonge;
4 howe is it that ye wolde aduenture vpon the see wherin
are so many perelles / yf ye shewe me the trouthe ye
16 shall lese nothyng therby / for yf I canne I shall set
you in such a pla[c]e⁵ wheras ye shall be in sauergarde' /
'syr,' quod Florence, 'I shall shewe you all myne
aduenture what so euer fall therof. Syr, knowe for
20 trouth⁶ I am sone to kynge Guaryn kynge of Aragon,
and I am departed fro hym in dyspleasure.' Thus
Florence shewed Sorbare all his hole aduenture / and
how he was taken by his father, and howe he scaped
24 and his louer¹ also / then he sayd, 'syr, I haue shewed
you the trouthe, I commyt my body and my louers⁷
here into your handes / ⁸In you lyethe our lyfe and
dethe; ye maye do with vs at your pleasure' / and
28 therwith he kneled downe / then Sorbare toke hem vp
and sayd / 'fayre sone, be not abasshed, for I haue bene
or⁹ this tyme in as great aduenture / haue no doubte I
shall so order the matter that ye shall be out of all

The captain inquires of the condition of the fugitives,

and promises them all assistance.

Florence tells his history.

¹ Loue. ² seeing. ³ so.
⁴ Fol. clxiii, back, col. 2. ⁵ plate in text. ⁶ that.
⁷ Loues. ⁸ for. ⁹ before.

The captain bids
his servants offer
no hurt to the
damsel,

and tells Florence
how he once
visited Duke
Huon, and saw
his fair daughter.

Florence and
Clariet are placed
in separate
chambers.

Clariet laments
her loneliness,
and complains of
Oberon for having
given his realm to
her father.

parayle / but kepe euery thyng secret to your selfe¹ / then Sorbare called to² him .iiii. of his seruautes and sayde / ‘I commaunde you to³ do no rudenes to³ this prisoner⁴ nor to⁴ this damoysel / but⁴ lette them haue⁴ brede, fleshe & wyne at theyr pleasure / as I had when I was presoner at Terascon / fayre sone,’ quod Sorbare to Florence, ‘knowe for trouthe⁵ I was ones kynge of Belmaryn / & ones I fought with Aymery of Narbone, 8 and I was taken by the handes of Reynalt of Beau- lande / then I was brought to⁶ the citye of Burdeaux, wheras I sawe a noble prynce namyd duke Huon, who had wedded a noble lady called Esclaramonde, doughter 12 to the admyrall Gaudes / ⁴they had a doughter welbeloued with⁷ ⁸them / she was the fayreste damoysell⁹ that euer I sawe,¹⁰ she passed¹¹ not¹² at that tyme vi. yere of age / and as I harde say syn there came to 16 Burdeaux dyuers kynges and great prynces for to haue had her in maryage / then I cam preuely to myne vnkle who gaue me this castell to kepe when he sawe that I had loste all myne owne realme / and bycause 20 I was well entreyd¹³ amonge y^e chrysten men I wyll that these prisoners be well delte withal’ / ‘syr,’ quod his seruautes, ‘syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure we shall accomlysshe the same.’ then they toke Florence and the 24 damoysell and dyd set them in a towre eche of them in a chaumbre apart, wheroft they were¹⁵ sorowfull / when the fayre damoysell sawe that she was put fro her louer she was ryght sory / she began then¹⁶ to com- 28 playne and said / ‘a, my ryght dere father¹⁷ and dere mother Esclaramonde, I maye well hate the acquaynt- aunce that ye haue had with kynge Oberon / for by hym I haue lost you both. ye haue forgoten me in this 32

¹ selues. ² vnto. ³⁻⁵ vse well. ⁴⁻⁴ and.

⁵ that. ⁶ to to in text. ⁷ of.

⁸ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 1. ⁹ Ladie. ¹⁰ did see

¹¹ was. ¹² aboue. ¹³ entertained. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ then after sory. ¹⁷ Duke Huon.

worlde when ye leue me in this pryon / a, kynge Oberon, thou hast done me great yll & damage when thou dydest geue¹ to¹ my father thy realme, whereas is
 4 the citye of Momure,² wheras nowe is the duke my father and y^e duches my mother: I haue lost the flowre of all my kyn,³ I am sure⁴ I muste⁵ dye in this towre for⁶ sorowe. A, false deth, thou dydest me great
 8 yll that thou tokest not me when I was yonge and lytell. I yeld myselfe to god¹ and to his dere mother¹ whom I requyre to haue petye of me / and wolde to god that I were in company with my louer Florence /
 12 the capetayne hath done yll thus to seperate vs a sonder, for yf I were with hym I shuld the better pas the tyme / yf⁷ his father knewe of what lynage I am of and whose daughter I am he wolde not haue refused
 16 to haue geuen me his sone in maryage / but he shall not know it¹ for me what so euer payne I suffer.' Florence, who was⁸ in the chaumbre nexte aboue⁹ the chaumbre where as the fayre damoysell Claryet was /
 20 who had well harde the complayntes that she had made before, and vnderstode euyre worde that she had spoken, wheroft he was the ioyfullest man at his hart lyuynge / for yf he loued her wel before then he loued
 24 her moche better / ²then he loked out at a wyndow wheras he saw Sorbare walkyng vp and downe in the courte of the castell. Then Florence requyred hym to haue petye and compassyon of the damoysell beyng
 28 in the towre alone / 'frend,' quod Sorbare, 'suffer a season.¹⁰ I shall sette you bothe in suche a place or¹¹ it be nyght that ye shall be bothe ioyfull / be not abasshed / for the loue of you I shall leue the lawe of
 32 Mahomet, and byleue on¹² our lord Iesu chrys¹³ when it is nyght and euyre man a¹² bed / we shall enter into

Florence over-hears her complaint,

and appeals to Sorbare to permit him to rejoin her.

Sorbare renews his promise to save them both, and offers to turn Christian.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² and. ³ kindred and. ⁴ that.

⁵ shall. ⁶ with. ⁷ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 2. ⁸ aboue.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ for a time. ¹¹ before. ¹² in. ¹³ for.

a galeye that lyeth here by: but as for your other men
that be prisoners abrode in the towne / it wolde be
hard for me to get them out of preson.' 'Then I pray
to ¹our lorde Iesu chrysste,'¹ quod Florence, 'to ayd & ⁴
socoure them in theyr great nede.' Great pitye had
Sorbare when he harde Florence so peteously pray for
the sauegarde of his men whome he muste leue behind
him yf god socour hym not: then Sorbare sawe com- ⁸
yng to² the port warde³ .iiii. great shypes wherein
there were a⁴ two thousande pylgremes who were com-
ynge⁵ fro Ierusalem⁵ warde³ fro the holy sepulture /
but by fortune of the see & force of y^e wynd they were ¹²
constrayned⁶ to aryue there / then the capetayne wente
vp into the towre to se Florence whome he toke by the
hande and sayd / 'frend, yonder ye maye se .iiii. great
shypes full of people comynge hether by force of the ¹⁶
wynde / let vs go downe and se what they be and whc
is theyr capetayne' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I am redy
to folowe your pleasure / my body & my louer⁷ I com-
myt to your sauegarde' / then the capetayne sente for ²⁰
the damoysell, & when Florence sawe her he was
ryghte ioyfull and sayd, 'dere louer,⁸ be no thyng
afrayed / the capetayne and I wyll go downe to the see
syde to knowe what people be yonder that comethe in ²⁴
yonder shypes / and anone we wyll retourne agayne
to⁹ .you' / 'syr,' quod the damoysell, 'god be youre
gyde' / Sorbare and Florence went downe to the hauen
syde / ¹⁰when the shypes aryued they saw wel¹¹ there ²⁸
was moche¹² people, and parseyued well howe¹¹ they
were chrysten men. Then Sorbare saluted them and
sayde / 'syrs, ye be wellcome. I praye you¹³ shewe me
fro whence ye come, & what ye seke for in these ³²

Florence and
Sorbare go down
to make inquiries
of them.

¹⁻¹ god. ² towards. ³ omitted. ⁴ more then.

⁵⁻⁵ at Ierusalem after sepulture.

⁶ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 1. ⁷ Loues. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ that. ¹² many.

¹³ to.

partyes, & what ye be.' Then the chefe mayster of them answered and sayde / 'syr, we be of the realme of fraunce, and we come nowe fro Ierusalem fro the

The captain tells
Sorbare they come
from France.

4 pylgrymage of the holy sepulture : and the force of the wynd hath caused vs to aryue here. ¹yf we ought to paye anythyng for comynge hether we are redy to pay it:' 'syrs,' quod Sorbare, 'syn² this is your aduenture 8 ye ar hether³ welcome to me / syn ye be here aryued it is reason that I be comfortid and ayded by you. ¹I say vnto you that I byleue vpon ⁴our lorde god⁴ Iesu chrys / but as yet I was neuer chrysened / I shall 12 shew you, syrs, what ye shall do. yf ye wyl byleue me ye neuer came to ⁵so fayre aduenture / ye shall go with me into the castell here aboue / in which place I shall fornysshe you all with horse & harnays⁶ / then ¹ye 16 shall abyde in the castell and make no noyse nor shewe youre selfe⁷ / then¹ I wyll go to the hauen and garnysshe a galey with all thynges necessary / in this towre there are many prisoners⁸ of⁴ frensshe men who 20 were taken but late in this hauen, and many were slain, & such as be taken as⁹ prisoners in this towne / and erly in the mornyng we wyl issue out of the castell into the towne and set fyre in dyuers places / then the 24 sarasyns wyll haue great busynes to rescue and stanche the fyre / ¹then we wyll enter into theyr howses & take all theyr gooddes and all the prisoners and all the ryches that we can fynde in the towne we shal put it in to our 28 shyp : and yf the sarasyns come to asayle our shyppe with botes and barges / then lette vs defende our selfe⁷ as well as we can / and fyrst of all let vs go and take all the shyppes that be in the hauen' / when the cape. 32 tayne of y^e .iiii. shyppes hard Sorbare they praysed his aduyse and good counsayle : and they all with one

He tells them of
the French prison-
ers in the town,

and how they may
help him to set
them free.

¹ and. ² seeing that. ³ after welcome.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 2.

⁶ armour. ⁷ selues. ⁸ prisoners after men. ⁹ are.

acord concluded to do his pleasure / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'to y^e entent that ye shall byleue me and to haue of me no maner of suspecte / yf ye wyl haue knowlege what I am this yong man that ye se here be me can 4 enforme you' / 'syr, quod the patron, 'by your vysage it apereth well that all trouthe is in you, & how¹ that ye be² a noble man. therfore, syr, ³all we put our

The captain of the
pilgrims inquires
who Florence is. selfe in³ your conducte and grace / but, syr, yf it 8 maye be your pleasure to shew vs what yonge Ientylman is that we se there by you. ⁴syr, ye shulde do me a great pleasure, for me thynke I shulde haue sene hym or⁵ this' / 'patron,' quod ⁶Sorbare, 'syn ye wyll knowe 12 it gladly I shall shewe you / syn⁷ he hath dyscouered hym selfe to me / knowe for trouthe⁸ he is sone to

Sorbare tells him. kynge Guaryn of Aragon / who by fortune of the see aryued here ¹there as ye be¹ / and here parforce he was 16 taken and his men most parte slayn / and with hym was taken a noble damoysell who is aboue in my castell' / when the patron and they that were with hym vnderstode that it was Florence sone to⁹ kynge Guarin¹ 20 of Aragon they were therof ryght ioyfull, for they were all of the realme of Aragon, and sent forthe by the

The captain
replies that they
are come from the
King of Arragon
to search for him. kynge to serche for Florence / they thanked ¹⁰our lorde Iesu chryst¹⁰ of the¹¹ aduenture that he had sent them 24 to fynde Florence there : whome they were sente to serche for / then they came to Florence and knelyd downe before them¹² and sayd / 'a, syr, ye ought to thanke god that we haue founde you. we haue mar- 28 uayle why ye hyde your name fro vs / for we be all sente fro kynge Guaryn youre father to serche for you / for yf god had not sente you this good fortune we shulde neuer haue hard any tdynges of you / nor haue 32

¹ omitted. ² are. ³⁻³ we all commit ourselves to.

⁴ truely. ⁵ ere. ⁶ Fol. clxvi, col. 1. ⁷ seeing.

⁸ that. ⁹ the. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god. ¹¹ their good.

¹² him.

shewed the kynge your father any thyng to his pleasure.'

¶ Howe Sorbare and Florene & theyr company went in¹ the towne and robbed and spoyled it / and so toke the se with great ioy² and the damoysell³ Claryet with them, and toke theyr cource to sayle to⁴ the realme of Aragon.

Ca. C.lxx.

When the patron & his company knewe and sawe Florene the ioy *that* they made can not be recounted, nor the chere that they made to Florene when they were entered into the castell , wherof sorbare had great ioy : the same season whyles they made this great ioye and feste⁶ there was in Sorbare's company a sarasyn who vnderstode the language of frenche⁷ / and had well hard the enterpryse that the chrysten men were determyned to do / and also he saw well how sorbare was ioyned to theyr company / then he preuely departed, and hastely he went into the towne and shewed the burgesses and comons of the enterpryce that the chrysten men had concluded to do, & how that Sorbare was become chrysten / when the paynyme⁸s vnderstode that / incontynent they went and armyd them and came to the castell thynkyng to haue wonne it / but they founde there suche defence and resystence that⁹ they dyd there lytell¹⁰ to theyr profyght / yet the assaulte endul¹¹ryd tyll¹² the nexte daye / and at last¹³ were constrainyd to withdrawe fro the castel a great space. Florene, who was within, cryed

A Saracen in Sorbare's company overhears the plan to rescue the French prisoners.

The townsmen rise up and attack Sorbare's castle, but to no purpose.

¹ to. ² and triumph. ³ faire Ladie. ⁴ towardes.

⁵ Fol. clxvi. col. 2. ⁶ feasting. ⁷ French longuage.

⁸ Sarasyns. ⁹ that which. ¹⁰ was small.

¹¹ Fol. clxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² vntill. ¹³ they.

to them and sayd / 'a, ye false velaynes, ye haue slayne my men / but yf god suffer me to lyue theyr deth shal be derely sold¹' / when the paynyme saw that they coude not atayne to the castel / then they blew the 4 retrayte ; and euery man retourned to theyr owne house.

As soon as the Saracens retire, Sorbare advises Florence and the men with him to issue out and attack them.

Then Sorbare sayde to Florence and his company / ' syrs, I aduyse you all to lepe on youre horses / for now the paynyme are returned to theyr logynye wery of 8 theyr trawayle, and many of them sore hurte, and they are in great fere ; I knowe theyr condycyons well ynough / and bycause that after trauayle and laboure a man is febelyd & full of fere / and nowe euery man 12 is in his owne house and vnarmed to be at theyr ease / therfore I counsayle that incontynent² Issue out and set vpon the towne.' Then Florence and all the other seyd / 'syr, as ye haue deuysed we ar redy to do it / 16 for a more noble counsaile was neuer geuen' / then euery man made hym redy and ³so³ issued out of the castell, and Florence and Sorbare went before them and sessyd⁴ not tyll⁵ they were entered into the towne, 20 for ther enter⁶ coude not be defended, for⁷ the castell ioyned to a corner of the towne : then they made a

The town is fired, and many Saracens slain in the streets.

great crye and spred abrode in the towne and put in fyre in dyuers places / and slewen downe the paynyme 24 in the stretes and market places / fynally, they dyd so moche by force of armes that they brought the towne vnder theyr subieccyon / and the enhabtauntes therof⁸

The prisoners are rescued.

slayne, ³none spared,³ and all the chrysten prisoners 28 rescued, who had great ioy when they saw Florence, theyr lord, whom they thought ⁹had bene dede / great ryches that day was wonne in that towne, the which was geuen and departed to¹⁰ them that had deserued it / 32 & Florence gaue to the chrysten prisoners great ryches /

¹ bought. ² we. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ rested.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ entring. ⁷ because. ⁸ all.

⁹ Fol. clxvi. back, col 2. ¹⁰ vnto.

thus when the towne was wonne and the ryches there
of put into theyr shypes / then¹ they all departed and
set fyre on al the citye / then they went into the castel,
4 wheras the damoysel Claryet was, who had great ioy
when she sawe Florence her louer / ²then Sorbare, who
had great desyre to departe³ thence, toke all the treasure
and ryches & had it into theyr shypes, and vytayled
8 them with all thynges necessary / then when it was
daye in the mornynge they departed fro the castell &
wente to theyr shypes with great ioye / Florence
holdynge his louer⁴ by the hande / sayde vnto her /
12 'dere louer,⁴ kynge Guaryn, my father, hath sente to
seke for me all aboute bothe by londe and by water /
and these *that* be come here with these shypes were
sent forth by the kynge, my father, to serche for me' /
16 when the damoysell hard how Florence wold bryng
her agayne to his father she had great fere, and said,
'syr, ye knowe ryghte well the great hate and dys-
pleasure that your father hathe to you and to¹ me / for
20 god sake, syr, let vs go some other waye : 'dere
louer,'⁴ quod florence, 'haue no fere of my father ; for
yf ye ⁵wolde haue⁵ shewed youre name & what ye be
or⁶ this tyme / it had easid vs of moche payne.' 'A,
24 syr,' quod she, 'it is not as ye wene it were' / 'well,'
quod Florence, 'it is suffycyent to me as it is' / then
they hoysed vp theyr sayles & so sayled tyll⁷ they were
fare of fro that londe. ²Sorbare was ryght ioyful in
28 *that* he had saued y^e chrysten men / and for the loue
of Florence he forsoke his owne lawe and his countre /
then ⁸he sayde to⁹ Florence / 'syr, my body and
goodes I abandon to you in suche wyse *that* I shall
32 neuer leue you for lyfe nor deth' / 'syr,' quod Florence,
'of the goodnes and trouthe that ye haue shewed me,

Florence at length
rejoins Clariet,

and preparations
for their return
to Arragon are
made.

Clariet fears the
king of Arragon.

Sorbare promises
never to abandon
Florence.

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ from. ⁴ Loue.
 5—5 had. ⁶ before. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. clxvii. col. 1.
⁹ vnto.

I thanke you, and I shall neuer haue peny worthe, but
the halfe shalbe yours.'

Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them saylynge ioy-
fully on the see towardes Aragon / and let vs speke 4
of kynge Guaryn, who was besegid within y^e citye of
Courtoys by his brother in lawe, the kynge of Nauerne.

¶ How kyng Huon, kynge of the fayrey, sente
two of his knygthes to the two kynges / and 8
howe he apered betwene them with a great
nombre / and of the peas that he made
betwene them. Ca. C.lxxi.



Ell haue ye hardē before howe that after 12
the kyng of Nauerne had taken kynge
Guaryn presoner, and that truse was
taken for a sartayne space / and then
eche of them to shewe theyr powers / 16

The truce be-
tween the king of
Navarre and King
Guaryn is within
two days of
ending.

so it fell that two dayes before the brekyng vp of y^e
trewse, and that theyr aydes and pursaunces were assem-
belyd together: the one partye within the citye and
the other without with the kyng of Nauerne, who sore 20
thretened kynge Guaryn / bycause he had banysshed
awaye his sone Florence, his nephue / and sayd he had
rather dye then such an yll kyng ¹shulde not be
punysshed / this kynge of Nauerne had assembelyd 24
suche a nombre of people that the valayes and hylees
were couered with men of warre / & y^e nyght before
the truse brake vp there was hard in the ayre a ferfull
voyse / the whiche when it began to speke / the erth 28
trymbelyd and thondered and lyghtened so that all
they that were there assembelyd / as well they within
as without had suche fere that they were lykely to
haue ryn awaye / then the voyse began to speke / 32

A mysterious
voice rises from
the earth and
addresses the
combatants.

¹ Fol. clxvii. col. 2.

and sayde / 'syrs, ye that be here in the felde redy to
 fyght of bothe partyes make no haste to ioyne together
 in batayle, for suche ayde and socoure shall be sent to
4 you bothe that ye shall be all ioyfull' / therwith the
 voyce passed awaye & was hard no more, wherby both
 partyes wer abasshed, and all the nyght they were in
 theyr prayers / besechynge ²our lord Iesu chrysste² to
8 ayde and socoure them / kyng Guaryn was sore abasshid
 when he hard the voyce, and sayde / 'O, ³very god,³
 if this⁴ people that is⁵ assembelyd be slayne by my
 meanes and for me / my sowle shall be lost for euer /
12 Alas, my sone Florence, I was yll counsaile when I
 chasyd you awaye fro me, I dyd great syn when I
 dyd⁶ put you in pryson, I am very⁷ of my lyfe / it
⁸skyllethe not of my deth⁸ / I am more sory for you,
16 my dere sone, whome I haue betrayed and dreuyn away
 with out⁹ cause / Alas, by my meanes this realme shall
 be wasted & dystroyed, y^e whiche ye ought to haue
 after me' / therwith he swouned amonge his lordes, so¹⁰
20 they all thoughte he had bene dede, wherof they sore
 complayned / ¹¹at last the kyng came agayne to hymselfe / then his lordes comforted hym / and so had¹² hym
 to here mas,¹³ and after mas¹³ there apered sodaynely
24 ¹⁴before hym two goodly yonge knyghtes / the one was
 Gloryand and the other Malabron / they were two
 knyghtes of the fayrey / then they all smylynge saluted
 the kynge, and sayde / 'syr,¹⁵ kynge Huon of Burdeaux
28 salutethe the by vs, he is kynge of all the fayrey, ¹¹he
 wyll come to ayd the and to defende thy lond : and ¹⁶he
 wyll that thou knowest / how¹⁰ he is father to y^e fayre
 damoysel Claryet, whom thou namest the newe founde
32 damoysel, and bycause thou hast banisshed fro the

It promises a
 speedy and a
 peaceful settle-
 ment of the dis-
 pute between
 them.

King Guaryn
 feels remorse for
 having banished
 his son.

Two goodly young
 knights suddenly
 approach him.
 They are the
 fairies Gloriant
 and Malabron,
 and promise the
 King Huon's aid.

¹ at. ²⁻² God. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ these. ⁵ are.
⁶ omitted. ⁷ wearie.

⁸⁻⁸ is no matter though I die, and. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ and. ¹² bad. ¹³ Service.

¹⁴ Fol. clxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ Royall. ¹⁶ also.

They tell of the
marriage he will
make between
Florence and
Clariet.

The two fairies
return to Huon

and remind him
of the peril of
Florence and
Clariet on the sea.
Huon promises to
go to Courtois
with a mighty
army.

Huon tells
Esclarmonde

thy sone Florence / he wyl come to the to make the
peas betwene the and thy brother in lawe the kynge of
nauerne / & he wyl make the maryage betwene thy
sone Florence and Claryet his daughter' / when kynge 4
Guaryn harde the knyght of the fayrey he had such
ioy at his hart that his wyst not what to do nor¹
saye /² he came to the knyght and embraced hym, all
wepyne, and sayde / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe, my 8
body, my lyfe, and all that I haue I submytte it into
the handes of y^e good kynge Huon to do therwith at
his pleasure' / with those wordes the .ii. knyghtes
vanysshed awaye, no man wyst how nor whether, so³ 12
euyer man had great maruayle / kynge Guaryn and his
lordes lyfte vp theyr handes to the heuen, makynge
the syngne of the crosse, recommaundynge themselfe to
our lord⁴ Iesu chrysste / and y^e two knyghtes restyd 16
not tyll⁵ they cam to the citye of Momure to kynge
Huon, and shewed hym what they had done & sayd to
kyng Guaryn / and shewed Huon of the daye of batayle
that was taken betwene the two kynges, and sayde / 20
'syr, haue petye of Florence and of Claryet, your
doughter, who are as nowe on the see in a great tem-
pest' / then Huon sayd / 'surely they and I shal be
shortely before⁶ the citye of Courtoys with suche⁴ a 24
nombre of people that the erthe shall be coueryd with
them / to the entent that yf any⁷ of these⁸ kynges
wyll⁴ do contrary to my wyll I shall dystroye hym for
euer / for shortly I wyll that my doughter Claryet 28
shal be duches of Burdeloys /²she is so fayre that
there is none lyke her, & I shall⁹ shew the great loue
that I haue¹⁰ to her' / then Huon called to hym Esclar-
monde, and sayde: 'lady, ye shall se this daye the 32
thyng that ye¹¹ desyre⁴ sore⁴ to se, that is your

¹ or. ² and. ³ that. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ Fol. clxvii, back, col. 2. ⁷ either. ⁸ those two.

⁹ wil. ¹⁰ beare. ¹¹ much.

doughter Claryet / to whome I gyue her in¹ gyfste, that
 she shall be byloued of every man, and I wyll that fro
 hense forthe she shall gyue largely gyftes & rewardes
 4 to ladyes, damoyselles, knyghtes, and squyres ; for I
 wyll that fro henseforth she haue her pleasure with out
 sufferynge of any more yll or parell, for she hath suf-
 fered ynough' / this daye was fayre and clere, and
 8 with in y^e citye of courtoise there was moche² people
 assembelyd / and they were in great deuocyon / some
 made masses³ to be song, and some were confessed and
 ordered them selues towardes the batayle. Then kyng
 12 Guaryn commaunded evry man to lepe on⁴ theyr horses
 redy armyd / then⁵ the kynge hym selfe mounted⁶ and
 so⁶ issued out of the citye / and commaunded his con-
 stable and marshalles to ordayne .iii. batayles in the
 16 name of god⁷ and saynt Gorge.⁷ Kynge Guaryn had
 assembelyd a great nombre of men, he had mo then
 .I.M. men / there ye myght haue sene ladyes &
 damoyselles and burgesses / that wepte for fere of theyr
 20 frendes, ⁷husbondes / fathers, and bretherne,⁷ whome
 they sawe goyng to⁸ the batayle warde⁷ / ⁵they went
 all to y^e walles / ⁷and the⁷ colleges & churches⁹ with
 theyr crosses and baners went¹⁰ on processyon praying⁹
 24 for the good sped of theyr kynge and of theyr frendes.
 Now let vs leue spekyng of these two kynges, who
 were redy in the feldes rengyd in order of batayle, the
 one agaynst the other / and let vs speke of kynge
 28 Huon / who called before hym all his lordes of the
 fayrey / there was the fayre esclaramonde, and Gloryand,
 and Malabron, and many other knyghtes of the fayrey /
 then kyng Huon sayde / 'syrs, ye all know well that
 32 by the wyll of god / kynge Oberon whyles he leued
 gaue me all his realme / and syngnyor and pusance

how she shall
soon see their
daughter Clariet.

King Guaryn with
his army issues
forth from the
town of Courtois.

Huon calls all his
fairy lords about
him.

¹ the. ² many. ³ Seruice. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ and.
⁶⁻⁸ then they. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ towards.
⁹⁻⁹ to pray to God. ¹⁰ Fol. clxviii. col. 1.

*He bids them
prepare for war.*

that he had ouer all the fayrey of the worlde / therby
then I may haue all my commaundementes fulfyllyd /
then syn god hath geuen me this gyfte / I wyll not
suffer the manslauter and murder *that* is lyke to be 4
betwene the two kynges of Aragon and Nauerne /
therfore I wysshe myselfe with two .C.M. men wel
armyd and rychely besene¹ and all mounted on good
horses / and also I wysshe to haue as many on fote² / 8
furnysshed with bowes and crosbowes. Also I wysshe
a .C.M. to be aparayled in gownes of cloth of gold and
sylke / and also I wysshe for my daughter Claryet,
whome I haue lefte a longe tyme in payne and mysery, 12
wheroft I repente me / for myne entencyon is to mary
her to Florence, son to kynge Guaryn of Aragon, the
whiche Florence is so fayre: so hardy and so humble
and curtoys that in all the worlde there is none lyke 16
hym / I wysshe hym & al his company and Sorbare
with him to be at the hauen of courtoys. Also I
wysshe my tente in the medow betwene the hostes of
the two kynges, and I wyl that my tent be suche that 20
there be none lyke it in all the worlde, and on³ the top
⁴therof I wyll there be pyght a dragon of fyne golde' /
kynge Huon had no soner made his wysshe but he and
all his company were there as he had deuysed. when 24
the kynge of Nauerne sawe so moch⁵ people and so
many tentes and pauylyons so nere hym / and that he
sawe the ryche and pusaunt pauylyon of kynge Huons
with the flambynge dragon / he was greatly maruayled.⁶ 28
Then he called his lordes and knyghtes and sayd / 'syrs,
behold what people are yonder before us logyng, me
thynke I neuer sawe so many together in all my lyfe /
I wote not what it maye⁷ be, I am in doubte' / then he 32
called to⁸ hym two knyghtes, and said / 'syrs, go

*He orders a won-
drous tent for
himself.*

*Suddenly the
fairy band, with
Huon at its
head, is trans-
ported to the
scene of the war-
fare between King
Guaryn and the
king of Navarre.*

¹ by seeming. ² on fote *after* crosbowes. ³ vpon.

⁴ Fol. clviii. col. 2. ⁵ many. ⁶ dismayed.

⁷ should. ⁸ vnto.

ther and knowe what people they be & what they
meane : or¹ whether they be frendes or enemyes, and
who is chefe ouer them.' 'Syr,' quod y^e two knyghtes,
4 'we wyll not go therethen, for we knowe not whether
they be oure enemyes or not' / when the kynge of
Nauerne vnderstode that those knyghtes nor none other
wolde go therethen he was sorowful / as the kyng was
8 thus deuysynge / therethen came the two knyghtes of the
fayrey, Gloryand and Malabron / then Gloryand sayd /
'syr,² kyng of Nauerne, kyng Huon of Burdeaux hath
sent vs to you, and commaundeth you that ye make peas
12 betwene you & kyng Guaryn, for he wyll gyue his
doughter Claryet to your nephue Florence, who is the
fayrest lady of y^e world' / when the kynge of Nauerne
vnderstode the³ two messangers sente fro kyng Huon,
16 he was ryght ioyful / and commaunded all his lordes to
go with hym to kyng Huon / they obeyed his com-
maundement and rode with hym tyll⁴ he came before
the ryche pauylyon of kynges Huons / wheras they
20 alyghted and were wel re⁵cyeued ; then the kynge of
Nauerne saluted kyng Huon / who sayde, 'syr, ye be
welcome' / ¹then y^e kynge of Nauerne knelyd downe
before kyng Huon & sayde, 'syr, I am redy to ful-
24 fyll your pleasure : ' then Gloryand toke the kyng of
Nauerne by the arme and reysyd hym vp / and set hym
downe by kyng Huon and Escaramonde : then kyng
Huon sente for kyng Guaryn / who incontynent came
28 to hym accompanied with a .M. knyghtes / ¹when he
was come he saluted kyng Huon and sayde, 'syr, ye
be⁶ welcome into my countre of Aragon, the whiche I
offer to you to do therwith at your pleasure / and, syr,
32 all that ye haue commaunded me to do by your two
knyghtes I am redy to accomplysshe,' and there he
shewed ⁷all wepynge⁷ to kyng Huon / the occasyon

The king of
Navarre's knights
fear to approach
the new-comers.

Glorian and
Malabron come
to him,
and bring com-
mands from Huon
to make peace
with King
Guaryn.

With all his lords
he goes to Huon's
tent,

and offers to do
his pleasure.

Huon sends for
King Guaryn.

Guaryn also pro-
mises to submit
to Huon, and
rehearses the
causes of the war.

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ these. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1. ⁶ are. ⁷⁻⁷ after Huon.

of the warre, and of his sone Florence, who for the loue
of a new found damoysell was put in pryson, wherof
he repented him, for he said¹ ‘there was not a fayrer
damoysell in the worlde, & for the loue of her⁴
Florence, my son, is departed fro me, & I thynke
I shall neuer se hym more.’ ‘Syr² kynge Guaryn,’
quod Huon, ‘know for trouth¹ shortely ye shall se
them both come hether to me / for I wyll mary them⁸
together: the damoysell is my daughter, and³ hathe
to³ name⁴ Claryet / and I wyll ye knowe she is
noble and issued of a royll lynage / ⁵none more noble
in this countre / she hathe bought her desteny ryght¹²
derely’ / when kynge Guaryn knew that the noble
damoysel was daughter to kynge Huon, and *that* he
wolde make a maryage betwene her and his sone
Florence, and that they shulde come thether shortely / ¹⁶
he was neuer so ioyfull in all his lyfe before: then he
knelyd downe before kynge Huon, and cryed hym
marcy, ⁶and sayde / ‘a, syr, howe maye it be that in
myne old dayes suche a grace may come to me, as to ²⁰
haue againe my dere sone / & that the noble damoysel
whome I haue done so moche yll vnto shall be his
wyfe.’ Then kyng Huon rose vp and sayd / ‘syr⁷
kynge, haue no doubte but that ye shall haue your sone / ²⁴
for I canne not so sone wysshe for hym / but they shall
be⁸ with me⁸ where soeuer they be in the world’ / wher
of all they that were presente had great maruayle /
‘syr,’ quod the quene Esclaramonde, ‘when shal the ²⁸
owre come that I myght⁹ se my dere² daughter
Claryet / ¹⁰syr, ye knowe well¹ I ¹¹am come¹¹ hether
with you for none other cause:’ ‘dame,’¹² quod Huon,
‘ye shall se her shortely.’ 32

Huon tells him
how Clariet is
his daughter,
and will marry
Florence.

Guaryn expresses
his great joy.

Queen Esclar-
monde longs to
see her daughter.

¹ that. ² omitted. ³⁻³ her. ⁴ is. ⁵ there is.
⁶ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 2. ⁷ noble. ⁸⁻⁸ both here.
⁹ may. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ came. ¹² madame.

¶ How Florence and Claryet aryued &¹ theyr
company, and came to kyng Huon, and of
the great ioye that was made at theyr com-
4 ynge / and there² they were wedded together
and the peas confermyd betwene y^e two
kynges.

Ca. C.lxxii.



Hen kynge Huon sawe the q[ue]yne
8 his wyfe wepe his harte tendered and
sayde / 'a, my dere daughter Claryet,
great petye I haue of you and of
Florence the hardy. I wysshe you

Huon is touched
at Esclarmonde's
grief for the ab-
sence of Clariet,

and expresses his
wish to see her
and Florence
richly apparelled
in his presence.

12 bothe and all your company here at the porte on the
see-syde / as rychely aparayled as euer was quene or
prynces departyng out of theyr house to be maryed /
& that with you there be ladyes and damoyselles
16 rychely aparayled: and of the fayrest *that* be in my
realme of the fayrey': he had no soner made his wysshe
but that shypes and galeys aryued at the porte: &
anone Florence and Claryet were in the medow rychely
20 accompanied with trumpetts: tabours:⁴ harpes:
vyalles: and lutes and all other instrumentes, the
which sowned so melodyously that it semyd to all the
herers that they were rauysshed into paradyse, & also
24 there were ladyes and damoyselles & knyghtes of the
fayrey syngynge ryght swetely / the herers semyd⁵ to be
aungelles of paradyse / and they were aparayled
richely,⁶ garnisshed with precyous stones, so that with
28 y^e sonne strykynge⁷ on⁸ them: they shynyd⁹ in such
wyse that who souer had sene them wold haue thought
that god and all the court of paradyse had bene there
asembelyd / thus Florence came with .iii. M. men
32 makyng great ioye. After¹⁰ came rydynge y^e fayre

Straightway they
arrive in ships,
amid melodious
music.

3000 men bear
Florence com-
pany, and Clariet

¹ there with. ² how. ³ Fol. clxix. col. 1.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ thought them. ⁶ and. ⁷ shining.

⁸ vpon. ⁹ glittered. ¹⁰ him.

follows riding on
a rich palfrey,

with two fairy
ladies, Morgan
and Oriand.

After these come
Transelyne and
many damsels of
fairy-land.

Huon and Esclar-
monde go to meet
Florence and
Clariet.

Huon and his
wife kiss their
daughter.

Claryet on¹ a ryche palfrey ambelynge, so fresshely harnaysyd² and rychely aparayled that in all the worlde there was none suche: the harnays³ hangynge full of ⁴belles of syluer⁴ / makynge so swete a noyse that ⁴maruayle it was to here them: yf I shulde dyscryue the beautye & ryches *that* was on her palfrey, it shulde be to longe to reherse / this lady Claryet ⁵was accompanied with .ii. notable ladyes of the fayrey / the one was ⁸Morgan, and the other Oryand⁶ / who came syngynge after Claryet. Then after came the lady Transelyne with many damoysels of ye fayrey / great ioye there was made: ⁷then kynge Huon sayd to Esclaramonde ¹²his wyfe / 'dame,⁸ it is tyme that ye depart, for I se yonder comynge to⁹ vs ¹⁰warde¹⁰ my doughter Claryet and Florence' / when Esclaramonde harde *that* she was ryghte ioyfull for the great desyre that she had to se ¹⁶her doughter: the quene went forth hyely¹¹ accompanied / then kynge Huon & the other .ii. kynges with all theyr companyes, with baners dysplayed with great ioye & treumph wente to mete Florence and Claryet: ²⁰ye may well thynke that kynge Guaryn had great ioye of the comynge of his sone, and sawe suche an assemble mete there together to receiue him. he deuoutly thanked our lord ¹²Iesu christ.¹² Thus these kynges & prynces ²⁴wente to mete these .ii. yonge parsons rychely accompanied / so⁷ great ioy had Claryet when she saw the quene her mother before her that⁷ she wepte for inwarde ioye that she had / & when the quene sawe her ²⁸doughter she embrased and kissed her often tymes, and of a great season none of them coud speke to other, ¹⁰theyr hertes were so ouer come¹⁰ for ioye / then kynge Huon came & toke his doughter out of the quenes ³²armes / and kyssed her mo then .xx. tymes / Then

¹ vpon. ² garnished. ³ armour. ⁴⁻⁴ siluer bels.
⁵ Fol. clxix. col. 2. ⁶ Glorianda. ⁷ and. ⁸ Madame.
⁹ towarde. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ nobly. ¹²⁻¹² god.

kynge Guaryn came to¹ Florence & sayd, ‘dere sone, I haue sore² trespassed agaynst you / in that wrongfully I put you into my presone / ³I complayne greatly to

⁴you of your vngle the kynge of Nauerne who hath wasted your countre’ / ‘syr,’ quod Florence, ‘I requyre you⁴ pardon my vnkle / ⁵reason is⁶ that I shulde be content that peas⁷ be made betwen you / and, syr, I ⁸requyre⁸ you⁴ gyue me this damoysel in maryage.’

‘son,’ quod kynge⁶ Guaryn: be in suerte⁹ ye shall haue her & none other / for a more noble lady can not be founde in this⁶ x. realmes’ / ‘syr,’ quod Florence,

¹²‘I thanke you’ / ³thus these .ii. companyes ioyned together / and the kynge of Nauerne came to his nephue Florence, and embrasyd hym and sayd / ‘fayre nephue, of your retourne I am ryghte ioyous’¹⁰ / ‘syr,’ quod he,

¹⁶‘I am well plesed with the peas that is made betwene my father and you’ / Thus they rode tyll¹¹ they came to the tentes & there alyghtyd / then kynge Huon called the other two kynges and sayde / ‘syrs, howe

²⁰saye you, wyll ye abyde by myne aduyce and put into myne handes the dyscorde that hathe bene betwene you?’ / they awsweryd⁹ they were content to do as he wold haue them. Then kyng Huon sayd / ‘syrs, then

²⁴my wyll is that peas and acorde be betwene you and all yours’ / and they lyberally agreed thereto, wheroft kyng Huon was ioyfull. Then kynge Huon desyred Florence to shewe his aduenture, and how he was rescued by

²⁸sorbare. Then Florence shewed al his aduentures: ³y^e other kynges were ryght ioyfull to here it, and all other that harde it, and¹² greatly praysed¹³ Sorbare for his dede: and¹⁴ honorid hym greatly⁶ and made hym great

³²feaste¹⁵ and chere / and caused hym to be chrysstened.

King Guaryn asks
pardon of his son
Florence.

Guaryn promises
that he shall
marry Clariet.

The king of
Navarre also
comes up and em-
braces Florence,
his nephew.

The two kings
make peace.

Florence recites
his adventures.

Sorbare is greatly
honoured and is
baptized.

¹ vnto. ² much. ³ and. ⁴ to. ⁵ it is.

⁶ omitted. ⁷ Fol. clxix. back, col. 1. ⁸ desire.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ ioyfull. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² dyd. ¹³ praise.

¹⁴ moch. ¹⁵ feasting.

Then kyng Huon sayd to the .ii. kynges, ‘Syrs, I wyll that presently eche of you do pardon other¹ all yll wyll.’ ‘Syr,’ quod they, ‘we are redy to do it,’ & so eche of them embrasyd other / wherof kyng Huon had 4 great ioye, and so had all other lordys and knyghtes that were there assembelyd / ²‘syr² kynge Guaryn,’ quod Huon / ‘incontynent I wyll that your sone Florence haue ³my doughter in maryage / and I geue 8 them the citye of Burdeaux / Blames / & Geronyl, and all the apendantes therto belongynge’ / when kinge Guaryn hard the offer that kynge Huon⁴ made to his sone Florence he thankyd hym ⁵with good harte,⁵ and 12 so dyd all the other lordes / who alowed greatly that maryage. ⁶Kynge Guaryn, ²when he² saw the honour, loue, and courtoysye that⁷ Huon dyd to Florence his sone, he knelyd downe and sayde / ‘syr, my chylde 16 and yours I comytte into your handes / vse them at your pleasure’ / then by consent of bothe fathers they were fyauensed⁸ and spowsed together all in one daye / the fest and solempnyte of this maryage endured 20 .viii. dayes / the kynge of Nauerne gaue to⁹ Florence his realme of Nauerne to possede¹⁰ and enioye after his disease : of the festes and iustes and tourneys that was made that .viii. dayes I make no mencyon therof, for it 24 were ouer longe to reherse / then kynge Huon gaue his doughter ²Claryet² .xxx. somers charged with gold & great ryches / wherby the ioye encressyd of all partyes / then the lordes and the other people of Aragon came to 28 kynge Huon, and all wepynge they desyryd hym to haue petye and compassyon of them / and that he myght fynd some meanes that they myght haue some recompense for y^e great hurtes & damages that they had 32 receyuyd by reason of the warre betwene these .ii.

¹ of. ²⁻² omitted. ³ Fol. clxix. back, col. 2. ⁴ had.
⁵⁻⁵ hartely. ⁶ When. ⁷ Kinge. ⁸ wedded.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ possess.

Huon gives
Florence and
Clariet three
cities.

The marriage is
solemnized with
much festivity.

kynges, wherby they were nere dystroyed by the Nauerpoys, when quene Esclaramond hard y^e people complayn / she enbrased her husband and sayd / 'syr,
 4 I requyre¹ you for y^e loue of our² chyldren / to haue petye of this people who requyret he for ayde / for in you is all theyr trust' / 'dame,'³ quod Huon, 'I shall incontynent shew what grace⁴ I shal⁵ do for the loue of
 8 you.' then kyng Huon commaunded all the peopel to knele downe,⁶ then he sayd / 'syrs, all ye that be here assembelyd, to y^e entent that ye shall not thinke that the thynge that I wyll do shuld be any wychecrafte or
 12 yllusyon / but that it is by y^e wyll of our lorde Iesu chryst / the gyfte that kynge Oberon gaue me or⁷ he dyed, the which was all the pusaunce & dyngnyte that he had in all the fayrey of the worlde / therfore knowe
 16 that by the pusaunce and dyngnyte that our lorde⁸ Iesu chryst⁸ made kynge Oberon my predyssessor to gyue me / I will that this realme of Aragon, wheras it hath had damage by reason of the warre, so that the realme
 20 is sore brent⁹ and wastyd, ⁶I wyll that it be agayne in the same case as it was before any warre began, and that all castelles and houses brente⁹ or beten donne be better .iii. tymes then they were before / and I wyll
 24 that fro hensforthe euery man serue god & thanke hym of this grace that he hathe sente you' / then he lyfte vp his hande and blesseyd all the people with the syngne of the crosse / ⁶as sone as he had done his blesсыnge
 28 euery thynge was as he had deuysed thrughe¹⁰ all the realme. Thus was y^e wyll of ¹¹our lorde¹¹ Iesu chryste at the instaunce and prayer of¹² noble kynge Huon.

Huon miraculously restores all the damage that the war has wrought in Arragon.

He blesses all the people.

¶ Howe kynge Huon and quene Esclaramond 32 departed, and howe he gaue great¹³ gyttes

¹ desire. ² your. ³ Madame. ⁴ Fol. clxx. col. 1.

⁵ will. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ burnt.

¹⁰ out. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² the. ¹³ rich.

to¹ the two kynges, and to al other lordis
and ladyes, & damoyselles / and of the
sorowe that was betwene the mother and
the doughter at theyr departynge. 4

Ca. C.lxxiii.



² Hen kenge Huon had made his prayers
to our lorde³ Iesu chrys³ and that his
bone⁴ was graunted, he thankyd god / 8
suche festes, iustys and tourneys as
was made there duryenge the fest /
was neuer sene nor harde of in no⁵ cronycle here
before / then kynge Huon made hym redy to departe / 12
⁶ he gaue gyftes or⁷ he departed to them that were
there, & specyally to Sorbare, to whome he recom-
maunded his doughter Claryet, and desyred hym not to
leue her / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'the great loue that I 16
haue to you constrainethe me neuer to forsake her nor
them that shall come of her, as long as lyfe is in my
body' / when que[ne] Esclarmonde vnderstode the
departynge of her lorde Huon / & sawe that she must 20
leue her doughter, she had great sorowe at her harte,
and so all wepyng she came to her doughter, and
sayde / 'ryghte dere doughter, ye ought greatly to
thanke our lorde god³ Iesu chrys³ in that he hathe 24
cast you out of so many parayles, & nowe to haue great
honoure, & to be exalted lyke a rych & a⁸ pusant lady /
therfore, always set your harte on god, & serue⁹ & loue
him ; be lyberall to them that be poore / nor mocke no 28
parson¹⁰ / nor be no iangeler agaynst your husband /
nor harken to non yl sayers,¹¹ fle fro flaterers / loue
your husband, kepe youreselfe alwayes trewe / to the
entente that none yll reporte be made of you. Marke 32

Huon prepares to return to fairy-land.

Esclarmonde weeps at leaving her daughter.

She gives Clarier good advice.

¹ vnto. ² Fol. clxx. col. 2. ³⁻³ god. ⁴ request.
⁵ any. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ feare. ¹⁰ body. ¹¹ lyers.

wel this doctryne / for I can not tell yf euer I shall se
 you agayne or not.' when the fayre Claryet hard her
 mother, sodaynely she began to wepe, and sayd /
 4 'O my ryght dere lady and mother, y^e departyng
 of you & of the kyng my father fro me oughte sore to
 greue me, syn we haue ben together so lytel¹ a seson² /
 for your ³ departynge is to me so greuable that yt
 8 ys great Payne to me to bere it' / then the mother and
 the daughter clyppyde and kyssyd ech other mo then
 .xx. tymes, and oftener wold haue don &⁴ kyng Huon
 had not bene / for then he toke his daughter Claryet
 12 in his armes and kyssyd her often tymes, tenderly
 wepynge, By cause he knewe well he shulde neuer
 se her after⁵; then he lyfte vp his hande and gaue her
 and her husbonde his blyssyng, and shewyd them
 16 many fayre ensamples and doctrynes. Then the noble
 quene Esclaramonde knelyd downe & prayed kyng
 Huon, hyr husband, that he wold counsell and aduer-
 tyse them what they shuld do. 'dam,'⁶ quod Huon,
 20 'ryse vp, for suche petye I haue of them and of you
 that nere hand my harte faylethe me / ⁷I tary here
 ouer⁸ longe / ⁹I muste nedys departe; come hether my¹⁰
 daughter and kysse me / and sone Florence, with you I
 24 leue my daughter / kepe her well as longe as god wyll
 suffer her to be with you' / then kyng Huon toke leue
 of the two kynges, who were ryght sorowfull of his
 departynge / and he desyeryd then alwayes to be good
 28 louers together / and so toke his leue, and sayde, 'I
 wysshe myselfe and¹¹ my quene, and all my company,
 to be in my palays of Momure' / he had no soner
 spoken the word but that he was there / and sodaynly
 32 he¹² vanysshed fro the two kynges, wheroft they and all
 other were greatly abasshyd, so that they wyst not

Huon tenderly
takes leave of his
daughter.

He wishes himself
and his company
in his palace of
Momur, and they
suddenly vanish
away.

¹ small.

² time.

³ Fol. clxx. back, col. 1.

⁴ if.

⁵ againe.

⁶ Madame.

⁷ and.

⁸ too.

⁹ for.

¹⁰ deere.

¹¹ omitted.

The King of
Navarre takes
leave of King
Guaryn.

Soon afterwards
Guaryn dies,

and Florence is
crowned king.

Claryet becomes
the mother of a
fair daughter.

what to saye, ¹they had thought it had bene but a dreme, but by the² reason of the great giftes and riches that he had lefte behynd him amoneg them. Then after al these thynge done the kynge of Nauerne toke ⁴ leue of kynge Guaryn, and departed; and his nephue Florence rode with hym .iiii. ³leges, and then retourned to courtoise, to Claryet his wyfe, and there they taryed two monethes in great ioy and solas. Then after ⁸ a sartayne space kyng Guaryn, who was ⁴sore agyd⁴ and auncyente, toke a sykenes, wherby he passyd out of this world / for whose dethe Florence his sone, and Claryet, wept many a salt tere. Then he was buryed ¹² with great solemnyte / ¹then by all the lordes and peers of the realme Florence was chosen & crowned kynge, and Claryet quene / great solempnyte and ioy was made at theyr coronacyon. Thus with great ioye ¹⁶ & gladnes Florence and Claryet were together, so that at the laste Claryet was great with chylde / wherof Florence and all the noblemen and comons of the realme were ioyfull, & thankyd our lord ⁵Iesu chryste.⁵ ²⁰ and when the tyme came the quene was brought a bedde of a fayre doughter, wherof bothe father and mother were⁶ ioyfull / the whiche ioye within a whyle after tornyd to sore wepynge & great heuynes, as ye ²⁴ shall here after.⁷

¶ How quene Claryet was brought a bed of a doughter / at which delyuerance the quene dyed / and howe when the yonge ²⁸ damoysell cam to the age of .xv. yere, the king her father wolde haue had her in maryage, wher with al his lordes were sore trowbelyd.

Ca. C.lxxiiii. 32

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Fol. clxx, back, col. 2.
⁴⁻⁴ verie old. ⁵⁻⁵ god. ⁶ right. ⁷ hereafter.

1 Hen kyng Florence was aduertysyd *that*
 4 his quene was delyuered of a daughter,
 he thankyd god / the chyld was borne
 to the christenyng in to the chefe
 church, and was namyd yde; the ioy
 of the comyng of this chyld cost derely to the quene
 her mother, for by reason of the Payne that she enduryd
 8 she departed out of this lyfe, and so dyed / y^e chylde
 was brought to kynge Florence; ²when he sawe her he
 was ioyfull, and demaundyd how her mother dyd / and
 they thought that the mater coude not be hyden
 12 nor kepte secrete, they sayd / 'syr, your quene is
 departed to god' / when the kynge harde that he
 fell downe in a swoune, so that euery man fered he had
 bene dede / ²when he came to hymselfe he sayd / 'a,
 16 my ryghte dere louer,³ in an yll oure ye were borne;
 for your sake I had forgoten all Payne, and thought to
 haue liued in rest with you / me thynke ye be rauysshed
 & stollen awaye fro me / a, false deth, thou arte hardly
 20 to take fro me that thynge that⁴ I ⁵louyd best / the
 most fayrest, most trewest, and most⁶ swetest creature
 leuyng' / then his lordes came and comforted hym;
 the cryes, complayntes, and wepynges rose thrughe⁷
 24 the citye, all ladyes, and damoyselles, &⁶ burgesses, and
 maydens, and all the comons made great lamentacyons;
 that nyght the quene was wachyd, & the nexte morn-
 ynge, with great cryes & wepynges, the quene was
 28 borne into y^e chefe churche; her obsequy was done
 notably, and so layd in a rych sepulture / y^e sorrow that
 the kynge made was neuer none such sene / the kyng
 was vysyted by y^e lordes of his realme, but they coude
 32 not cause hym to take any solas, but alonly to go now
 and then to se his dere doughter, y^e lady yde / and
 euer when he sawe her his sorowe renewyd / ²she was

The child is
named Ide.

Clarift dies at her
birth.

Florence grieves
much for her.

Clarift is buried.

¹ Fol. clxxi. col. 1. ² and. ³ Loue. ⁴ which.

⁵ Fol. clxxi. col. 2. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ throughout.

Ide is brought up
in much luxury.

wel norysshed and broughte vp, and when she came to the age of .xv. yere she was beautyfull / wyse, and sage, for she was brought vp with .iiii. noble ladyes, and ordered as it apartayned to a kynge chylde / ¹her ⁴ father, kynge Florence, louyd her so well *that* he coud neuer be satysfyed with lokyng vpon her / oftentymes he kyssed her holdynge her in his armes, he wolde neuer mary agayne for loue of her / so moche grew and ⁸ encreased this noble lady² yde, that she came to the age

At fifteen years of
age her beauty
surpassed that of
all other women.

of .xv. yere complete / the fresshe beautey & bounte *that* was in her, yf I shulde dyscryue it, it shuld³ be ouer long to reherse, but I dare wel say *that* in beauty ¹²

as then she passyd all other women of y^e worlde / for god & nature had employed al theyr study to forme her / ther was neuer⁴ man *that* saw her but that²

Her father falls in
love with her.

louyd her, & so dyd her father ; so *that* on a day the ¹⁶ kyne had his lordes aboute hym / ⁵the one of them was Sorbare,⁵ whome the kyng louyd derely / ¹the kynge, seyng his ⁶doughter yde growe and encrese

He proposes to
his lordes that he
should marry
again.

in all vertues / he sayde to his lordes / 'syrs, it were ²⁰ good *that* there were some wyfe found out for me / whome I wyll mary yf any suche can be found in all condycyons lyke to her that I had before' / when his lordes harde the kynge they were ioyful in that the ²⁴ kyng wolde mary agayne / Alas, they knewe not the kynges inward entencyon / but shortly after they⁷ knew it, wherby moche yll and myschefe came after,⁸ and many a man slaine, and many a churche brente,⁹ ²⁸

He calls all his
lords to him in
council.

as ye shall here after¹⁰ / Then the kynge wrote and sente to all hys lordys and knyghtes of his realme to com to his court at a daye assyngnyd ; ¹when they were al com to the palays ther they founde the kynge, ³²

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ would. ⁴ any.

⁵⁻⁶ and Sorbare was amone them.

⁶ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 1. ⁷ the kynge. ⁸ afterward.

⁹ burnt. ¹⁰ hereafter.

who humbley reseyuid them, and made them great fest,¹ & had them to dyner withe hym / when the dyner was done / the kyng and all his lordys went
 4 in to a gardeyne, were as y^e kynge wolde kepe hys counseyll ; ² when they were all there and the kynge set in his sete, he sayde / ‘syrs, ye know well I haue no mo children but a daughter, who hathe bene desyred
 8 in maryage by dyuers kynges and prynces / but I wolde not consent to mary her / nor I thought not to mary myselfe for³ loue of her mother, whome I so derely louyd / but now I am ⁴in wyl to be maryed
 12 and to take a wyfe / so⁵ she be semblable to her that is departed / and therfore I haue sente for you to shewe you my wyll and pleasure.’ when his lordes hard hym they wer ioyfull, & sayd / ‘syr, knowe for trouthe
 16 there is no woman leuyng in chrystendome that⁶ yf ye wyll haue her, ye shal, yf she be neuer so fayre or so hye ⁷a parage⁷ / & therfore, syr, thynke in your selfe whether ye wyll that we shall go to get you a wyfe.’
 20 ‘Syrs,’ quod the kynge, ‘in this matere ye shall not nede to take ⁹great payne⁹ / for y^e wyfe that I wyl haue is not far¹⁰ hence ; it lyethe in me to haue her yf I lyst’ / ‘syr,’ quod the lordes, ‘wyl it please you
 24 to name her that shal be so happy’ / ‘syrs,’ quod y^e kyng, ‘it is my daughter yde whome I wyl take to my wyfe, for the great loue that I had to her mother’ / when the lordes hard that they regardyd¹¹ eche other /
 28 blessyng them selues of the orryble and detestable wordes of the kyng, and beheld¹² him maruaylously. Then Sorbare, who was of the kynges preuy counsaile, began to speke, and sayde / ‘a, syr, god forbede that
 32 suche a shame shulde come to you / for it is worse then

The lords approve his proposal to marry a second time.

He announces his intention of wedding Ide.

The lords are horror-stricken,

and Sorbare reproaches him for meditating so unnatural a crime.

¹ feasting. ² and. ³ the. ⁴⁻⁴ minded to marie.

⁶ that. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ of Lyneage.

⁸ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ any paines. ¹⁰ from.

¹¹ beheld. ¹² looked on.

bogery¹ to hym that wyll polute his owne proper blode² by hymselfe engendered / ye shulde not be worthy to syt in a chayre royll / ³ye ought to be the myrrour & ensample to other men how they shulde ⁴ lyue / wyll you then breke the law that god hath geuen vs / put fro you that crewelte, ye shall fynde no man wyll prayse you in your so doyng or thynkyng / when the kyng hard sorbare he beheld hym sore,⁴ and ⁸ sayd / ‘sorbare, knowe for trouthe but that I fynde⁵ myselfe moche bounde to⁶ you, I wolde stryke of thy⁷ hede / and there is no man that speketh to the contrary / but I shal put hym to dethe.’ Then all the 12 lordes ⁱtogether sayde to the kynge / ‘syr, do as ye lyst⁸ / Sorbare hathe sayd as a noble man ought to do, for yf ye do otherwyse ye ar not worthy to bere a crowne’ / & so helde theyr peas; they durst speke no 16 more for fere of him, & also bycause they thought suerly⁹ the deuyl was within hym to mosyon¹⁰ such a¹¹ mater / when y^e kynge hard the wyl of his lordes / ¹²hastely¹² he sent for his daughter / who came with 20 a smy¹³lynge countenaunce, not knowynge¹⁴ the vnreasonable wyll of the kynge her father / ³when she came before hym she knelyd downe / the kynge toke her vp & set her bytwene his armes, and kyssed her ²⁴ more then .xx. tymes / the lady knewe no thynge ¹⁵y^e kynges¹⁵ entencyon none other wyse but that she thought he dyd it but as a father ought to do with his chylde. the lordes then¹⁶ sayd softly one to another / ²⁸ ‘A, vnhappy kynge, his thoughtes be farre vnylike to his daughters / for yf she were here alone he wolde dys honest¹⁷ her, althougle he¹⁸ be her¹⁹ owne father²⁰’ /

¹ heathen. ² Daughter. ³ and. ⁴ angrily.

⁵ hold. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ your. ⁸ please. ⁹ that.

¹⁰ any. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² hastily after Daughter.

¹³ Fol. clxxii. col. 1. ¹⁴ of. ^{15—16} her father's.

¹⁶ then after chyld. ¹⁷ dishonour. ¹⁸ she.

¹⁹ his. ²⁰ doughter.

Florence grows
wrathful.

Ide is summoned
by her father.

y^e kynge, seyng his daughter yde so excellent fayre, he sayde to hymself¹ without he hadde his daughter in maryage he shulde dye for² rage / ³the kynge behelde
 4 her, and made her to syt downe by hym, and sayde.
 'my dere daughter, ye are as an orpheline on the
 mothers syde / wherfore I haue great petye of you that
 ye haue lost her / and ye resemble so moche your
 8 mother / that I thyncke when I se you in the face that
 I se her before me, wherfore⁴ I loue you the better,
 and therfore⁵ it is my wyll to take you to my wyfe,
⁶for other then you I wyll none wed.'⁶

He tells her his wicked desire.

12 ¶ Of the great sorow that the damoysel⁷ yde
 made when she harde her father how he
 wolde haue her in maryage / and howe by
 the meanes of a noble lady and Sorbare,
 16 she departed at midnyght, & went at the
 aduenture that god wolde sende her.

Ca. Clxxv.

20  Hen y^e damoysel⁷ hard her father her
 fresshe red couloure ⁹in her face⁹
 became pale & wan, ³she cast downe
 her loke to the erthe, & sayd, 'a, my
 ryght dere fader, take hede what ye
 24 say, for yf ye be hard of them that be here presente /
 ye shall be greatly blamed.' Then the damoysel⁷ wold
 haue resen vp to haue gone fro her father, but the
 kyng toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My doughter,
 28 make no daunger nor refuse to folowe my wyll / for ye
 sle me for the loue that I bere you' / then all the The lords kneel before Florence,
 lordys knelyd downe before the kyng, and helde vp

Id^e grows pale at the words.

¹ that. ² with. ³ and. ⁴ and therefore.

⁵ for this cause.

⁶⁻⁶ for I will haue none other in mariage. ⁷ Damsell.

⁸ Fol. clxxii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

and implore him
to have pity on
himself and on
his daughter.

But Florence is
obdurate.

Ide resolves to
escape from her
father.

theyr handes / and desyred the kynge for his owne welthe and honour that he wolde haue petye of hymselfe & of his daughter, and that he wold neuer thynke to do suche a dede / for yf he dyd he shulde neuer be set by after: when the kynge harde his lordes how they resoned with hym to haue tourned his mynde / he answered as a man full of felony¹ ² and Ire, and sayd, that in the dyspyte of them all, whether they wolde or not, he wolde haue her to his wyfe / and that yf there were any so hardy³ to speke to hym to the contrary, he wolde cause them to dye a shamefull dethe / and he sore rebukyd them / when the damoysell hard her father so speke to⁴ his lordes and knyghtes / then she saw well y^e dysordynate⁵ loue of her father / then⁶ she began to wepe, and sayde, ‘O very⁷ god, I shall be shamyd & lost for euer yf he take me to his wyfe / for both of vs cannot scape without dampnacyon’ / then she thought in⁸ herselfe that yf she coude in any wyse scape she wyll⁹ fle a waye so farre of that there shuld neuer¹⁰ tydynge be harde of her. Then the kynge sente her into her chambre with her maydens, who were sorowfull and dyscomforted when they harde of that mater / for the kynge had commaunded them to kepe her well / and to ordayne a bayenge¹¹ for her, because y^e next day he wold mary her / when the damoysel yde was in her chaumbre she callyd to her an auncyent lady, who had bene her mastres,¹² then she voyded all other out of her chaumbre, and made semblaunte to slepe / and when she sawe that all other were gone she knelyd downe and held vp both her handys before the lady, and all wepynge sayd / ‘a, my ryght dere lady and mastres,¹³ I com to you as a poore

¹ villany. ² Fol. clxxii, back, col. 1. ³ as.
⁴ vnto. ⁵ inordinate. ⁶ and. ⁷ good. ⁸ within.
⁹ would. ¹⁰ any. ¹¹ rich bed. ¹² mistresse and.
¹³ Mistresse.

orphelyn without father or mother / my mother is ded
as ye knowe well / but he that shulde be my father
wold be my husband / y^e whiche is a thyng that the
1 erthe oughte not to bere nor sustayne them that wold
lyue in suche maner, and therfore, dere mastres,¹ coun-
sayle and ayde this poore dyscomforted orphelyne, and
helpe me that I myghte be out of y^e syghte of hym
8 that ²ought to be my father / for I had rather go into
a³ farre countre and⁴ to lyue in pouerte / then to ende
my dayes withe hym in doyng of such a dede, and at
the end to be dampnyd and loste.' when the olde
12 lady, who was ryght noble & sage, harde the petuous⁵
complaint of the damoysel yde, whom she had norysshed
& brought vp, she awryerd and sayde / 'my ryghte
dere doughter, for the great loue that I bere you I
16 shall ayde and counsayle you and brynge you out of
this doughte / as somtyme dyd my brother, Peter
of Aragon, to the lady Claryet your mother / he rescued
her out of the handes of the sarasyns wheras⁶ she was
20 in ioperdy of her lyfe / for all your father I shal not let
to ayde you.' when the damoysell yde hard the good
wyll of the lady how she wold ayde her / all wepynge she
kyst her ⁷mouth and eyen,⁷ and sayde / 'a, my ryght
24 dere mother / y^e goodnes that ye do to me god rewarde
you⁸ / for it lyeth not in me' / then the old lady
issued out of her chaumbre and lefte the lady yde sore⁹
pensyue, and went into Sorbares chaumbre / who was
28 as then in the palays, for he was of the kynges preuy
counsayle / ¹⁰when he came to his chaumbre & found
the lady there, he demaundyd what aduenture had
brought her thether / y^e lady drew hym apart and
32 shewyd hym the request and prayer of the damoysell
yde / wheroft Sorbare, for the great petye ⁷that⁷ he had

She takes counsel
with the old
mistress of her
chamber.

The old dame
goes to Sorbare's
chamber,

and tells him of
Ide's desire of
escape.

¹ Mistresse. ² Fol. clxxii. back, col. 2. ³ some.

⁴ there. ⁵ pitifull. ⁶ when. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted.

⁸ for it. ⁹ verie. ¹⁰ and.

of her he¹ began to wepe, and auoyded his chaumbre /
the better to speke with the lady at his ease / then²
they deuysed together of dyuers thynges, and at last³
concluydyd / for the saluacyon⁴ of the damoyselles⁴
body, that this auncyente lady shulde bere to her the
aparaile of a man, and that at the oure of mydnyght
she shulde araye⁵ her therwith / and then shew her² let
her go out of the palays and come to the stable, were⁸
as she shall fynd me redy with the best horse that her
father hath redy for her to lepe on.⁶

He offers her
man's apparel, so
that Ide may
disguise herself
therewith and
run away.

The old dame
makes all arrange-
ments, and shows
them to Ide.

¶ when the aunsyent lady vnderstode Sorbare, she
was ryght ioyfull, and thought his counsayle good / 12
then she departyd and made redy al the aparayll
belongyng to a man / then she came to the damoysell
ydes chambre, and shewed her the conclusyon that was
taken betwene her and Sorbare / when the damoysell 16
harde that she had great ioy at her hart, ²she clypped
and kyssed her / y^e lady was glad when she sawe her
somewhat recomforted,⁷ and sayd / ‘fayre lady, y^e
kynge your father hathe ordayneid for you⁸ a bayne,⁹ 20
therfore go thether & bayne⁹ with other damoyselles,
to the entent that the kyng do not suspecte any thyng /
and when ye haue bayned¹⁰ you a sartayne space lette
your bed be made redy / and when ye are in your 24
chaumbre go to youre bed / and then commaund me
and all the damoyselles to go and bayne⁹ vs / and I
shall kepe them there so longe a space that they shall
haue good lyst to slepe / and I shall leue here by youre 28
beddes syde all your mannes aparayle / ²aray you
therin, and then gyrtle this sworde abought you / & put
on your sporres / & when ye are out of the palays go to
the stables, where ye shall fynd a hors redy for you.’ 32
Then they went in to the bayenge¹¹ chaumbre¹² in her

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ they. ⁴ sauegard.

⁵ Fol. clxxiii, col. 1. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ comforted.

⁸ for you after bath. ⁹ bath. ¹⁰ bathed. ¹¹ bathing.
¹² and she.

smoke redy to go into the bayenge¹ / ²all the other
 damoyselles were ioyfull when they sawe her come
 thether / for they went³ she had been gone to slepe
 4 for⁴ the dyspleasure that she had at her hart; then
 they⁵ sayd one to another / 'it semethe that our lady
 is well apaysed of her sorowe, me thynke to morowe
 she shall be lady and quene; ²she shal be wyfe and
 8 daughter to y^e kynge her father, the which is a thynge
 vnresonable' / then they came to her and bayned⁶ her,
 and festyd her as moche as they myght / when the
 lady yde thought it was tyme to departe, she sayde to
 12 her mastres⁷ and to the other damoyselles / howe she
 had bayned⁶ her ynough, and that she wolde go into
 her chaumbre to slepe / and bad all the other to go &
 bayne⁸ them / and that there shulde no mo go with her
 16 but two of them to bryng⁹ her to bed, & she sayd
 to her mastres⁷ that she shuld go and brynge her with
 the other¹⁰ damoyselles / the whiche thynge they dyd
 gladly¹¹ / the damoysell departed and went into her
 20 chaumbre wrapped in a mantell of scarlet / when
 y^e two damoyselles had brought her a¹² bed they toke
 leue of her, & departed and closed the dore after them,
 and then they went and bayned⁶ them with other /
 24 and when the damoysell yde felte herselfe all drye /
 she rose and arayed her in the mannes aparayle as well
 as she coude / and toke the sworde and gyrtle it
 abought her / & dyd on her sporres / ²then she wente
 28 to a great lowe wyndowe on y^e gardayne syde, and
 there she lept out into y^e gardayne as preuely as she
 coud, and so wente¹³ all alone¹³ by the wall syde tyll¹⁴
 she came to the posterne / then she wente out towards
 32 the stabyl / ²when she came there she founde redy¹⁵

Her maidens
attend Ide while
bathing.

But she soon
leaves them for
her chamber.

Ide when left
alone dons man's
apparel, and girts
a sword at her
side.

She leaps from the
window into the
garden, and goes
to the stable,

¹ bathing. ² and. ³ thought. ⁴ because of.
 6 Fol. clxxiii. col. 2. ⁶ bathed. ⁷ Mistresse. ⁸ bath.
⁹ haue. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ ioyfully. ¹² to.
 13-13 along. ¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ redy after horse.

where a horse is
made ready for
her by Sorbare.

She makes for the
forest.

there¹ a hors in Sorbares hande / and at the arson² of
the sadyll a bag full of brede and fleshe, and two
botelles of good wyne / then the damoysell toke the
horse, & without any worde spekyng she lept vpon³
quyckely; then Sorbare, all wepynge, sayde, ‘My
³dere daughter, god be thy gyde and bryng the to
sauegarde / go thy waye and kepe the way on⁴ thy
lyfte hande / ⁵folowe the see syde’ / ‘Syr,’ quod she,⁸
‘the goodnes that¹ ye haue shewed me god rewarde
you, in to whose sauegarde I commende you’ / thus
departed this noble lady yde to eschewe and flee fro the
yll dyshordenate⁶ wyl of her father / ⁵she entered in ¹²
to the forest, kepynge no hye waye / and so she rode
.iii. dayes alonge the wode tyll⁷ she thought well that
she was farre fro her countre. Nowe let vs leue
spekyng of her tyll⁷ ⁸tyme be⁸ to retourne to her ¹⁶
agayne, and let vs speke of kyng florence her father.

¶ How kyng Florence was sorowfull when he
was aduerteysed of his doughters depart-
ynge, who was aparayled lyke a man, and how shee
found sartayne theues in a forest, and how
she came to Rome to the emperorre lyke a
squyre.

Ca. Clxxvi. 24

WE haue harde here before in this hystory
howe kynge florence of Aragon wold
haue his owne doughter, the damoysell
yde in maryage agaynst the wyl of ²⁸
all his lordes and people; after that
he had spoken with her and commaundyd the bayne¹⁰

¹ omitted. ² pommell. ³ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁴ vpon. ⁵ and. ⁶ dishonorable. ⁷ vntill.

^{8—9} we haue occasion. ⁹ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.

¹⁰ bath.

to be orderyd for her to the entente¹ the nexte daye to take² her in maryage / the nyght aprochyd, and after supper the kynge wente to his bed / ³then the nexte
 4 mornynge betimes tidynge was brought to y^e kyng how the kyng of Nauerne was come to se hym / the kynge wente to mete with⁴ him, and made hym great chere, and so came together to the palays / and then
 8 incontynent it was shewed the kyng how his daughter was fled away, wherof y^e kyng was so sorrowfull and angery that no man durste speke a worde to hym, ⁵he went in to his daughters chaumbre: there he found the
 12 ladyes and damoyselles that had y^e kepynge of her; y^e kyng wolde haue ryn vpon them and⁵ the kynge of Nauerne had not bene, who letted hym and blamed hym moche when he knewe the cause of her departyng /
 16 and what y^e kyng wolde haue done / then came the horse keper to the kynge, and sayde / how his good horse was stollen awaye the same nyght. Then the kynge as a man desperate commaunded on all sydes
 20 men to ryde after,⁶ and who soeuer coude bryng his daughter agayne or elles sure tydynge of her he promyssed to gyue hym a .M. florences of gold / there were many that for loue of that mony rode forthe, to
 24 the nombre of .iii.C.; they rode dyuers wayes, but there was none of them that coude bryng any newes⁷ of her / and so retorne to y^e kyng, who was sorrowfull when⁸ he coude here no thyng of her / great wepynges⁹
 28 there was¹⁰ in y^e city for¹¹ goynge awaye of the damoy-sel / for¹² fere that she had of her father, & rode vpon the good horse / in the daytyme she wolde rest her in the wodes, and in the nyght she wold ryde forthe.
 32 Thus she passyd all the prouynces of Aragon / ³then

The king of Navarre comes to visit Florence.

Florence is told of his daughter's flight.

In his wrath he would have slain her maidens, had not the king of Navarre prevented him.

He sends messengers after Ide.

¹ that. ² haue. ³ and. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ if.

⁶ her. ⁷ tidings. ⁸ Fol. clxxiiii. col. 1.

⁹ lamentations. ¹⁰ made. ¹¹ the.

¹² because of the.

From Arragon
Ide goes into
Lombardy, and
thence to Ger-
many.

She tarries at
Baslo.

Men are going to
Rome to aid the
emperor against
the king of
Castille.

Ide offers her
service to a
German soldier.

she passed into Lombardy. of her iorneys and ad-
uentures I wyll make no mencyon, because she founde
no thyng by the waye to let her; she rode so longe
that she aprochyd to y^e countre of almayne / ¹when 4
she came there her mony fayled her, wherby she was
constrayned to selle her hors for money to lyue with
all, and so wente afote / and at y^e last came to the
citye of Basyle, and ther she taryed a season, and ther 8
dyspendyd her money / so longe she laye there that she
harde howe the emperor of Rome sent for men all
abought to ayde and socoure hym agaynst the kynge of
castell, who made him great warre / when she sawe 12
that many noble men were goynge to Rome to socour
the emperor she was ioyfull, and sayd to her host that
yf she had horse and harnays² she wolde go with
other into the warre / and thought in³ her selfe that 16
she wold gladly be aquaynted with the emperoure
of Rome, who was named Othon / ¹she thought yf she
myght she wolde take counsayle of hym / ¹she dyd so
moche that she fell in a quayntaunce with some of the 20
almayns / so that they were glad to se her / she semid
to them to be so fayre¹ a yonge squyre / then an
Almayne *that* was there sayd to⁴ her / 'frende, come
hether to me and shewe me what thou art' / 'syr,' 24
quod she, 'I am to hym that my seruyce may please /
for I desyre nothyng but to serue some noble man /
but⁵ late I was in Aragon, and there I seruyd ⁶a lord
that is dede / wherfore I am come hether for the 28
dyspleasure that I haue of his deth / ¹I can well
serue a gentelman / and kepe his horse, and yf nede
be to dryue his sompterhors / & if I come in batayle or
in scyrmaysshe with my mayster, I thynke he shall 32
haue worse then I in his company' / the Almayne,
herynge her so⁷ speke, sayde, 'fayre sone, that thou

¹ and. ² armour. ³ within. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ of.

⁶ Fol. clxxiiii, col. 2. ⁷ to.

sayst procedethe of a good corage / therfore good must come to the yet, I pray the shewe me thy name' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am called yde' / 'brother,' quod the 4 Almayne, 'I retayne¹ y^e to² my seruyse, take hede of my horse' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am redy to do you the best seruyce that I can' / ³y^e Almayne had her to his loging. Thus she then serued⁴ and she⁴ was wonte to 8 be serued, for she fered yf it shulde be parseyued that she were a woman it shulde⁵ be to her trobly / therfore she kepte herselfe close and secrete: ⁶she was⁷ .iii. dayes with her mayster after that the other company 12 were gone⁸ to romeward,⁸ ⁹her mayster myght not departe so sone as the other dyd, for his busynes was not redy / ⁶then thre days after they departed to go to Rome / and she was harnaysed¹⁰ after the coustume 16 of the countre. she serued so wel her mayster that he praysed her, and¹¹ so long they rode that they came and aproched nere to the countre of rome, so that on a daye they entered into a great darke forest / wherin laye in 20 a busshement a¹² .vii. score spaynardys, lyenge there to abyde theyr aduenture; they lay in a darke valey, and when they saw the Almaynes¹³ them escryed¹³ them to the dethe, and ran vpon they. Then yde, who rode 24 before her mayster, couchyd her spere and strake a spanyarde there¹⁴ clene thrugh the body, and with the drawyng out of¹⁵ her spere the spanyarde fell downe dede, of the whiche course her mayster praysed her / 28 then y^e spanyardes ran in amonge the almayns, who ryght valyantly defended them,¹⁶ but theyr defence coud not auayle them / for fynally¹⁷ they were all slayne, so that none scapyd alyue / but alonly yde, 32 who dyd bere her so valyauntly that she slewe .iiii. of

Her master is bound for Rome, and Ide goes with him.

On the journey Spaniards in ambush attack them.

Ide and her companions defend themselves valiantly, but all the Germans but herself are slain.

¹ entertain. ² into. ³ so. ⁴⁻⁴ that. ⁵ wold.
⁶ and. ⁷ continued. ⁸⁻⁸ towardes Rome. ⁹ but.
¹⁰ armed. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² about. ¹³⁻¹³ they despised.
¹⁴ therwith. ¹⁵ Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ selues.
¹⁷ at the end.

the spanyardes, but when she sawe that her mayster
and all his company were slayne / with her sworde
in her hande all blody she fled awaye, and rode out of
the way and toke a lytell pathe, the whiche brought 4
her to a rocke, and there she alyghted, and taryed in
the wode all¹ nyghte tyll² the nexte mornynge / she
had so great hunger and thyrste,³ for she had rydden

*She rides on
alone, and falls in
with a gang of
thieves.*

all⁴ day without mete or drynke / then⁵ in the mornynge 8
she loked all abought⁶ and saw in an herber⁷ a⁸.xxx.
theues syttinge at a table etynge and drynkyng at
theyr pleasure ; ⁵ when the damoysell sawe them, for
the great rage of hunger that she suffered constrainyd 12
her in such wyse that she forgate all fere and went to⁹
them / when the theues sawe her one of them sayd to
his felaws, 'I se yonder comynge a¹⁰ yonge¹⁰ squyre
mounted on¹¹ a good horse / the which shal be ours' / 16
⁵ when yde aprochyd to them she humbely saluted the

*She begs meat at d.
drink of them.*

company, and sayd, 'Syrs, yf it may please you to let
me eat and drynke with you I wyll pay for my scot'¹² /
'frende,' quod one of them, 'is there any man that 20
hath bene your gyde in this forest?' 'syrs,' quod yde,
'god hathe bene my conduct, and none other' / then
one of the theues stepte forthe and toke her horse by

They attack her.

the brydell, and sayd to his company, 'syrs, laye on, 24
stryke hym downe, he shall nevere eate nor drynke
more ; ¹⁰as for¹⁰ his horse shall not scape me' / when
she¹³ sawe¹⁴ that she was so¹⁰ taken she was in great
fere, ⁵she durst make no countenaunce to defende her 28
selfe / there were so manye theues vpon her / she
thought to humble herselfe, which should be more
profyt, & sayd, 'Syrs, why make ye that haste to sle
me / lytel shal ye wynne therby nor lese,¹⁵ hold here 32

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ that she was neere hand famished.

⁴ the. ⁵ and. ⁶ her. ⁷ arbour. ⁸ about.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² shotte.

¹³ the Damsell. ¹⁴ Fol. clxxiiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ looze.

my sword, I yelde me¹ into your handes, and I praye you in the honoure of ²our lorde² Iesu chryst³ gyue me some mete and drynke / for I ⁴haue suche hunger⁴ that ^{She yields to them,}

4 I am ⁵nere dede for famyne⁵ / then the mayster thefe sayde, ‘squyre, haue no fere to be stryken, thou shalte haue no more hurte then myselfe, but thou shalt haue all that thou lackest; go thy waye & sytte downe ^{and they offer her meat and drink.}

8 and eat and drynke at thy pleasure’ / ‘syr,’ quod yde, ‘I thanke you’ / then the damoysell sate downe with them, & dyd eate and drynke at her⁶ pleasure / ^{Many of the thieves wish to make Ide a member of their band.}

7 when they had all eten and were resyn vp, then the **12** theues began to stryue amounghe themselfe, sayenge to theyr chefe mayster how he had done yll, that he wolde not suffer them to sle the squyre / then another answered, & sayd how there shuld no hurte be done to⁸

16 hym, bycause he was so fayre a yonge man and so courtoys / and sayd⁹ it shuld be great damage to sle hym / ^{The chief of them asks her name and history.}

20 and yf he wyll not do so¹¹ it were¹² reason to sle hym.

¶ when yde vnderstode the theues she was in great fere, and callyd vpon oure lorde¹³ Iesu chrysste,¹³ prayenge hym humbly in her great nede to succour and **24** aide¹⁴ her / then the chefe mayster demaunded what was her name / then she answered in great fere to be slayne, and sayd, ‘syr, my¹⁵ name is yde, & I am of the realme of Fraunce; and we were in company whan we **28** departed out of our countre a¹⁶ forty gentyl men / we were goinge to haue serued the emperor of Rome, who hath now warre with the kynge of spayne / and we found in our way a¹⁶ seuen score spayniardes in a

^{She tells how she is on her way to serve the emperor of Rome.}

¹ myselfe. ^{2—2} omitted. ³ to. ^{4—4} am so hungry.
^{5—5} almost famished. ⁶ their. ⁷ and. ⁸ vnto.
⁹ that. ^{10—10} and that it were better. ¹¹ then.
¹² good. ^{13—13} god. ¹⁴ aide before succour.
¹⁵ Fol. clxxv. col. 1. ¹⁶ about.

busshement lyeng in ¹the botom of¹ a valey / ²they set on³ vs and slew all my company, none scaped but myselfe / and therfore, syrs, I pray you let me haue agayne my horse and my sworde, and shew me y^e way ⁴ to Rome / it shall⁴ be a great almes dede to shewe me that courtoysse.' 'Nay,' quod the mayster thefe, 'that wyll we not do / but thou shalte tary with vs, and lerne to be a thefe and a murdrer; ⁵yf thou wylte not ⁸ thus do / with my swerde I shall stryke of thy heed.' 'Syrs,' quod yde / 'ye wolde haue me to a thynge that I was neuer accustomed to do, nor none of my lynage / nor I haue none intencyon to do any suche workes / ¹² therfore I pray you let me haue my horse and my swerde, than ye do me great curtoysse / and whan I am mounted on³ my horse / yf one of you wyll defye me, and yf I defende not my selfe from hym / than stryke ¹⁶ of my heed / I haue boughte my mete and drinke very dere if I shuld lose my horse' / than the mayster thefe said, 'bycause I se thou arte so hardy I wyll wrastell with the / on³ the⁶ couenaunt that yf thou cast me ²⁰ thou shalt be one of vs⁷ / & yf thou be cast to the erthe / than I wyll haue thy horse and thy swerde / and dyspoyle the of all thy clothes' / Than yde sayd, 'I am content thus to do / so that ye withdrawe ¹backe¹ ²⁴ your men fro me / and set my horse by me, and my swerde tyed to my sadle bowe / for it is ¹sayd in¹ a comen prouerbe / that a man is taken for a foole that putteth his trust in a thefe' / whan the⁸theues herd ²⁸ that they coulde not forbare laughynge / and they had great desyre to se this wrastelynge betwyxt them / than they withdrew abacke / and set his hors ther by hym / than the noble damsell yde quyckely toke the ³² thefe / who thoughte to haue borne her to the erth / but she drewe hym so sore to her that he coulde scant

The chief bids her join them.

She refuses stoutly.

The chief insists on wrestling with her; if he throws her, he will seize her horse and all her clothes.

Ide demands that her horse shall be set beside her, and that the thieves should draw aside.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² so. ³ vpon. ⁴ would. ⁵ and.
⁶ this. ⁷ our companie. ⁸ Fol. clxxv. col. 2.

haue any breth / and therwith she cast hym soo rudely
to the erth against a stone that he was therwith in
a swone / and with the fall all his teth brast¹ in his
4 mouth.

Ide throws the
thief in the tussle,
and he falls so
heavily on a stone
that he swoons.

¶ Whan yde sawe the thefe in that daunger quyckly
she wente to her horse and mounted vp / than she
drewe out her swerde, and said, 'A, ye horson² thefes /
8 yeare treason shall not auayle you / for ye haue
all thought vvolence and treason agaynst me / go &
helpe your maister who lyeth yonder / I thinke he
shall euer remembre this wrastlynge bytwene vs. ³I
12 haue now no dout of you all / tho ye were a hondred
mo / for yf I may⁴ I shall make you all be hanged
& strangled' / than the quyckest and⁵ lyghtest thefe
amonge them stept forth and toke hym by the brydell
16 of his hors / ³whan she saw that / she lyfte vp her
swerde & strake the thefe on⁶ the hande / so that the
hande flew fro his body and hanged stylly vpon her
brydle / than he ranne awaye thinkynge to dye for⁷
20 payne of his hande / ³than she dasht in amonge the
thefes / they had no wepen aboute them to defende
them withal / but they were there to their foly,
nor they had no fere of that / that⁸ fell / nor they
24 byleued not that such a yonge squier shulde haue
had suche hardinesse⁹ & force; ¹⁰she fought fyersly
amonge them, and cut of armes and shulders, & claued
some to the brayne / she dyd so¹¹ that she slew fyue ¹²of
28 the thefes or¹³ she departed / and whan she sawe time
to departe / she sporred her hors / for by that tyme the
resydue of the theues had gette¹⁴ weapons / and they
folowed her to haue slain her or her hors / than
32 she departed with the sporres / her hors was good /

Ide mounts her
horse, and bids
the thieves look
to their chief.

A thief seizes her
bridle, but she
strikes off his
hand with her
sword.

She drives her
horse among
them,

and uses her
sword vigorously
upon them.

After slaying five

she spurs on her
horse and escapes.

¹ burst. ² vilde. ³ and. ⁴ can. ⁵ the.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ with the. ⁸ which. ⁹ hardness.

¹⁰ then. ¹¹ much. ¹² Fol. clxxv. back, col. 1.

¹³ before. ¹⁴ gotten.

therfore anone she was ferre fro them / than the theues
 saw they lost but there payn¹ to folow any further,
 therfore they let her goo / whan yde sawe that she was
 scaped their handes / humbly she thanked our lorde 4
²Iesu chryst,² desyryng him to ayde and conducte her
 into some sauegarde / ³she rode so long that she issued
 out of the great forest / of her iourneys and lodgyng I⁴
 make no mencyon / but she spedde so in her Iourney 8
Ide arrives at
Rome, and salutes
the emperor.
 that she ariued at the noble cite of Rome, and she toke
 vp her lodgyng nere to the palayes / wheare as the
 emperour was deuysyng with his lordes of the feates
 of the⁵ warre / than yde wente thyther / & kneled 12
 downe and saluted themperoure and all his lordes.
 When the emperoure and the Romaynes that were
 there saw the goodly yonge man who so humbly
 had⁵ saluted them / they gretly⁵ regarded him⁶ for the 16
 beaute that they saw in him. Than the emperour said
 to⁷ hym / ‘fayre son, shewe me what ye be and
 fro whense ye come, *that* thus cometh hyther to me.’
⁸Syr,’ quod yde / ‘I am a squier that came now strayte 20
 fro Almayne / wheare as I haue serued a certayne
 tyme / and lytell there I haue wonne, wheare of I am
 sory / and but late⁸ I was in a⁵ place / wheare diuers
⁹Spaniardes and other were in company, and they al⁵ 24
 had great desyre to make warre / and they wente to the
 kynge of Spayne, your enemy / but or⁹ they hadde
 ferre gone / they that were in my company met with
 them / and there we foughte ¹⁰togither and slewe 28
 y^e moost parte of them, and there I was a lytell hurte /
 and now, syr, I am come to you to serue your grace / if
 my small seruyce may please you / & in the best wyse
 that I can I shall serue you trewly.’

He asks her
history.

She tell of her
recent exploits.

32

¹ labours. ²⁻² god. ³ and. ⁴ wyll. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ much. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ lately. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxv. back, col. 2.

¶ How the damsell yde was retained¹ with
the emperour of rome / and how the lady
Olieue, his daughter, was in ²amours with²
yde, wenynge she had ben a man / & how
the kynge of Spaine came before the cite
of Rome, and how the noble damsell yde
tooke the kyng of Spaine in batayle and
dyscomfyted him.

Ca. C.lxxvii.

IHAN themperour herde yde speake / he
well³ behelde her, and saw how she
was byg and great / and thought *that*
he never saw⁴ in⁵ his lyfe before
so fayre a yonge man / and as the
emperoure was talkynge with yde / theare came to
them Olyue the emperours daughter. Than all the
16 lordes rose vp at her comynge / than⁶ she sate downe
by her father / & beheld greatly the yonge squier / and
greatly⁷ she praised her⁸ in her corage, bycause of the
meruaylous great beaute that was in her / wenynge
20 to her⁹ that¹⁰ she had bene a man / this Olyue was so
fayre, so swete, and so meke, that for her bounte and
humylyte she was⁹ wel⁹ byloued of euery man / then
the emperour demaundyd of yde what was her name &
24 fro whence she came. ‘Syr,’ quod she, ‘my name is
yde, and¹¹ was borne at Terascon, ⁶I am kyn to duke
Nayms of Bauyer, & to Aymery of Narbon, and to
Gyllerme the scotte / but by the kynsmen of Ganelon
28 I was chasyd and banysshed out of my countre, and syn
I haue endured moche Payne and pouerte.’ Then the
emperour sayd, ‘frend, thou art of a good kynryd / I
retayne¹² the in my courte / for the bounte *that* I

The emperor
admires her
fairness.

Olive his daugh-
ter beholds Ide,
and praises her
prowess.

Olive, like all who
see Ide, never
doubts that she is
a man.

Ide feigns her
early history.

The emperor
takes her into his
service,

¹ entertained. ²⁻² enamoured of.

³ were after beheld her. ⁴ he never saw *after* lyfe.

⁵ all. ⁶ and. ⁷ much. ⁸ him. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. col. 1. ¹¹ I. ¹² entertaine.

thynke¹ be in the, and also for thy good lynage.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'god geue me grace that I maye do you suche seruyce that it maye be to youre pleasure' / 'daughter Olyue,' quod the emperour, 'for ye⁴ loue of you I haue reteyned² this squyer to serue you' / 'father,' quod Olyue, 'I thanke you / for he³ semethe that he is come out of a good house⁴ / and I had no seruaunt of⁵ a longe⁶ season, that better contentethe 8 me' / then the emperour sayd to⁷ yde / 'my frend, serue me well, behold here my doughter, whome I loue enterely, ⁸to whome I delyuer you to serue her; I haue no mo chyldren but she, & therfore serue her 12 trewly as a man ought to do that is come of suche a lynage as ye⁹ be come of⁹ / yf ye serue her wel and trewly, ye had neuer in all your lyfe before so good aduenture' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I shall do so moche that 16 by the grace of Iesu¹⁰ that⁵ you & she shal be wel content / and, syr, there is no thynge but¹¹ lyghtly I can do it to serue a noble man, and in the warre I shal defende my selfe I trust as well a nother, and 20 also I can serue at a table before a kynge or a⁵ quene.' 'frende,' quod the empel¹²rour, 'yf ye can do thus as ye saye ye are well come hether, and ye shall fayre ye^e better / and I am ioyfull of youre comynge to serue me, 24 ye shall neuer haue nede to go out of my seruyce' / when yde harde ye^e emperoure humbly¹³ she thankyd hym / ⁸thus was yde retaynyd² with the emperour / whereas she dyd so moche by her good seruice that the 28

All at the court of
the emperor
praise and love
Ide.

emperour and his doughter, & all they of the courte louyd and praysed her, and the damoysell Olyue often tymes gladly regardyd yde, and began in her harte sore to loue her / and yde, who parseiued her, prayed 32

¹ to. ² entertained. ³ it. ⁴ stocke.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ are.

¹⁰ god. ¹¹ but after lightly. ¹² Fol. clxxvi. col. 2.

¹³ humbly after she.

to¹ our lorde² Iesu chrysste² that he myght³ so dele *that*
she be not acused nother of man or⁴ woman / she gau
almes often tymes to pore men, and she visyted gladly⁵
4 holy churche ; she demenyd herselfe in suche wyse that
of euery man she was byloued and praysed / often
tymes she prayed to² our lord Iesu chrys² for kynge
Florence her father, for all that she was chasyd & fled
8 out of her countre by his occasyon and cause / yette she⁶
prayed euer¹ to god that she myght be agreed with
hym. Thus this damoysel yde was in this daunger
seruynge the emperor and his doughter Olyue the
12 space of two monethes / & on a day she was in
the palays with the emperoure / and therethere came
in great hast a messanger, and came and saluted the
emperour, and sayde / ‘syr, knowe for trouth / ⁷y^e
16 kynge of Spayne, with great pusaunce, is entered into
youre empyre of Rome, and wasteth all before hym
with fyre and sworde / ⁸many a Romayne he hathe
slayne / and he hath sworne by his lawe that or⁹
20 a moneth be passed he wyl be with in your citye
of Rome with all his pusaunce, and he saythe that he
wyl haue his pleasure of your doughter, & to make you
to¹⁰dye of¹ a shameful deth by cause ye haue refused
24 to gyue¹¹ your doughter in maryage / syr, it were¹²
better for you that he had wedded¹³ youre doughter,
then so many men shulde haue been slayne, and so
many townes brente¹⁴ & destroyed / & castelles beten
28 downe / syr, go quyckly agaynst hym and defende
youre countre, or elles ye shall se hym shortly pyght
vp his tentes & pauylyons before this citye’ / when the
emperour hard the messanger he studyed a great
32 season, and loked vpon yde, and sayde / ‘frende,

She prays for her wicked father.

News is brought
the emperor of
the approach of
the king of Spain
with a great and
victorious army.

The invader
declares he will
have his pleasure
of Olive, and will
slay her father.

¹ omitted. ²⁻² god. ³ would. ⁴ nor. ⁵ the.

⁶ alwayes. ⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 1. ¹¹ him. ¹² had been.

¹³ married. ¹⁴ burnt.

The emperor takes counsel with Ide.

Ide asks for fighting men, and promises to lead them against the enemy.

The emperor confers knighthood on Ide.

counsayle me, for I thought ful lytell that these men of war wold haue come vpon me, and nowe they waste and dystroye my lond.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'trouble not your selfe for it; conforte youre selfe and reioyse your ⁴ lordes & saruauntes, and let me haue men to fyght with them, and I wyll loke vpon them or¹ they come any nerer / and by the grace of god I shall cause them to bye derely the dystruccyon that they haue made in ⁸ youre countre yf god sauе my lyfe and my ²good² sword' ³ / when y^e emperour hard the valyant corage of yde, he praysed hyr moche in his harte, and sayd / 'frend, your reason pleaseth me well / and therfore I ¹² shal do you that honour as to make you a knyght, wherby your prowes and hardynes shall encreas' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'of the honour *that* ye wyll do to me I am ryght ioyful / and thanke you therof' / then the ¹⁶ emperoure came to⁴ yde and gyerte aboute hym a good sworde & a ryche / it was so good that there was none lyke it in goodnes, nor⁵ sharper, nor harder / ⁶then y^e emperoure gaue her the necke stroke of knyghthood, ²⁰ and sayde / 'yde, remembre this order, the whiche ye haue receyued this daye / and I praye ²to² god⁷ it maybe to the encreas of your honour, and euer ⁸beware that your thoughtes be not lyght nor vauerynge, but ²⁴ be⁹ sage and dyscrete, and attemperate, and be hardy in baytell, and cast away fro you all fere ²and drede² / and when ye haue wonne any goodes or ryches / kepe them not locked in your cofers / but ¹⁰depart with¹⁰ them to ²⁸ poore knyghtes, the whiche shall encrease and exalte your honoure / and alwayes loue¹¹ holy church; yf ye do thus ye can not fayle to come to great honour, & euer shew youre vertue ageynst your enemyes' / 'syr,' ³² quod yde, 'by the grace of ¹²our lord Iesu christ¹²

¹ before. ² omitted. ³ hold. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ neither.

⁶ and. ⁷ that. ⁸ Fol. clxxvi, back, col. 2.
⁹ rather. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ distribute. ¹¹ the. ¹²⁻¹² god.

I shall so do that ther is no spaynyarde But that shall
wysse themselfe¹ to be on the other syde of the see' /
then eueryman arayed them in the paleys & in the
4 citye / ²then trompettes and tabors and hornes began
to sowne in the citye, so that all the cheualry and
comunalte of the citye were redy armyd / then they
came all before the palays and presentyd themselfe
8 to the emperour / who dyd commaunde them that daye
to folowe & obeye the commaundement of yde, whom
he commytted that day to³ be as chefe capetayne, and
sayde, 'syrs, loke ye do as moche for hym as ye wolde
12 do for me, ²ye knowe well⁴ I am old and feble, and can
bere armure no lenger / nor I am not able to ryde as I
myghte haue done or⁵ this tyme / wherfore I desyre
you, & also commaunde you all on payne of youre
16 lyues to do euery thynge⁶ that he commaundethe in the
stede of me as well as though I dyd commaunde you⁷
myne own parson, for he that dothe the contrary,
he shall lose his hede without any other redempcyon.'

20 Then they all sayle they wold so do syn it was
his pleasure. Then the noble emperoure causyd yde to
be rychely armyde, and then delyueryd⁸ hym his owne
hors, who was so good that his lyke coude not be
24 founde in no⁹ countre / ¹⁰yde mounted vp quycckely
with helme and shyld and a great spere / then² yde
toke leue of the emperour and of the lady Olyue, and
so rode thrughe the citye of Rome with all his host ;

28 and when they were without the citye yde ordeyned
.iii. batayles / y^e two fyrst batayles were led by two
great lordes / and the thyrde yde dyd gyde it,¹¹ and thus
with baners dysplayed¹² auauised forthe towards theyr
32 enemyes / y^e spanyardes thought suerly all had bene
theyrs / bycause they sawe of all the waye that they

He bids his
soldiers obey all
Ide's commands.

He gives Ide his
own horse.

IDE takes leave of
the emperor and
of Olive.

She puts the men
in battle array.

¹ himself. ² and. ³ doe and. ⁴ that. ⁵ before.
⁶ as. ⁷ in. ⁸ Fol. clxxvii. col. 1. ⁹ any.
¹⁰ then. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² they.

and they meet the
Spaniards.

Ide kills the
nephew of the
king of Spain.

She wields her
sword in the
thickest parts of
the fight with
deadly force.

had come no maner of defence made agaynst them / but it is an olde sayenge / *that* many thynge remayneth of such folyshe thoughtes / as it dyd with the spaniardes / for they thought suerly ¹ the citye of Rome was 4 won ; but yf god ayde and socoure the damoysell yde and her cheualry, she shuld take fro them or it were nyght theyr hope to haue any vyctory / she rode by her bataylles and encouraged her men, and mouyd them to 8 do valyauntly, ² thus they aprochyd towards their enemyes : great crye³ and noyse there was when the batayles encounteryd together / the shot flewe so thycke of both partyes that it semed to be snowe and 12 hayle / yde encountered with a knyght, nephue to the kynge of Spayne / he receyued suche a stroke, that for all his armure ydes spere wente clene thrughe his body / so that the knyght fell to the erthe with his fete 16 vpwarde, and so dyed myserably amoung the horse fete / then yde sayde, ‘of god be thou cursyd ; in an yll owre thou camste hether to recey[ue] suche an offerynge. I chalenge fro you all the empyre of Rome’ / then she 20 sayde to herselfe, ‘good lord god, humbly⁴ I re⁵quyre the this day⁶ ayde and socoure me this⁷ poore fugytyue’ / therwith she sporred her horse ⁸ with the spores⁸ / and with the same spere she slewe another 24 great baron of Spayne, and so slewe with the same spere dyuers other / and when the spere was broken / ⁸then⁸ she drew out her ⁸good⁸ sworde, the whiche the emperoure had geuen her / then she came to a notable 28 duke of Spayne, vncle to the kynge, to whome she gaue suche a stroke with her good sworde that she clauie his hede to the tethe, and so⁹ fell downe dede / then she dasshed into the thyckest presse / and euer dyd chese 32 out of the greatest parsonages, and slew many of them,

¹ *that.* ² *and.* ³ *joy.* ⁴ *humbly after require.*

⁵ *Fol. clxxvii. col. 2.* ⁶ *to.* ⁷ *a.*

⁸⁻⁸ *omitted.*

⁹ *he.*

for she thought the mo that were slayne of the great men, the more shulde her enemyes be afrayed, therfore she chese out suche one after another / and also the
 4 Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne¹ that was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and caused them to fle awaye / and had neuer retourned
 8 agayne and² the duke of Argonne, with .thre.M. knyghtes in his company, had not bene, who made them that fled to retourne agayne / then there began agayne a ferse batayle, and many a man slayne /
 12 the Romayns dyd valyauntly by the ayde and conforte of theyr capytayne ; she rode into the thyckeste of the prese & bet downe the Spanyardes on al sydes, that petye it was to se / Great was the noyse, petuously
 16 cryed out the hurt men lyeng among the horse fete, which were beten downe to the erthe / then the kynge of Spayne came in to the batayle with his sworde in his hande, and encounteryd with a great lorde
 20 of Rome, whiche was cosyn to y^e emperour / y^e kynge gaue³ hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme that he clauie his hede in to y^e braynes / and then the kynge slewe another / then yde, who saw that, was sorowful, and
 24 sayd, 'I ought lytell to be praysed / without I reuenge the deth of this .ii. lordes slayne by y^e kynge of Spayne' / ⁵she rode to the kynge and gaue hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme / that all the sercles with stones
 28 and perlys flew downe to the erth, and strok a waye a part of his coyfe and⁶ here and skynne, and yf the kynge had not tornid his hede ⁷elles his hed⁷ had bene clouen to the tethe, and the sworde glente⁸ & lyght on⁴
 32 the horse necke and strake it clene asonder, and so the hors fell downe dede, & the kynge to the erthe, wherof

The Spaniards
begin to flee
before her;

but the king of
Spain comes into
the battle

and slays the
emperor's cousin.

Id rides up to
him, slays his
horse, and falls
him to the
ground.

¹ of the Romanes. ² if.

³ Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 1. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ then.
⁶ omitted. ⁷—⁷ it. ⁸ glaunced.

His guard^r flee,

and Ide makes
him prisoner
while he lies in a
trance.

The king is taken
before the
emperor by two
lords.

Ide's prowess
wins the battle.

Olive loves Ide
for her courage.

She had loved
none before.

the spanyardes where sore afrayed,¹ thynkyng heyr kynge had bene ded² / so they fled awaie & lefte him there lyeng on the erth in a traunce, so³ that he coude nother se, nor⁴ here, nor speke one word ; then the **4** damoysell yde toke hym and delyuered him to two noble lordes of the emperours courte, and when he reuyued he was made to swere and promise to be a trew presoner / those two lordes wente with the kynge **8** of spayne into the citye of Rome, and presentyd hym to⁵ the emperour fro yde / wherof the emperour thankyd god *that he sente yde thereto to serue hym* / then the kyng was set in a strong towre, and yde was **12** without⁶ doyng maruayles in armes, so that euery man was abasshed therof / **7** so that⁷ y^e spanyardes made hym⁸ way / fynally, by y^e hye prowes of the damoysell yde, the kynge of Spayne was taken, and all his **16** men dyscomfyted ; happy was he that myght scape to saue his lyfe / long endured y^e chase,⁹ wherin many were slayne and taken / then yde and her company returned to the¹⁰ tentis and pa¹¹ulylyons, and there they **20** founde great ryches, the whiche was broughte out of Spayne / **7** the whiche⁷ was geuen and departed¹² to them *that had deserued it* / great ioye was made in the¹³ citye of Rome / for the batayle was well sene **24** ouer the walles, and specyally the lady Olyue had well regarded the hye prowesse of yde / wherby she louyd her so in her hart that she smyled for ioye, and sayde to herselfe, **14** ‘yonder yonge knyght I do gyue my **28** loue / the whiche I neuer before grauntyd to any man leuynge / but it is good ryght and reason that I graunt my loue to yde’ / such¹⁵ wordes Olyue sayde to herself. 32

¹ abasshed. ² slaine. ³ in such sort. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸ her.

⁹ the chase *after* endured. ¹⁰ their.

¹¹ Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹² distributed. ¹³ noble.

¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ like.

¶ How y^e emperoure of Rome receyuid hyely
the noble damoysell yde, and of y^e honour
that was made to¹ her / & how the em-
perour made her constable of his empyre /
and how the kyng of Spayne was delyuered
out of pryson, and made homage to¹ the
emperour.

Ca. C.lxxviii.

8  Fter that the bataile was done and
fynysshed, and the botye departed³ /
yde with great triumphe, acompanyed
with lordes and knyghtes, enteryd
12 into y^e citye of Rome / ⁴the emperour
was enformed of the comynge of yde
and of her valyaunt dedis, by whom the batayle was
wonne,⁵ and howe that none coude endure agaynst her,
16 wherof y^e emperour had suche ioye at his harte that he
wyst not what to do; ⁴he thanked our lorde ⁶Iesu
chryst⁶ that the mater wente so to hys honoure and
glory / therwith yde came to the palays, wheras she
20 was receyued with great ioye with all the coleges of y^e
citye / and when the emperoure sawe her he rose and
embrasyd her, and sayde / 'my trewe frende yde /
of your comyng I am ryght ioyous,⁷ for this day ye
24 haue done suche honoure to our empyre that y^e ought
to be honoured for euer, and bycause ye haue done vs
suche seruyce we wyll⁸ ye shall be the myrour for
al other knyghtes to encorage them to do wel / we
28 therfore make you our fyrst chaumberlayne and hye
constable of all our empyre Romayne, and all my
londes and sygnoryes I abandon to be at your com-
maundement in all thynges that ye thynke resonable to
32 be done / for I wyll and commaund that all my lordes

The emperor
receives Ide with
great joy.

He makes Ide his
first chamberlain
and high
constable.

¹ vnto. ² Fol. clxxviii. col. 1. ³ distributed.
⁴ and. ⁵ obtained. ⁶⁻⁶ god. ⁷ ioyfull. ⁸ that.

do obeye you.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may all wayes parseuer to do that thynge that shall be to you agreeable and profytable to your countres and 4 syngnoryes' / then the emperor sente for the kyng of spayne out of prysone / ¹when he was come he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me' / the emperor answered fersly, and sayd / 'kyng 8 of Spay²ne / for what cause are you come out of your countre of spayne thus to dystroy and waste myne empyre; ye haue slayne many of my lordes and knyghtes, who neuer dyd you any dyspleasure; and 12 besyde *that*, ye haue brente³ many of my townes, and beten downe my castelles, wherof I am sory, seyng that nother I nor none of myne dyd you neuer⁴ dyspleasure / and bycause that all yll⁵ oughte to be 16 punysshed, and all good dedys rewarded / or⁶ euer I drynke any wyne I shall cause your hede to be streken of, for any mans spekyng to the contrary I shall not fayle to do it' / when the kyng harde that he was in 20 great fere / & prayed humbly ⁷that he wold⁷ haue petye of hym, and sayde how he was redy to make amendys of all his trespasses / and to repaire agayne al the yll damages done by hym and⁸ caused to be 24 done within the empyre, and therwith to do homage and feaulte to⁹ hym, and to holde the realme of spayne of hym, promysyng also yf any war were made agaynst the emperor / he to¹⁰ come and socoure hym 28 with .xx.M. men at his owne proper costys and dyspence,¹¹ and to be with hym agaynst all men *that* wolde troble hym / then the emperoure sayde / 'syr¹² kyng of Spayne, knowe for trouthe that for all youre promyse 32 and wordes I wyll do but lytell for it, for ye shall not

¹ and. ² Fol. clxxviii. col. 2. ³ burnt. ⁴ any.

⁵ euill. ⁶ before. ⁷⁻⁷ him to. ⁸ or. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ would. ¹¹ charges. ¹² omitted.

The king of Spain is brought before the emperor.

The emperor sentences him to death.

The king in alarm offers to make abject submission, and implores mercy.

scape¹ me' / then the damoysell yde stept forth and sayde to the emperoure / 'syr, I haue often tymes hard say that he that humbleth hymselfe and cryethe for 4 marcy / reason then² requereth that he shulde haue marcy graunted hym, and therfore, syr, I requyre you to receyue this kynge to your grace, and pardon his trespass, seyng the offers that he hath offeryd to do / 8 ³he shal⁴ become your lege⁵ man, and holde his lond of you / and amende the damages that ye haue suffered / he that reason offereth ought to haue reason / well⁶ ye ought to thanke god syn suche a man as he is puttethe 12 hymselfe into your handes' / when the emperoure vnderstode yde, he sayde / 'frende yde, your wytte and courtoysye is to be alowed / and by cause I knowe that the counseall that ye gyue me is resonable, I wyl 16 do as ye wyl haue me / take⁷ him, and by you he shall be delyuered' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I thank you' / when the kyng of spayn sawe that he shuld haue grace, and that with a mendis makynge he shuld be quyte de 20 lyuered, he thankyd god / & dyd homage to the Emperoure, and delyuered hym⁸ plegys suffycyent⁹ to make restytucyon as he had promysyd / then the emperour gaue hym a sauecoundyte tyl¹⁰ he¹¹ was re- 24 tourned¹¹ into his owne countre, & all the other presoners were delyuered, such as were taken in the batayle by the Romayns / then the kynge of Spayne was ioyfull, and oftentimes thankyd the damoysell yde by whose 28 meanes that¹² bounte and courtoysye was shewed hym / then he toke¹³ leue of the emperour and of yde, and of all other lordes and knyghtes that were there present / and so he retourned into his countre of Spayne / where 32 as he was receyued with sore wepynges for y^e great

IDE pleads for
his life with the
emperor.

The emperor
agrees to spare
the king's life.

He does homage
to the emperor,

and is liberated.

He thanks IDE
many times.

¹ from. ² then before reason. ³ that. ⁴ will.

⁵ Fol. clxxviii, back, col. 1. ⁶ and. ⁷ you.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ sufficient before pledges. ¹⁰ vntill.

¹¹⁻¹¹ came. ¹² this. ¹³ his.

losse that they¹ had receyued. Now we shall leue
spekyng of hym and retourne to our mater.

H Howe the emperoure gaue his daughter Olyue in maryage to the damoysel yde / 4 knowynge none other but that she had bene a man, ²and howe she was apeched by a verlette, that harde theyr deyses whyles they were a³bed together, wherby 8 the emperour wold haue brent⁴ the damoysel yde.

Ca. Clxxix.



Fter that the kynge of Spayne was departed fro Rome, the emperour 12 honoryd and praysed moch yde for y^e good seruyce *that* she had done / who euer better & better parseuered in good seruyce doyng, for she dyd 16

Ide does the emperor much service;

she settles all the disputes of his lords.

Olive falls more deeply in love with her.

so moche by her wyt that all dyscordes and debates that were in the empyre betwene lordes or neybours, she set them in peas and acorde, wherfore the emperour louyd her in such wyse that without her he dyd 20 nothyng / and the emperours daughter Olyue loued her in suche wyse that she coude not lyue one day without y^e syght of her, she was so taken with loue, thynkyng that she neuer sawe so goodlye a ⁵yonge 24 man / and so on a day the emperour assembelyd his lordes and his preuy counsayle / to whome he shewed and sayde that he had but one daughter, the which as then was of lawful age / wherfore he wolde that she 28 shulde be maryed, to the entente *that* she myght haue hayers to enioye his londes after his dyscese / & sayd, ‘syrs, I thynke yf all y^e world shuld be serchyd there

¹ he.

² Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 2.

³ in.

⁴ burnt.

⁵ Fol. clxxix. col. 1.

coude not be founde a man so worthy to haue my
doughter Olyue in maryage as our welbeloued constable,
the valyaunt yde, by whom so noble seruyce hath bene
4 done to vs and to our hole empyre / for I wolde or¹ I
dye that she shulde be maryed / and I thynke I can
not better bestow her / for in al the worlde there is not
a more valyaunt knyght then yde is, nor that is better²
8 worthy to gourne an empyre or a great realme' / when
the lordes vnderstode y^e emperoure / they al alowed his
mynde, and counsaile hym to do the same; then the
good emperoure called to hym yde, and sayd, 'My dere
12 ³and cordyall³ frende, for y^e great seruyce that ye haue
done / I wyll rewarde you as by reason I am bound to
do, and I can not gyue you a more rycher thinge, nor
that I loue better, then Olyue my dere doughter /
16 whom I wyll gyue you in maryage, and I wyll that ye
take her to your wyfe, to the entente that after my
dayes ye maye gourne myne empyre / for nowe I fele
my selfe agyd and feble / wherfore I shal be content
20 that fro hensforthe ye haue the gouernynge therof / and
now I delyuer to you my londe in kepynge to gourne
it as your owne' / 'A, sir,' quod yde, 'what is that
ye saye / ye knowe well I am but a poore gentylman
24 banysshed out of my countre / and⁴ am worthe noth-
ynge / great⁵ damage it shulde be so noble a damoysell
to be assyngned to⁶ so poore a⁶ man as I am / syr, I cry
you marcy, humbly requyryng you to take aduyce that
28 your doughter, who is so fayre, maye be maryed to
some hye prynce and pusaunte, to the entent that yf ye
shulde haue any busynes that he myght be of power to
ayd and to socour you / ⁷I am poore, & ought always
32 to trauayle and to take Payne to get honour for me, and
to encrese my lynage' / 'what,' quod y^e emperour, 'are
you so hardy⁸ to refuse my doughter, by whom great

The emperor
declares that he
can bestow her
nowhere so well
as on Ide,
his valiant
constable.

The emperor
informs Ide of
his purpose.

Ide deprecates
the notion of
marriage with
Olive;
she is a poor
gentleman
banished out of
her own country,
unworthy of
such honour.

The emperor is
wrathful at his
officer's rejection

¹ before. ² more. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ I.

⁵ Fol. clxxix, col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ such a poore. ⁷ for. ⁸ as.

of his daughter's
hand;

and Ide in fear
yields to his will.

The emperor
reveals the matter
to Olive.

She is very
joyful;

she desires to be
married quickly.

welth and goodnes maye come to you' / 'syr,' quod
yde, 'syn it is so that it plese you to shewe me this
honoure I wyll not refuse it / but, syr, I saye it to the
entente *that ye shulde take good aduyce therin* / & syn¹ 4
ye be² content that I shulde thus do, and that it is your
pleasure, I am content, and³ humbly thanke your grace
of the honour that ye bere me' / then the emperour
sente for his daughter, who cam to⁴ hym with a glad 8
hart, for she had ben aduerteysed of the mater why that
her father sent for her / ⁵then the emperoure sayd,
'daughter, ye muste promyse me to do as I shall shewe
you' / 'syr,'⁶ quod she, 'it is not in me, nor I wyll 12
not refuse any thynge that is your pleasure' / 'daughter,'
quod the emperoure, 'ye do well so to awnswere me / &
bycause I haue no mo but you that ought to haue my
realme after me, therfore I wyll ye take a husbonde, to 16
the enttent that your londes and sygnoryes maye
be defended by hym, & therfore I wyl⁷ ye take to your
husband our capetayne, the valyaunte yde, whome
I loue enterly / this is my pleasure and agremente of 20
all my lordes / yf it be your pleasure to haue hym, he
shall be kynge and you quene after my discses.' 'syr,'
quod⁸ the lady, 'I am redy to fulfull your wyll,⁹ and
to obeye your commaundementes, and I thanke god of 24
this fayre aduenture that is fallen to me this day / for
I shall haue hym that I¹⁰ haue loued¹⁰ beste; I haue
not now lost my tyme, when I shall haue at my wyl
hym whom I¹¹ most desyre in¹¹ the worlde' / ¹²she 28
knelyd downe before her father & thankyd hym of his
gyfte / ⁵then she rose and kyste her father, and sayde,
'ryght dere father, I requyre you haste¹³ that this be
done; let us go to the churche to be wedded, for me 32

¹ seeing. ² are. ³ I. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ and.
⁶ Deere father. ⁷ that. ⁸ Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.
⁹ pleasure. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ loue. ¹¹⁻¹¹ loue best in all.
¹² then. ¹³ to hasten.

thynke we ought so to do ;' when the lordes hard the lady they laughed at her haste / ¹then the emperour said, 'doughter, come forth and fyaunce your hus-
4 bond, and you, yde, aproche nere ; and nowe, after my deth, I gyue you all ²my realme,² and I gyue you my dere doughter in recompence of the good seruyce that ye haue done me' / when yde vnderstode the emperour /

The emperor promises to bequeath his kingdom to his daughter and son-in-law.

8 all her blode chaunged, she wyste not what to do, all her body trymbelid ; for fere she callyd vpon our lorde god ryght petuously to herselfe, and prayed god³ to haue petye of her, and to counsayle her what was best

Ida is sorely troubled, and prays to heaven for aid.

12 for her to do / for she sawe that parforce the emperoure wold mary her to his doughter, and sayde, 'a, my father Florence, by you and by your dyshordynat rage I am nowe brought to this case, when ye made me

She curses her father's wickedness.

16 to departe by case ye wolde haue had me to your wyfe, but or⁴ I wold haue consentyd therto I had rather⁵ haue bene brent⁶ / therfore I fled awaye to eschewe that shame, wherby I haue bene syn in many parelles / for⁷

20 the which, by the wyll of god, I haue scapyd, wherof I ought to thanke hym / and I thought to kepe my selfe with in Rome secrete, and that no man shulde know

that⁸ I am a woman, but I shall be acusyd by the

24 emperours doughter, whose loue is so sore⁹ set on me that I haue no powre to escape without I stele preuely away fro them all ; and yf I shewe them what I am, I maye then sone haue some velany and¹⁰ accuse me and

She fears that when her disguise is discovered she will be sent back to Florence her father.

28 send me to¹⁰ y^e kyng my father, or els to send hym word where I am, and then in great haste he shall¹¹ sende for me / or elles, yf I wyll scape, I must fle awaye ouer the see / howbeit, I speke but lyke a fole / syn¹²

32 this fortune is fallen to¹³ me to haue y^e emperours

¹ and. ²⁻² mine Empire. ³ him. ⁴ before.
⁵ to. ⁶ burnt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. clxxix, back, col. 2.
⁹ much. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ bee accused and sent vnto. ¹¹ will.
¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto.

doughter in maryage and his realme¹ / I shall wed her & do as god wyl gyue me grace to do' / All this the danioysell yde spoke to herselfe. Then she sayde to the emperour / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure to geue me & your doughter in maryage, I am redy to take her.' Then they were led to the mynster churche / and there they were fyauanced, wheroft great ioye was made in rome / then the day of maryage came / then² the fayre 8 Olyue was led to the churche betwene .ii. kynges / and yde went afore all³ sadly / and so ⁴they⁴ cam to the church, and there⁵ were wedded. Then great was the triumphe and ioye ⁴that was⁴ in the citye of Rome ; 12 many a ryche garment of golde and sylke was worne that daye / ²euer man ran to se the new brydes / then they went to the palays, and so to dynner. Of the festes and⁴ sportes and ryche metys that was⁶ there 16 that day, yf I shulde shew it the tyme shulde be ouer longe to reherse yt / but syn Rome was fyrste founded yt was not knownen that ther had ben such a fest as this maryage⁷ / for no man⁸ thought but that yde had ben 20 a man / and after supper, ⁹and that⁹ it was tyme to go to rest / the brydes were brought in to ther chaumber / then the lady¹⁰ Olyue went to her bedde / than came yde and the chambre auoyded / ¹¹than yde¹¹ locked fast 24 the dore, to the entent that none shulde here them / than he¹² cam to the⁴ bed, and layde hym¹³ downe on the bed syde / & said to Olyue / 'my ryght swete loue, god gyue you good nyght / for as for me, I can gyue 28 you no good / for¹⁴ I fele suche a disesease, the which greueth me sore' / and therwith she kyst Olyue, who answered and said / 'my swete louer, ye ar the thing in the worlde that I moost desyre / for the bounte and 32

Idle and Olive
are formally
affianced.

They are soon
afterwards
married.

A great feast
follows.

Olive and Idle go
to the wedding
chamber;

but Idle main-
tains her disguise.

¹ Empire. ² and. ³ verie. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ they.

⁶ were. ⁷ wedding. ⁸ bodie. ⁹⁻⁹ when.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxx. col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and shee. ¹² shee.

¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.

swetnes that I know in you, ye¹ do with me as it shall please you / & to the entent that ye shall not thynke that I haue so great desyre that ye shulde do y^e thynge,
 4 the whiche of right ought to be done bytwene man and woman², I am content to forbere it this³ .xv. daies / & bycause that dyuers folkes are here aboute to herken⁴ vs, I am contente to gyue you trewes / for we shall
 8 haue space ynough hereafter to sporte vs / for⁵ I knowe such noblenes in you that I am sure ye wyll take none other wylfe, nor touche none other / but that ye wyll kepe your fayth & trouth to me / for I am
 2 chast, & so ye shall fynde me, it suffyseth me to clyppe and³ kysse you / and as for y^e preuy loue, I am content for this tyme, syn it is your pleasure, to forbere it.' Than yde answered / 'fayre lady, I wyll not refuse
 16 youre wyll.' thus they passed that nyght with clyppynge and kyssynge. Than in the mornynge they arose and made them redy, & cam in to the palais / themperour beheld Oliue his doughter / to se if she
 20 were any thinge chaunged³ or altered³ / and said, 'doughter / how is it with your husbond?' 'Syr,' quod she, 'euyn as I desyre / for I loue yde my husbonde better than I doo⁶ you / all though ye be⁷ my
 24 father' / at that⁸ worde the emperoure and all his lordes laughed / so great ioy and feast⁹ was ther made,
 10 the whiche¹⁰ endured eyght dayes. Than euer man toke leauue and wente whyther as they list / than⁵ after
 28 the fyftene daies were past¹¹ that yde had lyen with Oliue / yde touched her not but with³ clippynge and³ kyssyng / whearof Oliue was sorowfull, and said to herselfe, 'O, good lorde, I was engendred in an euyll
 32 hour whan I haue maried the goodlyest person of the worlde / and the moost worthyest and hardiest that

The wedding
festivities
continue for
eight days.

¹ then. ² wife. ³ omitted. ⁴ heare. ⁵ and.

⁶ loue. ⁷ are. ⁸ Fol. clxxx. col. 2. ⁹ feasting.

¹⁰⁻¹¹ that it. ¹¹ expired.

euer was gyrded with¹ swerde and² rode on hors / he maketh noo³ maner of³ semblaunce to do that thyng that⁴ I so sore haue desyred' / than she drew nere to yde and touched him⁵ / than yde, who knewe⁴
³ ryght³ well what her desyre was / he³ turned⁶ to herward⁶ and wolde hyde himselfe no lenger fro her / but all wepynge cryed her mercy, and shewed her fro the begynnyng to the endyng the maner of all her 8 aduenture / and how that she was a woman and was fledde awaye bycause her father wolde haue maried her himselfe. And whan Olieu vnderstode yde / she was right sorowfull / howbeit, she comforted yde, and said / 12

Idle is forced to reveal the truth to Olive,

who declares that she will keep the secret.

A page overhears
Idle's confession,

and bears news
of it to the emperor.

'my right swete louer, discomforde not yourselfe / for ye shall not be⁷ bewrayed for⁷ me nother to no man nor woman lyuyng / we are wedded togyther, ⁸I wyl be good and trewe to you syn ye haue kept youre selfe 16 so trewly / with you I wyll vse my tyme and passe my destany syn it is thus, for I se wel it is the pleasure of our lord godde.' Thus as Olyue and yde were deuy-
 syng togyther of their secretes / a page, beyng in a 20 chaumbre that ioyned⁹ fast vnto⁹ their chaumbre, herde well all their secrete wordes and communycacion what eche of them had sayd vnto¹⁰ y^e other,¹¹than he in all hast went to the emperour and shewed hym all that 24 he had herde betwene y^e two louers / whan themperour herde that he was ryght sorowfull, and saide, 'felowe, beware what thou sayest / looke that thy reporte be trewe / for yf I fynde it contrary thou shalt dye of³ 28 an yll deth' / 'syr,'³ quod he³ / 'if it be not as I haue sayd, and that yde be not a woman, whom ye take for a man, stryke of my head.' Than themperour made hym to be taken & kept, to the entent to proue the 32 trouthe / for he thought the matter straunge to byleue /

¹ a. ² or. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ which. ⁵ her.

⁶⁻⁶ toward her. ⁷⁻⁷ accused by. ⁸ and.

⁹⁻⁹ close to. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ Fol. clxxx. back, col. 1.

than he called to hym the lordes of his preuy counsell /
and he shewed them the mater / whearof they had
great¹ marueyle, seyng the great vertue / and hye
4 prowes that was in yde / ²they greatly complayned³ the
mater, and were sorowfull / than the emperor, who was
right pensyfe, sware and made promyse / that if he
found the mater in *that* case / he wolde cause both his
8 daughter and yde to be brent,⁴ bycause of hydynge
of that straunge cas, and sayd, ‘if yde had dyscouered
the matter to me be tymes / my daughter sholde neuer
haue wedded⁵ her, and the matter⁶ kepte close fro me /
12 I shal neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll⁷ I knowe the
trouth’ / than he commaunded a bayne⁸ to be made
redy in his owne chambre, whearin he wolde haue yde
to be bayned,⁹ to the entent that he myght know the
16 trouth or¹⁰ she scaped away, for he sayd he wold not
suffre suche boggery¹¹ to be vsed / the baynge¹² was
made redy, and yde was sent for / who knewe no-
thyng of that matter / than themperour sayd to him,¹³
20 ‘yde, do of your clothes, for ye shal bayne⁸ you with
me’ / whan yde herd the emperor, she was sore
abasshed, and sayd, ‘Syr, I pray you forbere it for this
time, for¹⁴ I haue not ben accustomed to be¹⁵ bayned.’⁹
24 Than the emperoure sayde / ‘I wyll not bere¹⁶ it / for I
wyll se you naked / for yf I fynde it trewe that¹⁷ hath
ben shewed me / bothe you and my daughter shall be
brent.’⁴ Whan yde herd that she sawe well she was
28 betrayed and loste / than she kneled downe before the
emperour and cryed hym mercy / and requyred hym to
haue pyte of her / than² the emperor in great hast
sent for his lordes, who were in the hall / talkynge
32 togyther, & were sorowfull for yde, whom they loued

The emperor
calls his lords
together,
and asks their
advice.

He swears that if
Ide be a woman,
she and Olive
shall be burnt.

A bath is set out
in his own
chamber,

and the emperor
bids Ide enter it
in his presence.

Ide protests,
and falls weeping
at his knees.

¹ much. ² and. ³ of. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ married.
⁶ now. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ bath. ⁹ bathed. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ falsehood. ¹² bathing. ¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.
¹⁵ Fol. clxxx, back, col. 2. ¹⁶ forbear.
¹⁷ which.

The Emperor
will have no
mercy on her,

and the fire is
prepared to burn
her.

Ide prays to the
Virgin.

entyrely / so they cam to y^e emperour, and founde yde before hym on her knees sore wepyng / so¹ that for pety of her they wept all / than themperour shewed them all the dede / whearfor he² must nedes se Iustyce to 4 be done vpon yde / who than by the peers & lordes of Rome was iudged to be brent.³ Than it was commaunded the fyre to be made redy to bryn⁴ her, the whiche was done / and yde before the emperour abyd- 8 ynge her iudgment, with her handes ioyned lyft vp towarde the heuen / makyng pteous⁵ praiers to our lorde god and to the⁶ vyrgyn Mary his moder,⁶ praienge them to haue pety of her soule, and to receyue it in to 12 the holy paradyse / for she saw wel y^e ende⁷ was come⁷ of her lyfe.

¶ Howe oure lorde god made great myracles for yde / for god made hym⁸ to chaunge 16 from the nature of a woman and to become a parfite man / whearof the emperour & his doughter Oline⁹ had great ioy / and so yde and olyue lay togyther and engendered a 20 fayre sonne named after Croysant. And of the deth of the emperoure. Ca. C[1].xxx.

The same houre that yde was in her prayers / sodenly there appered in the chambre a great clere 24 light / and therwith a meruelous swete odoure / that it semed all y^e chambre to be full of ensence and spycies aromatyke / then anone¹⁰ after they herd an angelyke voyce sent from oure lorde god & sayd / ‘thou em- 28 perour of Rome, oure lorde god commaundeth the by me / that thou be not so hardye¹¹ to touche yde to do her any hurte / for oure lorde god hath done her y^e

A marvellous
voice from heaven
is heard while Ide
is praying.

It bids the
emperor do Ide
no hurt.

¹ in such sort. ² ye. ³ burnt. ⁴ burn.

⁵ pitifull. ⁶⁻⁶ hooly ghost. ⁷⁻⁷ after lyfe. ⁸ her.

⁹ Fol. clxxxi. col. 1. ¹⁰ presently. ¹¹ as.

grace for the goodnes *that* is in her / he doth consent
and wyll by his dyuyne puyssaunce / that she be Her sex is to be
changed.
chaunged in nature, and¹ become a parfeyght man as all
4 other be with out any difference / & also god com-
maundeth that the page whom thou hast in pryson that
thou ²let hym go quyt² / for that³ he sheweth the was
of trough / this mornynge yde was a woman, and⁴ now
8 he⁵ is a man / Also god commaundeth the to make
thyself redye, for *thou* shalt lyue here in this world but
.viii. dayes longer / therfor fro henceforth let yde and
Olyue thy daughter haue gouernyng of thy realme,⁶
12 who or⁷ this yere be passed shall haue betwene them a
sonne who shal be named Croisant, who shall do mer-
uelles whan he cometh to age. many aduentures and
pouertyes he shall suffer in his youth, but afterward he
16 shall haue ioy and welth ynough' / & with those
wordes the angell wanysshed away / and left them-
perour and his lordes and al the people of Rome in
great ioy for y^e euident ⁸myracle that our lord god had
20 sent by the prayer of yde / who and⁹ Olyue his wyfe
had great ioy and thanked our lord ¹⁰Iesu Chryst ¹⁰ /
than the feest and tryumph began agayne at Rome.
the¹¹ day past and the nyght came, and yde and Olyue
24 went to bed togyther, and toke there sport in suche
wyse that the same nyght was gotten & engenderyd
the fayre Croysant, whearby y^e ioy dobled in the cite of
Rome, the next daye yde came to the palayes with
28 other lordes. And themperour was in his chambre
makynge of his testament / for he had not forgotten the
wordes of the aungell. so he lyued .viii. dayes longer,
and on the .ix. day he dyed / and he was borne into
32 the great churche of saynt Peter, wheare his absequy
was done solemnly, and layde in his tombe, the whiche

The emperor will
die within eight
days.

All the words
come true.

The emperor dies,
and is buried in
St. Peter's
church.

¹ to. ²⁻² settest him at libertie. ³ which. ⁴ but.
⁵ she. ⁶ Empire. ⁷ before. ⁸ Fol. clxxxi. col. 2.
⁹ with. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god. ¹¹ that.

was ordeyned for hym as it apartayned. his sone in law and his daughter morned accordyng to the custome than vsed / and¹ after .viii. dayes was² passed all the noble lordes of the countrye came to the courte and 4 crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse / greate³ feest and ioy³ was made at theyr coronacion. And whan Olyue thempresse approched her time / she was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and whan he was 8 cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, growyng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasyng / of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth of this chylde nede not to be rehersed / for ye may well 12 thynke it was as great as euer was any done before / than the tyme came that thempresse was chyrched, wheroft gret ioy was made. this chylde was well norysshed,⁴ two notable ladyes had the kepynge of hym 16 5 tyll⁵ .vii. yeres⁶ were past⁶ / then a noble knyght and an aunseant was set aboute hym, and a wyse and a great clerke to teche hym co⁷nyng, for comonly it is said that a kyng without letter⁸ or conyng is compared 20 to an asse crowned / often tymes the father & the mother wolde visytte theyr chylde / he was kept to scole tyll⁹ he was .xv. yeres of age, and he was so good a clerke that ther was none in the cite of Rome / but 24 that he coude well dispute with hym and assayle his questions / yf his beawte / greatnes / force / humylyte / and good vertues whearwith he was indewed / yf I shulde discriue / ¹⁰or report¹⁰ them it shulde¹¹ be ouer 28 longe to reherse / whearof yde and his mother olyue hadde such ioye that they wyst not what to do, but aloneley to thanke god of his grace / for this¹² chylde grew so in bygnes and strength that euery man was 32 therof abasshed in such wyse that at that tyme there

¹ then. ² were. ³⁻³ ioy and feasting. ⁴ and.
⁵⁻⁵ vntill he was. ⁶⁻⁶ of age.

⁷ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁸ learning. ⁹ vntill.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ would. ¹² their.

Olive is delivered
of a fair son,

who is named
Croissant.

He is carefully
trained in youth.

He is kept at
school till he is
fifteen.

coudē not be founde in y^e cite of Rome of his age none so great / nor so ¹bygge of strength¹ / wherof his father & his mother and all the noble lordes & knyghtes were
 4 ryght ioyfull.

¶ Howe Kyng Florence sent two knyghtes to Rome to themperour his sonne, desiringe hym to come and se him, & to leue thempyre
 8 of Rome to his son croisant / & to set noble men aboute him to gyde him / and also² bringe with him thempresse / the faire Oline.

Capitulo .Clxxxi.

12 He emperour and thempresse, seynge theyr sonne to growe & amende euyer day in all good warkes, they thanked god, prayenge hym to gyue hym the grace from bet³ter to better to parseyuer / so it fell that on a witsonday
 16 themperour and thempresse helde estate royall at there palayes for y^e solempnyte of that day⁴ / there was many
 20 diuers⁵ kynges / barons / dukes / erles / duchesses and ladyes / & whyles they were in the myddes of theyr dyner / there arryued two notable aunciaunt knyghtes /
 4 whan they were entered into the palayes they came
 24 before themperour & kneled downe and sayd / 'god that hath vs created sauē & kepe the noble kynge Florence of Aragon and of Nauerne and duke of Burdeaux / and the same god sauē y^e ryght noble and ryght
 28 excellent emperour ⁶Romayne, her⁶ dere sonne, and his fayre doughter thempresse Olyue' / whan themperour yde herd spekyng of his father / he was feerfull in his hert bycause of y^e shamfull thynge not faysable⁷ the
 32 whiche he wolde haue done agaynst hym / ryght in-

Messengers from
King Florence
come to Ide.

¹⁻¹ hye of stature. ² to. ³ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 2.
⁴ and. ⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ of Rome his. ⁷ faileable.

Ide inquires after
his father.

The messengers
tell of Florence's
wrath because of
Ide's flight,

and how he fell
ill,

tentively he behelde the two knyghtes, and demaunded
howe the kynge his father dyd / euer syn he departed
from hym / than one of the knyghtes answered and
sayd / 'ryght dere syr, yf the doloure / the¹ displeasure / 4
& the great rage whearin your father was for your de-
partynge / if I shulde shewe it / ouer² longe it shulde
be to reherse / but shortly I shall shew you the sub-
staunce of the matter / the same mornynge after your 8
departure³ tydynge was brought to the kyng your
father how that the kynge of Nauern, your vncle, was
come to se hym. than your father went and met hym,
and brought hym in to the cite of courtoise with great 12
ioye & myrth / than⁴ they alyghted at y^e palayes, and
there tydynge was brought to the kinge your father
how ye were fled away, whearby suche sorow and
doloure & displeasure toke hym at the herte / that there 16
was none that durst loke hym in the face / ⁵for he
loked lyke a speryt for⁶ the folyshe loue that he had
on you / he ranne about in the palayes as a disparate
man / so that for fere of hym there was nother ladye 20
nor damesell that durst abyde hym for the great furour⁷
and displeasure that he was in / so that by reason
of his great yre he fell in a greuwse malady, whearin
he thought ⁸to⁸ haue dyed / and so was confessed 24
& made hym redy to receyue the holy ⁹sacrament⁹ /
than the kynge of Nauerne, & Sorbare, and dyuers other
prynces came too vysyt hym, and desyred hym to put
that folye out of his mynde and to crey¹⁰ god¹¹ mercy / 28
many notable clerkes¹² were there / and they shewed
hym many good reasons and ensamples, and sayde
without he wolde leue and forsake his folye he shulde
be dampned¹³ bodye and soule / ⁴when the king your 32

¹ omitted. ² too. ³ departing. ⁴ and.

⁵ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1. ⁶ because. ⁷ furie.
⁸⁻⁹ that he should. ⁹⁻⁹ ghost. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ for.
¹² doctors. ¹³ condemned.

father saw hym selfe in that doubte, knowyng that he had done yll to cause you to fle awaye / and that no tydynge coude be herde of you / such a contrisyon
 4 and a repentaunce toke hym that greate haboundaunce of dropes fell frome his eyen / so¹ that all his face was wet / and he had² so great² doloure and contrysyon³ in hymselfe that euery man that sawe hym wepte for 8 petye / and the kynge of Nauern had so great petye of hym that he was so sorowfull that a greuous syknes toke him, so that the fourth daye he dyed, wherof y^e kynge your father was ryght sorowfull / at last his 12 syknes determyned, and⁴ was recoured and in good helth a certeyne space / but by reason of the dolour that he had for you he coude not be ceased / ⁵he fel agayne sore syke, and so he contynueth, and hathe no 16 power to ayde nor⁶ releue hymselfe / but he eteth and drynketh ynough. And after nowe of late it hathe ben shewed hym / all your lyfe, and how by y^e grace of ⁷our lord⁷ ⁸god it is fallen to you / whearby suche ioye 20 is come to his herte that there was neuer suche ioye before⁷ in no mans herte, and yet he sayth that he shall neuer haue parfeyght ioye at his herte tyll⁹ he may se you / and therfore he hath sent vs heder to you / and 24 he desyreth and commaundethe as moche as the father can commaund his chylde / that both you and them- presse your wyfe leue this your countrye in y^e gydyng¹⁰ of your sonne, and to leue notable persons aboute hym 28 to kepe and to conducte hym ; for it shalbe to you more profeyghtable & better to vse your lyfe in pease in the realmes of Aragon and Nauerne with the duchye of Burdeaux / the whiche to you parteyneth by iust en- 32 heritaunce / and he hathe gyuen vs in charge not too departe hense tyll⁹ y^e haue shewed me your wyll, to the entent that we may brynge hym sum good newes.

and was induced
to repent of the
sin he had
meditated.

For love of Ide,
Florence is still
sore sick.

The messengers
entreat Ide and
Olive to visit
him,
and to leave
Croissant regent.

¹ in such sort. ²⁻² such. ³ greefe. ⁴ he. ⁵ but.
⁶ and. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 2. ⁹ vntill.

¶ Howe the emperoure yde and thempresse
Olyue gaue good instructions to there sonne
whan they departed from Rome, and how
they arryued at Courtoyse and cam to 4
Florence, who with great ioy receyued them
as his chydren. Capitulo .clxxxii.



Han themperour yde had herde this
knyght reporte these newes of the 8
kyng his father / the water fell frome
his eyen for petye and ioy *that he had*,
and answered and sayd. ‘Syrs, I wyll

that ye knowe well that of your comynge and good 12
newes I am ryght ioyfull / but I am sory for the² sik-
nes that my father is in / whearfor to recomfort hym
and³ make hym ioyfull, I wyll⁴ ye retourne to hym
and say howe that humblye I recommaunde me to his 16
good grace, and that at mydsomer nexte I and my wyfe
shal⁵be with hym.’ the messengers, herynge that
answere, were ryght ioyfull. Than after dyner they
toke theyr leue of themperour and of thempresse / who 20
gaued them many ryche gyttes for the honour of kynge
Florence theyr father / and so the messengers departed /
Whan thempresse Olyue vnderstode the wyll of her
lorde / she was ryght sorowfull for to leue her countree 24
wheareas she was borne and norysshed, and specially to
leue her sonne Croisant whom she loued. But syn it
was the pleasure of her lorde so to do she contented
herselfe / for she loued her husbonde so well that she 28
wolde in no wyse saye agaynst his pleasure nor lette
hym to do his wyll / ryght sorowfull were the prynces
and lordes of that countree and all the people of Rome.
But the best wyse they coude they comforted them- 32

Ide is sorry
for his father's
sickness,

and promises to
visit him.

Olive does not
wish to leave her
country and her
son.

¹ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1. ² great. ³ to.
⁴ that. ⁵ will.

selues by cause of the yonge prynce Croysant, who shulde tary and abyde with them,¹ whom thempour delyuered to² them to be kept / and than he spake to 4 his son, and shewed him many³ fayre and³ notable⁴ reasons³ and doctrynes;³ he commaunde hym to be swete⁵ and courtoise to his⁶ people³ and to his lordes,³ and that he shulde not be lyght of credence / and that 8 in any wyse he⁷ shulde not⁸ leen⁸ his eares to here flatterers, nor the venym⁹ that cometh from them that wyll lye and flatter to please hym with al to the entent to come to theyr entensyon / whearby many a prynce 12 hath ben distroyed / and brought into¹⁰ hell, whearas¹¹ they and theyr londe also for beleuyng of them haue ben dampned perpetually / ‘son, loke thou be serued with gentylmen, suche as are come of them that hathe 16 been of good renome / loue¹² holy churche / gyue almes to the poore for loue of³ our lorde³ Iesu cryst / let thy cofers¹³ be open to thy good knyghtes, beware¹⁴ bee noo nygarde, and beware¹⁴ be not ouercome with wyne / lede 20 an honest lyfe / haunt and kepe compayne with the aunsyent sages,¹⁵ and laude and prayse them yf they be worshye / flee flatterers and mockers, and beware therof thy selfe / for thou canst not do worse / for¹⁶ it shall¹⁷ 24 abate thyne honour.’ Thus thempour yde sayd^m to his sonne Croysant, and shewed hym manye notable saynges and goodly¹⁸ instructions. than he called^d his lordes and sayd. ‘Syrs, the moost parte of you kni^m how- 28 eth my wyll, the whiche is that I and my wyfe wy¹,¹ go into Aragone to the kyng my father / therfore I desyre you all and commaunde you / that ye wyll haue¹ my sonne as recommended¹⁹ / I haue left hym great treas¹ure, 32 to the entent that yf any warre or any other be¹ sines

Ide instructs
Croissant in all
the duties of
emperor,

and gives him
good advice.

Ide takes leave
of his lords.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ examples an^d.

⁵ gentle. ⁶ Lordes and. ⁷ Fol. clxxxii. back, co^d.

⁸⁻⁸ listen with. ⁹ filth. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ whereby².¹.²

¹² the. ¹³ chests. ¹⁴ thou. ¹⁵ noblemen. ^{be}

¹⁶ because. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ fayre. ¹⁹ to you. ^{is}

fall to hym / that he shall haue rychesse suffycyent to withstonde them that wolde do hym ¹any domage¹ or his countree / and also the realme of Aragone is not so farre² hence / but³ anone I may haue newes from hym.⁴

¶ Whan the lordes vnderstode themperoure, and how he had taken on hym this vyage, they knew well they coude not let nor stope hym of his pleasure. Than they all answered in generall / and said that as ⁸
⁴nere as they coude they wolde accomplyssh his commaundement, and so⁵ serue trewly his sonne Croysant, and to ayde / kepe, and defende his countre agaynst all men that wolde anoye hym. ‘Syrs, quod themperoure, ¹²
‘I thanke you.’ Thus after that the emperor had spoken with his sonne and with his lordes, and shewed them his wyl and pleasure / than⁶ he made redye for his iorney, and toke with hym a certeyne ⁷of notable⁷ ¹⁶ knyghtes to accompanye hym & Olyue thempresse his wyfe. ⁸he apared⁸ two great shypes, and caused them to be charged with vtyayles and artelrye, as it apartayned for y^e defence of theyr bodyes and lyues, ²⁰ & toke with hym great richesse and⁶ aparell & iewelles / than he toke his leue of the pope and of all his lordes, and of all them of the cite, who made great sorrow for

Ide and his
company g^r by
w^ay of t^e Tiber,

the^r departyng / than they entred in to the ryuer of ²⁴
Tybre, accompanayned with a⁹ .v. C. knyghtes / at theyr dep^rartyng they toke leue of theyr sonne Croysaunt, and kyssed hym often tymes / whan thempresse sawe her sonne whome she must departe fro she began to ²⁸ wepe / but themperoure comforted her as moche as he myg^t / than they toke theyr shypes, & so departed and sayled so longe in the streme¹¹ of Tybre that they cam^t e in to the hye see, wheare as they sayled nyght ³² and^o day with good wynde, that without daunger they

¹⁻¹ after country. ² from. ³ that.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1. ⁵ to. ⁶ omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ number of. ⁸⁻⁸ and he founysshed. ⁹ about.

¹⁰ could. ¹¹ Riuier.

arryued at the cite of Courtoise, wheare as they were
 receyued with great ioy.¹ so they came to y^e palayes
²and there² founde kynge Florence lyenge on a couche,
 4 who whan he was aduertesed of there comynge he had
 greate ioy / than themperour and thempresse entered
 in to the palayes and came wheare as the kynge laye /
 than they both kneled downe before hym / and whan
 8 the kynge sawe them he had suche ioy that he coude
³speke no worde / but made a token *that* they shulde
 aproche nere to hym, and so they dyd / he embrased &
 kyssed them often tymes / and whan he myght speke
 12 he sayd, ‘my ryght dere chyldren, of your comynge I
 am ryght ioyous,⁴ and of the grace that god hath sent
 to you’ / then agayne he kyssed often tymes thempresse
 Olyue, & sayd howe she was welcome in to the realme
 16 of Aragone / of⁵ great ioy ⁶and feest and⁶ gyftes &
 presentes that were gyuen and done at theyr welcom-
 ynge, yf I shulde shew it at lenght it shulde be ouer
 longe to reherce / and therfore I passe it ouer. Nowe
 20 let vs leue spekyng of the kynge and of the emperour
 and empresse his wyfe, who toke suche pleasure to
 abyde with kynge Florence that neuer after they re-
 tourned too Rome / but they reygned togither al theyr
 24 lyues in peace and good⁷ loue / & they had no⁸ mo
 chyldren⁸ / but Croissant whom they had left at Rome,⁹
 of whom we shall speke nowe after.¹⁰

¶ Howe Croysant was so large¹¹ and sc
 28 liberall that he gaue away all the treasure
 that hys father had left hym / so that at last
 he had no more to gyue / and so was con-
 streined to go seke his aduenture, he & a
 32 verlot aloneley.

Ca. c.lxxxiii.

and arrive at
Courtois.Florence warmly
welcomes Ide and
Olive.They remain
henceforth in his
kingdom,and share his
rule.Croissant alone
rules at Rome.

¹ and. ²⁻² whereas they. ³ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.
⁴ joyfull. ⁵ the. ⁶⁻⁶ feasting. ⁷ good *before* peace.
⁸ - child but. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ heereafter. ¹¹ bountifull.

Croissant delights
in sports,
gifts.



Fter¹ themperour yde and y^e empresse Olyue were departed from² Rome, Croysant theyr son grew and amend- ed in all thynges. he delyghted to 4 take his pleasure in all sportes³ / he made to be cryed⁴ Iustes⁵ and

and in giving rich tournoyse, and gaue large gyftes to ladyes and to knyghtes. none went from hym without sum gyft. 8

he toke great pleasure to gyue gyftes / so that he was praysed of euery man / howbeit dyuers aunsyent and wyse men sayd, ‘yf Croysant, oure yonge prynce, dele thus longe⁶ with y^e treasure that his father left hym / 12 it wyl be sore⁷ wasted, and suche as now foloweth hym wyl forsake hym whan they se that he hath no more to gyue’ / as they dyd in dede / as ye shall here after / for he gaue to them that were pore, whearby 16 they were made rych, who after wolde not gyue hym one morsell of breade / he was so lyberall & so great a dispender⁸ that all the treasure that his father had left hym he gaue it awaye / so that many compleyned 20 greatly⁹ his bountye & larges,¹⁰ he gaue awaye so moche

that he was forsed to mynshes¹¹ his estate, and was forsaken of all them that were wont to serue hym, by- cause he had no more to gyue them, so that whan they 24 met hym they wolde tourn to another way / & whan he knew that he had so great shame that he determyned to departe pruely out of the countre, and¹² goo seke his aduentures / for he sawe well¹ he had gyuen awaye 28

But when he
grew poor all
former friends
avoided him,

¹³ so moche¹³ and lent that he coude not than fynde one man that wolde lene¹⁴ hym a¹⁵ peny / than with that that¹⁶ was left he bought two good horses, and monted on the one and¹⁷ the other a verlet, and a male behynde 32

¹ that. ² the Citie of. ³ and. ⁴ proclaimed.

⁵ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ much.

⁸ spender. ⁹ of. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ diminish. ¹² to.

¹³⁻¹³ after lent. ¹⁴ lend. ¹⁵ one. ¹⁶ which.

¹⁷ vppon.

hym, and therin a gowne and his shertes and¹ hose and
shoes, and he had in his purse no more but one c. fl.
for his dispencee.² Than³ in a mornynge he departed
4 from Rome, to thentent he shulde not be perseyued,
and rode so long by his iorneyes that he was far of from
the cyte of Rome more than .iiii. dayes iornay. Now
let vs leue spekyng of hym tyll tyme shal be to retourne
8 to hym agayne.

He flees from
Rome.

¶ How they of Rome sent to the kinge
Guymart of Puylle, to the entent that he
shulde come and gouerne that countre, and
12 to be theyr lorde, bicause that Croisant
was a chylde, and had gyuen and wasted
all that he had, and howe Guymart came
therder and was receyued as lorde.

16

Ca. Clxxxiiii.

After that the barons and senatours of
Rome were aduertesede that theyr
yonge lorde Croysaunt was departed
from the cite, and that he had all
wasted and spended the treasure that
he had / than they assembled at the
capetale / than⁵ ther was one sayd / ‘cursed is that
24 londe whearof y^e lorde is a chyde, as ye may well
parseyue by our yonge lorde Croysant, who hath
all dispended⁶ and gyuen all⁷ y^e great treasure that his
father had left hym / yll⁸ shulde he gouerne his londe
28 and countre whan he can not kepe it¹ that⁹ is closed
fast in his cofers / and therfore, myne aduyse is that we
sende to kynge Guymart of Puylle / who is all redye of
the mynde to come and besiege vs, bycause he knoweth

The lords, find-
ing themselves
without a ruler,

resolve to invite
King Guymart of
Puylle to take
the throne.

¹ omitted. ² expenses. ³ and.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ and. ⁶ spent all.
⁷ away. ⁸ verie badly. ⁹ which.

well that we be without a lorde / and therfore myne
 aduyse is that we sende to¹ hym a notable embassed²
 desyryng hym to come to this cite of Rome / and how³
 that this cite shall do to hym obeysance / better it is 4
 to sende by tymes than to late / to thentent that⁴
 he nor none of his do no⁵ domage to the londes of
 Rome / all they that were there agreed to his sayenge /
 & so they sent to hym, who⁶ receyued the embassetours⁷ 8
 ryght honorably / and so he came to Rome, wheare as
 he was receyued for theyr lorde peacesablye. But or⁸
 he entred in to Rome they went and met hym, and
 with great tryumphe⁹ brought hym in to the cite with 12
 trompettes and tabours¹⁰ blowynge before hym tyll¹¹ he
 cam to the churche of saynt Peter, and there he offered
 and kyst the relykes / whearof he made his oth, suche
 as emperours¹² accustomed to make / he to defend 16
 & kepe Rome & y^e empyre. Than he went to the
 palayes, wheare as he was receyued of the noble men
 and of the people / ¹³he gouerned Rome in peace and
 good¹⁴ Iustice. Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym 20
 and retourne to Croysant.

Guymart accepts
the invitation,
and becomes
emperor.

¶ Howe Croysaunt arryued at Nyse in pro-
 uaunce, and came to the erle Remon, who
 was besieged by the sarazyns / & of the 24
 honour that the erle Remon dyd to Croi-
 sant / and how he gaue hym his baner
 to bere, & made him knyght / and of the
 great enmye that the erles son had at 28
 Croysant. Ca. Clxxxv.

¹ vnto. ² Ambassage. ³ say. ⁴ neither. ⁵ any.

⁶ Fol. clxxxiiii, col. 1. ⁷ Ambassadours. ⁸ before.

⁹ ioy. ¹⁰ Drummes. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² are. ¹³ then.

¹⁴ good before peace.

1 Fter that Croysant was departed from
 Rome he² and his verlet,³ and had
 well sene how⁴ in all Rome they set
 4 no thynge by hym bycause he hadde
 no more good⁵ to gyue.⁶ Than he
 rode throw Romayne and Lombar-
 dye / and passed Pyemont / and than he² came in to
 8 Daulpheney ; and when he came in to the towne
 of Grenoble it was shewed hym that in Prouaunce
 there was a notable⁷ prynce named erle Remon, of
 saynt Giles, who was beseged by londe and by water in
 12 y^e towne of Nyse by the kynge Grenade and the kyng
 of Belmaryne / who day and nyght made great assaultes
 to the cite / and they had sworne and made promyse
 that they wyl^s neuer departe⁹ thense tyll¹⁰ they haue¹¹
 16 wonne the towne / and slayne the erle Remon / whan
 Croysant herde those newes, the hardye prowes wheare
 with he was garnysshed and replete set him in to
 so hye a wyll / that he thought the sarazyns flewe in¹²
 20 the Eyer, and that he wolde reyse theyr sege or¹³ it be
 nyght / and for the bryngynge¹⁴ desyre that he had he
 thought to goo theder to proue his vertue agaynst the
 paynynms / so whan he had rested his horse he and his
 24 squyer monted and rested not tyll he came to Nyse ;
 in an euynnyng late he¹⁵ aryued without perseuyngne
 of them of the sege / for as then they were all in theyr
 tentes / for¹⁶ a lytell before there had bene at the gate
 28 a great skyrmysh / whearfor the sarazyns were very of
 theyr trauayle / & also on that parte that Croysant
 aryued there were no sarazins lodged / than he came to
 y^e gate and prayed y^e porter to let hym enter / & whan
 32 the porter saw there were no mo but .ii. persons, & that

Croissant rides
into Provence.

Earl Remon of
Saint Giles is
besieged in Nice
by the kings of
Grenade and of
Belmaryne.

Croissant arrives
at Nice.

1 Fol. clxxxivii. col. 2. 2 omitted. 3 with him.
 4 that. 5 guifts. 6 them. 7 noble. 8 would.
 9 from. 10 vntill. 11 had. 12 to. 13 before.
 14 burning. 15 there. 16 because.

and enters it.

Next day he goes
to the palace of
the Earl Remon.

The earl welcomes
him kindly.

A battle will take
place on the
morrow.

The earl's
brother, the
duke of Calaber,
is expected with a
large army.

he was crystened,¹ he suffred him to enter without any refuse / & whan Croysant sawe *that* he was in without² daunger he was ioyfull,³ ⁴he came to one of the best lodgynges in the towne, and there he alighted and souped with his host / Bycause it was late to go that nyght to the court ; there he taryed all that nyght tyll⁵ y^e next mornynge / than he went to the palayes, wheare as he found the erle Remon deuysynge with his 8 lordes and knyghtes of the dedes of y^e⁶ warre ; than Croysant saluted the erle and all his lordes. whan the erle sawe the yonge man he greatly behelde hym / and thought that in all his lyfe he had neuer sene so 12 goodlye a person, and thought that he was com of sum noble lynage. Than he toke Croysant by the hande and demaunded what was⁷ his name. ‘Syr,’ quod he, ‘my name is Croysant’ / ‘Croysant,’ quod the erle, ‘ye 16 are welcome / ye are come well at a point both for you and for me / for I haue great nede to haue men with me to ayde me / and me thynke by your personage that ye shuldeacheue a great interpryses / for of your 20 age I haue not sene in my dayes a yong man more lykely to be fered of his enemyes / & bycause I se by your apparell that ye be⁸ no knyght, I shall make you a knyght to thentent *that* to morow your prowes 24 & hardynes may be proued / for ye maye se here without this towne two kynges, enemyes to oure crysten fayth, and by the⁹ pleasure of our lorde Iesu cryst I haue intensyon⁹ to morow to gyue them batayle, 28 I loke this nyght for my brother, the duke of Calaber, who bryngeth with hym a⁶.xxx.M. men of warre / and a⁶.xx.M. I haue all redye with in the towne / and considerynge your hye corage to come hether to serue 32 me, I shall do you more honour ; after I haue made you

¹ a Christian. ² any. ³ then.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiiii, back, col. 1. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ was *after* name. ⁸ are. ⁹⁻⁹ grace of god I intend.

knyght I shall gyue you my baner to bere / and yf ye
do as me thynke ye shulde do your Payne shal not be
lost.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'god gyue me the grace
4 that to ¹morowe to hym and to you I may do such
seruices that it may be welth to all crystendome, and
that god may perfourme in me that² wanteth / for yf
ye make me knyght al the dayes of my lyfe after
8 I shalbe yours' / than the erle incontynent sent for a
son of his, who as than was no knyght, and dyuers
other, whom he made knyghtes with Croysant / than
he sayde to Croysant, 'frend, I pray to our lord ³Iesu
12 cryst³ to gyue you suche fortune to-morow that ye may
wanquysshe the batayle.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'god gyue
me the grace to render to you thankes for the honour
that nowe ye do to me / for as for me, by the grace of
16 god that⁴ to morowe I shall so do that your enemyes
shall curse the hour that they are come hether to
assayle you' / whyles *that* Croysant was thus made
knyght with the erles son and other, the same tyme
20 thereth came y^e duke of Calaber, and he came to
the palayes / of the great⁴ chere that he had made hym
by his brother, the erle Remon, I wyll make no
mensyon / therof / but he came at y^e same poynt⁵ that
24 these new knyghtes were made, and that⁶ quynchteyne
was set vp to proue them selfe. Than y^e duke of
Calaber and the erle Remon his brother went theder⁷
desyreous to se who dyd best / than y^e duke demaunded
28 of the erle what yong knyght it was that rode by his
neuew, for he thought⁸ he neuer saw ⁹a goodlyer⁹
person nor more puissant of his age. Than the erle
sayd how he was come thereth to seke for honour.
32 But what he was nor of what lynage he knew not.
Thus they talked togyther of this yonge knyght Croy-

The earl knights
Croissant with
other young men.

The duke of
Calaber arrives.

The quintain is
set up.

¹ Fol. clxxxiiii. back, col. 2. ² which. ³⁻³ god.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ season. ⁶ a. ⁷ verie. ⁸ that.

⁹⁻⁹ so goodly a yong.

sant / ¹whan they came to y^e place wheareas the quyntayne was dressed vp / the erles son ranne and bracke his spere all to peces, and than other assayed themselfe / sum bracke theyr speres, and sum fell too ⁴ the erthe parforce² ³of there stroke / but there was none that coude remoue the quyntayne / whan Croisant sawe that all had assayed themselues to throw⁴ the quyn-

Croissant alone is able to strike it and throw it down.

teyne, he had a greate spere, and ran so fyersly that he ⁸ strake the quyntayne and ouerthrew it to the ground, whearof euery man had great meruayle ; the duke sayd to y^e erle that he neuer sawe so goodlye a stroke, and sayd howe he is greatly to be doubted that gyue ¹² such strokes ; he was greatly praysed of the ladyes and dameselles that were there present, & specially of the erles daughter, who was a fayre damesel. But who soever was ioyfull, y^e erles sonne was displeased / ¹⁶

The ladies praise Croissant.

he toke agaynst hym a mortall hate and an yll enuye, so that yf he had durst he wolde haue ryn vpon Croisant to haue distroyed him, and concluded in his corage that yf he myght lyue longe he wolde make ²⁰ Croysantes lyfe to departe from his bodye / and so he had done and⁵ god had not ayded Croysant / whan Croysant had ryn his course he rode to the erle, who sayd to hym ryght swetly / ‘ Croysant, god encrease ²⁴ your bountye⁶ and⁷ gyue you grace to perceyuer⁸ your goodnes / and I pray you humblye to shewe me the trouthe what ye be and of what lynage, for I am sure⁹

The earl asks of what family Croissant is.

ye ¹⁰be come¹⁰ of sum hye lynage.’ ‘ Syr,’ quod Croy- ²⁸ sant, ‘ syn ye wold know it I shall shew you y^e trouthe.

He tells of his father.

Syr, knowe for trouthe I am sonne to the noble emperor of Rome, and I am departed out of¹¹ countre for certen causes, the¹² whiche I coude¹³ not suffer / ³² and therfore I went too serche myne aduentures such as

¹ and. ² by force. ³ Fol. clxxxv. col. 1.

⁴ ouerthrow. ⁵ if. ⁶ honour. ⁷ god. ⁸ in.

⁹ that. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ are. ¹¹ the. ¹² omitted. ¹³ would.

god wold sende me' / whan the erle herde hym speke
 he was ryght ioyouse,¹ and thanked god, & sayd, 'fayre
 sonne, ye be welcom, I am ioyfull of your cominge, for
 4 the goodnes that I see in you apparent; I haue a
 daughter ryght fayre, whome I wyll gyue you in
²maryage, and as moche of my goodes and of my londes
 and seygnories that ye shal neuer be pore.' 'Syr,'

The earl offers
Croissant his
daughter in
marriage.

8 quod Croysant, 'your fayre offer that ye make me
 I wyll not refuse, and I thanke you. But or³ euer⁴
 I take a wyfe my wyll is to do so moche *that* myne
 honour may be exalted, and that renowne maye rynne

Croissant will
accept the offer
after he has
proved his
prowess.

12 vpon me as it hath done of my predecessours, and that
 I may conquyre londes and seygnories.' Than the
 erles sonne, herynge his father make Croysant suche an
 offer as to gyue him his sister in maryage and a great

The earl's son
hears of the
offer, and

16 parte of his londe / he was therwith sore troubled in his
 hert; ⁵ he toke agaynst hym a cordyall hate, and made
 promyse in hym selfe that if he may⁶ retourne from the
 batayle he wyll⁷ cause Croysant to dye an yll deth /

growing more
envious, resolves
on the death of
the new-comer.

20 thynkyng not to be disenheretyed by hym / after those
 wordes the duke of Calaber and the erle Remon toke
 betwene them y^e yonge knyght Croysant & led him by
 the hande to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued

24 with great ioye / and after dyner they came in to the
 hall wheare as all the lordes were. Than Croysant,
 who greatly desyred⁸ to be in suche a place wheare as
 he myght shew his prowes, spake on hye, and sayd to⁹

28 erle Remon, 'Syr, ye knowe well *that* y^e enemyes
 of oure lorde god & yours hath beseged you in your
 towne / the whiche is a thynge not to be suffred, ⁴and
 vnreasonable,⁴ so long without doyng¹⁰ them any

32 anoyaunce / and therfore, syr, I counsell¹¹ that or³ they
 knowe moche of your estate or ⁴of your⁴ puyssaunce,

¹ ioyfull. ² Fol. clxxxv. col. 2. ³ before.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ as. ⁶ myght. ⁷ would. ⁸ delighted.

⁹ the. ¹⁰ of. ¹¹ you.

Croissant advises
an immediate
sortie.

The earl's forces
prepare to march
against the
enemy,
who is besieging
them in Nice.

Croissant leads
one detachment.

The earl's son
leads a second.

or what people ye haue, it were best ye went to assayle them¹ without any lenger taryenge / orden your hedes² and your capeteyns to gyde your people, to the entent that whan ye were³ issued out of the towne⁴ and than⁴ that⁴ euery man may knowe what ye are purposed to do / ⁵and than sende to your enemyes a messenger and gyue your enemyes knowledge of your comyng, and we shall folowe so fast that they shall haue no leaser to arme them¹ / whan the duke of Calaber & y^e erle Remon vnderstode the noble Croysant they praysed moche his counsell and aduyse. Than they ordeyned theyr batayles and theyr capeteyns / and than they issued out of the towne with all theyr compayne.

¶ Howe Croisant dyd meruayles in the batayle,
by whose prowes the sarazins were discom-
fited and slayne, whearof the erle Remon 16
and the duke of Calaber were ryght ioyfull.

Ca. clxxxvi.



Han the erle Remone was without the towne / he ordeyned thre batayles. 20
The fyrist Croysant had the leadynge therof, & the erle sayd to him,
'frende, I praye you this day shew from whence ye come, and how that ye be of the lynage 24
imperiyall, and of the good lyne of the duke of Burdeaux / for I haue suche trust in god and in the vertue of your armes / that me thynke now⁶ myne enemyes do flee awaye before me.' 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'I shall 28
do so much by y^e grace of god that our enemyes shall haue no leaser to graunt vs the victorye. The seconde batayle led⁷ the erle Remons sonne, and his father sayd

¹ therefore. ² Battailles. ³ are. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 1. ⁶ now after do.

⁷ led after sonne.

to hym that he shulde that day ¹ shew forth his vertue
and prowes. The thyrde batayle the erle Remone and
the duke of Calaber had the gydyng therof, ² they set
4 in euery batayle .xv. M. men / than the erle Remon
went before euery bataile sterynge and mouynge them
to do well / ² than the erle sent a messenger to the host
of the sarazyns to shew them of the coming of the
8 crysten men / ² they were before theyr tentes in .v.
batayles / they were in nombre a ³ .C. M. sarazyns,
whearf there were .ii. kinges and foure Admyralles.
This messenger dyd his message / and whan he had
12 done / he retourned to the erle Remon & shewed
hym all that he had herde & sene. Than Croysant
sayd to the erle. ‘Syr, I requyre⁴ you⁵ shew me what
armes the .ii. sarazyn kynges doth beare, to the entent
16 that I maye knowe them / for the sonner that the great
men be slayne the sonner y^e other wyll fle / for⁶ that
shall⁷ abasshe them and the sooner to be discomfyted,
for men without a lorde are / as shepe without a
20 sheparde.’ Then y^e erle shewed hym theyr armes and
bages. ‘Syr,’ quod Croysant, ‘syn I am hereof aduer-
tesed I shall neuer rest tyll⁸ I haue incountred them yf
god wyll saue myne armes and good sworde’ / than the
24 paynynms who saw well y^e crysten men comynge / they⁹
cast vp a great crey & so meruelous that there was none
so hardy / but that⁹ was abasshed therof / for it seemed
that all y^e worlde there aryued / whan Croysant sawe
28 the sarazyns approche he auaunsed his batayle / and
whan they ioyned / he couched his spere and strake
therewith the sonne¹⁰ of¹¹ kynge of Belmaryne / so that
the spere hede passed thorowe his bodye more than a
32 good⁹ fote / and so with drawynge out of his spere the
sarazyn fell downe deed amoung the horse feet, ¹² whearf

The earl himself
and the duke of
Calaber lead the
third.

The Christians
announce their
approach to the
Saracen enemy.

Croissant longs to
attack the two
Saracen kings.

Croissant
advances,
and kills the
son of the king of
Belmaryne,
and many others.

¹ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 2. ² and. ³ about. ⁴ pray.
⁵ to. ⁶ because. ⁷ will. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰ sonne after Belamyne. ¹¹ the. ¹² Fol. clxxxvi. col. 1.

the paynyme had great dolour whan Croysant had slayne the sonne¹ of y^e kyng of Belmaryn / there cam before hym the neuew of the kynge of Grenade / ²Croysaunt bare hym to the erthe so rudelye so³ that 4 in the fallynge he brocke his necke / than he ranne at the thyrde and at³ y^e .iiii. and slew them / and as longe as his spere helde⁴ ceased not to sle and to bet downe y^e sarazyns / and whan his spere was broken he tooke his 8 sworde, whearwith he claue the sarazyns to the brayne, and cut of armes and handes / he made amoneg them such slawghter that there was not so hardye a sarazyn that durst abyde his full strok, but they fled from hym 12 as the shepe doth before the wolfe / anone the tydinges was brought to the kynge of Belmaryn howe his sonne was slayne by a yonge knyght who dyd meruaylles in the batayle / ²whan the kynge knew that his sonne was 16 slayn he wepte for sorow, and made promyse that he had rather dye than the deth of his son shulde be vnuenged / and therwith he preased into the batayle, and met at his comynge the dukes seneschall⁵ of Calaber,⁵ and strake hym with his spere in suche wyse that he ranne hym clene thorow, and so he fell downe deed / than y^e batayle began fyersly, and they of Prouaunce and of Calaber dyd valyauntly / than y^e erle 24 Remon came in to the batayle, and met with the Admyrall of Cordes and gaue hym with his sworde⁶ suche a stroke⁶ on y^e helme that he claue his hede to the brayne, and so he fell downe deed / than he sawe the 28 kynge of Grenade, who slew many a crystenman; than the erle Remon toke a spere & ranne at the kynge, and strake hym so on y^e vyser of his helme that he fell to y^e erth with his fete vpwarde amoneg his owne men, 32 and had ben there slayne and his men had not⁷ socoured

The Saracens flee
before him.

The king of
Belmaryne is
made desperate
by the loss of
his son.

The Earl Remon
fights valiantly,

and nearly kills
the king of
Grenade.

¹ sonne after Belamyne. ² and. ³ omitted. ⁴ he.
⁵⁻⁶ before seneschall. ⁶⁻⁶ before with his sworde.

⁷ Fol. clxxxvi. col. 2.

hym / in another place was Croisant, and he saw before
 hym the kynge of Belmaryn, who rode aboute sekyng
 for Croysant to be reuenged vpon¹ hym for y^e deth of
 4 his sonne / ²whan the kynge sawe Croysant betyng
 downe horse and men, and that none coude resyst
 agaynst hym / he had greate desyre to be reuenged, and
 sayd to Croysant. ‘O thou false traytour that hath
 8 slayne my sonne, I ought greatly to laude and prayse
 Mahounde yf I may be reuenged vpon the’ / than he
 couched his spere and strake Croysant in the myddes
 of his shylde, so that his spere flew all to peces / but for
 12 all y^e stroke Croysant remoued no more / than tho he
 had stryken a stone walle / & Croysant, sore displeased
 that the kynge had gyuen hym suche a stroke / lete go
 the brydell of his horse, & lyft vp his sworde with
 16 bothe his handes / and strake the kynge as he past by
 on the corner of his helme in suche wyse that he strake
 it clene asondre. ²yf the stroke had not gleyned³ he
 had clouen his hede to the gyrdell / but the sworde
 20 tourned & alght on⁴ the hors necke, so that he strake
 y^e necke clene asondre / so⁵ that of force y^e kynge
 tombled to the erth⁶ astoned of the stroke that he had
 receyued / and if he hadde not ben quykely rescowed
 24 Croysant had striken of his hede / than the sarazyns
 remounted agayne theyr kynge, & ran at Croysant, and
 cast at hym darter⁷ and iauelynys to haue slayne hym /
 but they durst not aproche nere hym so moche they
 28 fered hym / howbeit they hurte hym in dyuers places.
 he helde his sworde in his handes, wherewith he strake
 no man with a full stroke / but that he claue his hede
 to the brayne / than he saw y^e great admiral of Spayn,
 32 & he gaue hym suche a stroke that his hed was clouen
 to y^e chyn, & so fell down deed. great⁸ sorow made

The king of
Belmaryne
challenges
Croissant,

and is stricken to
the earth by the
youth.

Croissant is hard
pressed by the
Saracens,

but kills many
of them.

including the
great admirals
of Spain

¹ of. ² and. ³ glaunced. ⁴ vppon.

⁵ in such sort. ⁶ sore. ⁷ darter after cast.

⁸ Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1.

the sarasyns, and specially y^e kynge of Grenade / ¹whan Croysant sawe hym he knew hym well by his armes, wheroft he was ioyfull / ¹Croysant aproched to hym and gaue hym on the helme suche a stroke that his hede ⁴ was clouen to y^e brain, and so the kyng fell down deed / than Croysant ranne at hym that bare the sarazyns baner, whearin² was paynted the Image of Mahounde³ / he strake hym that bare it with a reuerset stroke betwene ⁸ the necke and the shulders / that the hede with the helme flew in the felde / and he⁴ layd⁵ so in y^e thycke prease that anone he made way / the sarazyns wolde⁶ haue reased vp agayne theyr baner / but they ¹² coude not.

¶ Whan the sarazyns saw theyr kinge deed and theyr banner lyenge on y^e ground, theyr corage began to fayle them / than they brayled and opened theyr array ¹⁶ and began to lese⁷ place / and Croysant, who toke hede of nothyng / but to sley the great capeteyns, at last he⁴ saw before hym the kynge of Belmarne, who had slayne many a cristenman that daye / Croysant strake⁸ ²⁰ hym suche a stroke on the ryght shulder that arme and shylde fell to the erth,⁹ and by reason of the great doloure that the kinge felt / he fell in sowne amoung the hors fete, wheareas he dyed myserable / the duke ²⁴ of Calaber & the erle Remon regardinge the hye dedes of armes done and acheued by Croysant had great meruayle of his force and puissaunce / ¹they blyssed the houre that he was borne in / thankynge god of his ²⁸ comynge theder / they rested and behelde hym howe he made theyr enemyes to fle awaye, for none was so hardy to abyde hym / fynally if I shulde reherse y^e hye dedes *that* Croysant dyd that day it shulde be ouer ³² longe to declare / for by hym & by his great hardines

¹ and. ² wheron. ³ Mahomet. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ on. ⁶ fayne. ⁷ loose. ⁸ gauie.

⁹ erthr in text.

Croissant also
slays the king of
Belmaryne.

the paynyme and sarazyns were vt¹terly discomfyted / He utterly
 for he was happye that coude sauue hymselfe / thus they
 fled on all sydes² towarde y^e see syde, ³there were mo
 4 slayne in the fleyng than were in y^e playn batayle /
 for from thense to the see syde the wayes were couered
 with deed men / such as myght sauue them selues in y^e
 shyppe were happy, but there were but⁴ few that
 8 scaped / after y^e chace⁵ done they of Prouance and of⁶
 Calaber came to the boutey, y^e whiche was⁷ great / ³the
 whiche³ the erle Remon ⁸departed and gaue in suche
 wyse⁸ that every man was⁹ content with him :⁹ for there
 12 was suche rychesse in the tentes of the sarazyns that it
 coude not be estemyd¹⁰ / wherby all suche as¹¹ had
 ben¹¹ at y^e batayle were riche euer after, both they &
 theyr frendes.

16 ¶ Of the great honour that erle Remon dyd
 to Croisant, & howe he wolde haue gyuen
 hym hys doughter in mariage / whearof the
 erles sonne was sore enuyous, and thought
 20 the same nyght to haue mordered¹² in his
 bed¹² the noble Croisant / but he failed, for
 the noble Croisant slew hym & after fled
 awaye as fast as he myght.

24

Capitulo. C:lxviii.

28



After that the batayle was fynysshed,
 and that the sarazyns were deed, the
 erle Remon with great reuerence
 came to¹³ Croysant, and toke hym by
 the hande, and ledde hym in to the
 towne betwene the duke of Calaber

Earl Remon
does Croissant
great honour.

¹ Fol. clxxxvi, back, col. 2. ² partes. ³ and.
⁴ verie. ⁵ was. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ exceeding.
⁸ distributed so liberally therof. ⁹⁻⁹ wel contented.
¹⁰ valued. ¹¹⁻¹¹ were. ¹²⁻¹² after Croisant. ¹³ vnto.

and hym selfe , and they dyd hym as greate honour as they coude deuyse, & so entered in to the towne, and with great ¹Ioy & solempnite thei were receyued / ²they came to the palaies & dysarmed³ them / & whan ⁴ they were refresshed / than⁴ y^e duke of Calabre & y^e erle Remon came to Croysant / than² the erle said. ‘O right noble knight, replete with all vertues and hyghe prowes, to whom no man is comperable / y^e stronge ⁸ arme / shelde / and resorte⁵ of the countree of Prouence and Languedoc / by thy hye vertu⁶ this day⁷ hast sauued one of the quarters of cristendone, whearby the fayth of Iesu⁴ chryst is exalted / the whiche yf thou haddest ¹² no ben / had ben abated and staunched / it is not in me to say nor recompt the goodes⁸ that ye haue done vs this day / nor it lyeth not in me to rewarde it / but if it were thy pleasure to abase thy selfe so lowe / as ¹⁶ to take my daughter in mariage / y^e whiche I wold gladly se / ²I wyll gyue the / the one halfe of all that euer I haue / for a fayrer iewel nor a richer I can not giue than my dere doughter whome I loue entyrly. ²⁰ She is the fayrest⁹ / the swetest¹⁰ / and the ¹¹moost humble¹¹ damsell that is now lyuynge.’ Whan Croysant had well vnderstande the erle Remon he said. ‘Syr, of your curtoise and ryche gyfte that ye offre me / I ²⁴ wyll not refuse it / but thanke you hertly therfore¹² / & as for your doughter whome ye offre to gyue to⁴ me / I trust¹³ I shall do her that honour that on¹⁴ her heed I shall set a crowne of golde and make her Empresse ²⁸ of Rome / wheare she shall be serued and honoured / as lady of¹⁵ all the countree.’ Whan the erle herde the answere of Croysant / he was right¹⁶ ioyfull / but his sone who was there present / ¹⁷had nye raged for¹⁷ dys- ³²

The earl again
offers Croissant
his daughter in
marriage,
and one half of
his property.

Croissant accepts
the offer.

¹ Fol. clxxxvii. col. 1. ² and. ³ vnarmed.
⁴ omitted. ⁵ refuge. ⁶ prowesse. ⁷ thou.
⁸ goodnesse. ⁹ most faire. ¹⁰ sweet. ¹¹⁻¹¹ humblest.
¹² therof. ¹³ that. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ ouer. ¹⁶ verie.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ was neere hand in a rage with the.

pleasure,¹ and sayd² to hym. ‘By god, Croysant / syn thus by you I shalbe disherited / and that my father wyll gine you that³ of right apartayneth to me / or⁴ 5 I

The earl's son grows more wrathful with Croissant.

4 graunt therto, I shall make you to dye of an euil⁶ deth / though I do it by treason / nor thou shalte neuer haue my syster in maryage’ / thus thought the erles sone to worke against Croysant, who knewe nothyng therof /

8

thus without god helpe him / he was lykely to ⁸be⁸ slayne petyously. Than there began great Ioye in the palaiers / the erle Remon wente to se his daughter, and

The earl informs his daughter of Croissant's promise to marry her.

12 haue gyuen you in mariage / to the moost fayre / and hardiest knight *that euer was gyarde with⁹ swerde* ; that is Croysant whom ye se here, by whom we¹⁰ all delyuerged and brought out of seruage into fredom / for

16 we had ben all lost if his hye prowes had not ben, by whom all the paynims are discomfyted’ / whan the damsell herde her father she was right ioyous¹¹ / and thanked god and said. ‘Syr, syn it is your pleasure to

20 gyue me to this noble knight / I shall not refuse hym / but I am agreed¹² to fulfyl your pleasure,’ whearof Croysant was ioyful, for she was so fayre that every man had meruayle therof. Than the damsell saluted

She willingly assents.

24 Croysant and said. ‘Syr, of your comynge and socours we ought to be ioyous¹¹ / for by you we are restored to ioye : y^e which was lost’ / ‘lady, quod Croysant / so goeth the workes of our lorde god / ¹³men maketh

28 batayles / and god gyueth y^e victory’ / thus deuysyng they entred into y^e chambre wheare as the bourdes were redy sprede / but Iacars the erles sonne wolde

Iacars, the earl's son, summons ten of his relatives,

not come there / but he wente into the towne in to a

32 secrete place / and thyther he sent for ten of his affinitie /

¹ that he had. ² inragedly. ³ which. ⁴ before.

⁵ Fol. clxxxvii. col. 2.

⁶ euill.

⁷ and.

⁸⁻⁹ haue bene. ⁹ a.

¹⁰ were.

¹¹ ioyfull.

¹² content.

¹³ for.

and plots to
murder Croissant
while asleep.

A young squire
overbears the
traitors,

and reveals the
plot to Croissant.

Croissant will not
believe such
treachery.

Croissant sups
with Earl Remon,

in whom he had parfite affiaunce / than he shewed to them all his intencion, and determined that whan Croysant was a¹ bedde and a slepe / than thei to murdre him in his bed ²and his squier also. Whan these .x. traytours vnderstode their maister / they answered and said how they were all redy to do his commaundement what soeuer com therof / thus they taried y^e heure to accomplitsshe their vngracious enterpryse / as they were 8 in their communicacion / there was in a chambre there besyde / a yonge squier who had wel herde their enterpryce & what thei were determined to doo / than he said to himselfe *that* surely he wold aduertyse Croysant 12 of their malicious enterprice / to the entent *that* he shuld not be surprised / ³he departed as preuely as he coud & ⁴ cam to Croisant / & shewed him how the erles sone with .x. men were determined to murdre him 16 the⁵ same night in his bed slepyng / & how *that* eche of them had a sharpe knyfe / &⁶ said, ‘syr, be ⁷gar-nysshed⁷ to defende your lyfe / for thei all haue sworne your deth’ / Whan Croysant vnderstode y^e squier he 20 waxed as reed as a brenninge coole / & sayd, ‘I can not bylene *that* suche a treason shuld be in the corage of a noble man / as to murdre hym *that* neuer dyd him trespass’ / ‘sir, quod the squier / ‘ye may do as ye 24 please / but without ye fynde remedy / ye are but lost.’ Whan Croysant herde *that* he trembled for⁸ displeasure *that* he was in / & he thought in⁹ him selfe *that* he wold not shew the matter to no¹⁰ person lyuyng / but 28 he sware *that* if any came to do him displeaser *that*¹¹ with his swerd he wold cleue his heed to y^e brayne / thus the matter rested tyl¹² it was night / & so he went in to y^e hal amonge⁸ other lordes, & there he founde y^e 32 erle / who made hym great chere / the¹³ souper was redy,

1 in. 2 Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 1. 3 then. 4 so.
 5 very. 6 he. 7-7 readie armed. 8 the. 9 within.
 10 any. 11 omitted. 12 vntill. 13 and.

and¹ than they sate downe : of their seruyce I make
no rehersall / after they had souped diuers sportes were
shewed in y^e hall, & whan² houre requisyt came eny
4 man went to bed /³ y^e erle Remon had pre⁴pared for
Croysant a fayre chambre with a riche bed for him / &
a couche bed for his squier / than Croisant toke leue of
y^e erle & of the damsell with whom he was ⁵in
8 amours⁵ / than he went to his chambre wel accompanied
with knightes and squiers / than³ with in a seson⁶ thei
toke leue of him / & than he was alone ⁷saued with⁷
his squier / whom he made to lye in the couch bed¹ /
12 & shewed him nothyng of *that* he thought to do /
than Croysant armed him at all peeces / his helme on
his heed / his shelle about his necke & his swerde
about him / and so layde him downe in his bed &
16 hyd him with clothes that his armure shuld not be sene
by them that shuld⁸ come thyder / ⁹there he lay as
preuely as he coude / & than about mydnight the erles
son entred in to the chambre all vnarmed with his
20 swerde in his hande & his .x. compagnions with him /
eche of them with a sharpe weapon in their handes /
than thei approched to Croysantes bed, than³ the erles
sone lyfte vp his swerde & strake Croysant on the
24 helme suche a stroke *that* the swerde swerued in his
hande, whearby he parceyued *that* he was armed &
that he had warnyng of their comyng, whearf he was
right serowfull / than he recouered againe another
28 stroke, thynkyng to haue slaine Croysant / but he
coulde not, his helme was so good / than the other .x.
strake at Croysant / but they coulde do hym no hurt,
his harneys¹⁰ was so good / than Croisant ¹¹as a hardi
32 knight¹¹ rose vp quyckly with his swerde in his hande /
whan the erles sonne sawe that / he was neuer so

and afterwards withdraws with his squire to a rich chamber.

Croissant puts on strong armour.

The earl's son enters,

and strikes Croissant on the helm, but does him no hurt.

The other traitors strike him also.

Croissant rises,

¹ omitted. ² the. ³ and.

⁴ Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 2. ⁵⁻⁶ enamoured and.

⁶ while. ⁷⁻⁸ saving only. ⁸ would.

⁹ so. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹⁻¹² after quickly.

and strikes the
earl's son dead.

But the others
kill Croissant's
squire.

Croissant slays
five of them.

afrayde in all his lyfe / & thought to haue fled away /
but Croysant was before him / & gaue him suche a
stroke on y^e heed with his swerde that he claue ¹his
heed¹ to y^e chyn, & so he fel downe deed / & the other 4
had slayne Croysantes ²squier, whearof he was sory /
than he ran at them lyke a man dysperate, and dyd
so moche that within a shorte space he had slayne fyue
of them / & the other fled away into a nother chambre 8
and durste³ speake no⁴ worde.

¶ Howe Croysant departed from Nyse with
his swerde *in* his hande, and howe the erle
Remon was sorowful for the deth of his 12
sone, and chased after Croisant, but he
coud not be found. Ca. C.lxxxviii.

Croissant is in
fear because he
has slain the
earl's son,

and determines to
flee.

He finds the
stables barred.



Han Croysant saw himselfe so enter- 16
priced, and that he had slayne the
erles sone, he was in great feare / for
he knew well⁵ yf he were taken he
shulde be in daunger of his lyfe / 20

therfore hastily he departed out of the palais, and whan
he came to the stable wheare his hors stode / he founde
a greate yron chayne before the dore, to the entent that
y^e hors shulde not be taken out in the nyght tyme / 24
⁶whan he saw that he was sore discomforted, and said,
'O very god, now by thy grace ayde me, I ought well
to be sory whan I must leue my hors. Alas, now
I can not tell how to beare myn armure / certaynely 28
without⁷ god ayde⁸ me now I se no way how I may⁹
scape alieue. Alas, I thought to haue ben maried to y^e
erles daughter / but now I am ferre fro it syn I haue
slayne her brother / I was ¹⁰not in mynde so soone¹⁰ 32

1-1 it. 2 Fol. clxxxviii. col. 1. 3 not. 4 one.

5 that. 6 and. 7 except. 8 succour.

9 can. 10-10 minded.

to haue retourned into my countre / tyl¹ I hadde con-
quered some honoure and londes, whearby I might
haue ben receyued honourably of them that dyd set
4 nothyng by me' / than he began sore to wepe / ²he
went through ³the towne ⁴as preuely⁴ as he migthe /
he coulde not trauayle longe in his armure / ⁵he behelde
in a corner of a strete ⁶a voyde house,⁶ thyder he
8 went⁷ & vnarmed him of all his armure except his
swerde, and so he was in a wyght iacked, and than he
rested not tyll¹ he came to the gate, and called the
porter and desyred him to open the gate, saynge howe⁸
12 he had busynes to do a lytell without the towne / the
porter answered chorlysshely,⁹ and sayd / 'there re-
quyreh no hast, he might well abyde' / for he sayd he
wolde not open no gate tyll¹ it was fayre day. 'Frende,'
16 quod Croysant, 'I praye the shewe me this curtoise' /
the porter answered fyersly, & said / 'thou doest but
lose thy payne¹⁰ for the gate shall not be opened the⁴
tyll¹ the sonne ryse.' Whan Croysant sawe that ⁴for no
20 fayre wordes⁴ y^e porter wolde¹¹ open the gate¹² / he set
his hande vpon¹³ his swerd, and sayd / 'thou false
traytour, without¹⁴ incontynent¹⁵ thou¹⁶ open the gate
with my swerde I shal slee the.' whan the porter sawe
24 that Croysant held a naked swerde in his hande
to ¹⁷haue stryken¹⁷ him, he had great feare / ¹⁸he came
forth in hast with the keyes in his hande, and said,
'syr, I shall open y^e gate with a good wyl; how be it
28 he was so afryde that all his body trembled for feare /
than he came to the gate & opened the wycket / ¹⁸than
Croisant issued out vnarmed, and had on but a cloke
ouer his doubled,¹⁹ and his swerde about him, and

He goes all
armed through
the town,
and enters an
empty house.

He doffs his
armour,

and goes to the
gate of the city.

The porter
refuses to open
the gate.

Croissant draws
his sword,

and the porter
yields.

¹ vntill. ² so. ³ Fol. clxxxviii. col. 2. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ but. ⁶⁻⁶ before of. ⁷ and he went before thyder.

⁸ that. ⁹ stubbornly. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ not.

¹² by fayre meanes. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ except.

¹⁵ incontynent after gate. ¹⁶ dost. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ strike.

¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ cloake.

Croissant escapes
to Rome.

The traitorous
companions of
the earl's son
who had escaped
alive tell the
earl of Crois-
sant's deed.

The earl swoons
on seeing his dead
son.

a lytell purse by¹ his gyrdell, and therin twenty shyllynges in money, and no more / thus as ye haue herde Croisant issued out of y^e towne of Nyse in Prouance, and he² toke the way to³ Rome, but or⁴ he had gone 4 two leeges / the fyue traytours that fledde fro him and were hydden in a chambre / whan they thought that Croisant was departed, for thei thought ⁵he wolde not tary bycause he had slayne the erles sone / than they 8 went out of the chambre makyng great bruyt and great² noyse / soo that euery man rose in the palayes / and the erle him selfe rose and came in to y^e hall with his swerde in his hande, & there he founde the fyue 12 traytours / who shewed hym that for certayne wordes betwene Croysant and his sone there was a fray betwene them / whearby your sone is slayne by the handes of Croisant / the whiche he dyde wylfully, to 16 the entent to haue all youre londes after youre dyssease, bycause ye haue gyuen him youre daughter in mariage / and or⁴ we coulde come he was fledde / but or⁴ he departed out of the chambre he slewe fyue men besyde 20 your sone, for they were not armed / &⁶ Croysant was armed / ⁷he semed rather a spirite than any⁸ mortall man / and whan we sawe that we coulde not approche to him bycause he was armed / we slew his squier. 24 Whan the erle herde them it was no meruayle thought he was sorowfull ; ⁷than he went in to the chambre wheare as his sone lay dede / whan he came thyder⁹ for great distres that he had at his herte he fell downe 28 vpon his sone in a swone / ⁷whan he came to himselfe he cryed, and sayd, 'A, Croysant, your acqueyntaunce is to me very herde / than he commaunded his men to arme them and incontynent to go after Croysant, who 32 so petyously hath slayne his sone / and said, 'if I maye

¹ at. ² omitted. ³ towards. ⁴ before.

⁵ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁶ but. ⁷ and. ⁸ a.

⁹ there.

take him he shall neuer scape my handes without
deth' / than in the palais and in the towne euery
ma[n]¹ armed them, and the erle himselfe armed him

He vows Crois-
sant's death,
and orders his
arrest.

4 & mounted on his hors and issued out at² y^e gate with
muche³ people / and than thei rode abrode in the
countree serchyng / and demaundynge if any man met
with Croisant, but he coude here no certayn newes of
8 him except of one man, that said howe he met hym a
fyue leuges fro thens / and how⁵ that he went a great
pace.

He with many
armed men
pursue Croissant,
but to no purpose.

12  Han the erle herde that / he saw wel it
was but a payn⁶ lost to folowe any
further / than he returned to y^e towne
right sorowful and sore displeased for
the deth of his sone / and yet againe
16 he greatly complaинned for Croisant for⁷ that ad-
uenture, and said⁸ a more valiaunt knight can⁹ not be
founde / nor¹⁰ more curtoysse / nor more¹¹ sage¹¹, wold
to god that bytwene him and me¹² there were¹² a good
20 accorde,¹³ so that he hadde my daughter in mariage /
so¹⁴ that after my dissease he might haue my londe /
than diuers of his men said / Sir, lete him go, he seme¹⁵
rather a dyuell than a man / he is fiers and cruell / he
24 setteth¹⁶ no more to slee men¹⁷ than some do to drinke
the⁵ good wine / let him goo / he was borne⁷ an
yll houre / than the erle entred in to the towne right
sorowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his sone /
28 & also for Croisantes aduenture / ¹⁴than he caused
his sone to be buried as it apartained / ¹⁴great sorowe
was made by the erle, and by y^e duke of Calabre and
other knightes that were there / but thei knew not the

The pursuers
return home,

¹ may in text. ² of. ³ many.
⁴ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ labour.
⁷ in. ⁸ that. ⁹ could. ¹⁰ neither.
¹¹⁻¹¹ wise. &. ¹²⁻¹² before bytwene. ¹³ amitie.
¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ semeth to be. ¹⁶ makes. ¹⁷ a man.

and none of them
knows the truth.

trouth of the matter / who so euer made sorow /
the erles daughter was sorrowfull / both for her brother
and also for y^e noble Croisant whom she had thought
to mary. Now let vs leaue spekyng of them, and 4
returne to Croisant.

Howe Croisant arived in the subburbes of a lytel towne called Florencolle, and lodged amonge ruffians and vyleyns / and howe 8 thei fell at stryfe / and how Croisant slewe them and fledde, and was in great daunger. And howe he came in to the cyte of Rome, whereas there was noo man that wolde 12 gyue hym one morsel of brede / and how he wente and lay in an olde palayes on² a burden of strawe. Capitulo .Clxxxix.



Han Croissant saw that he was departed 16 fro y^e towne of Nyse, and that he was alone afote / he made his complayntes to our lord god, requyeynge him humbly to haue pety on³ him / than

he went forth, and so traualied thre dayes & thre nightes without mete or drinke / but a lytel brede and water / he had such hungre and thurst that he coud scant⁴ susteyne himselfe on his fete / so at last a lytell 24 before the sonne was sette he came to a lytel towne called Florencolle, whearof the gates were shytte whan⁵ he came thyder / than in y^e subburbes he saw a house lyke a tauerne, & he sware though he shulde be slayne 28 he wolde go to that house to ete & drinke / and to pay well for his scot⁶ / it had ben better for him to haue passed by / for there he was in great peryll of his lyfe,

Croissant
journeys on,
but finds little to
eat or drink.

He approaches
Florencolle.

¹ Fol. clxxxix. col. 1. ² vppon. ³ of. ⁴ searcie.

⁵ before. ⁶ shot.

as ye shall here / thus he approched to y^e house and
herde how the cokes were busy in the kytchyn / than
he sawe a great fyre in a chambre / & wheare there was
 4 ¹the greatest ruffians / & plaies at dyse in all y^e towne /
& they had prepared flesche and fyssh for their
souper. Whan Croysant saw y^e preperacion *that* was
made there for the syxe ruffians / he entred in to the
 8 house and saluted the hoost, & demaunded if he might
be lodged there / y^e hoost said ye / & how he shulde
be there well serued bothe of wyne and of meate / suche
as he wolde demaunde / than Croisant entred² in /
 12 ³the ruffians met with⁴ him and said how he was
welcomme, and eche of them pynched other & wynked
with y^e one eye, and said softly to the maister of
them / this great stradiot⁵ is come well at a poynte /
 16 for or⁶ he departe he shall pay for our scot⁷ & expence /
and anone we shal⁸ put y^e dyse in to his handes /
whearby he shall leaue gowne / cap / and money if he
haue any. Croysant dyd not vnderstande them by
 20 cause they spake Iaragon⁹ / than Croisant said / ‘syrs,
if I eate with you, paynge my scot,⁷ shall it turne you
to any displeasure.’ ‘frende,’ quod the maister of
them / ‘it pleaseth me well that ye eate with vs’ / than
 24 they wasshed¹⁰ and sate downe at the table nere by¹¹
the fyre, ³thei were wel serue of euery thyng. Whan
Croisant was set he began sore⁴ to fede / ¹²for the
hunger that he had¹² / for in thre dayes before he hadde
 28 eaten nothyng but brede & water / whearfore¹³ he
had the better appetyte, and also he founde there good
wyne and fresshe, & he drank therof at his pleasure.
whan thei had wel eaten & dronken, & were wel chafed
 32 by reason of the good wyne / the hoost rose vp and

He enters a tavern,
where cooks are
busy,
and ruffians
playing with dice.

Croissant asks the
host for lodging,
and is well
received.

He asks permis-
sion to eat with
the ruffians,
paying his own
scot.

He makes a good
meal.

¹ Fol. clxxxix, col. 2. ² went. ³ and. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ Trauailer. ⁶ before. ⁷ shot. ⁸ wil.

⁹ whisperingly. ¹⁰ all together. ¹¹ to.

¹²⁻¹² well, (his hunger was so great).

¹³ & therfore.

said, ‘syrs / it is tyme to make reckenyng, and *that*
euer man paye his parte’ / than the maister ruffian
said, ‘syr, make ye y^e accompt / ¹ye can better do it /
than we / ²shewe vs what we shall pay euer man ⁴

The host brings
the reckoning,

lyke’ / ‘syrs,’ quod the hoost, ‘as nere ³as I can
recken ye must paye in all .xii. sh., & loke euer man

but the chief of
the ruffians
insists that they
should all play
with dice,
and that the loser
should pay all.

pay his parte’ / than the maister ruffian began to
swere bloode & woundes that thei shulde plei at the 8
dyse to se who shulde pay for all / than he said to
Croisant / ‘frende, ye must come playe with vs;
beholde here .iii. dyse, good and square, we must do so
that¹ one shall⁴ pay the hole expence whan⁵ we 12
departe’ / ‘Syrs,’ quod Croisant, ‘we shall not nede to
play at dyse to know who shall pay for the scot,⁶ I

Croissant offers to
pay the whole
bill.

wyll paye it all togyder without ony stryfe’ / than thei
said thei were well content ther with, & thanked him / 16

One of the
ruffians calls for
a new bottle of
wine,

than one of them, the falsest vyleyne amonge them,
wylfully caste downe a potte of wyne vpon y^e table,
wherof his felowes blamed him; than he answere[d] &
said / ‘syrs, ye nede not to be angry therwith / for 20
there is none of you wyll drynke therof / it is better to
haue a fresshe potte of wyne of a new vessel’ / thei
said, well that is trew, so be it / than their hoost
brought them a new pot ful of wyne, & said, ‘syrs, this 24

and the chief of
them again pro-
poses to cast with
the dice to decide
who should pay
for it.
Croissant refuses
to play with dice,
and declares that
he has already
paid enough.

pot of wyne is not of the fyrist reckenyng, this is
a potte of a newe accompt’ / than the maister ruffian
said to Croysant / ‘Syr, take and cast the dyse, for the
first cast shal be yours.’ Croysant beheld them fierlsy, 28
& said / ‘nay, syrs, I shall kepe me therfro⁷ / for
I neuer played at y^e dyse in al my lyfe / be content
with the .xii. s. *that* I shall pay for our scot⁶ / for by
reason of the longe vyage *that* I haue made I am not 32
wel furnysshed of money / for I haue but xiii. s. in my
purse’ / than y^e maister said / ‘thou art better arayed

¹ for. ² and. ³ Fol. clxxxix back, col. 1. ⁴ must.
⁵ before. ⁶ shot. ⁷ from that. ⁸ omitted.

than we / ¹thou must vse thy wordes² other wyse / for thou shalt not *thus* scape / thou shalt leue thy gowne to pay for our scot² to morow in y^e morning.' than
 4 another ruffian said / '& I wyll haue his hose & his shoes³ to bye fyssh for our dyner' / whan Croysant herde the ⁴vylayne he began to chaunge colour, & was sore displeased, and said right fyersly / 'Syrs, leue your
 8 clatterynge, yet I haue .xiii. s. in my purse, the whiche I wyl gyue you rather than ye shuld be displesed / me thynke this ought to suffyee you / for,¹ syrs, I am a noble man, & lately I was made knight, for if I were
 12 ones agayne in my countree I wold neuer come⁵ thens to seke for such aduentures / ye ought to beare me⁶ honor syn I ⁷say to⁷ you *that* I am a knight' / y^e ruffian said / howe his wordes nor his prechynge shuld
 16 not auayle him / but *that* he must leue his gowne / iacked / hosen & shoes / than Croisant, replete with yre, dyd of his surcot, the whiche was furred with armyns, & cast it to them / & said, 'syrs, nowe ye ought to be
 20 content with me / & I ought to be quyt' / whan y^e ruffians vnderstode him thei cried all at ones that he shulde put of his hosen & his shoen / & his gyrdle / & purse / & gowne / & bad him quyckly delyuer it to
 24 them / and than to auoyde y^e house / for thei said there was no lodgyng for him / ¹the hoost to plese the vylaynes said howe thei said trouth / than Croisant, ful of yre & dyspleasure, turned his visage to y^e benche
 28 where as⁸ his good swerd lay / wherof he was ioyous⁹ *that* thei had not taken it away / than he stept thyder & toke it in his handes & drewe it out, & came to the vylaynes, & thei arose against him with their swerde
 32 in their handes / & he strake y^e maister ruffian so meruaylous a stroke / *that* he clauie his hed to y^e teth /

But one of the ruffians insists that he is wealthier than they, and must pay their scot again.

Croissant grows angry, but offers to give them all the money he has left;

he says he is a knight.

The ruffians demand all his clothes.

Croissant in wrath gives them his surcoat,

but they demand his hose, shoes, girdle, purse, and gown, and bid him, after he has given them these, leave the house.

Croissant draws his sword,

and strikes the chief of the ruffians dead.

¹ and. ² tongue. ³ tomorrow.

⁴ Fol. clxxxix, back, col. 2. ⁵ from. ⁶ my.
⁷⁻⁷ shew. ^{*} omitted. ⁹ ioyfull.

Three others he kills.

The host raises the cry of murder,

but Croissant rushes from the house and from the town.

The rulers of the town come to the tavern,

and order the men to pursue Croissant.

so he fell downe deed before y^e chymney / & fro another he strake his heed / & than he slewe y^e thirde / & the¹ fourth / & the other two had so great feare *that* thei fled away / than the hoost began to crye / a thefe / 4 a murdrer; but Croisant wold do him no hurt, he issued out of y^e house with² his swerd in his hande, & ran as fast as ³he coulde tyll⁴ he was without y^e subburbes / than he ran in the feld ouer hedges & 8 dykes,⁵ to thentent *that* none shuld folow him; than he herkened towardes y^e towne, where he herd great crynge / & noyse of y^e hoost of the house *that* he cam fro / wherby all his neyghbours / tailers / cordiners⁶ / 12 drapers / & men of all craftes / came to y^e house, and there was such⁷ noyse made in y^e subburbes / *that* the towne gates were opened, & y^e burgesses issued out & came to the house where as the noyse was / & whan y^e 16 rulers⁸ of y^e towne came thyder & sawe the men lye deed / they demaunded of y^e hoost who had done *that* murdre / ‘Syr,’ quod y^e hoost / ¹*‘that hath done*¹ a great¹ vacabond⁹ / who is bygge & mighty / for 20 I neuer sawe with myn eyen a man better made ne¹⁰ fourmed / & he is fled away with his swerde in his handes¹¹ yonder hie way / but, syr, for goddes sake com not to nere him / for he semeth no man whan he 24 is angry / but he is lyke a man out of his wytte without¹² feare or¹³ doubte’ / than y^e ruler⁸ commaunded to folowe him bothe on horsbacke & a fote, & they ran al to harnes,¹⁴ though y^e captayne were not greatly 28 afayde / yet he wolde not be y^e first shulde go forth / he loued better *that* another shuld take that aduauntage / thus on all sydes a¹¹ horsbacke & a fote / they folowed Croisant, who helde¹⁵ not y^e hye way / & it was farre in 32 the night, & also there were many that wolde not chafe

¹ omitted. ² in in text. ³ Fol. clxxxv. col. 1.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ ditches. ⁶ Shoemakers. ⁷ a.

⁸ Magistrates. ⁹ hath done it. ¹⁰ nor. ¹¹ on.

¹² all. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ armour. ¹⁵ kept.

themselfe ouer sore to seke for him / for thei wolde
 make no prease to receyue his offryng / for¹ they fered
 to fynde him / ²whan thei had sought a longe space in
 4 y^e feldes & in the³ wayes, & coulde not fynde him /
⁴than⁴ thei all returned to their towne / & Croisant went
 euer fro y^e towne warde with his swerde⁵ in his hande
⁶all naked⁴ / ²whan he saw that he was wel two leeges
 8 of them,⁴ he entred into y^e hye waye, & prayssed god
 that he was so seaped with ⁶out daunger / but he was
 sore displeased in that he had neuer a peny in his purse,
 & nothyng but his swerde &⁴ his cote / & a rich purse
 12 at his gyrdle, & also he sawe⁷ it was wynter, & frost &
 snowe / also he felt y^e cold wynde, y^e whiche dyd him
 moch yll / thus he went forth al night / & the next
 day tyll⁸ it was nere night / than he ariued at a
 16 vyllage / ²ther he was fayne to sel his swerd for lacke
 of money to pay for his scot⁹ / he came to a lodge
 where he was well serued of euerythyng that he wolde
 haue, than in the mornynge whan he departed he solde
 20 his purs for as moch as he coud gete / than² he
 trauayled forth so long that he approached to Rome /
 & than⁴ he cam to a lodgynge without the gate, & there
 he lodged that night / than² in the mornynge he de-
 24 maunded of his hoost to whome the towne partained,
 & who was lord therof, & what is⁴ his name¹⁰ that
 gouerneth the towne / the hoost said, ‘frend, he that
 now is lord here is named Guimart of Puile, but or¹¹ he
 28 came hider we had a yong lord, the most⁴ fayrest yong
 gentylman that euer was sene / & he was sone to y^e
 noble emperour yde / ye somwhat resemble him / but
 he was of so yll rule & so ful of folies ⁴and youth⁴ /
 32 that all the riches that his father had left him / he
 dispended,¹² & gaue away ⁴his riches⁴ to euery man

Croissant escapes
them,

but he has no
money, and the
weather is very
cold.

He comes to a
village, and sells
his sword and
purse.

He reaches Rome,

and learns how
Guymart of Puile
rules there.

¹ because. ² and. ³ high. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ naked. ⁶ Fol. clxxxv. col. 2. ⁷ that. ⁸ vntill.
⁹ shot. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ before. ¹² spent.

that wold ¹haue it, & so he gaue so moche to euery man *that*¹ he left himself nothyng to lyue by. And after I herde say that he had in himselfe such shame *that* he departed priuely with a squier & went to seke ⁴ his aduentures / but no man knoweth where he is / nor whyder ²that euer³ he wyll³ come agayne or not / and y^e comoners⁴ of the cyte made lytell therof / for after he was departed they sente for Guymart of Puile,⁸ whom they haue made emperorour.⁵ Whan Croysant vnderstode his hoost / ⁶right pytuously⁶ he complayned ⁷to him selfe, & said, ‘ Alas, caytive that I am, what shall I do that thus hath loste all myn enherit- ¹² aunce without recouer / & besyde that, I haue nothyng to spende / nor I haue no crafte⁸ to lyue by / it muste behoue me to dye for⁹ hungre & colde, I haue no more but .xxv. s., for the which I solde my purse.’ Thus as ¹⁶ wel as he coud he contynued tyll lent / than the season began to waxe somewhat hotter / ¹⁰euery day in the mornynge he wolde here masse¹¹ / euery man that sawe him / behelde him sore¹² for the great beaute that he ²⁰ was of / ¹⁰there were dyuers that knewe him / but they wolde make no semblaunt¹³ therof / to the entente that they wolde gyue to him nothyng / ¹⁰whan they sawe him thei wolde eschewe¹⁴ the way, bycause he shuld not ²⁴ knowe them / there were many of them that he had done them moche good,¹⁵ and gyuen them in suche wyse that they were become riche & he pore / & ther was none of them that wolde offre him one morsel of brede / ²⁸ wherof he was sorowfull / for than he sawe wel his money was gone, so that he had neuer a peny¹⁶ / than he thought to sel his gowne rather than to dye for

¹⁻¹ craue anything of him so that in the end. ²⁻² omitted.

³ euer. ⁴ communaltie. ⁵ of this Empire.

⁶⁻⁶ after compleyned. ⁷ Fol. clxxxx. back, col. 1.

⁸ trade. ⁹ through. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ seruice and.

¹² greatly. ¹³ semblaunce. ¹⁴ shun.

¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ left.

He lives at Rome
in retirement,

and none of his
old friends will
have aught to do
with him.

hungre, & so he dyd / he solde it for xxviii s., & than
 he taryed in his lodgyng as long as his money endured / He has to sell his gown,
^{so¹} he contynued² tyll³ Easter / by that tyme all his
 4 money was done.⁴ Than he thought⁵ he wold go in⁶ but at last all his money is spent.
 the stretes to se yf he myght spye any burgesses to
 whom he had done in tymes past some good vnto / &
 to demaunde of him some courtoysse / & so he issued out
 8 of his lodgyng & walked into the stretes & parceyued⁷
 a ryche burges / who was lenyng out at a wyndowe in
 his house / Croysant knewe him well / for it was
 he that made him ryche / ⁸for afore⁸ he was but pore /
 12 than he thought to knowlege him self to that burges /
 than Croysant came⁹ and saluted¹⁰ him right humbly,
 and sayd / ‘syr,¹¹ remembraunce of a pore eaytyue to
 whom fortune is contrary / who in tyme past dyd you
 16 moche good whan ye serued him / yf ye be a good man,
 as I byleue ye be¹² / of that goodnes¹³ ye haue¹³ Croissant appeals for aid to a burges whom he himself in past time had made rich.
 remembraunce / & it may so be / yf ye do so ye shall
 fare the better’ / whan the burges herde Croysant
 20 he behelde him fyersly / ¹he knew him anone¹⁴ / &
 without makyng¹⁵ any maner of answeare, he called his
 page, and commaunded him to brynge him a pan full
 of water to y^e wyndowe / and he dyd as his maister had
 24 commaunded him / than y^e burges toke y^e panne full of
 water / than¹ he behelde Croisant who stode vnder the
 wyndow / and dyd cast the water vpon his heed / soo
 that his fayre heere, cote & shyrte, were all wete / But the burges only throws a pan of water at him.
 28 Croisant without any worde spekyng made him selfe
 clene / and after¹⁶ sayd to y^e burges that yf he lyned
 longe the offence that he hadde done him¹⁷ shulde
 derely¹⁸ be bought /¹⁸ the burges, who was proud &
 32 disdaynfull, set but lytell by his wordes / Croisant,

¹ and. ² there. ³ vntill. ⁴ gone. ⁵ that.⁶ to. ⁷ saw. ⁸⁻⁸ and before. ⁹ went.¹⁰ Fol. clxxxx, back, col. 2. ¹¹ haue. ¹² are.¹³⁻¹³ haue you. ¹⁴ presently. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ afterward.¹⁷ he. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ buy it but.

Croissant goes to
an old palace,

and sleeps there
on straw.

The burgess goes
to Guymart,

and warns him
of Croissant's
return.

Guymart reproves
the burgess for his
ingratitude,

who was right sorrowfull, toke his way towardes the palayes, before y^e whiche there was an olde palais, where as no man had dwelled in of a long space, ¹ he entred in at the gate, the whiche was great, and ⁴ stode open / and there he sawe a great pyller, where as there laye two bundles² of strawe / than he layd him downe & slept right sore,³ angry with the burges *that* had so wete him with water / y^e whiche burges, after ⁸ ⁴ that⁴ he had cast this water vpon Croysant, he went to the palayes to the emperor Guymart to flatter and to please him / ¹ he founde the emperoure lenyng in a wyndowe, and he saluted him, and said / ‘syr, I brynge ¹² certayne tylynges of Croisant / sone to themperour . . . who of right ought to be enheritour of this empyre, wherof ye be⁵ as now em⁶perour ; he is come into this⁷ towne *in* his double without hose or shoes / he is ¹⁶ arayed lyke a vacabande / or a ruffian comyng fro the tauerne, ¹ he is so great and so wel made in all his membres that he semeth more lyke a champion redy to fyght than euer I sawe man in⁸ my lyfe / yf ye wyll ²⁰ byleue⁹ my counsell, stryke of his heed or cast him in¹⁰ a pytte, ⁴ to thentent⁴ that of him there be neuer had¹¹ memory / for if he lyue longe he may do you damage & put you out of this empyre, the⁴ whiche ye holde / ²⁴ the whiche shulde partayne to him.’ whan themperour Guymart vnderstode the burges, he behelde hym fyersly, & said / ‘speke no more to me of this matter / for thou doest lyke a traytoure ; thou knowest well that by him ²⁸ and by⁴ his dede thou and dyuers⁴ other are¹² made riche / ¹ thou arte lyke him *that* betrayed our lorde Iesu chrysste / therfore I commaunde the fro hensforth come not in my syght / for I wyll haue none acqueynt- ³² aunce nor conuersacyon with a traytour ; if it be so that

¹ and. ² burdens. ³ sorrowfull &. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ are. ⁶ Fol. clxxxxi. col. 1. ⁷ the. ⁸ all.

⁹ follow. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ any more. ¹² bee.

Croisant be pore, it is pety & damage¹ and great syn to
doo him any yll / ²I haue done him great yll whan his
londes and sygnoryes ³I kepe³ wrongfully and without⁴
⁴cause, wherof I thinke my selfe gretly culpable against⁵
god for the syn that I haue done ⁶whan⁶ I holde the
honour & sygnory that of reason ought to partayne to
him / this daye is Easter day, on⁷ y^e whiche day euery
⁸good crysten man ought to humble himselfe to ⁸our
lorde⁸ / cryinge him mercy and pardon of² all their
synnes / it is reason that I make pease with god, and
do so that he may be with me content.'⁹

and declares that
he himself has
done the youth
much wrong.

12 ¶ Howe themperour Guymart spake & re-
buked the burges that spake yll of Croy-
sant, and howe ¹⁰themperour bare meate
& drinke to the place where as Croisant
16 slept / and of the meruaylous treure that
he founde in a chambre in the sayd olde
palayes / and of that¹¹ was shewed him
by two kuyghtes whom he founde there.

20

Capitulo .C.lxxxix.

24  Han the burges vnderstode themperour
he was in great feare, & soo departed
ryght sore abasshed / & thought he
had ben to hasty to reporte such
newes / & so right sorowfull departed
and lefte themperour alone in a wyndowe right sore
pensyue, and said to himselfe, 'O very god, the
28 pouerte that Croysant is in is by my cause / for I haue
all that ought to be his / ¹²I kepe it from him perforce;
yf I kepe it styll I may wel say that my soule shal

¹ lamentable. ² for. ³⁻³ after whan. ⁴ a.

⁵ the almighty. ⁶⁻⁶ him, in that. ⁷ vpon.

⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ before with me. ¹⁰ Fol. clxxxxi. col. 2.

¹¹ which. ¹² and.

Guymart walks
down to the old
palace full of
reinorse,

and sees Croissant
sleeping on the
straw.

He fetches wine
and meat,

and sets them
down by Crois-
sant, who still
sleeps.

He sees an iron
door standing
open,

and looking
beyond it per-
ceives all manner
of treasure.

neuer come in¹ paradyse, but shal be dampned for euer.' Thus themperour Guymart compleyned to him self, and so went downe in to his palaies / and so walked vp and downe by him selfe before y^e olde 4 palayes, the whiche was nere to his palays / ²he loked in at a gate and sawe a man lye slepyng on a burden of strawe, ²he thought incontynent³ it shulde be Croy-sant by the reporte of the burges. Whan the emperour 8 saw him / he had so⁴ great pety of him that he wepte / ²than he wente in to his palayes and commaunded one to brynge to⁵ him a towell with brede and fleshe / & a bottel of wyne / y^e which thyng was done ; than 12 themperour toke a mantel furred with gryse, & dyd it about him selfe, & toke the wyne & mete, & com-maunded his men³ ⁶none to⁷ folow him / ⁸he went downe y^e greses & came to the palais where as Croisant 16 slept, ²themperour set the mete and wyne nere by Croisant, and a woke him not, than he couered him with the mantell and than⁹ departed / & as y^e emperor 20 was departyng he loked on his right hande & sawe a dore open all of yren, ¹⁰sore bonded with barres of yren,¹⁰ & he sawe a clerenes within / in such wyse as though there had ben within .C. torches brennyng¹¹ / he went thyder & entred into the chambre / y^e which 24 was great & large, & he sawe all about y^e chambre great coffers, y^e which stode open, & thei were full of golde / & other coffers full of Iewelles & riche stones / y^e whiche shone¹² with suche lyght that themperour 28 was¹³ maruayled / also he sawe great peces of plate & money lyinge on y^e ertth, & besyde he sawe¹⁴ vessel / ¹⁵cuppes / & pottes of golde & syluer, & great peces of golde bordred with precious stones. Also he sawe 32

¹ to. ² and. ³ that. ⁴ such. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ Fol. clxxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁷ should. ⁸ then. ⁹ he.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ & banded verie strongly with yron barres.

¹¹ burning and. ¹² did shine. ¹³ greatly.

¹⁴ a great. ¹⁵ of.

riche gownes hangynge on perches of clothe of golde & syluer,¹ in so great nombre that the emperour was sore abasshed / & said who so euer left this treasure here / 4 might wel be called a great lord / for he thought² al y^e golde in y^e worlde / & all the riche iewelles were brought togyder³ might not be compared to y^e treasure that he saw there / & said he was happy to come 8 thyder / than he passed forth where he saw an ymage of fyne golde, & it was as byg as a chylde of two yere of age / & wheare as the eyen shulde stonde there were two gret carbuckles / y^e whiche cast so great clerenes 12 that all y^e chambre was lyght therwith / whan themperour sawe that ymage he thought to haue taken it & to haue borne it into his palais / but he had moche ado to lyfte it / than he loked towards a lytell dore, out of 16 y^e whiche he saw comyng two knightes well armed at al peeces with their swerde^s in ⁴their handes,⁵ they came to themperour & said / ‘beware, frende / be not so hardi to bere any thyng fro hens / for y^e treser that is 20 here is not yours / nor it belongeth you⁶ not to haue it / therfore set downe agayne that ymage / without ye do it shortly / ye shall by it derely⁷ / y^e emperour, seynge the two knightes thretenyng him / he was in 24 great feare / ⁵he set downe the ymage & beheld y^e knightes, & said / ‘Syrs, ye speke fyersly to me / for the treasure / the which ye warne me that I shulde not take any parte therof, by all right ought to be myn, 28 and none others / syn I haue founde it / ⁵therfor I coniure you by y^e puysaunce of god / & of his aungelles & archangelles, & all saintes / that y^e shewe me y^e trouth to whom this treasure ⁸do parteyne⁸ / ye 32 ought to knowe it / syn ye haue y^e kepynge therof’ / than y^e .ii. knyghtes answered & said / ‘syr, this

He passes through it, and finds an image of fine gold, which he tries to lift.

But two knights approach him, and bid him lay it down, for none of the treasure is his.

The emperor asks to whom it belongs.

¹ sylke. ² if. ³ they. ⁴ Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁵ and. ⁶ you *after* to. ⁷ derely *before* by it.

⁸⁻⁸ doth belong.

They tell him it
is Croissant's
property,

and bid him take
three besants of
gold and proclaim
through the city
that he will give
every poor man a
florin.

Croissant, they
say, will then
come to the palace,

and he will learn
by a sign that all
belongs to the
valiant knight.

treasure *that ye here se / ought to partayne to Croisant,*
sone to yde themperour, who alone lyeth on a burden
of strawe here by not ferre fro this chambre / he lyeth
right porely & naked / the which treasure was iudged 4
to him .v.C. yere past / ¹neuer syn² there hath ben
taken fro it y^e value of a³ peny / nor neuer syn it was
layde here there neuer entred any erthely man but
only you ; Croysant who slepeth without is a valiaunt 8
knight, & ful of ⁴all⁴ trouth / wherfore, yf ye wyll know
to whom this treasure parteyneth / ¹I shall shewe you
y^e maner how ye may know it / beholde yonder hepe of
golde / go & take therof .iii. besantes / & put them in 12
to your purse / than returne into your palais & ⁵make
*a crye through⁵ rome *that al pore men com to your**
*court, & *that to ech of them ye shall⁶ gyue a floryn⁷ of**
golde. Whan Croisant shall here that he shal⁶ not be 16
beynde / but he wyl come amonoge other to take that
*almes / & than y^e thre besantes *that shal be in your**
purse, take & cast ⁸them on the erth / one in one
place / & a[no]⁹ther in another place / wheare as y^e 20
pe[ople] must pas to com to receyue your [almes], than
Croisant shall come the same [way] & fynde the thre
besantes, the whic[h by] reason of his noblenes &
bounte he will come & bryng them to you a[gain], 24
*therby ye shall know *that y^e treasu[re that] is here**
assembled¹⁰ parteyneth to hi[m, and] ought to be his /
than gyue him your [faire] daughter in mariage / &
than ⁴bryng[ge him] hyther / & than⁴ ye shal se that he 28
mas[y take] of this treasure at his pleasure / fo[r it is]
all his / no man shall say the contra[rie, and] doyng
thus as we haue sayd / ye s[hall] haue parte of this
treasure.'

¹ and. ² that time. ³ one. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵⁻⁵ cause to be proclaimed throughout. ⁶ will.

⁷ Florent. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

⁹ leaf torn [] from 1601 ed. ¹⁰ before you.

¶ Howe the two knightes th[at] kept this
treasure spake with the emperour Guymart,
& shewed him the maner howe he shulde
4 know Croisant. And of the meruaile that
Croisant had whan he a woke & sawe the
mete & drinke by him. Capitulo .C.lxxxxi.

8  Iian the emperour had wel herde the
two knightes he went to the hepe of
golde & toke the thre besantes, &
[dyd]¹ put them in² his purs / ³than
he toke⁴ leue of the two knyghtes &

The emperor takes the three
besants and returns to the
palace.

12 departed, ³whan he was issued out / he loked behynd
him / than³ he saw the dore fast closed / wheroft he
had great meruayle / & founde Croysant styll slepyng /
& so he past by, & wold not a wake him / & than he
16 went to his palaies ; & then his lordes demaunded
of him where he had ben that he taried so longe, but
he wolde not shew them any thyng of y^e matter /
than he⁵ went to dyner, & was⁶ [richly] serued ; and
20 then Croissant / who lay and slept in the old Pallacie /
suddenly awoake, and had great maruaille of the furred
Mantle that he found vpon him / and he saw also
lying by him a Napkin, and therin wrapped good
24 white bread, Capon, rosted Fesant, & Partridge, and
therby he saw lying a great bottel full of wine, and
when he saw this good cheere, he thanked god of that
aduenture. Then he did eate of the meate, and dranke
28 of the wine at his pleasure ; and when he had well
eaten and drunke, he departed from thence, and left the
rest behind him, and tooke nothing with him : and
also he left the furred Mantlo, for he durst not weare
32 it, but sayd to himselfe, that he had no right thereto,

Croissant awakes
and marvels at
the wine and meat
at his side.

¹ All in [] from 1601 ed. omitted. ² to. ³ and.
⁴ his. ⁵ the emperour. ⁶ Fol. clxxxii. col. 2.

because it was a thing that was none of his, and so he went downe through the streets of the Towne.

¶ The proofe that the emperour Guymart made to know Croisant, vnto whome he gaue his Doughter in mariage, and deliuered] h[im all his Signiorie and Inheritance,] whe[reof great ioye was made at] Rom[e]. Ch. CLXXXII. [C.lxxxxii.] 8



The emperor proclaims that he will give every poor man in the city a florin of gold.

Croissant resolves to take his share of the alms.

The king throws the three besants in three different places about the road by which the poor men come to the palace, but they pass them by.

[Hen the emperor was risen from dinner, he called to him Foure of his seruants, to whome he gaue in charge that they should cause to be proclaimed in 12 euerie Streete] of the towne [that all pore men that would] come to themp[erour, should haue in almes] eueryman a Fl[orent of gold of the value] of .x. sous / the w[hich crie was made] in every 16 strete & ma[rket place in Rome, where]by ¹all the pore m[en drew to wardes the Pallacie.] Whan this crye wa[s made Croissant heard] it, whearof he was [joyfull, and said howe] hee would goe thider [among 20 others to ha]ue the emperours almes, ²wherewith hee thought hee would pay his host, and then in haste he went thether. The Emperour, who was there readie / thought to see & prooue whether the two Knights 24 sayings were true or not, & so drew out of his purse the Three Besans of gould, the which he did cast in diuers places, in the way as the pore men shuld come to the Pallacie, but many poore men passed ouer them, and 28 perceiued them not: & then Croissant came amoneg others, & he saw among the mens feet one Besan of gould faire and bright, and he stouped downe and tooke it vp, and then he went forth, & within a little 32

¹⁻¹ euerie. ² Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1.

while after he found the second Besan, the which also he tooke vp, and a little further among the mens feete he espyed the Third Besan, the which also hee tooke vp ;
 4 then hee thought within himselfe, and sayd, ‘ Alas, what a Caitiffe am I ? if these had beeno siluer, they had been mine, but they are fine gould, wherfore I am beguiled, for they appertaine to the Emperour Guymart,
 8 who holdeth this Empire ; [I] haue no right to kepe them, because they belong not to mee, therefore I wyll [render them to the emperor, vnto w]home [they doe appertaine.’ then hee came to] the Em[perour,
 12 & sayd, ‘ Sir, I haue fou]nde by y^e [way as I came to your Pallaice] .iii. besans [of gould, the which here I] delyuer to [you, for of right and reason they apperta]yne vnto you, [bicause of the right and title that you]
 16 haue to the [Empire, but if the hadde beene] syluer I mi[ght haue kept them as mi]ne owne without blame.’ [When the right noble Em]perour vnder[stood him, he beheld hi]m, & syghynge he [sayd, ‘ Freend, you are
 20 wel]come / the bounte, [noblenesse, and wisedom] that is in you / [shall ayd you to com]e to y^e place wheare[of in reason you ought to] be / for the goodnes [and troth that I h]aue sene in you I wyl [giue you my]
 24 daughter in mariage, ¹[wh]om² ye shall take³ to your wyfe, & ther [with] I shall yeld you the crowne imperial [of the noble] empyre of Rome / y^e which of right
⁴you parteyneth.’⁴ When⁵ Croisant⁶ vnder[stood] the
 28 emperour he was right ioyfull, [and kne]led downe to the erth in the presence [of all] the lordes that were there present, [thank]yng him of y^e honoure *that he offred [him]*. The] emperour, who was a noble⁷ wyse
 32 [Prince,] toke him vp by the hande and led [him in] to a chambre, whearin he caused a [bathi]nge to be

Croissant comes and picks up the three besants.

He brings them to the emperor.

The emperor receives him kindly, and offers

him his daughter in marriage.

¹ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2. ² I loue entirely and.

³ her. ⁴⁻⁴ appertaineth to you. ⁵ the noble.

⁶ had well heard and. ⁷ and a.

He gives Croissant rich apparel.

prepared, whearin Crois[ant was] bayned.¹ Than the emperour [brou]ght him such apparel as was met for [him] to haue. Whan he² was thus richely [app]arelled / a fayrer nor a better made³ [ma]n coulde not be founde 4 in a⁴ xviii real[mes] crystened / whearof kyng⁵ Guymart [had] great ioye, and said⁶ that in all his lyfe he neuer saw a more goodlyer prince / ⁷he was great amonge other men, & wel furnysshed of al his membres ; he 8 was byg & large in his shulders / ⁸the skyn whyte enewed⁹ with reed / his heere lyke gold wyre,⁸ his face streyt with a large forheed / his eyen gray, ⁸his nose well made / longe armes / & byg / handes, fayre & 12 streyt legges¹⁰ / ⁸his fete well proporcioned and made / kyng⁵ Guymart coude not be satysfyed with¹¹ regardyng of him / ¹²he lede him into the palais wheare as his lordes were, who greatly¹³ praysed him, and said eche to 16 other / ⁶that they had neuer sene¹⁴ so goodly a pryncie / nor better¹⁵ fourmed of his membres / than the kynge⁵ sent for his daughter by two great lordes / ⁸they wente to her chambre for her / ¹⁶she came into y^e palais to y^e 20 kyng⁵ her father, richely accompanied with ladyes & damselles / of their apparel I wyl make no longe rchersall / for it was as riche as might be, & she was so fayre / that god and nature coulde not amende her / 24 nor¹⁷ no Painter in the world, though he were neuer so skilfull, could not paint y^e fashion nor proportion of her beautifull bodie, and all that were there present, both young and old, sayd that they neuer sawe nor 28 heard report of so faire a copple of Creatures as the noble Croissant and this Ladie were, for euerie man thought that they were made for nothing else but to cause men to behould them and their beautie. 32

¹ bathed and. ² Croissant. ³ fourmed. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ the Emperor. ⁶ how. ⁷ for. ⁸ and. ⁹ mingled.

¹⁰ his Legs before fayre. ¹¹ the. ¹² and then.

¹³ lauded and. ¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ made nor. ¹⁶ then.

¹⁷ from 1601 ed. The page in the earlier ed. is torn away.

His fair daughter
is brought to
Croissant.

¶ Howe the Emperour Guymart promised Croissant that within three days he should haue his Daughter in mariage; And how
 4 the Emperour Guymart led Croissant to the olde Pallacie, and shewed him the great Treasure that the two Knightes kept for him.

Ch. clxxx[x]iii.

8  Hen the Emperour Guymart sawe his Daughter come, hee toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My right deere Daughter, I haue found for you a Husband, to whome I haue giuen you, and you may well say that a fairer man nor a hardyer Knight you neuer sawe before, and that is the noble Croissant, vnto whom this Empire appertaineth by
 12 16 rightfull enheritance, and he is Son to the noble Emperour Ide, who hath giuen this Empire to his son Croissant, but when he was of no great age he departed from this Cittie with a small companie, and went 20 to serue in strang countreys, and when the Lords of this countrey saw that they were without a Lord, they sent for me into Puille, and so they made mee heere Emperour wrongfully and without reason; but
 24 nowe since that Croissant the rightfull Inheritour is returned; for to discharge my soule towards God, I shall put into his hands al his Empire, without keeping from him any part thereof, for as for me I am
 28 rich and puissant ynough; and therefore, Croissant, if it be your pleasure, you shall haue my Daughter in mariage.' 'Sir,' (quoth Croissant) 'if it be her pleasure I will not refuse her, for I neuer sawe a fairer nor
 32 none that I had rather to haue.' When the faire Damsell vnderstood Croissant shee was right ioyfull, and she beheld Croissant, who seemed to her so faire

The emperor informs his daughter of Croissant's return, and how he intends to restore to him his empire.

The daughter
loves Croissant.

that her loue was enflamed vpon him, for the more she beheld him, the more she loued him / and she thought it long vntill the matter was made perfect ; then she sayd to the Kinge her Father, ‘ Sir, then it is your will 4 and pleasure that I shall haue Croissant in marriage, you may commaund mee as it please you, it were a folly for mee to make refuse ; and, Sir, I require you to let vs be married shortly, for if I haue not him I 8 renounce all marriage for euer, for there is none other that euer shall set the Ring on my finger, but onely Croissant.’ When the King vnderstoode his Daughter hee laughed hartely, and sayd, ‘ Deere Daughter, thinke 12 not the contrarie, but that you shall haue him to your Husband.’ then the King sent for a Bishoppe, who assured them together, whereof the Damsell was so ioyful that she wist not what to doo, and priuely she 16 thanked our Lorde god : and if she loued him well, Croissant loued her as well, and both of them desired for the day that they might come together in wedlocke.

Three days later
the wedding takes
place.

When Three dayes were passed, and that the 20 prouission was made readie for the wedding, then King Guymart made them to sweare each to other, and especially he made Croissant to promise that on the Third day hee should take his Daughter in marriage, 24 the which Croissant promised, and sware so to doe : then the King tooke Croissant by the hand, and ledde him to the old Pallaice, to prooue if the Treasure that was there might be had away by Croissant, as the two 28 Knightes had shewed him ; and then they two alone came to the ould Pallaice ; when they were come thether the King sayd, ‘ Faire Sonne, I loue you well, and also you ought to beare me your loue, since 32 you shall haue my Daughter in marriage, and because I haue great affiance in you, I shall shew you what I thinke to say, and that which lyeth in my heart ; it is of troth, that about foure dayes passed, as I came from 36

seruice, I stode and leaned out at a window in my
 Pallacie, and I beheld this same place where as we be
 now, and where I saw you lye asleepe, replete with
 4 famine and pouertie, I tooke of you great pitie, and I
 brought to yee bread and drinke, and did sette it by
 you, and I couered you with a furred mantle, and so I
 let you lye still, for I would not awake you, and as I
 8 returned from you, I sawe a dore open of this Chamber,
 the which you see now closed, out of the which I sawe
 a great light yssue; then I went thither and entred
 into the Chamber, and there I sawe so great Treasure,
 12 *that I neuer saw none such in all my life:* there was a
 rich Image of gould, the which I thought to haue taken
 and borne with me, and as I had it in my handes, two
 knightes well armed came foorth, whereof I was
 16 afraide; then they sayd vnto me, that I should not be
 so hardy as to touch the Image nor no part of the
 Treasure that I saw there, for they sayd that it did not
 appertaine to me, and if I did the contrarie I should
 20 repent it, and they sayd incontinent they would slay
 me: then I demaunded to whome that Treasure did
 belong. Then they sayd that it did belong vnto
 Croissant, who lay heere without a sleepe, and they
 24 commaunded me to take three Besans of gould to
 prooue thereby to whome the Treasure should apper-
 taine, and then they aduised me to make a Dole
 to poore men / and that I shold cast down the Besans
 28 vpon the earth whereas the poore men shoulde passe
 by, and he that found them and brought them to me,
 this Treasure should appertaine to him, wherefore,
 I pray you, let vs go thither to know the troth.' 'Sir,'
 32 (quoth Croissant) 'I pray you let vs goe thither.'

The emperor tells
 Croissant of the
 treasure in the
 old palace.

When they came there they found the dore closed,
 and then Croissant knocked therat, and sayd, 'Ye
 Sirs, that be within, I pray you in the name of Go'l to
 36 open this dore.' incontinent the dore opened, and

They enter the treasure-chamber, and find the two knights guarding it.

They tell Croissant that Oberon placed the treasure here for him 500 years since.

He thanks the knights,

who bid him be liberal and pitiful to the poor.

They vanish suddenly.

there they found the two Knights with their swords in their hands. Then Guymart and Croissant entred into the Chamber, and the two Knightes came to Croissant, & made him great cheere, and sayd, ‘Croissant, your great Prowesse and Noblenes is greatly to be praised, we haue been a longe time heere sette to kepe for you this Treasure that you see heere, for it is Five Hundred yeeres since that we were set heere by King Oberon to keepe this Treasure for you, and hee shewed vs that it appertained to you, and neuer since it was touched by any man, but onely by King Guymart, whome / to the intent to ayd and succour you / wee 12 had him take three Besans of gould, and shewed him that this Treasure appertained neither to King nor Emperour, but alone to you, which is so great that no man liuing can esteeme it / you may take it & beare 16 it away, or giue it whereas it shall please you, and whatsoeuer you take from it, all your life it shall not diminish nor decrease.’ When Croissant vnderstood them, hee was ioyfull, and thanked the Knightes in 20 that they hadde so longe kept his Treasure ; then they tooke leaue of Croissant, and embraced him, and sayd, ‘Sir, we require you to bee courteous and liberall, and pitifull to the poore, and loue well all noble and wise 24 men, and giue to them largely, and be good and true to your Father in law, King Guymart, for he is a noble and a wise Prince ; you ought to thanke him, & to loue him aboue all other men liuing.’ Then Croissant thanked 28 them of their good aduertisement, and then they tooke their leaue, and so departed sodenly, that neither Croissant nor Guymart wist not where they were become, whereof they were abasshed, and made on 32 them the signe of the crosse ; then they looked about the Chamber and saw the Treasure that was there, whereof Croissant was so abasshed that he wist not what to say, for there was a great light in the Chamber 36

as though there had been Thirtie Torches lighted, by reason of the bright stones that were there. to speake of the Treasure that was in that Chamber,
 4 I cannot shewe it, for ther was so much that they were thereof abasshed to behold it.

The brilliance of
the treasure gives
a great light in
the room.

When Croissant sawe this Treasure, it was no maruaile though he was ioyfull, and thought to himselfe
 8 that he would not spare to giue to them that were worthy, & such as did serue him truely, and so hee did, for he gaue so largely that all the Citie praised him ; and when they had beene there a certaine space,
 12 Croissant sayd to King Guymart, ‘Sir, of this treasure I will that you haue the one halfe, & you shall haue the keys of that, and giue thereof at your pleasure.’
 ‘Faire Sonne,’ (quoth the King) ‘I thanke you, all that
 16 I haue is yours, and all that you haue is mine, wee will part nothing betweene vs as longe as we liue.’ Then they departed from thence, and Croissant tooke certaine of the iewels to giue to his Spouse ; and then they
 20 departed out of the Chamber, & locked the dore, & tooke the key with them, and so they returned to the Pallacie right ioyfull. Then Croissant gaue to the Lady the rich iewels, who then humbly thanked
 24 him therefore.

¹¶ Of the great Treasure that they had, and how Croissant wedded the noble damsell, daughter to King Guymart, and of the
 28 feast there made. Ch. clxxx[x]iiii.

32



Fter that King *Guymart* and *Croissant* were returned to the Pallacie, the Ladie was readye appareld, and then the two Louers were weddede togither in the Chappell of the Pallacie. The great ioye and myrth

Croissant and the
emperor's daughter
are married.

¹ added leaf.

that was made in the Citie I omyte, they dyned, and after dynner the yong Knyghts justed, and the joye and sporte cannot be expressed, and after supper, and the dauncing was done, *Croissant* and his Ladie went 4 to bed in a riche Chamber; so faire a coupelle was neuer seene, and on the morowe the feasteinge was renewed, and continuede fifteene dayes. And longe tyme thei lyued togither. So that at laste King 8 *Guymarte* lay sickle in bed, and on the fourthe daye he dyede, to the great sorowe of Ladie *Katherine* his daughter, and of *Croissant*, who dearelye loude him. And after his deathe, by the consente of all the Lordes 12 of the empire, *Croissant* was crowned *Emperour*. And the Ladie *Katherine Empress*, at whos coronation was made greate feasting and ioye. *Croissant* amended and encreased the signiorie of Rome, & conquered 16 diuers Realms, as Ierusalem, And all Surrey, as more plainlye you may knowe by the Cronicle that is made of him and his.

King Guymarte
dies,

and Croissant is
crowned his suc-
cessor.

Here ends the history of Huon of Bourdeaux.
Thus endethe the auncient, honourable, famouse, 20 and delightfuller hystorie of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, one of the Peers of Fraunce, and Duke of Guyenne, and of dyuers Princes liuing in hys tyme. Translated out of frenche into English by Syr Iohn Bourchire, Knight, 24 Lord *Berniers*, at the requeste of the Lord *Hastings, Earl of Huntinton*, in the yeare of our Lorde God, one thousande five hundredre and three score and Ten, and now newlie reuised and corrected thys present yeare, 28 1601.

FINIS.

PREFATORY NOTE.

APOLOGY for my unconscionable delay in completing this edition of Lord Berners' *Huon of Burdeux* may be misconstrued as an impertinence. I will therefore only venture to say, that since I undertook the work and produced the first part early in 1883, my time has been more fully occupied than I could have then anticipated, and that my leisure has of late years grown very limited. I trust, however, that this concluding portion of my labour will not seem unsatisfactory to those who were good enough to express approval of my earlier efforts.

My best thanks are due to Mr. W. A. Clouston for the interesting and valuable notes which he has supplied on the magical episodes in the Romance.

SIDNEY L. LEE.

APPENDIX.

- I. *Lord Berners and Euphuism*, p. 785.
- II. *Lord Berners' work on Calais*, p. 789.
- III. *The Hamilton MS. of Huon*, p. 789.
- IV. *Contemporary Criticism of Huon*, p. 790.
- V. *The Bibliography of Lord Berners' Huon*, p. 791.
- VI. *The 1601 Revision of Lord Berners' English*, p. 791.
- VII. *A table of the magical incidents in the romance, with notes*, p. 798.
- VIII. *Index Locorum, with a note on the romance's geography*, p. 811.
- IX. *Index Nominum*,¹ p. 815.
- X. *Glossary*, p. 839.

I. LORD BERNERS AND EUPHUIISM.²

IT has been recently proved that English Euphuism is a Spanish product,—an imitation of the style of Antonio de Guevara, a Spanish writer of the early part of the sixteenth century. John Lyly, the author of *Euphues*, has been deprived of the honour, long assigned him, of having invented ‘a new English.’³ The leading characteristics of his manner of writing are undoubtedly borrowed from Sir Thomas North’s translation of Guevara’s popular book, *Libro del Emperador Marco Aurelio con el Relox de Principes*.⁴ North’s version appeared under the title of the *Dial of Princes*, in 1557, with a dedication to Queen Mary: it was republished in 1568, ‘newly reuised and corrected, and refourmed of faultes escaped in the first edition.’ Lyly’s indebtedness to North has been fully illustrated elsewhere,⁵ but it is important to note here that North himself was anticipated by Lord Berners in his endeavour to introduce Guevara’s style and

¹ The editorial matter is fully indexed here.

² See Introduction, p. xlvi.

³ In 1632 Edward Blount, when issuing Lyly’s *Six Court Comedies*, writes of the author in an address ‘to the Reader’ :—‘ Our Nation are in his debt, for a new English which hee taught them. *Euphues* and his England [i. e. Lyly’s book] began first that language.’

⁴ It is worth noting that all the English translations from Guevara were made through the French.

⁵ See *Euphuismus*, by Dr. Landmann, Giessen, 1881; *Shakspere and Euphuism*, by Dr. Landmann, in New Shakspere Soc.’s Transactions, 1884.

his best known work to English readers. Doubts were fully expressed at the time of the first publication of North's translation, as to his right to claim the glory of having discovered Guevara, or even of having done any part of the work of translation himself. The charges were in part justified.¹ Lord Berners and Lord Berners' nephew, Sir Francis Bryan,—the first Englishmen to present their countrymen with Guevara's writings in English versions,—did more for Guevara's fame and influence in England than Sir Thomas North. And their labours were at the service of the public many years before North attempted authorship.

'At Calais ye tenth daie of Marche in the yere of the reigne of our soueraygne lorde King Henry the .VIII. xxiiii' (i. e. 1533), Lord Berners completed, according to the colophon of the first published edition of 1534, his translation of Guevara's *Marke Aurelie Emperour*, otherwise called the *Golden Boke*. The Spanish original bore the title *Libro Aureo de Marco Aurelio Emperador y Eloquentissimo Orador*, and it was an expanded version of the same work that Sir Thomas North anglicized three-and-twenty years later. Both versions are identical in style and almost identical in subject matter; and a comparison of the two translations shows that Lord Berners writing in 1533 (and not North writing in 1557) is the true parent of Euphuism or Guevarism in England.

I print side by side Berners' and North's versions of the prologue of the *Golden Boke*. Lord Berners' sentences are Euphuistic beyond all question; they are characterized by the forced antitheses, the alliteration, and the far-fetched illustrations from natural phenomena, characteristic of Lyly and his successors.² The subject is the destructive and productive powers of Time:—

¹ To the second edition of the *Dial of Princes* North added a fourth book, which he had previously omitted, and 'certen letters [of Guevara] written by Marcus Aurelius, selected out of the Spanishe copie, not wrytten in the Frenche tongue.' In 'the Epistle to the Reader,' which prefaces these appendices, North writes under date 16th May, 1568: 'What detracting tongues report of mee & my first trauell in the translation of this *Dyall*, enlarging them at pleasure to woork my defame, disabling my dooing heerein, by brute yt was no woork of myne, but the fruit of others labor: I neede not much force, since by dayly proof wee see that yll desposed mynds can neuer frame an honest tongue in head.'

² These results have been previously made public in a letter contributed to

BERNERS.

' There is nothyng so entier, but it diminishest ; nor nothyng so hole, but that is wery ; nor nothyng so strong, but that it breaketh ; nor nothyng so well kept, but that it corrupteth. . . . The fruites in the spryngynge tyme haue not the vertue to gyue sustenavnce, nor perfyte swetenesse to satisfie the taste of them that eateth thereof : but thanne passeth the season of sommer and haruest comethe, whiche tyme doth better rype them, and thanne that that we do eat, dothe profyte us, the prose thereof is ryghte sauerynesse, and gyueth the more force and vertue, and the greater is the taste.'

NORTH.

' There is nothing so entyer but may be diminished : nothyng so healthful but may be diseased : nothing so strong, but may be broken : neyther anything so wel kept, but may be corrupted. . . . The fruits of the spring time haue no force to giue sustenance, nor perfait swetenesse to giue any samour, but after that the sommer is past and haruest commeth, they rype and then all that we eat nourisheth more and gyueth a better tast.'

The popularity of Lord Berners' translation, of which nine editions are known to have been published between 1534 and 1560, and five between 1560 and 1588, is a remarkable indication of the favour bestowed on Euphuistic style in England before the time of North or Lyl.

But more can be proved in the same direction. The translator's prologue to Lord Berners' *Froissart*, written in 1524, and that to be found in other of his works, show him to have come under Guevara's or a similar influence before he translated the *Golden Boke*. In the following abbreviated extracts from the prologue to *Froissart* the parallelism of the sentences, the repetition of the same thought differently expressed, the rhetorical question, the accumulation of synonyms, the classical references are irrefutable witnesses to the presence of well-developed Euphuism. Berners is writing of the advantages of history :—

the *Athenaeum*, for 18th August, 1883. To make the parallel more effective, the following extracts from Lylly's *Euphues*, in which the form of the sentences is almost identical with those in the two passages printed above, should be read with them :—'There is nothing lyghter than a feather, yet is it sette a loft in a woemann's hatte : nothing slighter then haire, yet is it most frisled in a Ladies head, so that I am in good hope, though there be nothing of lesse accounte then *Euphues*, yet he shal be marked with Ladies eyes, & lyked sometimes in their eares' (p. 221) ; or, 'There is nothing more swifter than time, nothing more sweeter : wee haue not as *Seneca* saith little time to liue but we leese muche, neither haue we a short life by Nature, but we make it shorter by naughtynesse' (p. 152).

'Ones the continuall redyng thereof maketh yonge men equall in prudence to olde men; and to olde fathers stryken in age, it mynstryth experiance of thinges. More it yeldeth priuate persons worthy of dignyte, rule and gouernaunce: it compelleth the emperours, hygh rulers, and gouernours to do noble dedes, to thende they may optayne immortall glory: it exciteth, moueth and stereth the strong, hardy warriours for the great laude that they haue after they ben deed promptly to go in hande with great and harde parels in defence of their countre: it prohybyteth reprovable persons to do mischeuous dedes. . . . What moued the strong and ferse Hercules to enterpryse in his lyfe so many great incomparable labours and parylls? . . . In semblable wyse dyd his imitator, noble dvke Theseus and many other. . . . What knowledge should we haue of auncyent thinges past, and historie were not, whiche is the testymony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembraunce and the messanger of antiquite? Why moued and stered Phaleryus, the kynge of Plitholome oft and delyg^gntly to rede bokes? Forsothe for none other cause but that

Nor was Lord Berners the only author who fell under Euphuistic influences at this early date. His sister Margaret was the mother of Sir Francis Bryan, one of Henry VIII's favourites, and a lover of literature, who was influenced by his uncle's literary tastes.¹ The first edition of Berners' *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius* was published posthumously. The colophon states the translation to have been undertaken 'at the instaunt desire of his [Berners'] neuewe Sir Frauncis Bryan knyghte,' and to Sir Francis its posthumous publication was avowedly due. At the close of Berners' *Golden Boke* is a passage applauding the 'swete style' of 'the sentences of this booke,' which is an 'envoy' in praise of Guevarism almost certainly from Sir Francis' pen. Bryan's admiration of Guevara is further shown by his own translation of another of Guevara's works in 1548. The English title runs:—*A Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier in Commendacion of the Life of a Labouryng Man*. London (by T. Berthelet), August 1548. Bryan must therefore be placed beside his uncle as one of the progenitors of English Euphuism. And Lord Berners must be held responsible for the direction of his nephew's literary tastes.²

¹ See the article on Bryan in the *Dictionary of National Biog.*

² It may, perhaps, be not deemed altogether impertinent if I note here the chief editions of English translations of Guevara's works published before the issue of Lyly's *Euphuie* in 1579:—

II. LORD BERNERS' WORK ON CALAIS.

On p. xlvi of the Introduction I state, on the authority of Anthony à Wood, that Lord Berners was the author of a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*. At the time of writing I was not aware that this work was still extant, but I now find that Mr. J. G. Nichols, in his edition of *The Chronicle of Calais*, published by the Camden Society in 1846, had identified it with a copy of *Ordinances for Watch and Ward of Calais*, printed by him from the British Museum (MS. Cotton. Faust. E. vii, 89—102b). The tract is of no literary interest, but it gives a valuable account of the police regulations enforced in Calais while under English rule.

III. THE HAMILTON MS. OF *HUON*.

On p. xxxv I state, on the authority of the *Athenaeum*, that the Hamilton collection of MSS. included an illuminated copy of the French poetical romance of *Huon of Burdenx*.

-
- | | |
|------|---|
| 1534 | |
| 1535 | |
| 1537 | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1542 | |
| 1546 | |
| 1548 | <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , by Sir Francis Bryan. |
| 1554 | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1557 | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1560 | <i>The Golden Boke</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1568 | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , 2nd edit., by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1574 | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guerara</i> , by Edward Hellowes. |
| 1575 | <i>A Looking Glasse for the Courte</i> , composed in the Castillian tongue, by the Lorde Anthony of Guevara, Bishop of Mondliment out of Castilian drawne into French by Anthony Alaygre, and out of the Frenche tongue into English, by Sir Frauncis Bryan, Knight . . . —a second edition of <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , edited by T. Tymme, minister. |
| 1577 | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara</i> , by Edward Hellowes (2nd edit.). |
| 1577 | <i>A Chronicle conteyning the Lives of tenne Emperours of Rome</i> , compiled by the most famous Syr Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Queen Elizabeth. |
| 1577 | <i>Golden Epistles</i> : gathered as well out of the remaynder of Guevara's woorkes as other Authours. Latin, French, and Italian, by Geoffrey Fenton. |
| 1578 | <i>A booke of the Invention of the Art of Navigation</i> . . . compiled by the famous Sir Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Lord Howard of Ellingham. |

At the time of writing, the sale of these MSS. to the German Government had just been completed ; but although they had arrived in Berlin, the authorities there had not had time to examine them. Herr Tobler has since examined the romances included in the MSS. ; and has published an account of the Huon MS. in the transactions of the Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin. It there appears that the MS. is a version of the *chanson de geste* of *Huon d'AUVERGNE*, and has no concern whatever with *Huon of Bordeaux*.

IV. CONTEMPORARY CRITICISM OF HUON.

To the instances given above on pp. xlviij and xlix should be added the very uncomplimentary notice of ‘Huon’ in ‘The Epistle to the Reader,’ prefixed by Thomas Bowes to the second of his ‘French Academie’ (1594)—a translation from the French of Primaudaye. After denouncing dramatists as atheists, Bowes proceeds :—

‘It were too long to set downe the Catalogue of those lewde and lascivious booke which haue mustered themselues of late yeeres in Paules Churchyard, as chosen souldiers ready to fight vnder the diuels banner, of which it may bee truely said, that they prevaile no lesse (if not more) to the vpholding of Atheisme in this light of the Gospel, then the Legend of Lies, *Huon of Burdeaux*, King Arthur, with the rest of that rabble, were of force to maintaine Popery in the dayes of ignorance.’

The passage from Gervase Markham’s *Health to the Gentlemanly Profession of Serving Men* (1578), in which reference is made to *Huon of Burdeux*, may be worth giving in full (cf. p. xlix and p. 370). Markham is referring to the baneful attractions which gold has for mankind. He adds :—

‘But the Deuill (in my iudgement), the authour, roote, and originall of all mischiefe and miserie hath infused into this mettall some peice of Adamant, and into man’s desire and affection some lumpe of Iron ; which Adamant, according to his nature, drawing the Iron vnto it, linketh them selues togeather in undesolveable bondes, not much vnlyke the Castle of Adamant, feigned in the historie of *Hughon of Burdeaux*, which Castle having drawne the sayd Hughon vnto it, all hope of departure thence was quite extinguished, onely except he coulde escape and be thence delyuered by an extraordinarie and imminent danger : which was to be carried ouer the sea in the clawes of a Griffine, whose desire was to deuoure

him, and that was one danger ; and in great hazard in regarde of his wayghte to fall from the sayd Grifline into the ocean and so be drowned, and that was another danger ; which dangers as they were great and perilous, so I holde them perils no lesse dangerous and as hard for them to be separated and deliuerner from this pernitious Adamant Castle that hath linked and chained them selues unto it by their extraordinarie couetowse desire of this worldly Mammon.'

V. THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF LORD BERNERS' *HUON*.¹

On 1 Feb. 1638-9 Master Purfoot assigned to Master Thomas Wright all his interest in *Huon of Burdeux*, and in *The History of Valentine and Orson* (Arber's Transcript of the Stationers' Registers, iv. 45).

VI. THE 1601 REVISION OF LORD BERNERS' ENGLISH.

Nearly seventy years after the romance of *Huon* was translated by Lord Berners into the English of his generation, the publisher of a third edition (1601) entered on his title-page that 'the rude English' was 'corrected and amended.'² The first paragraph is completely recast in the Elizabethan version, and shows that the reviser at first contemplated rewriting the romance in a pompous Euphuistic style. 'In the tyme accountyle the yere of grace' becomes 'In the time by computation called ye yeere of grace;' 'Charles the Grte, namyd Charlemayn' becomes 'Charles the Great, more vulgarly knownen by the name of Charlemaigne ;' and the last sentence of the paragraph is transformed thus :—

c. 1533.

'The renoume of hym & of hys noble valiaunt chualry strechyd out of ye eest into the west in such wyse that for euer there shalbe made of hym perpetuall memory, as here after ye shall here.'

1601.

'But let it suffice, God was their guide, Religion the cause, Honour the obiect, & perpetuall Fame the reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to theyr valorous enterprises ; extending both his & their renowne to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the kalender of euer dying memorie.'

¹ See page lvii.

² See p. lvi, *sup.*

On pp. 6-7 another long passage is completely transformed, but, unlike the opening paragraph, the revised language is studiously made simple and straightforward.

This sweeping style of revision was, however, rapidly abandoned. In the rest of the book the revision affected every page, but the method proved that it was merely undertaken by a rapid reader—probably a printer's reader—mainly with a view to removing the obvious archaisms. Old words, liable to puzzle the pleasure-seeking public, to whom romances appealed, were replaced by modern words; the Gallicized English, in which Lord Berners, an accomplished French scholar, not infrequently indulged, was completely anglicized; the punctuation and spelling were occasionally made to conform to more modern rules; now and then an old-fashioned construction was altogether reformed; in very rare cases the sentence was rewritten. The alterations were not made with sufficient system to satisfy all the requirements of scientific philology, but they exhibit in a practical fashion the notions of an every-day Elizabethan as to the characteristic differences between his own written language and that of his grandfather.

Of purely grammatical changes made on archaic grounds, those affecting inflections are not very numerous. The plural forms *eyen* (p. 13) and *yere* (p. 29) are replaced by *eyes* and *yeoures*. The pronoun *ye* disappears in favour of *you*, and the forms *tho* (p. 193) and *moo* (p. 36) become *those* and *more*. In the case of verbs, such strong forms of the past tense as *bet* (p. 86) and *clame* (p. 683) are softened into *did beat* and *did clime* (climb). The old ending of past tenses and participles in *-yde* or *-yd* (*apealyde*, *baynyd*, *deuysyd*, etc.) is modernized into *-ed*. *Quwl* (p. 21) becomes *quoth*, and the participial termination of *-en* in *bresten* (p. 69) is abandoned. The termination *-eth* or *-yth* in third person plural of present tenses is not uncommon in Lord Berners. Thus he writes, '*These thynges hath*' (p. 9), and '*I se them aproche that desyryth my deth*' (p. 26). In the Elizabethan version these phrases become '*These thynges have*', and '*I se them aproche that desire my death*'.

Changes of construction are rarely made in the 1601 revision. But the double negative did not approve itself to the reviser, and he

usually removes one of the negative particles. Thus ‘none other shall have *no profyght*’ (p. 13) becomes ‘none other shall have *any honour*;’ and ‘*nor never none* of hys lynage gaue as yette very good counsell’ (p. 12) becomes ‘*nor ever any* of his lynage,’ etc. A few of Lord Berners’ favourite constructions are loose adaptations from the French, and these are as a rule removed. In Lord Berners’ phrase ‘[they] *coulde* them great thanke’ (p. 499) the reviser reads *gave* for *coulde*, thus conforming to modern usage. This is a favourite phrase with Lord Berners (cp. ‘I *can* you grete thanke,’ p. 5). The French original has ‘[Je] *bon gré vous scay*,’ and Lord Berners slavishly reproduces the phrase, translating *savoir* by *can* [O.E. *can*, *cunnan* = *ken*, *know*]. In Berners’ *Froissart* the expression is more frequently employed. Cotgrave, like the reviser, does not recognize it. Under *savoir* he translates ‘*savoir bon gré à . . .*’ by ‘*to give thanks unto . . .*’

The rejection of archaic words is the most valuable part of the reviser’s labour. So far as connecting particles and non-substantive words are concerned, the enumeration is necessarily brief, but each of them is important. Thus *or* in the sense of *before* is invariably rejected for *ere* or *before*. The enclitic *as*, which Lord Berners was in the habit of occasionally adding to *there* and *then*, and almost invariably to *where*, is always dropped. *Than* for *then* is never accepted, and the forms *syn* (p. 199), *seen*, or *sin* are not allowed to do duty for *since*. *Towards* or *toward* is in Lord Berners’ language used as two separate words, and the word governed by it is very often inserted after *to*. Thus we meet with *to her warde* (p. 254), *to us warde* (p. 295), *to the host warde* (p. 328), *to ye galowes warde* (p. 328), *to the tre warde*; but all these in the Elizabethan version are transformed into *towarsh her*, *towarsh us*, *towardes the Hooste*, *toward the gallowes*, and *towards the tre*. *Clene* for *wholly*, as in *clene armyd* (p. 197), is replaced by *all*. *The which* figures perpetually in the old version, and the article is rejected in the new (cp. p. 16). *What* is not allowed to stand for *why* (p. 33), and the excessive employment of *that* to the exclusion of *which*, and with vague reference not to the preceding word, but to long clauses, is avoided by the Elizabethan. The awkwardness of the repetition of *then*,

used merely as a connecting particle—a common feature of all early English prose—is met by its omission or by the substitution of *and*. With regard to auxiliary verbs, it should be noted that *a*, the attenuated form of *have* (p. 149), and *woll*, a common variant of *will* (p. 87), either of which is frequent in Lord Berners' prose, are not found in the revised version. The verb *do* is used far more loosely by Lord Berners than his successor allowed to be correct. Thus Berners writes ‘They *dyd* to have Huon jugyd’ (p. 22), where the reviser substitutes *laboured* for *dyd*; ‘[He] *dyd of* his brothers gowne’ (p. 28) becomes ‘he *did take off*'; in the sentence ‘ye that . . . haue well herde the grete vnresonablenes that the kynge *do* too one of oure peeres,’ *do* is replaced in the Elizabethan version by *offers*. Another very common verb used by Lord Berners is *ween* or *went* for *think* or *thought*. The latter in the 1601 version invariably takes the former's place. It is clear that such a phrase as ‘it skeeleth not of my deth’ (p. 677) had an archaic sound to the reader of 1601, for he refashions it as ‘It is no matter though I die.’

The following list contains most of the substantive words, which the Elizabethan appears to have rejected on the sole ground that they had fallen or were falling out of common use. Many of them still figured in the poetry of the day, and Shakespeare pressed some of them into his service. But the fact that the reviser of Lord Berners' text put himself to the pains of substituting for them more familiar expressions, is positive proof that they sounded in his ear rude or old-fashioned. The reader will hardly need to be warned that the substituted word is not always the best or even a correct representative of the original. A reference to the Glossary will sufficiently remove difficulties on this score.

<i>e.</i> 1533.			1601.
apayred	...	...	p. 240 replaced by grieued
apealyde	...	p. 22	{
appellyd	...	p. 31	”
arson	...	p. 700	”
beseen	...	p. 119	”
brast	...	p. 103	”
brest	...	p. 117	”
carnall	...	p. 33	”
chere	...	p. 57	”
clypped	...	p. 635	”
crope	...	p. 169	”
			appeached
			pommell (of a saddle)
			adorned
			brake
			burst
			louing
			countenance
			embraced
			back

c. 1533.				1601.
dele	...	...	p. 554	replaced by
departed	...	...	p. 336	"
fell	...	...	p. 120	"
fellest	...	...	p. 210	"
fordo	...	...	p. 487	"
gader [i.e. gather]	...	...	p. 305	"
grees	...	...	p. 373	"
grese	...	...	p. 119	"
hore	...	...	p. 224	"
imagenyd	...	...	p. 221	"
impe	...	...	p. 12	"
japery	...	...	p. 85	"
lesyngē	...	...	p. 37	"
leuer	...	...	p. 349	"
meny	...	...	p. 499	"
pylhyngē	...	...	p. 401	"
refuse	...	...	p. 70	"
scot	...	...	p. 704	"
sore abasshed	...	...	p. 359	"
soppe	...	...	p. 38	"
sparhawkē	...	...	p. 7	"
swounyd	...	...	p. 24	"
trough	...	...	p. 31	"
yode	...	...	p. 636	"
wanhope	...	...	p. 364	"
went	...	...	pp. 200, 233	"
wente	...	...	p. 334	"

The following Gallicized words, used by Lord Berners as well as by Caxton and a few other early translators from the French, were never fairly naturalized in England. How literal Lord Berners could be on occasion, our comment on his use of 'can grete thanke' has already shown. With it may be compared such a phrase as 'escryed a hye,' by which Berners renders 'escria en haut.' Several of those words which were ejected by the Elizabethan reviser (cp. *parents*, *denise*) had not, however, entirely dropped out of the language, but they were quickly disappearing, and clearly were not quite familiar in 1601. As in the case of the merely archaic words, the reviser's rendering is not always correct (cp. *entreathed*). Reference should be made to the Glossary when the sense is not obvious.

c. 1533.				1601.
in amours with	...	p. 630	replaced by	enamoured of
assembeled	...	p. 613	"	assailed
assembelyd	...	p. 659	"	assaulted
bayngned	...	p. 537	{	bathed
baynyd	...	p. 427	}	
bountye	...	p. 146	"	goodness

	c. 1533.		1601.
brochyd (<i>broche</i>)	p. 22	replaced by	spurred
chatelyne	p. 493	"	captain
conduete	p. 18	"	conducte
consent any	p. 27	"	give consent to
cordiner	p. 764	"	shoemakers
couetys	p. 251 }	"	couetousness
couytes	p. 320 }	"	
defend	p. 46	"	forbid
deuysyd	p. 7	"	advised
deuysinge	p. 13	"	communing
deyses	p. 58	"	conferences
to deuyse	p. 630	"	to sport
dispender	p. 738	"	spender
dyspence	p. 718	"	charges
dolent	p. 356	"	sorrowfull
dolour	p. 32	"	ill hap
doloure	p. 3	"	greefe
domage	p. 146	"	wrong
dystroyed	p. 46	"	weore impouerished
enbassed	p. 740	"	ambassage
enbassetours	p. 740	"	ambassadours
endoctryned	p. 576	"	educated
ensample	p. 12	"	example
entreathed	p. 642	"	entertained
entreathed	p. 657	"	threatened
escryed a hye	p. 185	"	cryed on hye
extorsyon	p. 47	"	crueltie
feloney	p. 696	"	villany
felony	p. 4	"	rashness
fersly	p. 23	"	boldly
fyaunsed	p. 686	"	wedded
glotons	p. 639	"	villaines
a high	p. 197	"	aloud
inportable	p. 544	"	insupportable
mastres	p. 696	"	mistress
messe	p. 216	"	service
mossell	p. 140	"	nostril
muryed	p. 650	"	immured
Noyfull	p. 440	"	Yrkesome
Noyfull	p. 579	"	too tedious
occysyon	p. 320	"	slaughter
oreson	p. 146	"	prayer
par[ent]age	p. 693	"	lyneage
parent	p. 9	"	kiusman
parentes	p. 2, 12	"	kindred
pastaunce	p. 46	"	pastime
payne	p. 644	"	labour
prefessyd	p. 34	"	pretended
purchase	p. 12	"	provide
purchaseth for	p. 13	"	seeks
purchasyd for	p. 216	"	practised against
rased	p. 145	"	torne
reculyd	p. 42	"	stagred

	c. 1533.		1601.
releue	...	p. 198	replaced by
releuyd	...	p. 147	"
renyed	...	p. 89	"
requere	...	p. 21	"
require	...	p. 264	"
rybaadis	...	p. 538	"
semylytude	...	pp. 41, 138	"
stradiot	...	p. 761	"
Vaylable	...	p. 12	"
Vileny	...	p. 20	"

Several misprints and puzzling misspellings were justifiably corrected by the Elizabethan, of which the following are the most notable :—

Misprints.

	c. 1533.	1601.
above	p. 160	alone
aperaelyd	p. 74	appointed
aryued	p. 181	armyd
commoneyng	p. 392	coming
excusyd	p. 26	accused
folye	p. 302	foyled
frusshes	p. 474	russhe
inbushyd	p. 25	ambushed

Misspellings.

	c. 1533.	1601.
besynes	p. 14	businesse
herber	p. 704	arbour
imposessyonys	p. 210	impositions
leaueth the	p. 166	Historie
lybardes	p. 16	leopardes
portruyd	p. 412	portraiture
seasyd, i.e. ceased	p. 14	stayed
sirode	p. 359	sea roode

Not infrequently when attempting to remove a difficulty caused by misspelling he comes to grief. Thus, ‘If any *plee* come therly,’ which means ‘if any plea or charge be brought,’ the reviser reads, ‘If any *hurt* come.’ The French original reads *plait*. ‘He shal derely aby(e) (*i.e.* abide) it’ (p. 305) is rendered ‘He shall dearly *buy* it.’ ‘To ordayne a bayenge,’ *i.e.* a ‘bayninge,’ or ‘bathing,’ is changed into ‘To ordaine a rich bed.’

A large number of changes were made like the last out of pure lightness of heart, and no philological deduction can be drawn from them. They were doubtless prompted in the first instance by the awkward spelling of the old text. Most of these changes are just such as a printer’s reader might be expected to make if left to his own devices, and prove how permanent are the characteristics of these invaluable men, to whom no author ought to omit an opportunity of expressing his frequent indebtedness.

c. 1533.		1601.	c. 1533.		1601.
force	p. 152	violence	dysordynate	p. 696	inordinate
chorlysshely	p. 757	stubbornly	fell after	p. 4	afterwards en-
clerely	p. 363	evidently			sued
clerkes	p. 732	doctors	fortunyd	p. 21	happened
drams, <i>i. e.</i>			praysyd	p. 39	regarded
drachms	p. 142	ducates	rengyd, <i>i. e.</i>		
dyshordenate	p. 700	dishonorable	ranged	p. 494	arriued

It is not safe to draw any very large conclusion from the revision. But a comparison of the two versions shows that while the structure of the language had changed very slightly, about five per cent. of Lord Berners' vocabulary was judged to be out of date, nearly seventy years after his death, by a reader who made his standard of intelligibility the ordinary speech of his well-to-do contemporaries. At the same time it is noticeable, although not surprising, that the great literature of the end of the sixteenth century excluded a far smaller percentage of Lord Berners' vocabulary. Poets always have a predilection for the archaisms of language. Many words ejected by the Elizabethan reviser from Lord Berners' text are employed by Shakespeare in plays that were written about the date of the revision. The fact proves, if proof were needed, that Shakespeare freely indulged a taste for archaic expressions, and was exceptionally well read in the works of his predecessors.

VII. A TABLE OF THE MAGICAL EPISODES IN THE ROMANCE.

* * * It is worth noting that the most striking of Huon's magical adventures—his shipwreck on the adamant rock, his fight with the griffin, and his journey down the subterranean river—consecutively recorded on pp. 354—386 and pp. 407—444,¹ are related in the same order, and with little difference in detail, in the popular Bavarian story of *Herzog Ernst von Baiern* (see Karl Bartsch's scholarly edition issued at Vienna in 1869, and Simrock's *Die Deutschen Volksbücher*, iii. 305—15). The prose version of the folk-tale about Duke Ernest is still well known throughout Germany. It appears in its earliest known shape in a poem (of the Lower Rhine), of which a twelfth

¹ On pp. 387—407 the story of Esclarmonde's sufferings at the siege of Bordeaux is inserted.

century MS. is extant. Arranged somewhat differently, each of Huon's magical adventures appears in one or other of the seven journeys of Sindbad the Sailor in the *Arabian Nights*. That the whole episode is of Oriental origin admits of no doubt. But two interesting questions suggest themselves. By what channel did the story reach the authors of *Huon* and of *Herzog Ernst*? Which of the two authors may claim the credit of first presenting it to European readers? Probably the Crusades produced sufficient intercourse between Europe and Asia to supply an answer to the first question. The second might be the subject of prolonged investigation, but a first survey of the evidence can point only to one result. The earliest extant manuscript of *Huon* which includes these adventures is of the fourteenth century (see p. xxxiii, *supra*). The date of the earliest extant manuscript of this portion of *Huon* is not, however, in itself conclusive as to the date of its composition. Nevertheless there are indications that historical events of the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries were known to the romancer, and we are not inclined to accept a date earlier than the fourteenth century for the later sections of the romance. The earliest version of *Herzog Ernst* has been dated two centuries earlier. Hence a strong presumption is created in favour of the theory that the author of *Huon* borrowed from the author of *Herzog Ernst*.

THE ADAMANT ROCK.

This magnetic rock, which appears in the story of *Herzog Ernst*, and in the story of Sindbad in the *Arabian Nights*, draws towards it all ships (with iron nails in them), and on Huon reaching it (p. 370) the masts of vessels which have been wrecked on it are so massed together as to present the appearance of a forest. Sir John Mandeville describes it in almost identical terms (ed. 1839, pp. 161, 163, 271). He localizes it in a Chinese sea; other writers, like the author of the *Arabian Nights*, place it somewhere between Tonquin and Cochin China.¹

The myth of the existence of a magnetic rock that drew the iron nails out of passing ships, thus causing them to go to pieces, or that bodily attracted them to it (for it is told both ways), is one of the numerous marvels of the

¹ The small-type notes are by Mr. W. A. Clouston.

'hollow-sounding and mysterious main' so universally credited in mediæval times. It had doubtless been orally current in Europe long before the date of either *Duke Ernst* or *Huon*: and while it may have been brought from the East through the Crusades, it is perhaps as likely to have been introduced through the Moors of Spain. Be this as it may, the incidents of Duke Huon's first journey to the East have an unquestionable resemblance to some of the adventures of the renowned Sindbád.

In the old French romance of the *Chévalier Berin* there is a very curious account of the Rock of Adamant, which drew the ex-king of Blandie's five ships to it. The crews were in despair, for well they knew that when their food was all consumed a terrible, lingering death was in store for them. Presently an extremely attenuated man is observed to creep on board one of the ships, in quest of food, as it turns out, and he informs them that there is an inscription on the rock, but he had not read it. Aigres, the brave son of Berinus, goes on to the rock with the lean man, who shows him the inscription, which was to this effect: 'Whoever may touch this rock can only be freed by depositing on it all his wealth, save what may be necessary to enable him to complete his voyage: one of the crew, chosen by lot, must then go to the top of the rock and cast into the sea the ring which he will find there, when the vessel shall instantly be freed, but he must remain on the rock.' Aigres returns and acquaints them of the purport of the inscription: lots are drawn, and Aigres is the victim. After bidding his family adieu, he goes to the top of the rock, throws the ring in the sea, and all the five ships are at once set free and sail away, taking the remarkably lean man with them. The rock is infested by enchanters, but the gallant Aigres contrives to avoid their snares, until another ship is drawn to the rock, when he informs the mariners of the only means by which they can escape (for it would appear the ring returned to the top of the rock each time it was thrown into the sea). Lots are drawn, and so on, as before—an inconsistent story, if ever there was one!

The Rock of Adamant also figures in the Legend of St. Brandanus.—Is it possible that the myth had its origin in some old-world sailor's 'yarn' of an actual rock, now submerged, to which vessels were driven by a very strong current, a mishap which the unskillful navigators might ascribe to the attracting force of the rock itself? There is always a substratum of fact in legends of this kind, could it be discovered—they were not wholly invented.

THE APPLES OF YOUTH.

At the bidding of an angel Huon gathers three of these apples, each of which, when eaten by a man of eighty or a hundred years old, transforms him to a young man of thirty (p. 436). Huon bestows one of these apples on the Admiral of Tauris (p. 465), and his white hair and beard grow yellow as he eats it, and he suddenly becomes a youth of strength and beauty. The second is eaten by the abbot of Cluny, who is 114 years old, with similar results (pp. 552—5). The third rejuvenates Thierry, Emperor of Germany (p. 568).

This is essentially an Oriental idea—the counterpart of that of the Water of Immortality. In Indian story-books fruits—generally mangoes, the favourite fruit of high and low throughout Hindústán—are frequently represented as

possessing magical properties, such as curing barrenness in women, and conferring perennial youth upon whoever ate of them. We are told in the Persian Parrot-Book (*Tati Nima*),¹ for instance, that a Prince having obtained some fruit of the Tree of Life, which grew in a far distant land, in order to test its virtue, gave part to a decrepit old woman ('experimentum in corpore vili'), who no sooner tasted it than she became a blooming damsel of 'sweet eighteen.' With variations, the same story is found in several Indian collections, such as the *Kathá Manjari*, and there is also a version of it in the Tamil romance entitled *Alakésa Kathá*; in both it is a mango fruit that has this quality, and the king causes some of it to be given to an aged goldsmith who was in prison for fraud, and it turned him into a youth of sixteen years —let us trust he was then released, that he might begin life over again!

There is a rather curious story about this kind of fruit in the Indian romance entitled *Sinhasana Dwatrinsati*, or Thirty-two Tales of a Throne (and it occurs also in other collections), where a Bráhman having received from his favourite deity, as a reward for his devotional austerities, the fruit of immortality, joyfully proceeds home and shows it to his wife, who advises him to give it to Rájá Bhartrihari, as the wealth he was sure to present him with in return were preferable to an endless life of poverty. He goes to the palace, and presenting the fruit to the good rájá, acquaints him of its nature, and is rewarded with a lakh of rupís. The rájá gives the fruit to his wife, telling her that if she ate it her beauty should increase day by day, and she should be immortal. The ráni gives it to her paramour, the chief of the police, who, in his turn, presents it as the choicest of gifts to a favourite courtesan, who, after reflecting that it would only enable her to commit innumerable sins, resolves to offer it to the rájá, hoping to be rewarded in a future life. When Rájá Bhartrihari again received the fruit he was astonished, and on learning from the courtesan from whom she had obtained it, he saw that his wife was unfaithful, so, abandoning throne and kingdom, he departed into the jungle, where he became an ascetic. But we are not told what became of the fruit—perhaps the good rájá destroyed it, fully convinced that immortality on this earth would not be altogether a blessing!

ARMOUR THAT RENDERS THE WEARER INVULNERABLE.

See the account of giant Galaffer (p. 103).

CAIN.

On a plain near the Caspian Sea, from which there appears to be no exit, Huon finds a 'tun made of the heart of oak bound all about with bands of iron,' which rolls round and round 'in the circuit of the plain.' Beside it lies a great iron mallet. Within Cain, the murderer of his brother Abel, is confined, with serpents and toads devouring him; but he is unable to die. He implores Huon to break the tun with the mallet, and thus release him. A fiend of hell is waiting with a boat to bear Cain from the accursed

¹ Composed by Ziyá-ed-Dín Nakhshabí about A.D. 1306, but representing a much older work no longer extant.

p'ace, and Cain suggests that after Huon has broken the tun, he shall tie the mallet round his neck, represent himself as Cain to the fiend, and effect his escape. Huon declines to touch the tun, but takes advantage of Cain's advice (pp. 484—492). He is ferried by the fiend to the city of Collanders, continues to call himself Cain, and is enthusiastically received by the pagans, who do not discover the deceit.

THE CUP OF OBERON.

This cup, which Oberon presents to Huon, fills with wine in the hands of any man who, being 'out of deadly sin,' attempts to drink out of it, but is always empty when a sinful man touches it (pp. 76, 77). The Emperor Charlemagne is proved sinful by this test, while Huon, his wife, and Gerames are all shown to be innocent of sin (p. 260).

Magical tests of chastity occur in many Asiatic as well as mediæval European romances and tales. In the *Kathá Sarit Ságara*,¹ a merchant named Gubasena is about to depart on a long trading journey, and both he and his wife have misgivings as to each other's fidelity during their separation, when the deity Siva appears before them, and puts in the hand of each a red lotus, which should fade if either proved unfaithful.—In the Persian *Tuti Náma* (or Parrot-Book) the wife of a soldier, on his leaving her to enter a great man's service, gives him a nosegay, which should betoken her chastity while it bloomed. And in the charming Arabian tale of Prince Zayn al-Asnám the King of the Genii gives him a magic mirror, in which if he see the reflection of any damsel undimmed, he may be sure that she is 'a clean maid, without aught of defect or default, and endowed with every praiseworthy quality; but if, on the contrary, the figure be found obscured, then know that she is sullied by the soil of sex;—and the story of how the Prince at length found the required pure and spotless damsel is 'familiar to every schoolboy.'

From the East the idea of such magical tests was, no doubt, brought to Europe during the crusading times, when many a brave and worthy knight, as he lay sleepless in his tent on the plains of Syria, must have often thought of his dame at home, and wondered whether she had not found a substitute for him in the person of the 'lordly abbot, or perchance some meaner priest'? In *Amadis de Gaul* the test is a garland, in *Perce Forest* a rose, which remained fresh so long as its wearer continued chaste; while in *Tristan*, *Percerai*, *Morte d'Arthur*, *Orlando Furioso*, and *Le Lay du Corn*, a cup of wine if spilled in the hand of either male or female indicated the unfaithful lover. In the old metrical romance of the *Wright's Chaste Wife* (edited for the E. E. T. S. by Dr. Furnivall) a poor widow gives the wright, when about to espouse her daughter, a garland of roses which would keep their colour while

¹ Signifying, "Ocean of the Streams of Story," a great Sanskrit collection, of the 11th century, slightly abridged from a work apparently now lost, entitled *Vrihat Katha*, or Great Story, written five hundred years earlier.

his wife was true to him, but not otherwise. In like circumstances, a carpenter, according to the *Gesta Romanorum*, received from his mother-in-law a shirt which would not be soiled or torn so long as his wife was chaste; and this also occurs in the North German tale of 'The King and Queen of Spain' (Thorpe's *Yule-Tide Stories*).¹ In Bandello, Part I., Nov. 21, a Bohemian nobleman has a magic picture of his wife, which would betoken her infidelity by turning yellow (or green, the colour supposed to be appropriate to jealousy!); and this novel it was, doubtless—not some oral version of the *Wright's Wife*, as I once thought—that suggested to Massinger the plot of his play of *The Picture*. Everybody knows the old English ballad of the *Boy and the Mantle*, derived from a *fabliau*, where a mantle will fit only a woman who is perfectly chaste. In the *Gesta Romanorum* a wild elephant can only be lulled asleep by two pure virgins; and in an Indian story a white elephant falls down dead, and a devotee informs the king that it will be restored to life by the presence of a chaste woman: surely no one could be so infatuated as to believe it likely—even possible—that these two stories were independently invented!

The ancient Hebrews had a water-ordeal to test a woman suspected of infidelity by her husband, which may have been derived from the Egyptians—see the Book of Numbers, ch. i. vv. 5—21, from which it is very evident that no woman conscious of guilt would risk such a punishment, threatened by one of the sacred order of the priesthood, and so she would stand self-convicted—truly, a shrewd device! The Hindús seem also to have had a water-ordeal, though of a different kind, for similar cases: in the *Rámáyana* it is related that Sita, the wife of Rámá, in order to prove her chastity, which the reverend hermits strongly suspected, boldly leaped into the "tank of trial," and—more fortunate than many of her equally innocent European sisters in modern times who were "ducked" for witchcraft—she escaped being drowned, and thus satisfied the suspicious ascetics.

DREAMS AND ANGEL'S VISIONS.

Gerard learns approaching events in a dream (p. 16). An angelical voice, heralded by a shining light, addresses Huon (p. 435).

FAIRIES.

At Oberon's birth (p. 73) a discontented fairy caused him to cease growing when three years old, but afterwards regretting this act, made him the fairest creature that ever nature formed. Translyne gave him the power of seeing through all men's minds, and another fairy that of going whither he would by merely wishing himself there. Gerames tells Huon (p. 63) that any one speaking to Oberon is lost for ever, a common popular notion. Oberon can raise up tempests (p. 67), place rushing rivers in the paths of his enemies, or

¹ It is curious to find this idea in a popular Bengali story, where a girl tells her companions that he who gets her for his wife will be a happy man, for the cloth she wears will never be soiled or torn.—See Rev. Lal Behari Day's *Folk-Tales of Bengal*, p. 236.

suddenly call into being palaces for his friends, and by a touch of his rod make roasts for them through stormy rivers. For further accounts of Oberon; the dwarf king of the fairies, and his attendants Gloriadas, Gloriande, Lempatrix, Margale, Oryane, Translyne, see under these names in the Index Nominum.

FIENDS AND EVIL ANGELS.

The devil of hell, who is in league with Cain (p. 489), has a head as big as an ox's head, his eyes are redder than two burning coals, his teeth great and long, and as rough as a bear, and he casts fire and smoke out of his gorge like a furnace (p. 489). Huon, when wrecked on a rock in the Spanish sea, finds a castle there inhabited by monks, who are evil angels, chased out of Paradise with Lucifer (p. 592). When they please they come among living men in the likeness of bears or wer-wolves. Others tempt men and women to their damnation ; others follow the thunder and tempest in the air, and some destroy ships and men on the seas. They still have most of the powers of the fairies, and create, by merely wishing, towns and castles on high rocks, with minstrels and all that appertains to rich living, but Christ compels them to conduct daily divine service (p. 593).

THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH.

This fountain cures those who bathe in its stream of all infirmities (p. 434). It is apparently situated on Alexander's Rock.

The virtues of this Fountain are thus described in Way's rendering of the *fabliau* of "The Land of Ceckaigne"—that is, Kitchenland, where all sorts of sensual delights abound—

"But the chiefest, choicest treasure,
In this land of peerless pleasure,
Was a well, to say the sooth,
Cleped the Living Well of Youth.
There, had numb and feeble Age
Crossed you in your pilgrimage,
In those wondrous waters pure,
Laved a while, you had a cure:
Lastihed and youth appears
Numbering now but twenty years."

The circumstance that, according to *Huon*, the Fountain was on Alexander's Rock clearly indicates that the idea was, directly or indirectly, derived from Eastern sources, since the universal Muslim legend tells how Alexander despatched the (mythical) prophet El-Khizr to fetch him some of the Water

of Immortality, and when, after much painful toil and long and weary journeying, the prophet reached the fountain, he had no sooner drank a little of its waters than they disappeared ; and since then no man has been able to discover the Fountain.—But long before the days of Alexander, if we may credit the Rabbinical tradition, Solomon, the son of David, sent a messenger to procure him some of the Water of Immortality ;—meanwhile the sage monarch would have ample time to reflect upon this delusive world : for was it not he who, having seen everything under the sun, declared that ‘all is vanity and vexation of spirit?’ We might therefore well expect that, on this account, when his messenger returned with the Water of Immortality, the ‘wisest of men’ would decline the potion : and decline it he did ; but not because ‘all is vanity’ (the Rev. Mr. Stiggins, by the way, was of the same opinion—always excepting a little pine-apple rum), but because he could not endure the thought of surviving his female favourites!

The assertion that since El-Khizr took his draught of immortality no one has been able to find the Fountain can’t be true—if *all* stories be true—for have we not in the oral and written (popular) histories of many lands most circumstantial accounts of successful expeditions to the Fountain of Life? What, for instance, was the water which the beautiful and brave young princess, in the Arabian tale of the ‘Envious Sisters,’ sprinkled on the stones, as she went down the hill (after securing the Bird that spoke and the Tree that sang), thereby changing them back into their original forms of princes and nobles—what, but this same Water of Life? And again, in another Arabian tale, when Prince Ahmad is required by his silly father, the king—prompted by an envious, malignant vazir—to get him some of the water that could cure all ailments, and the Prince’s bewitching bride, the Peri Bánú, obtains it for him, spite of the lions and serpents which guarded the fountain—what was this but the identical water of which old El-Khizr drank—unless, indeed, there existed more than one fountain of the same kind in those far-off days? Then there is the delightful German tale, ‘Das Wasser im Leben,’ to which Grimm has appended a note, stating that in Conrad of Wurtzburg’s *Trojan War*, written in the 13th century, Medea gets water from Paradise to renew the youth of Jason’s father.—There’s no end, in sooth, to the number of stories of magical fountains of all sorts—fountains of immortality, of youth, of oblivion, of love, of disdain ; and fountains, eke, that changed a man into a woman, and a woman into a man!

GIANTS.

The first giant Huon meets is Angolaffer or Galafer, who is seventeen feet high (p. 103). He has robbed Oberon of the tower of Dunother, and of a suit of armour which renders invulnerable any man who, wearing it, is ‘without spot of deadly sin’ and the son of a virtuous mother (p. 105). Huon puts it on, and strikes off the giant’s head. Angolaffer’s brother Agrapart is of the same height, and has two teeth protruding from his mouth, each a foot long : his eyes are like two burning torches, and ‘he was a foot between the brows’ (p. 140). Huon worsts him in a duel (p. 148).

THE GRIFFIN OR GRYPHON.

Huon sees this monster while in the castle of the Adamant, carrying off in its talons the corpses of sailors shipwrecked on that fatal rock (p. 426). Lying down among the dead men, Huon is himself carried by it through the air to its nest on Alexander's Rock (p. 429). It is a female bird with eyes like basins of fire, and of enormous size ; but Huon succeeds in slaying it, as well as its young. He preserves a foot of the monster as a curiosity, and presents it on his return to King Louis of France (p. 583), and ‘by King Philip it was hanged in the holy chapel, whereas it is as yet’ (p. 583).

Accounts of this bird figure in *Marco Polo's Travels*, where it is called Gryphon ; in the story of Sindbad in the 77th Arabian Night (under the name of Rukh), and in the travels of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela. “Its story is identical,” writes Colonel Yule, “with that of the Garuda of the Hindoos, the Simurgh of the old Persians, the 'Angka of the Arabs, the Bar Yachre of the Rabbinical legends, the Gryps of the Greeks” (Yule's *Marco Polo*, ii. 349, 350). Its habitat has been referred to the China seas by early Eastern writers ; Marco Polo heard of it at Madagascar ; the legends of Northern Siberia tell how it has visited their climes. Marco Polo describes it as an enormous eagle. Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela writes that when sailors were in danger of being lost at sea near China, they sewed themselves up in hides and awaited the griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be natural prey. According to the story of Duke Ernest of Bavaria the duke was wrecked like Huon, on the rock of Adamant, but escaped with his life ; the dead bodies of most of his companions were carried off by the griffin ; and they themselves were whisked alive through the air by the bird to a rock, whence like Huon they travel down a river in the heart of a mountain. There is a Persian drawing engraved in Lane's *Arabian Nights*, of the Rukh or Gryphon carrying through the air three elephants, one in its beak, and two in its claws. Naturalists believe the bird to be an antediluvian member of the ostrich family, identical with the fossil bird *Aepyorius*. A fossil egg of the species, capable of holding nearly $2\frac{1}{2}$ gallons of water, is in the British Museum.

To Colonel Yule's list of *wunderrohls* may be added the Eorosh of the Zend ; the Kargas of the Turks ; the Kirni of the Japanese ; and the sacred Dragon of the Chinese.—The device which Benjamin of Tudela describes sailors as adopting when in danger of being shipwrecked—sewing themselves in skins and awaiting the Griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be his natural prey—occurs in several Arabian tales, where it is generally practised by magicians on young lads whom they have seduced from home ; the object being to obtain precious stones from the top of the mountain where the Rukh carries them, after which the magicians leave their victims to their fate, which however always proves a happy one.

THE HORN OF OBERON.

This horn was made by four fairies in the isle of Cephallonia ; one (Gloriande) endowed it with the power of curing by its blast all manner of sickness ; a second (Translyne) with the power of satisfying hunger and thirst ; a third (Margale) with the power ‘that whosoever heard this horn, though he were never so poor and feeble by sickness, he should have such joy in his heart that he should sing and dance’ ; a fourth fairy (Lempatrix) gave the horn the gift of forcing him who heard it to come at the pleasure of him who blew it (p. 66). When this ‘rich horn of ivory’ is bestowed by Oberon on Huon, its only virtue mentioned is that it brings a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows it, if—and the condition is all-important—there is genuine need of help (pp. 77, 78).

Musical instruments having the same property as that with which the third fairy endowed the horn of Oberon, viz. of making every one who heard it to dance, *nolens volens*, are common to the folk-tales of all Europe. For examples, the magic pipe in our old English tale of *The Friar and the Boy*, and the violin in its German counterpart (in Grimm), *Das Jude im Dorn*, and the harp in the Icelandic *Herunds ok Bosi Saga* ; and akin to these is the pipe of the Piper of Hamelin, which not only drew all the rats into the Weser but drew all the children into a mountain. In the Icelandic saga, which, according to Mr. Baring-Gould, rests on a mythological foundation, a harp occurs which belongs to one Sigurd. ‘Bosi slays Sigurd, puts on his skin and clothes, and taking the harp goes in this disguise to the banquet-hall of King Godmund, where his true love is about to be married to another man. He plays the harp, and the knives and plates, the tables and stools, then the guests, and lastly the monarch himself are set to dancing. He keeps them capering till they are too exhausted to move a limb, then he casts the bride over his shoulder and makes off.’¹ In Croker's collection of Irish Fairy Legends one Maurice Connor is said to have been able by playing a certain tune on his bagpipes, to make old and young, lame and lazy, “up and *fut it*,” till they fell down from sheer exhaustion.—The fourth virtue of Oberon's horn, that of bringing a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows

¹ *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, ed. 1869, p. 431.

it is also found in the horn that drew crowds which was presented by the little man in red to one of three soldiers journeying together, according to the German story of 'The Nose' (in Grimm); and also in the bagpipe of the young hero of a Slav tale in M. Dozon's French collection (No. 2), which when played upon calls up any number of armed soldiers

JUDAS ISCARIOT.

In the perilous gulf or whirlpool near hell, Huon finds Judas floating about on a piece of canvas. This canvas (Judas says) he once gave away to a poor man for God's sake, a gift of charity unique in his career; and God afterwards restored it to him as a reward for his virtuous act, to protect him from the wind on his right side. Tormented to death, he cannot die (pp. 363, 369). The story finds a parallel in the Irish legend of St. Brendan, who met Judas on an iceberg in the Northern Sea, and learnt that he was allowed to leave the sinner's burning lake every Christmas night to cool himself in the snow, because he had once given his cloak to a leper. This story is the subject of one of Mr. Matthew Arnold's best known poems (see Mr. Thomas Olden's notice of St. Brendan in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*).

A MAN TRANSFORMED INTO A SEA BEAST.

Oberon's messenger Malabron, who carries Huon on his back through the sea (p. 111), and resembles a bear, was a handsome man, whom Oberon punished for disobedience by transforming him into a beast of the sea for thirty years. When Huon makes the sign of the Cross, the skin of the beast temporarily falls off, and reveals as fair a man as could be seen.

MECHANICAL CONTRIVANCES.

Two men of brass 'without ceasing beat with their flails' before the gate of Dunother, the residence of the giant Angolaffer, so that none can enter it alive. On opening a wicket, however, from within, a wind rushes forth and sets the men at rest (pp. 98, 99).

PRECIOUS STONES.

Of the stones gathered by Huon in the underground river, one preserves its bearer from poison or treason, another from fire and

sword, a third from all discomfort and old age, a fourth cures blindness, and a fifth renders its owner invisible (pp. 454—7).

Magic gems play important parts in innumerable tales. They are frequently obtained from grateful serpents. Thus, in an Albanian tale (No. 9 of M. Dozon's French collection), a youth having saved the life of a serpent receives as a reward from its father a wishing-stone, by means of which, *à la Aladdin*, he has a magnificent palace erected and gets a beautiful princess for his bride.—In the *Jātakas*, or Buddhist Birth-Stories, we read of a gem which, when put in the mouth, enabled one to rise into the air and go wherever he wished.—In the Persian romance which recounts the imaginary adventures of Hatim Tai, the hero slays a dragon and takes out of the monster's head a pearl which restored sight to the blind; cured the bite of a snake; endeared its possessor alike to friend and foe; secured victory in battle; conferred profound wisdom and boundless wealth; and rendered all creatures obedient to his commands.—The notion of dragons or serpents having gems in their heads (as well as being guardians of hidden treasure), still prevalent in the East, seems to be a relic of serpent-worship, and recalls Shakespeare's ‘toad, ugly and venomous,’ &c. A Kashmiri folk-tale relates how a ‘snake-woman’ was burnt for twenty-four hours in a furnace, and among her ashes was found a small round stone—the real essence of the ‘snake-woman,’ and whatever one touched with it was turned to gold. The alchemists of old times were not aware of this ready process of obtaining the long-sought Philosopher's Stone: but, then, you must first catch your ‘snake-woman’!

In the *Gesta Romanorum* (ed. E. E. T. S., story of Guido) we read of a stone of three colours, obtained from a thankful serpent, ‘possessed of three virtues: bestowing evermore joy without heaviness; abundance without fail; and light without darkness.’ The same story is told in Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, B. v., but the stone which the grateful reptile gives the hero had the useful—but, from a moral point of view, rather questionable—property of always returning to his purse after having sold it—there, sure enough, was the stone again, along with the gold paid for it by the unlucky jeweller!—Needless it were to multiply examples.

THE SERPENT.

This animal guards the castle of the Adamant (p. 374). It is ‘higher than a great horse, with eyes redder than fire, with marvellous great talons and tail.’ Sir Arnold, Huon's knight, flees on catching sight of it; but Huon kills it after making the sign of the Cross, by thrusting a broad-headed spear down its throat when it opened its mouth to swallow him. Huon's own sword could not pierce its skin, which is harder than iron or steel (p. 381).

SUBTERRANEAN RIVER.

When leaving Alexander's Rock, Huon is wafted in a richly-jewelled boat down the rock-confined river of Dyplayre (pp. 431—440). After three days' journeying the rocks close above him and

form a dark passage, down which his ship is hurried at a great pace ; the air is bitterly cold, voices are heard cursing their ill-fortune in diverse languages. There is also thunderous noise of falling water. A tempest arises, and great bars of red-hot iron fall hissing in front of the ship. After three days the vessel runs aground on a gravel bank of precious stones. Launching his vessel once again he travels on in mid stream still underground, and on the eleventh day passes out of the darkness, and finds himself in the Sea of Persia. This underground river or perilous gulf, as it is also called, is stated to lie "between the Sea of Persia and the Great Sea-ocean." A similar journey is made by Sindbad and by Herzog Ernst (cp. Tasso's *Gerusalemme liberata*, xiv. 32 ff.).

SWORDS.

Galans forged three invincible swords, of which one called Durandel was owned by Roland ; the second was named Courtain ; and the third, rusty and old to outward appearance, was given Huon by Ivoryn (p. 182).

The hero of chivalric romance is usually provided with a most trenchant blade, which he only can wield, and a steed, like himself, high-spirited and of extraordinary endurance, that carries him through all dangers. In the Edda of Saemund we are told that Wieland (or Velent) the Smith forged a sword of such sharpness that when he cleft his rival Emilius with it the blade seemed to the latter only like cold water running down his body : 'Shake thyself,' said Wieland ; he did so, and fell in two halves, one on each side of the chair. And in the Gisli Saga it is related that the sword Gray-steel, which was forged by the Dwarfs, could bite whatever its blow fell upon—be it steel, or iron, or anything else. So, too, Arthur's famous blade, 'y-hote' Excaliber, could 'kerve steel, yren, and al-thing.'

In the Bedouin romance of *Antar* the poet-hero has an all-powerful sword called Dhamí, which was made out of a thunderbolt, and the skill and labour of the smith who forged it were but ill-requited ; for when he took it to his employer—not *Antar*, but an Arab chief—with just pride but little prudence, he exclaimed, 'Sharp is the sword, O chief, but where is the smiter ?' to which the chief replied, flourishing Dhamí, 'As for the smiter—I am the smiter,' and, suiting the action to the word, he smote off the head of the unlucky artisan. When Dhamí came, by mere accident, as it did, into the possession of the hero *Antar*, he plied it on the heads of his foes with such effect that many a time and oft he clefth a doughty knight and his horse each in two halves !

But the swords of romance had sometimes other wonderful qualities than that of carving steel and iron, or of cleaving man and horse. For instance, in the *Kathá Sarit Ságara* the hero Indívarasena receives from the goddess Durga a sword by the power of which he should not only conquer his enemies, but it would obtain for him whatever he desired ; and in another story (but

this often occurs in Indian fictions) the hero, in like manner, obtains a sword by means of which he could fly through the air. We must not forget the sword which 'the king of Araby and Inde' sent, according to Chaneer's *Squire's Tale*, to the King of Tartary, that, like the spear of Telephus, could cure the wound it gave—a quality which seems to be amusingly distorted in a modern popular Norse story, in Sir George W. Dasent's *Tales from the Fjeld*, where Master Tobacco receives from an old witch a sword, one edge of which was black, the other white; and 'if he smote with the black edge, everything fell dead, and if with the white edge, everything came to life again.' This sword, moreover, could become a knife and be carried in the pocket, and when drawn out it was a sword again.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.

Florence's incestuous love for his daughter Ide is utterly inconsistent with his previous manly character, and a very clumsy interpolation by one of the continuators of the Romance. Nevertheless it has parallels both in Asiatic and in several European fictions. In No. xiii. of Pandit Natésa Sastrí's *Folk-Lore in Southern India* (London : Trübner) a king wishes to marry his four daughters after the death of his wife, their mother, but by a clever device they not only save themselves from such an unnatural union, but bring their father to a due sense of the enormous crime he purposed committing. And in the German tale entitled, in Grimm, 'Allerleirauh,' and in one of our English translations, 'Catskin'; in Perrault's 'Peau d'Ane'; in the modern Greek story entitled, 'Xylonarie' (M. Legrand's French collection), and in other popular European tales, the heroine has also to flee from the incestuous love of her father.—W. A. C.

VIII. INDEX LOCORUM.

* * * Mediæval romances show as little regard for geography as for history, and Huon's travels in the East baffle all detailed description. The names of the places visited, although often hopelessly disguised by misspellings, are, however, rarely quite fictitious. The compiler of the romance obviously had access to some early book of Oriental travel, and thence derived his geographical nomenclature. I have tried to identify a few of the names below. If we take Huon's journeys seriously, the FIRST JOURNEY to the East may be described as taking him to Jerusalem: thence from Southern Syria he crosses the sea to the mouth of the Nile, whence he is carried to Cairo. On leaving Egypt he appears to visit some island of the Greek Archipelago, and thence to pass to the mainland of Asia Minor (Turkey in Asia), whence he returns to Brindisi. On his SECOND JOURNEY to the East he finds himself near the Caspian Sea, whence he makes his way to Tabriz in Persia, and to Angora in Turkey in Asia. After a voyage in the Persian Gulf, he arrives at Antioch and

Damascus, and visits most of the known towns in Palestine. His THIRD JOURNEY to Momur, Oberon's realm in India, is not described after he suffers shipwreck off an unnamed rock in the Mediterranean near Spain. Thence he is carried through the air by fairies to Momur, a shadowy kingdom of India.

Abylante, desert of, 478. [A lake in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia, is now named Abullionte or Abullonia, and is similarly situated in relation to Angora (*q. v.*) as the Abylante of the romance.]

Acre, 62, 519 (besieged by Persians), 522.

Adamant, castle of, 370.

Affryke, Aufrike, 2; sea of, 663.

Albaney, 72.

Alexander's rock, 427.

Almayn, Almayne, 279, Germany.

Anfalerne, a seaport, 161.

Anfamie, a Saracen kingdom, 357.

Angore, 472, Angora (Enguri) in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia.

Antioch, 497.

Antiopheney, a Saracen kingdom, 512.

Aquytanie, 18, Aquitaine.

Armanye, Ermyne, 489, 498, Armenia: part is called 'low,' and part 'high,' 498.

Arogone, 313, Aragon.

Arrabey, 519, Arabia.

Austrych, 277, Austria.

Babylon, city of, 49, 50, 61, 83, 113, 130, Cairo. [All mediæval

travellers speak of Cairo as 'Babylon in Egypt' (*Bambel-lonia d'Egitto*, Marco Polo). Cairo is mentioned under this name by Diodorus, quoting Ctesias, by Strabo and by Ptolemy. Babul, close to Old Cairo, still preserves the old name of the city; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 23.]

Barbarye, 310, 519, 663, Barbary.

Barselone, 624, Barcelona.

Basyle, 702, Basle.

Bauier, 2, Bavaria.

Beauland, 668, perh. Beaulieu.

Belmaryn, 741.

Berry, 281.

Blay, Blaye, castle of, 275; town of, 578.

Borgoyn, 316, 399, Bourgogne.

Bougye, 310, a town in Barbary.

Bouillon, 59, Boulogne.

Boulgnant, 603, a realm of Oberon handed to King Arthur: probably identical with Bolgara or Bolghar on the Wolga, a town of Upper Bulgaria, which Arab writers regarded as the northernmost limit of the habitable world; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 4—6.

- Brandys, a sea-port, 54, 55, 233.
 Brindisi.
 Burdeux, 5, 7, *et pass.* Bordeaux.
 Calaber, 743, Calabria.
 Caluery, 59, Mount Calvary.
 Candy island, 663, Candia.
 Caspys, sea of, 472, the Caspian.
 Cecyll, Cesyll, 663, Sicily.
 Chafalene, an island, 66; ‘the
 priuey isle,’ 72—3, Cephalonia.
 Chalons, 252.
 Champagne, 52.
 Cluny, 52; battle near, 531.
 Colanders, a city of Armenia,
 489—496.
 Coleyn, 284, Cologne.
 Constantyne the noble, 466, Con-
 stantinople.
 Corse, isle, 663, Corsica.
 Courtois, 676.
 Cret, isle of, 213, Crete.
 Damas, 497, Damascus.
 Damiet, Damyet, 130, 155, 161,
 Damietta.
 Dolphenny [Dolphinne, 1601 ed.],
 316; Daupheney, 741, Daup-
 phiné.
 Dorbrey, 507.
 Dunother, tower of, 96.
 Dyplayre, river, 439 [brings Huon
 to Tauris in Persia].
 Egypt, 73, etc.
 Englond, 607, England.
 Ermyne, *see* Armanye.
 Escalence, 100, 501, Escalon.
 Eufrates, flood of, 478, Euphrates.
- Flanders, 252.
 Florencoll, 760.
 France, 3, *et pass.*
 Gasere, 445, 501, Gaza.
 Geanes, 445, prob. Geaune in
 Landes, France.
 Gerone, a town near Bordeaux,
 15.
 Geronnill, 62; Geronell, 578.
 Gerounde, province, 406, Gironde.
 Gerounde river, 356, Garonne.
 Grenade, 741, Granada.
 Hell, gulf of, 362.
 Hungary, 607.
 Jaffe, 58, 497, 500, Jaffa or Joppe,
 Palestine.
 Jaffet, castle of, 519. [There is
 an island Jaffatine in Red Sea.]
 Jene, 519.
 Jerusalem, 59, 500.
 Lombardy, 702.
 Luysarne, city in Spain, 415;
 ? Luserna, Italy.
 Lyon ‘on the river Rone,’ 403,
 Lyons.
 Lysbone, 416, Lisbon.
 Magence, Maience, 278, 531, May-
 ence.
 Marrocke ‘stratis,’ 415.
 Marseyle, Marsile, seaport, 528,
 Marscelles.
 Mascon, 403, 500.
 Mauryse, abbey at, 219.
 Mede, 457, Media.
 Mesque, 129.
 Mombraunte, 131.

- Momur, capital of fairyland, a realm of India, 74, 604.
- Monglew, 'the which is called Lyon,' 403.
- Montleherry, 14, 18.
- Mountaubon, 472, Montauban.
- Myllayne, 420, Milan.
- Napelous, 499, Nablous.
- Naplese, 61, Naples.
- Nasareth, 519, Nazareth.
- Navarre, 633.
- Nile, river, 112, 116, 130, 155.
- Noisaunt, Noysaunt, an island near the gulf of hell, 168.
- Noremberge, 294, Nüremberg.
- Nyse, 741, Nice.
- Olyfarne, 511.
- Orcaney, 511.
- Orleance, 14, Orleans.
- Paris, 2, *et pass.*
- Pauey, 33, Pavia.
- Perce, Perse, 443, 451, 497; gulf of, 449, Persia.
- Portyngale, 415, Portugal.
- Puylle, 740, Apulia.
- Pyemont, 741, Piedmont.
- Raines, plains of, 507.
- Rame, Ranes, a city in Palestine, 500, 507, Ramah.
- Red Sea, 111.
- Roddes, the coast of, 213, Rhodes.
- Romayne, 741, Romagna.
- Rome, 2, *et pass.*
- Rone, river, 316, Rhone.
- Rousillon, 530.
- Rowneuall, 2, Roncesvalles.
- St. Giles, 741.
- St. Omer, 209.
- Sathab, gulfe of, 528. [In Sir John Mandeville's Travels (ed. 1839, p. 26), a city of this name (otherwise Catala, Sotalia, Cataillie, etc.) is described as lying somewhere between Rhodes and Cyprus.]
- Saxoney, 2.
- Sayre, 518, prob. Tyre (Soor).
- Sclauoney, 1, Sclavonia.
- Spayne, 1, *et pass.*
- Strabourge, 278, Strasburg.
- Surrey, 100, Syria.
- Taragon, 624, Tarragona.
- Tarascon, 668.
- Thauris in Perce, 443. [In mediæval books of travels this is the name given to Tabriz, the chief city of Adherbaijaz, a Persian province on the Caspian. Marco Polo gives a full description of it, i. 70—4.]
- Thesalye, 265, Thessaly.
- Tortouse, 313, prob. Tortosa [in Roland, 916, 'Turteluse'].
- Tournous, 530.
- Tours, a seaport, 611.
- Troye, siege of, 412.
- Troyes, 52.
- Trypoley, 310, Tripoli.
- Valence the great, 624.
- Vergier, 530.
- Vyene, Viene, 276, Vienna.
- Ynde, 489, India.

IX. INDEX NOMINUM.

. The editorial introduction and appendix are indexed here as well as the text of the romance. A few notes are inserted on one or two characters ; see, for example, NAIMES.

ABBOT OF CLUNY, *v. CLUNY*.

ABBOT OF MAURYSE, *v. MAURYSE*.

ACLIS, Duchess of Burdeux, and Huon's mother, 56 ; sister of the Pope, 54, and of Garyn, 56 ; receives Charlemagne's messengers, 7 ; sends her sons to Paris, 11 ; learns Huon's ill-fortune, 52 ; dies, 53, 210.

AGRAPART, a giant, laments the death of his brother Angolafer, 140 ; insults Gaudys at Babylon, 141 ; is challenged by Huon, 147, and defeated, 148 ; becomes Gaudys's man, 150.

ALBANEY, duke of, 265.

ALBERIC, a German fairy, xxx.

ALEAUME OR ALELMUS, xxxiv, another name for Gerames (*q. v.*).

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, vii ; son of Neptanabus, 73 ; his picture in castle of Adamant, 412 ; a rock called after him, 427 ; spoke with trees of the sun and moon, 427.

ALMAYNE, Emperor of, *v. THIERRY*.

AMAURY, Earl, longs for Huon's land, 5 ; proposes to take it for Charlot, *ib.* ; reproved by Charlemagne, 12 ; plots against Huon, 13 ; in ambush, 19 ; bears Charlot's body to Charlemagne, 18, 31 ; charges Huon with Charlot's murder, 33 ; lies to the Emperor, 35 ; challenges Huon, 35 ; swears that Huon lies, 40 ; fights, 42, and is slain, 44.

AMPHAGE, a horse, saves Barnard in battle, 396.

AMPHAMIE, king of, Esclarmonde's brother, 403.

ANGELARS, Huon's vassal, slain, 275.

ANGOLAFFER, GALAFFER, GALAFRE, giant of Dunother, 96 ; of terrible aspect, 102-3 ; threatens Huon, 103 ; his magic armour, 105 ; fights, and is slain by Huon, 108-9 ; pagans pay him tribute, 129.

ANGORE, admiral of, 472 ; visits Huon, 473, and is slain, 476.

ANTONIUS, MARCUS, husband of Cleopatre, 411.

ARAGON, king of, *v. GARYN*.

ARNOLD, Sir, climbs the Adamant rock, 373; rouses the serpent, 374; killed by Saracens, 377.

ARTHUR, King (of Brittany), vii; Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, xlviii; wants to succeed Oberon in throne of fairyland, 599; comes to Oberon's palace, 601; refuses for a time to acknowledge Huon as king of fairyland, 602; is given by Huon Boulgnant and sway over fairies of Tartary, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606.

ARTHUR OF LITTLE BRITAIN, Lord Berners' romance of, xlvii.

ASCHAM, ROGER, quoted, xlviii.

ASPREMONT, a chanson de geste, xiii.

AUBERON, *v.* OBERON.

AUDE, LA BELLE, sister of Oliver, xii.

AYMON, FOUR SONS OF, a romance, xix, xx, xxiii, xlvi.

BALAACH, 500, *v.* TRAMPOYNGNYFLE.

BALAN, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BARNARD, Huon's faithful knight, 338; receives a horse from Huon, 356; supports Gerames in a night-sortie at siege of Bordeaux, 393; alone survives, 396; entrusted by Esclarmonde with care of Clariet, 399; rides to Cluny, 402; announces fall of Bordeaux to abbot of Cluny, 404; seeks Huon, 445; at Tauris, 446; meets Huon without recognizing him for a time, 447-50; sees the value of Huon's precious stones, 453; finds a stone that makes its holder invisible, 454; with Huon against Angore, 475, and Colanders, 489, and the Saracens, 504; at Marseilles, 545, and Cluny, 557, and Mayence, 558; guards Clariet at Cluny, 607; is drowned by traitor Brohart, 611; his body found in Garonne, 617; is buried at Cluny, 618.

BAUDOYN (Baldwin), son of Ogier, slain by Charlot, 4. [This story is told at length in the *chanson* of *Ogier le Danois*, and in some detail in the original poem of *Huon*, 98—193.]

BAUDOYN, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.

BELMARYN, king of, besieges Nice, 741; killed by Croissant, 750.

BENET, St., patron of Cluny, 574.

BERNERS, Lord, translates *Huon*, xxxix; his history, xl; his

translations, xlvi ; end of life, xlv ; undertakes *Huon*, liv ; his Euphuism and knowledge of Guevara, 785 ; his work on Calais, 789.

BERTE AU GRAND PIED, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BERTRAND, son of Naymes, slain by Ogier, 33. [The story is in *Ogier le Danois*.]

BLANCHARDIN, Sorbrynn's horse, 184 ; seized by Huon, 187.

BOURGOYNE, king of, aids abbot of Cluny, 530.

BOWES, THOMAS, quoted, 790.

BROHART, a traitor, seeks to marry Clariet, 608 ; gets her and Barnard into a boat, 610 ; kills Barnard, 611 ; is wrecked and killed by thieves, 614 ; his kindred flung into Garonne, 618.

BRYAN, Sir Francis, and Berners' literary work, 788.

BURDELOYS, people of Burdeux, fight valiantly, 319.

BURDEUX, bishop of, 419, v. **LISBON**, bishop of.

CÆSAR, JULIUS, Oberon's father, 72, 265, 411 ; builds tower of Dunother, 96, and castle of Adamant, 411 ; vanquishes Pompey and Ptolemy of Egypt, *ib.* ; attacked at Adamont by three Egyptian kings, *ib.* ; slain at Rome, 412.

CAIN, CAYME, confined in oaken tun, 484 ; begs Huon to release him, 485 ; tries to trick Huon, 486 ; is abandoned, 487.

CALABER, king of, visits Nice, 743 ; fights at siege, 747.

CARAHEW, King, at Oberon's death and funeral, 605-6.

CHALONS, earl of, 252.

CHARLEMAGNE, romances about him, viii ; their growth in France, ix ; in Iceland, xi ; head of a family of romance heroes, xiv ; English romance about, xviii, xix ; English play about, xxiii ; reigns in France, 1, 756 ; defeated at Roncesvalles, 2 ; desires lords to choose successor, 3 ; sends for Huon and Gerard, 7 ; hears Huon's complaint and promises redress, 27 ; grieves over Charlot's corpse, 32 ; rages at Huon, 33 ; proclaims duel between Huon and Amaury, 40 ; banishes Huon, 48 ; sends him on mission to Babylon, 49 ; receives Gerard and Gybouars, traitors, 235 ; accepts Huon's treasure from their hands, *ib.* ; deceived as to Huon's mission and return by Gerard, 237 ; resolves to examine Huon at Bordeaux, 241 ; makes good cheer at Bordeaux, 242 ; threatens

Huon, 249 ; orders peers to try Huon, 250 ; condemns him, 255 ; reproaches Naymes, *ib.* ; suddenly sees Oberon approach, 259 ; is charged by Oberon with terrible sin, 260 ; receives from Huon relics of mission, 266 ; pardons Huon, *ib.* ; leaves Bordeaux, 268 ; dies, 388.

CHARLES THE BALD, xxviii, xxix.

CHARLOT, his historical prototype Charles the Bald's son, xxix ; in *Ogier le Danois*, xxix ; Charlemagne's elder son, 4 ; plots against Huon with Amaury, 13 ; advances against Huon and Gerard, 19 ; attacks Gerard, 20 ; challenged by Huon, 23 ; slain, 24, 388 ; brought before Charlemagne, 32.

CLARE, St., 313.

CLARIET, CLARYET, Huon's and Esclaramonde's daughter, born, 313 ; christened, 314 ; entrusted to Barnard's care, 399 ; taken to abbot of Cluny, 403 ; visited by Huon disguised, 548 ; is richly dowered by Huon, 581 ; has kings for suitors, 607 ; is kidnapped by traitor Brohart, 608 ; resists him, 610 ; on a desert island and with thieves, 613-14 ; rescued by Saracen king of Grenade, 619 ; declines to marry him, 620 ; saved by Sir Peter of Aragon, and taken to Tarragona, 624 ; meets Florence, who loves her, 625 ; disguises her history, 626 ; is hated by Florence's father, king of Aragon, 630 ; is to be drowned by his orders, 631 ; saved by Sir Peter, 640 ; imprisoned in same tower as Florence, 652 ; escapes, 653 ; joins Florence in forest, *ib.* ; flies with Florence, and taken by Sorbare, 666 ; brought back to Courtois by Huon, 685 ; marries Florence, 686 ; has a child Ide, 690, and dies, 691.

CLARIMODES, fairy boatman, 597.

CLARISSE, another name of Clariet (*q. v.*), xxxiv ; *chanson* about, *ib.*

CLEOPATRE, sister of Julius Cæsar, married Marcus Antonius, 411.

CLUNY, abbot of, accompanies Huon to Paris, 18—26 ; charges Amaury with lying, 36 ; bids Huon accept Amaury's challenge, 37 ; goes with Huon to Cluny, 51-2 ; receives infant Clariet, 403 ; prepares attack on messenger of German Emperor, 530 ; welcomes Huon's return, 549 ; is one hundred and fourteen years old, 552 ; eats Huon's apple of youth and becomes a man of thirty, 554 ; attacks German Emperor in error with 20,000 men,

576 ; entertains Emperor, 577 ; guardian of Clariet, 607 ; calls her suitors together at Blaye, 316.

COLOGNE, provost of, leads burghers to battle for Emperor, 299 ; attacks Huon after truce, 804 ; begs pardon of Huon, 306.

CONSTANTYNE, Emperor, nominated the patriarch of Jerusalem, 500.

COURTAYN, a sword, 182.

CRASSYN POLYNGER, bearer of German Emperor's banner, killed by Huon, 297.

CROISSANT, son of Olive and Ide, born, 730 ; regent of Emperor Ide, 733 ; reigns alone, 737 ; charitable, 738 ; flees from Rome, 739 ; at Nice, 741 ; welcomed by Earl Remon, 742 ; excels at the quintain, 744 ; attacks Saracen besiegers of Nice, 746-8 ; is to marry Remon's daughter, 745, 753 ; is attacked by Remon's son, 754 ; kills the son, 755 ; flees from Nice, 758 ; reaches Florence, 760 ; falls among thieves, 761 ; kills them, 763 ; at Rome, 765 ; lives in retirement there, 766 ; no one aids him, 767 ; sees miraculous treasure in old palace, 771 ; picks up three besants and gives them to Emperor Guymart, 775 ; marries Guymart's daughter, 778 ; seizes Oberon's treasure in old palace, 780.

DENIS, St., 27, 28.

DOON DE MAIENCE, the head of a family of romance heroes, *xiv n.*

DORBRYE, DORBREY, a giant, admiral of, fights against Huon, 507 ; is slain, 510-11.

DURENDAL, Roland's sword, xii, 182. [See *Chanson de Roland*, l. 926, and M. Leon Gautier's note in his edition, pp. 90-1.]

ELINAS, a Saracen captain, converted, 422.

EMERY, Sir, knight of abbot of Cluny, 545.

EMPEROR. See CHARLEMAGNE, OTHO, and THIERRY.

ENGLAND, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607 ; *chanson* about, xxxiv.

ERNST VON BAIERN, romance of, 797.

ESCLARAMONDE (Huon's wife), daughter of Gaudlys of Babylon, 50, 119 ; thrice kissed by Huon, 120 ; grieves for Huon in prison, 125 ; visits him and confesses her love, *ib.* ; grows angry on being told she is a Saracen, 126 ; keeps Huon without food, *ib.* ; consents to turn Christian, 127 ; plans Huon's escape, 128 ; tells Gerames all, 133 ; plots her father's death, 139 ; arranges for

Huon to fight Agrapart, 143 ; is converted, 154 ; goes with Huon to Rome, 155 ; yields to temptation, 156 ; shipwrecked, 157 ; threatened by pirates in her father's service, 158 ; pleads for Huon, 159 ; is carried off to sea, 161 ; freed by Galaffer, 162 ; is loved by him, *ib.* ; begs to be delivered to Ivoryn, 183 ; visited by Gerames, 193 ; swears loyalty to Huon, whom she thinks dead, 194 ; desires to enter a convent, 195 ; meets Huon at Aufalerne, 200 ; leaves for France, 213 ; comforts Garyn's widow, 215 ; baptized by Pope at Rome, 217 ; married to Huon, *ib.* ; fears for Huon, 227 ; her horse stumbles, *ib.* ; bound to a horse by Gerard, 231 ; in prison at Bordeaux, 232 ; before Charlemagne, 243 ; bewails Huon's fate, 253 ; visited by three pilgrims at Bordeaux, 275 ; entreats Huon to stay, 280 ; with child, 281 ; loved by Ravall, 283 ; hears from Huon of his adventures, 307 ; bids Huon get aid from her brother Salybraunt, 310, 324, 349 ; gives birth to Clariet, 312 ; urges Huon to go to the East, 353 ; grieves for Huon, 387, and for Gerames' death, 397 ; is afraid, 399 ; bids Barnard take Clariet to Cluny, *ib.* ; begs mercy of Thierry, 400 ; is promised life, 401 ; imprisoned at Mayence, 406 ; appears in vision to Huon, 520 ; led to stake, 532 ; saved by Oberon, 538 ; treated well by Emperor, 543 ; meets Huon, 570 ; goes with him to Cluny and Bordeaux, 572 ; in fairyland, 597 ; crowned queen there, 601 ; with Huon at Courtois, 682.

FERUMBRAS (Sir), an English romance, xviii *n.*

FIERABRAS, a romance, xiii, xviii *n.*, xix.

FLANDERS, earl of, 252.

FLORENCE or FLORENT, *chanson* about, xxxiv ; son of king of Aragon, Clariet's suitor, 607, 616 ; meets Clariet at Tarragon, 626 ; does not know who she is, 627 ; wants to marry her, 628 ; offends his father, 630 ; will not fight Navarre unless he marry Clariet, 633 ; leaves for battle on receiving promise, 636 ; captures king of Navarre, 644 ; is told by his father that Clariet is drowned, 645 ; invites his prisoners to avenge Clariet and kill his father, 647 ; is imprisoned by his father, 650 ; meets Clariet in prison, 652 ; escapes with her, 656 ; to Africa, 663 ; attacked by Saracens, 665 ; delivered to Sorbare, a secret Christian, 666 ; at Courtois

with Clariet, 684 ; marries Clariet, 686 ; becomes king of Aragon, 690 ; loses wife, 691 ; loves his own daughter Ide, 692 ; angry at her escape, 701 ; sends for Ide, 731 ; resigns his rule, 737.

FLORIMONT OF ALBANY, 72 ; son of duke of Albany, 265.

FROISSART, translated by Lord Berners, xlivi.

GALAFFER, admiral of Anfalerne, 161 ; frees Esclaramonde from pirates, 162 ; loves her, *ib.* ; will not deliver her to Ivoryn, 164 ; threatens Ivoryn, 165 ; sees Ivoryn's army upon him, 183 ; deplores death of his nephew Sorbryn, 187 ; retires before Ivoryn and Huon, 188 ; receives Gerames kindly, 192 ; tells them of Esclaramonde, *ib.*, and of Ivoryn, 193 ; learns history of Huon, 201 ; submits to Ivoryn, 202 ; aided by Ivoryn against Huon, 203 ; encourages Ivoryn, 207 ; angry at Huon's flight, 213 ; enters Anfalerne, 214.

GALANS, forger of swords, 182.

GALERAN, cousin of Duke Raoull, slain by Huon, 290.

GALLERANCE, a knight of Huon, 323.

GANELON, traitor of Roncesvalles, xxii, 3.

GAREYN, 217 ; the baptismal name of Mouflet (*q. v.*).

GARIN DE MONGLAINE, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv n.

GARYN, Guaryn of St. Omer, brother of the Pope, 54, 55 ; receives Huon, 56 ; accompanies him, 58-9 ; killed in fight with Saracens at Anfalerne, 206 ; his wife told by Huon of his death, 214.

GARYN, GUARYN, king of Aragon, 666 ; will not consent to marriage of Florence and Clariet, 630 ; orders her to be drowned, 631 ; deceives Florence, *ib.* ; imprisons Clariet, 640, and Florence, 650 ; will not pardon the watchman who releases them, 658 ; attacked by king of Navarre, 661 ; besieged by Navarre at Courtois, 676 ; accepts Huon's intervention, 682 ; makes peace with Navarre, 685 ; dies, 690.

GAUDYS, admiral of Babylon, 50, 64, 71, 668 ; gave ring to Angolaffer, 106 ; hears Huon's horn, 118 ; orders his arrest, 120 ; sees ring and welcomes Huon, 120 ; refuses to turn Christian, 121 ; sends Huon to prison, 124 ; receives Gerames disguised, 131 ; insulted by giant Agrapart, 141 ; promises his daughter's hand to

any one who fights giant, 142 ; invites Huon, 144 ; receives Agra-part's homage, 150 ; will not turn Christian, 152 ; is delivered to Huon by Oberon, 153, and is slain by Huon, *ib.*

GEFFREY, a French knight in Macaire's service, 90 ; protects Huon, 91 ; drives Macaire from his castle, 92 ; is given Tormont by Huon, 97.

GERAMES meets Huon, 60 ; his history, 61 ; directs Huon to Babylon, 63-4 ; accompanies Huon, 65 ; warns Huon of Oberon, 67-9 ; fears Oberon's banquet, 75 ; buys food for Huon's supper at tournament, 86 ; warns Huon of Macaire, 89 ; dissuades Huon from going to Dunotter, 97 ; remains with Huon's company at Dunotter after Huon leaves it, 110 ; waits for Huon's return, 129 ; sees a ship approach the shore, 129 ; kills the pagan sailors, 129 ; embarks with his companions in the ship to seek Huon, 130 ; arrives at Babylon, 130 ; enters the admiral's palace, 131 ; gives the name of Jeraele, Ivoryn's son, 132 ; pretends that his companions are his prisoners, 132 ; is told that Huon is dead, *ib.* ; learns the truth from Esclaramonde, 133 ; suspects her, *ib.* ; sends her companions to Huon's prison, 134 ; takes food to them, 136 ; allows Esclaramonde to visit Huon, 137 ; sees Huon daily, 138-9 ; keeps Huon's trophies in his side, 153 ; bids Huon obey Oberon, 155 ; is defied by Huon, 156 ; enters a little boat with his company and leaves Huon, *ib.* ; reaches Anfalerne, 191 ; is well received by Galaffer, 192 ; offers to aid him against Ivoryn, 193 ; visits Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; arms for the fight, 197 ; is attacked by Huon, 198 ; throws him to the ground and recognizes him, 199 ; pretends to take Huon prisoner, in order to bring him to Esclaramonde, 199 ; brings Huon and his company to Anfalerne, 200 ; shuts out the admiral and all his men, and kills all in the town, 200 ; fights with Huon before the castle against the Saracens, 206 ; recognizes his brother in Guyer of Bordeaux, 211 ; has been sixty years away from France, 212 ; leaves for France with Huon, 213 ; at Brandys, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; warns Huon against journeying too early, 228 ; advises Huon to conciliate Gerard, 229 ; is robbed of the objects of Huon's mission by Gerard, 230 ; is allowed to live, 231 ; is brought into Bordeaux tied to a horse, *ib.* ; cast into prison,

232 ; before the Emperor at Bordeaux, 243 ; shows the wound made in his side by Gerard, 248 ; with Huon at Caleyn, 295 ; fights with vigour against the Germans, 299 ; promises to aid Huon against the German Emperor, 317 ; is taken prisoner, 321 ; is condemned to be hanged, 326 ; mounts the scaffold, but is released, 331 ; promises to protect Esclaramonde in Huon's absence, 355 ; consoles Esclaramonde, 387 ; fights bravely, 389 ; advises a night attack, 392 ; leads the force, 394 ; is attacked fiercely by Savary, 395 ; is slain by the Emperor, 396.

GERARD, Thierry's bastard son, slain by Huon, 347.

GERARD, **GERARDE**, **GERARDYN**, Huon's brother, 5, 118 ; goes with Huon to Paris, 15 ; has an evil dream, 16 ; is attacked by Charlot, 20 ; is wounded, 21 ; at Paris, 26 ; entrusted with Huon's lands in his absence, 51 ; gives Huon a Judas kiss, 52 ; petitions to be a peer of France, 52 ; at Bordeaux, *ib.* ; marries a daughter of Gilbert of Cecyll, 53 ; grows wicked, 210 ; learns of Huon's return, 220 ; takes counsel with his father-in-law, 221 ; treacherously visits Huon at the abbey of Mauryse, 223 ; desires Guyer's death, 226 ; urges Huon to set out for Bordeaux at cock-crow, 227 ; complains that Huon's return makes him penniless, 228 ; asks for some land, 229 ; seizes the objects of Huon's mission, 230 ; kills the abbot of Mauryse and seizes Huon's treasure, 233 ; sends a third part to Paris, 235 ; gives some of it to Charlemagne at Paris, and declares that he has imprisoned Huon because the mission has failed, 237 ; goes with Charlemagne to Bordeaux, 241 ; challenged by Huon, 248 ; forced by Oberon to confess all, 261-2 ; charges Gybouars with suggesting the plot, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GERARD OF ROUSILLON, son of duke of Bourgogne, 530. [Hero of a popular chanson, *Gerart de Rousillon*, one of the peers of France. See Gaston Paris' translation of poem, 1884.]

GILBERT, *v.* **GYBOUARS**.

GIRARDE DE VIANE, a chanson quoted, *xiv n.*

GLORIADAS, a fairy living in Adamant castle, 412.

GLORIANDE, **GLORIANT**, **GLORYAUNT**, a fairy, 65, 267, 278 ; intercedes for Huon with Oberon, 70, 167 ; sent to save Esclaramonde, 537 ; delivers Oberon's message to Emperor of Germany, 540 ; receives

- Huon at Momur, 598 ; sent by Huon to make peace between kings of Aragon and Navarre, 677.
- GODFREY OF BOUILLON, buried at Calvary, 59.
- GODIN, chanson about (a son of Huon), xxxv.
- GODUN, a German knight, proposes to slay Huon in an ambush, 294.
- GONDER, Christian provost of Tormont, 83 ; receives Huon, 84 ; tries to make peace between Huon and Macaire, 93 ; restores Huon's horn, 94.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, I., rescues Claret and offers her marriage, 619 ; ill-treats her, 620 ; is killed at Tours by Sir Peter of Aragon, 623.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, II., besieges Nice, 740 ; killed by Croissant, 749.
- GUALTER, a peer of France, urges Huon's death, 251.
- GUARYN. See GARYN.
- GUEVARA, ANTONIO DE, the Spanish author, 786, 788.
- GUITALIN, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY DE BOURGOGNE, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY OF WARWICKE, a romance, xlvi.
- GUYCHARD, Huon's companion, 54, 55 ; refuses to leave him, 59.
- GUYER, GUYRE, provost of Bordeaux, 15, 62 ; pilgrim to Holy Sepulchre, 209 ; a hundred years old, 209 ; tells Huon of his family, 210 ; Gerames' brother, 211 ; with Huon at Rome, 215 ; at Bordeaux, 218 ; hated by Gerard, 226.
- GUYMART OF PUYLLE (Apulia), becomes Emperor of Rome in Croissant's absence, 740 ; learns of Croissant's return, 768 ; takes food to Croissant, 770 ; sees treasure at the old palace, 771 ; is bidden to distribute three besants to poor, 772-3 ; restores crown to Croissant and dies, 775, 782.
- GUYNEMER, earl of St. Omer, 100.
- GWYN-ARAUN, a Welsh fairy, xxx.
- GYBOUARS, 219 ; Gylberde, duke of Ceeyll [Sicily], a traitor, 53 ; promises to outwit Huon, 221 ; lays ambush for Huon, 223 ; binds Huon, 229 ; kills abbot of Mauryse, 233 ; seizes Huon's treasure, 234 ; makes his cousin abbot of Mauryse, *ib.* ; with Gerard at

Paris, 235 ; confirms Gerard's lies, 239 ; proved guilty by Gerard's confession, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GYRARD. See GERARD.

HABOUREY, Huon's messenger, 342-3.

HARRY OF ST. OMER, a peer of France, 251.

HASTINGS, Lord George, earl of Huntingdon, encourages Lord Berners to translate *Huon*, liv.

HELYE. See SEBYLLE.

HENRY VIII., patron of Lord Berners, xli, xlvi.

HILDEBERT, a German duke, protects Esclarmonde, 533.

HUNGARY, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607.

HUON OF BORDEAUX, son of Sevin and Aclis (*q. v.*), chanson de geste about, xxiv ; historical foundation for his story, xxviii ; growth of romance, xxxii ; its supplements, xxxiii ; printed in French prose, xxxvii ; French play about, xxxviii ; first English translation, xxxix ; its popularity, xlvi, lxi ; English play of, lxix ; bibliography of Lord Berners' romance about, liii, 791 ;—owns Bordeaux, but does no homage to the Emperor, 5 ; summoned to Paris, 5 ; starts for Paris, 15 ; comes upon Charlot, 19 ; sees Gerard fall, 20 ; challenges Charlot, 23 ; kills Charlot, 24 ; sets Gerard on Charlot's horse, 24 ; goes to the Emperor's court, 25 ; tells of Charlot's treachery, 26—30 ; defends himself from Amaury's charge of murder, 34 ; accepts Amaury's challenge, 37 ; swears on relics before fighting, 39 ; fights and slays Amaury, 42-4 ; is sentenced to banishment by Charlemagne, 45 ; complains of this injustice, 46 ; is ordered to go on a perilous mission to Babylon, 49 ; sets out on his journey, 51 ; arrives at Rome, 54 ; at Brandys, 56 ; is joined there by Garyn, 58 ; visits Jerusalem and Calvary, 59 ; meets Gerames, 60 ; sees Oberon, 65 ; refuses to speak to him, 67 ; runs from him, 69 ; marvels at his beauty, 71 ; speaks to him, 72 ; receives of Oberon a rich banquet, 74-5 ; drinks of Oberon's magic cup, 77 ; is given the cup and the ivory horn, 77 ; mistrusts their magic power, 79 ; blows the horn recklessly, 80 ; is cursed and forgiven by Oberon, 81 ; at Tormont, 82 ; lodges with the provost, 84 ; gives a great supper to 4000 poor men, 84-6 ; his cup works a miracle, 86 ; invites Macaire to supper, 88 ; goes with Macaire to

his castle, 90 ; is saved from Macaire's murderous plot, 90-1 ; is besieged by Macaire, 92-3 ; sounds his horn, 94 ; kills Macaire, 95 ; is aided by Oberon, 95 ; leaves Tormont, 97 ; approaches the tower of Dunother, 98 ; rouses the giant, 103 ; tells him his history, 104 ; dons the giant's magic armour, 106 ; fights with the giant, 108 ; kills him and takes his tower, 109 ; leaves his company there, 110 ; carried by Malabron up the Nile, 112 ; reaches Babylon, 113 ; tells a lie, 114 ; reaches the admiral's garden, 116 ; blows his horn, 118 ; kills a paynim king, 120 ; shows Gaudys a ring, *ib.* ; is well received and thrice kisses Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; informs Gaudys of his mission, 122 ; fights with his men, *ib.* ; kills his nephew, 123 ; is seized, *ib.* ; is sent to prison, 124 ; is visited by Esclaramonde, 126 ; reproaches her with being a Saracen, *ib.* ; is kept without food, *ib.* ; is reconciled to Esclaramonde, 127 ; is reported to be dead, 128 ; overhears his companions talk in the prison, 134 ; reveals himself to them, 135 ; sees Gerames daily, 138-9 ; is invited to fight the giant Agrapart, 144 ; agrees to do so, 145 ; defies Agrapart, 147 ; conquers him, 148 ; invites Gaudys to become a Christian, 151 ; summons Oberon, 152 ; kills Gaudys, 153 ; obtains trophies from Gaudys, *ib.* ; is warned by Oberon against intercourse with Esclaramonde before marriage at Rome, 154 ; sets out with Esclaramonde for Rome, 155 ; cannot resist temptation, *ib.* ; is wrecked alone with Esclaramonde on an island, 157 ; begs bread of pirates, 158 ; is threatened by them, 159 ; is left alone by them, bound hand and foot, 160 ; is on the isle of Noisant, 166 ; is helped by Malabron, 168 ; is carried by him to the mainland, 169 ; meets Mouflet, a minstrel, who gives him food and clothes, 170 ; gives a lying account of himself, 171 ; calls himself Salater, 172 ; becomes servant of Mouflet, 173 ; goes to Mombraunt, 174 ; is asked by Ivoryn what he can do, 177, 178 ; is challenged to play chess with Ivoryn's daughter, 178 ; is loved by her, 179 ; wins the game, 180 ; refuses the advantage of his victory, *ib.* ; begs for horse and armour to fight for Ivoryn, 181 ; obtains a magic sword and a poor horse, 182 ; accepts Sorbryns challenge, 185 ; kills Sorbryns and seizes his horse Blanch-

ardin, 187 ; helps Ivoryn to defeat Galaffer, 188 ; is feasted by Ivoryn, 189 ; leads a second attack on Galaffer, 196 ; attacks Gerames fighting on the other side, 198 ; is forced to the ground, 199 ; recognizes Gerames, *ib.* ; meets Esclarmonde, 200 ; is attacked by Ivoryn and Galaffer in concert, 203 ; hears Mouflet call on his aid from the gallows, 205 ; with his companions dashes out of the castle and kills the hangman, 205 ; fights valiantly against the Saracen, 206 ; receives French pilgrims at Anfalerne, 208 ; learns from Guyer of his family, 210 ; purposes to return to France in the pilgrims' ship, 212 ; with all his company sets sail for France and arrives at Brendys, 213 ; goes to church, 214 ; tells the wife of Garyn of St. Omers of her husband's death, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; welcomed by the Pope, 216 ; is married to Esclarmonde, 217 ; leaves Rome for Bordeaux, 218 ; sees Gerard, his brother, 223 ; tells him of his trophies and treasures, 224 ; regrets that his brother should have Gybouars for father-in-law, 225 ; sleeps with Gerard, 226 ; is roused by Gerard at cock-crow to go on to Bordeaux, 227 ; resolves to visit the Emperor, 228 ; promises Gerard half of his treasure, 229 ; is wrathful with his brother because he wants more, *ib.* ; conciliates Gerard, 230 ; is attacked by Gybouars in ambush, *ib.* ; is bound, *ib.* ; is brought to Bordeaux, 231 ; cast into prison, 232 ; is brought before the Emperor, who visits Bordeaux, 243 ; accuses his brother of treachery, 244 ; tells the story of his journey, 244-5 ; and of his return, 246-8 ; challenges Gerard and Gybouars, 248 ; learns of Oberon's intervention, 258 ; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 260 ; pleads for his brother's life, 264 ; is promised by Oberon the kingdom of the fairies, 266 ; receives his lords' homage, 274 ; hangs Angelars, who defies him, 275 ; is envied by Raoul of Astrych, 279 ; learns of Raoul's plots against his life from an old servant, 279 ; sets out to Mayence to slay the traitor, 280 ; receives Raoul in disguise, 282 ; comes to Coleyn for a tournament, 284 ; leaves his escort behind and rides to Mayence, 285 ; visits the Emperor and Raoul in the palace, 286 ; puts his case without mentioning names to the Emperor, 287 ; kills Raoul in the Emperor's presence, 288 ; resists the attempt of the

Germans to arrest him, 289-90 ; strikes down the Emperor, 292 ; escapes, 293 ; meets his company at Coleyn, 295 ; has 13,000 men with him, 296 ; prepares for battle in a wood near Coleyn, 297 ; fights valiantly, *ib.* ; meets the Emperor, and reproaches him, 299 ; overcomes the Emperor in a duel, 300-1 ; grants six months' truce, 303 ; is attacked in mistake by the burghers of Coleyn, 304 ; pardons the provost of Coleyn, 307 ; returns to Bordeaux, *ib.* ; relates his adventures to his wife, 307-9 ; declines to seek aid of Salybraunt, 311 ; complains of Oberon's neglect, 313 ; summons his men, 316 ; begs Gerames' aid, 317 ; prepares a sortie, 319 ; fights valiantly, 320 ; attacks the Emperor, 323 ; retires to Bordeaux, 323 ; sees the gallows set up for Gerames, 327 ; prepares a rescue, 328 ; sees Gerames on the scaffold, 331 ; slays the hangman, 332 ; rescues Gerames, 333 ; spares Sir Otho, 334 ; repulses the Germans, 334, 338-9 ; pursued by Germans, who enter Bordeaux, 335 ; spares the lives of 500 prisoners, 336 ; finds his force dwindle, 341 ; sues for peace in vain, 342 ; makes sudden sortie, 344 ; strikes the Emperor, 346 ; loses more men, 348 ; despairs, 349 ; resolves to seek aid in the East, 350 ; seizes the German herds, 351 ; will slay Esclaramonde's brother if he will not be christened, 353 ; is confessed by the bishop of Bordeaux, and receives a hallowed stool, 355 ; takes his knights with him, *ib.* ; sails down the Garonne, 356 ; takes ship for Anfamie, 358 ; encounters storms, 359 ; approaches the gulf of hell, 361 ; prepares for death, 362 ; speaks with Judas, 364-7 ; hurries from the gulf of hell, 367 ; approaches the rock Adamant, 368 ; longs to attack the castle, 371 ; is warned of its dangers, 372 ; desires to fight with the serpent in the castle, 375 ; attacked by Saracens, 376 ; loses many knights, 378 ; slays many Saracens, 378 ; alone of his company survives famine, 379 ; visits the Adamant castle, 380 ; slays the serpent, 382 ; marvels at the castle's splendour, 383 ; and eats fruit in the garden, 385 ; finds feeble sustenance there, 407 ; discovers a marvellous cellar, 408 ; sees four fairies, 409 ; obtains from them meat and drink, 410 ; enjoys every luxury, 412 ; sees Moorish ship on Adamant rock, 414 ; promises Moors safety, if converted to Christianity, 417 ; receives

the bishop of Lisbon, an old friend, 419 ; grows weary of inactivity, 425 ; perceives the griffin, 426 ; confessed by the bishop of Lisbon, 428 ; is carried off by the griffin, pretending to be dead, 429 ; at the white rock, 430 ; attacks and slays the griffin and her young, 431-3 ; bathes in the fountain of youth, 434 ; eats of the apples of youth, *ib.* ; is bidden by an angel to gather these apples, 436 ; learns of the fate of Bordeaux from the angel, 436-7 ; leaves the rock, 439 ; finds a rich ship, *ib.* ; passes through a dark passage in the rocks, 441 ; lands at Tauris in Persia, 443 ; meets Barnard, 447 ; finds the ballast of his ship to be precious stones, 448 ; well received by the admiral of Tauris, 456 ; gives the admiral an apple of youth, 465 ; is promised the aid of the admiral of Tauris, 470 ; leaves Tauris with the admiral, 471 ; at Angore, 472 ; fights against the men of the city, 475 ; kills the admiral, 476 ; conquers the city, 477 ; coasts by Abylaunte, 478 ; reaches an evil port, 480 ; ascends a mountain above, 483 ; meets Cain, 484 ; learns Cain's history, and abandons him, 487 ; meets an awful fiend, 489 ; pretends to be Cain, 491 ; is treated well by the fiend, *ib.* ; at Colanders, 492 ; meets the admiral of Tauris and Barnard again, 495 ; travels to Antioch, 498 ; and Damascus, 499 ; and goes on to Jerusalem, 500 ; advises a forward attack on the Saracens at Rames, 503 ; kills five kings and two admirals, 508 ; kills the admiral of Dorbrys, 511 ; attacks the sultan Saphadim, 514 ; is hard beset, and is rescued, 516 ; returns to Acre, 519 ; has a vision of trouble at Mayence, 520 ; anxious to go to Esclarmonde, 522 ; advises a return of the admiral of Tauris' troops, 523 ; resolves to return to Europe, 525 ; at Marseilles, 528 ; visits Cluny disguised as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, 547 ; sees Clariet, 548 ; reveals himself, to the joy of all, and tells his adventures, 551 ; offers the abbot an apple of youth, 553 ; brings his men and wealth from Tournois to Cluny, 557 ; goes with Barnard to Mayence, 559 ; is the first pilgrim to approach the Emperor on Good Friday, 560 ; gives him a precious stone, 561 ; is promised the release of Esclarmonde, 565 ; tells his adventures, 566 ; gives the Emperor an apple of youth, 568 ; and meets Esclarmonde, 570 ; with his wife and Emperor goes to Cluny,

572 ; beats back abbot's men, 576 ; and enters Bordeaux, 578 ; sends the griffin's foot to King Louis, 583 ; sets out for fairyland, 583 ; driven into Spanish Sea, 585 ; shipwrecked near a beautiful castle, where monks live who are evil angels, 588 ; is preserved by magic stones, 593 ; carried by a monk to a high rock, 595 ; reaches Oberon's city of Momur, 597 ; is crowned king of fairyland by Oberon, 600 ; threatens to enforce obedience on King Arthur, 602 ; gives Arthur parts of his realm, 603 ; attends Oberon's funeral, 606 ; comes with fairy army to Courtois to arrange dispute between the kings of Navarre and Arragon, and to marry Florence to his daughter Clariet, 676-82 ; meets Clariet, 684 ; makes good all damage done by war, 687 ; returns to Momur, 689.

IDE, daughter of Florence and Clariet, born, 690 ; of great beauty, 692 ; sought in marriage by Florence, her own father, 694 ; escapes in man's apparel, 697 ; helped by Sorbare, 700 ; goes to Germany, 702 ; attacked by thieves, 705 ; at Rome salutes Emperor, 708 ; mistaken for a man, 709 ; attends Emperor's daughter Olive, 710 ; is knighted, 712 ; leads Emperor's army against Spaniards, 714 ; does deadly slaughter, 716 ; takes king of Spain prisoner, 718 ; pleads for his life, 719 ; declines to marry Olive, 721 ; yields to threats, 722 ; married to Olive, 724 ; sex discovered, and sent to stake, 728 ; sex miraculously changed, 729 ; crowned Emperor, 730 ; visits Florence at Courtois, 737 ; helps Florence to rule, 737.

ISOUDE, xxvii, loved by Tristram, 157.

IVORYN OF MOMBRAUNTE, 131 ; uncle of Esclaramonde, 161 ; learns of her and of her father's fortune, 163 ; sends to take Esclaramonde from Galaffer, 164 ; is defied, and prepares for war upon Galaffer, 165 ; summons his men of war, 174 ; swears vengeance, 175 ; receives Mouflet the minstrel, and Huon his servant, 176 ; asks Huon what is his capacity, 177 ; makes trial of his knowledge of chess by bidding him play with his daughter, 178 ; leads his troops to Anfalerne, 183 ; applauds Huon for slaying Sorbry, 187 ; defeats Galaffer, 188 ; honours and feasts Huon, 189 ; leads second attack on Anfalerne, 197 ; sees Huon follow Gerames into Anfalerne, 199 ; urges his men to rescue Huon, 200 ; receives

- Galaffer's submission, 201 ; fights with Galaffer against Huon, 203 ; condemns Mouflet to death, 204 ; learns of Huon's flight, 213 ; enters the castle of Anfalerne, 214.
- IVORYN's daughter loves Huon, 179 ; plays chess with him, 180 ; watches the fight, 196.
- IVACARS, son of Earl Remon of St. Giles, plots to murder Croissant, 745, 754 ; is killed, 756.
- JAMES, St., 28.
- JERACLE, son of Ivoryn, 132.
- JOHN, St., feast of, 124, 132.
- JOYEUSE, Charlemagne's sword, xii.
- JOZERANE, German knight killed by Huon, 322.
- JUDAS ISCARIOT, 459 ; kisses Jesus, 52, 223 ; floats on canvas by gulf of hell, 363 ; recounts his history, 364-5 ; cannot die, 366 ; once gave away piece of canvas in charity, *ib.* ; warns Huon of peril, 367.
- JULIUS CÆSAR. *See* CÆSAR.
- KATHARINE, Guymart's daughter, marries Croissant, 782.
- LEMPATRIX, a fairy, 66.
- LEWIS, LOYS, Lowis, Charlemagne's younger son, 4 ; succeeds as Emperor, 388 ; receives griffin's foot from Huon, 583.
- LISBON, bishop of, wrecked on Adamant rock, 416 ; recognizes Huon, 419 ; is free from sin, 421 ; eats at pleasure in Adamant castle, 422 ; baptizes Saracens, *ib.* ; warns Huon of griffin, 428.
- LOHERAINS, *LES*, a romance where Huon mentioned, xxviii.
- LYLY, JOHN, and Euphuism, 785.
- MACAIRE, MACAYR, Huon's uncle, brother of Sevin, tyrant of Tormont, 81 ; is a pagan, 83 ; longs for Huon's magic cup, 87 ; threatens Huon, *ib.* ; recognizes him as his nephew, 89 ; invites him to his castle, *ib.* ; plots to murder Huon, 90-1 ; is driven from castle, and besieges Huon there, 92. [There is a *chanson* named *Macaire* (twelfth cent.), whose hero charges Charlemagne's queen Blanchefleur with adultery.]
- MAHOUNDE, 133, *et passim* ; Macomyte, 477 ; Mahomet, 500.
- MALABRON, MALLABRON, a man transformed by Oberon into a sea beast, 111 ; bears Huon up the Nile, 112 ; begs Oberon to let him

aid Huon, 167 ; condemned to be sea monster twenty-eight years longer, 167-8 ; swims to Huon at Noisaunt, and brings him to mainland, 169 ; at Bordeaux, 267 ; accompanies fairy Gloriande, 598, 677.

MARCUS AURELIUS, *Book of*, translated by Lord Berners, xlv, 784.

MARGALE, a fairy, 65.

MARKHAM, GERVASE, quoted, xlix, 790.

MAURYSE, abbot of, welcomes Huon, 219 ; invites Huon and Gerard to supper, 225 ; keeps Huon's treasure, *ib.* ; is killed by Gerard and Gybouars while guarding the treasure, 233.

MERES, FRANCIS, quoted, xlviii.

MERLIN, MARLYN, son of Ogier the Dane, accompanies King Arthur to Oberon's court, 601.

MORGAN LE FAY at Oberon's court, 536 ; sister of King Arthur, 601, 684.

MOUFLET, a minstrel, 170 ; helps Huon, 171 ; served Gaudys, 172 ; takes Huon as his servant, 173 ; at Mombraunt, 174 ; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175 ; plays the viol before Ivoryn, *ib.* ; is well rewarded, 176 ; celebrates Huon's victories, 190 ; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204 ; is saved by Huon, 205 ; plays before Huon, 207 ; in France, 213 ; baptized by Pope, 217 ; is called Garyn, *ib.*

NAIMES, NAYMES, Duke of Bavaria. [A character invariably introduced into Charlemagne romances. According to *Aubri le Bourgoing*, he is son of Gasselin, king of Bavaria ; is protected from an usurper, Cassile or Tassillon, by Charlemagne ; in *Roland, Aspremont*, and *Acquin* he plays great part as friend of the Emperor ; in the *Voyage à Jérusalem* he first appears as one of 'les douze pairs' ; in the *Anseis de Carthage* (late poem) his death is recounted. He is the Nestor of the Charlemagne cycle ; cp. *Aspremont*, 'Tel conseillier n'orent ongues li Franc.'] Survivor of Roncesvalles, 2 ; chief of Charlemagne's council, 3 ; complains of Amaury's guile, 6, 12 ; seeks to comfort Charlemagne, 32 ; prepares duel between Huon and Amaury, 38 ; reproaches Emperor, 41 ; intercedes for Huon, 47 ; with Huon at Troyes, 52 ; declines Gerard's offer of treasure, 235 ; suspects Gerard, 238 ; denounces him, 239 :

urges Emperor to send for Huon, 249 ; declares Huon cannot be tried at Bordeaux, 255 ; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 261. NAVARRE, king of, fights against king of Aragon, 633 ; taken by Florence, 644 ; released, 647 ; enters Tarragon, 660 ; besieges king of Arragon at Courtois, 676 ; accepts Huon's intervention, 681 ; makes peace, 685 ; visits Florence, 701.

NEPTANABUS, father of Alexander the Great, 73.

NORTH, *Sir Thomas, and Euphuism*, 785-8.

OBERON, king of fairyland, his literary history traced, xxix ; compared with Welsh Gwyn and German Alberich, xxx ; his genealogy criticized, xxxi ; *Le Roman d'Auberon*, xxxiii ; Wieland's poem of, xxxviii ; in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, 1 ; Weber's opera about, li ;—besets the road to Babylon, 63 ; the dwarf king of fairyland, *ib.* ; is seen by Huon, 65 ; blows his magic horn, 66, 70 ; speaks to Huon, 67 ; raises a storm, 67, 69 ; attacks him, 70 ; recites Huon's adventures, 71 ; tells his history, 72-3 ; king of Momur, 74 ; gives Huon a magic banquet, 74-5 ; his magic cup, 76 ; gives Huon the cup and horn, 77-8 ; makes a path through water for Huon, 78 ; is recklessly summoned by Huon, 80 ; curses him, *ib.* ; forgives him, 81 ; foretells peril for Huon, and bids him farewell, 82, 96, 154, 267 ; comes to Tormont, to protect Huon, 94 ; is angry with Huon, 118 ; comes to Huon's aid in killing the Admiral Gaudys, 152 ; places Huon's trophies gained from Gaudys in Geromes' side, 153 ; warns Huon against having intercourse with Esclaramonde till their marriage at Rome, 154 ; gives him a ship, *ib.* ; laments Huon's misfortunes, 166 ; bids Malabron fetch him Huon's horn, cup, and harness, 169 ; pities Huon's misfortunes in France, 257 ; appears before Charlemagne with 100,000 men, 258-9 ; wills the fetters to fall from Huon, 259 ; offers the king his enchanted cup, 260 ; charges Charlemagne with crime, *ib.* ; rebukes the Emperor, 261 ; bids Gerard appear, *ib.* ; orders the objects of Huon's mission to appear before Charlemagne, 264 ; is mistaken by Charlemagne for God, 265 ; recites his history, *ib.* ; bids Huon come to Momur in four years' time, 266 ; promises him the kingdom of fairyland, *ib.* ; tells of his going to Paradise, 267 ; laments over Huon, 273-4 ;

grieves for his father Julius Cæsar's death, 412 ; will never come to castle of Adamant afterwards, *ib.* ; sends Gloriande and Mala-bron to save Esclarmonde, 536-8 ; sick at Momur, 597 ; receives Huon as his successor, 598 ; crowns Huon king and Esclarmonde queen of fairyland, 600 ; welcomes King Arthur, 601 ; makes peace between Huon and Arthur, 602 ; dies, 605 ; is carried to Paradise, is buried in a new abbey, 606 ; sets treasure in old palace at Rome for Croissant, 780.

OGIER THE DANE, subject of chanson de geste, xiii *n.*, xv *n.* ; father of Baudouyn, 4 ; kills Bertrand, Naymes' son, 33 ; destroyed city of Colanders, 489 ; father of Merlin, 601.

OLIVE, Roman Emperor's daughter, falls in love with Ide, 709 ; is betrothed to Ide, 721 ; married, 724 ; discovers Ide's sex, 726 ; is delivered of son, Croissant, 730.

OLIVER, xii ; death of, 2.

OLYFARNE, king of, killed by Huon, 511.

ORCANEY, admiral of, brother of the Sowdone, killed by Huon, 511.

ORTNIT, a German Emperor, xxx, xxxi.

ORYANE, a fairy, 684.

OTHO, Emperor of Germany at Rom^e, 702 ; accepts Ide's service, 709 ; knights Ide, 712 ; applauds Ide's prowess, 717 ; spares king of Spain, 718 ; insists on Ide's marriage to Olive, 721 ; learns Ide's sex, 727 ; orders Ide to be burned, 728 ; dies, 729.

OTHON, a German knight, ordered to hang Gerames and French prisoners, and pleads for delay, 329 ; rebukes the hangman for insulting Gerames, 331 ; is spared by Huon, 333 ; agrees to serve Huon, *ib.* ; fights well, 334 ; supports Gerames, 393.

OTINEL, or *O*TUEL, a chanson de geste, xviii *n.*, xix, xx.

PETER, St., church of, at Rome, 54.

PETER (Sir) of Aragon, 621 ; rescues Clariet at Tours, 622 ; kills king of Grenade, 623 ; brings Clariet to Tarragona, 624 ; leads men against king of Navarre, 634 ; rescues Clariet from drowning, 640 ; threatens king of Aragon, 642 ; pleads for watchman who released Clariet and Florence, 655.

PHILIP, king of France, hangs up Huon's griffin's foot in a chapel, 583.

POMPEY, fights with Cæsar, 73, 265 ; vanquished by Cæsar, 411.

POPE OF ROME, Huon's uncle, receives Huon, 54, 216 ; baptizes Esclaramonde and Mouflet, 216 ; marries Huon and Esclaramonde, 217.

PTOLEMY kings of Egypt attack Cæsar at Adamant : their treasure, 411.

RAOUL, duke of Austria, hears of Esclaramonde's beauty, 276-7 ; nephew of German Emperor, 278 ; begs his uncle to announce tournament, 278 ; plots Huon's death, 279 ; visits Bordeaux disguised as pilgrim, 281 ; lies to Huon, 282 ; deeply in love with Esclaramonde, 283 ; at Mayence, *ib.* ; is abused by Huon of coveting his wife, 288 ; is slain by Huon, 289.

RAUF COILSEAR, an English poem, xix, xx.

REMON, Earl of St. Giles, besieged at Nice by kings of Grenade and Belmaryne, 741 ; accepts Croissant's help, 742 ; offers his daughter to Croissant, 745, 753 ; threatens to murder Croissant, 759.

RENAUD DE MONTAUBAN, a chanson de geste, xiii, xix n., xx.

REYNALUTE OF BEAULAND takes Sorbare, 668.

REYNGAULTE OF MOUNTABAN wins and loses Angore, 472-3.

RICHAR, a knight of Huon, 341.

ROLAND, *chanson of*, x ; its authorship, xvii, xxi ; death of, 2.

ROLAND AND VERNAGU, xviii, xx.

ROUSILLON, GERARD of. See GERARD.

ROWLANDE'S SONG, an English poem, xix.

SALAMON, temple of, 500.

SALATER, false name assumed by Huon, 172.

SALMET, JOHAN, an incredulous monk, 553 ; sent to prison, and is pardoned, 555.

SALYBRAUNT, king of Bougye, brother of Esclaramonde, offers Huon aid, 310.

SAPHADIN, Sowdan of Babylon and Egypt, 500.

SAVARY, EARL, killed by Huon, 298.

SAVARY or SAVORY, duke, father of Raoull, 315 ; brother of Emperor of Germany weeps over his son's death, 315 ; before Bordeaux, 319 ; fights with Huon, 321 ; is defeated, 322 ; retreats from an

- ttack, 339 ; believes Bordeaux impregnable, 340 ; urges Thierry to persist with siege, 390 ; falls on Gerames, 395.
- SEBYLLE meets Huon at Dunother, 98 ; daughter of Guynemer of St. Omer, and niece of Duke Sevin, 100 ; her history, *ib.* ; directs Huon to the giant's chamber, 102 ; is married to a converted admiral of Babylon, 154.
- SEGE OF MELAYNE*, an English romance, xviii.
- SEVIN or SÉGUIN, duke, his historical origin, xxviii, xxix ; in romance, xxxvii ; Huon's father, 5, 12, 13, 17, 23, 59, 61.
- SEYNE, Earl of, slain by Huon, 291.
- SEZAR, 73. *See CÆSAR, JULIUS.*
- SORBARE, Saracen ruler and reputed Christian, takes care of Florence and Clariet, 666 ; once king of Belmaryn, 668 ; offers to become Christian, 669 ; welcomes French pilgrims, 670 ; attacked by Saracens, 673 ; overcomes them, 674 ; advises Florence, 693 ; helps Ide to escape, 700.
- SORBRYN, nephew of Angolaffer, 184 ; challenges Ivoryn's bravest soldier, 185 ; is defied by Huon, 186 ; and killed, 187.
- SOWDONE, *i. e.* Sultan. *See GAUDYS and SAPHADIN.*
- SOWDONE OF BABYLON*, an English romance, xviii n.
- SPAIN, king of, fights against Emperor of Rome, 714 ; is captured by Ide, 718 ; his life spared, 719.
- SPERGUER, Sir Hans, a German knight, 291.
- SYMCAN, temple of, 500.
- TAURIS, admiral of, welcomes Huon, 456 ; has served Charlemagne, 459 ; consents to turn Christian, 463 ; eats apple of youth, and grows young, 465 ; hallowed by bishop of Greece, 466 ; offers Huon his daughters in marriage, 467 ; promises to help in rescue of Esclaramonde, 469 ; with Huon against the admiral of Angore, 475 ; gets the admiral's horse, 477 ; is left by Huon, 480 ; at Colanders, 489 ; besieges the city, 493 ; conquers it, and finds Huon, 495 ; at Antioch, 498 ; marches to Jerusalem, 499 ; defeats Saracens there, 505-18 ; raises siege of Acre, 525 ; offers army to Huon against German Emperor, 525.
- THIERRY, Duke, 23.
- THIERRY, TYRREY, Emperor of Germany, declares tournaments at

Mayence, 278, 284 ; appealed to by Huon, 287 ; sees Huon murder Raoull, 288 ; pursues him, 291 ; is struck by him, 292 ; swears to take Bordeaux, 293 ; leads his army against Huon, 297 ; challenges Huon, 300 ; is defeated and rescued, 301 ; begs six months' truce, 302 ; at Cologne, 303 ; censures the provost for ignoring truce, 305 ; collects army at Mayence, 314 ; ravages land about Bordeaux, 317 ; before the city, 318 ; promises Esclaramonde to the slayer of Huon, 320 ; wounded by Huon, 323 ; orders Gerames to be hanged, 326 ; orders another attack on city, 338 ; declines peace, 343 ; attacks Bordeaux, 389 ; runs Gerames through the body, 396 ; enters Bordeaux, 398 ; forbids outrage, *ib.* ; speaks with Esclaramonde, 400 ; imprisons her at Mayence, 406 ; grieves for his nephew, 532 ; prepares to burn Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; spares her by Oberon's order, 542 ; treats her well, 543 ; receives precious stone from Huon, 561 ; releases Esclaramonde, 565 ; eats Huon's apple and becomes young, 568 ; at Cluny met Huon, 572 ; entertained at Bordeaux, 578.

THOLOMEUS, 411. *See PTOLEMY.*

THYBAULT, THYBAULTE, king of Jerusalem, 500, 502.

TRAMPOYNGFLE, TRAMPONGNIFLE, TRAMPOIGNIFLE ['the which is as moch to say as Balaach Balak'], messenger from the Sowdan at Jerusalem, 500 ; is hanged, 520.

TRANSLYNE, TRANSELYNE, a fairy, 66, 601, 602, 603, 606, 684 ; her gift to Oberon, 73 ; niece of Morgan le Fay, 536.

TROYES, CHRETIEN DE, poet, xiv.

TRYSTRAM, xxvii ; died of love, 157.

TURPIN, his *Latin chronicle*, viii n., xx.

VERGIER, lord of, 530 ; kills the German Emperor's nephew, 531.

X. GLOSSARY.¹

The following words occurring in the text are clearly typographical errors:—

- p. 28, l. 13, puysyon *read* punysyon, *i.e.* punition or punishment.
- p. 81, l. 16, reuynsyd *read* renynsyd, *i.e.* renounced.
- p. 223, l. 7, euiunyd *read* eniunyd, *i.e.* enjoined.
- p. 305, l. 4, asyse *read* aryse.
- p. 430, l. 30, repenisshed *read* replenisshed.
- p. 596, l. 26, stone *read* shone.

- | | |
|---|---|
| A boughht, <i>adv.</i> about, 372. | Almayne, <i>sb.</i> Germany, 296. [O.Fr. <i>alementaine</i> .] |
| A bowndance, <i>sb.</i> abundance, 367. | Almayns, <i>sb. pl.</i> Germans. |
| A brode, <i>adv.</i> abroad, sprede abrode
= spread out, 170. | Alonely, <i>adj.</i> solitary, single, 46. |
| A hye, <i>adv.</i> aloud, 197. | Alonlye, <i>adv.</i> solely, entirely;
emph. for <i>only</i> , 9. |
| A pon, <i>prep.</i> upon, 5. | Alow, <i>vb.</i> commend, approve of, 337.
[O.Fr. <i>alouer</i> , from Lat. <i>allaudare</i> .] |
| A tournyd, <i>perf.</i> have turned, 149. | Alowed, <i>pt.</i> commended, praised,
686. |
| Aboue, <i>adv.</i> on shore, 160. Cf. <i>Tor.</i>
<i>of Portugal</i> : ‘Ffast from the land
row they began, <i>Above</i> they left
that gentilman, With wild bestis
to have byde.’ | Amoures, <i>sb.</i> love, 155; in amoures
= in love. [Fr. <i>amour</i> .] |
| Abusshement, <i>sb.</i> ambush, 225. | Amyte, <i>sb.</i> friendship, 8. [Fr. <i>amitié</i> .] |
| Abye, <i>vb.</i> [buy], atone for, suffer for,
542. [O.E. <i>a</i> , out, <i>byegan</i> , to buy.] | Apareyled, <i>ppl.</i> attired, apparelled,
15. |
| Aduertysyd, <i>pp.</i> informed, 71. [Fr.
<i>avertir</i> .] | Apayred, <i>ppl.</i> injured, weakened,
340. [O.Fr. <i>empeirer</i> , from Lat.
<i>em + pejorare</i> , to worsen, make
worse.] |
| Affectuosly, <i>adv.</i> earnestly, 9. [O.
Fr. <i>affecturus</i> .] | Apeace, <i>vb.</i> appease, allay, 14. |
| Afrayed, <i>ppl.</i> alarmed, 40. | Apealyde, <i>pt.</i> accused, impeached,
22; v. APELE. |
| Al to brast, burst utterly asunder,
300; al = utterly, entirely to
brast, <i>pt. ppl.</i> = burst asunder,
from <i>tobresten</i> [A.S. <i>toberstan</i>];
to is a prefix signifying ‘in pieces’
or ‘asunder.’ Cf. <i>Judges ix.</i> 53:
‘all to brake’ = utterly brake in
pieces. | Apeasyd, <i>ppl.</i> appeased, allayed, 16. |
| All wheres, <i>adv.</i> everywhere, 136. | Apeched, <i>ppl.</i> betrayed, informed
against, 720. [O.F. <i>empechier</i> .] |
| | Apelo, <i>vb.</i> accuse, impeach, 25. [O.
Fr. <i>appeler</i> .] ‘ <i>appeler</i> , . . . to
accuse, impeach.’—Cotgrave. |

¹ This part of the work is largely due to Mr. W. H. Utley of Owen's College, Manchester. Mr. Henry Bradley, co-editor of the Oxford *New Dictionary*, has kindly supplied a few notes.

- Aperelyd, *ppl.* apparellled, 3.
 Aperteynd, *vb.* belonged, 4.
 Apeychyd, *pt.* accused, impeached, 27.
 Apon, *prep.* upon, 169.
 Appellyd, *pp.* 44; *v.* APEALYDE.
 Arson, *sb.* pommiell, saddle-bow, 700. [O.Fr. *arzon*.]
 Assaye, *vb.* try, test, 178.
 Assembled, *pt.* attacked, assailed, 613. [O.Fr. *assembler*.] This meaning is very rare, and Murray's New English Dictionary cites this passage only in support of it. It occurs also on p. 659, l. 20.
 Assoylled, *pt.* absolved, 217. [O.Fr. *a(s)soillir*, *a(s)soldre*.]
 Asspyall, *sb.* [espial], a waylaying, 26. [O.Fr. *espier*.] ‘espier, . . . to dog, lie for, waylay.’—*Cotgr.*
 Astonnyd, *pp.* stunned, 42. [O.Fr. *estoner*, to stun.] ‘He fell to the grounde astonyed.’—*Merlin*, x. 164.
 Astaynst, *prep.* against, 108.
 Atemperate, *adj.* temperate, 712. [O.Fr. *atempré*.]
 Atons, *adv.* at once, 431.
 Auauansyd, *pt.* advanced, 308.
 Auuant, *sb.* boast, 308; he made his avaunt = he boasted. [O.Fr. *avaunter*, to boast.]
 Auayle, *vb.* lower, 359. [O.Fr. *avalier*, from phr. *à val*, Lat. *ad vallem*.] ‘Drawe vp your ankers and aueyle your sayles.’—*Lord Berners, Froiss*, I. cclxxiv., 619.
 Auctoryte, *sb.* authority, power, 581. [O.Fr. *auctorité*.]
 Auow, *sb.* vow, 183.
 Auoyd, *vb.* depart, 48. ‘. . . he commanded them to auoid.’—G. Sandys, *Trav.*, 72.
 Avoydyd, *pp.* emptied, cleared, 40. ‘. . . commanded the chambre to be avoided.’—*Elyot, Gov.*, II. vii. 105.

 Balays, *vb.* balance, steady, 460; *i.e.* ballast. [*Balays* is an intermediate form between *balance*, Fr. *balancer* and *ballast*, O.Sw. *barlast*, due to confusion between the two.]
 Baptyme, *sb.* baptism, 95. [Fr. *baptême*.]
 Bassade, *sb.* embassy, 466. [O.Fr. *embassade*.]
 Bayne, *sb.* bath, 698. [O.Fr. *baigne*.]
 Baynyd, *pt.* bathed, 427.
 Beofes, *sb.* beeves, cattle, 183. [O.Fr. *boef*.]
 Besant, *sb.* 772. ‘A gold coin, first struck at *Byzantium*, and seemingly equivalent to the Roman solidus or aureus, but afterwards varying in value between the English sovereign and half-sovereign. It was current in Europe from the 9th cent., and in England till superseded by the noble, *temp. Edw. III.* Used by Wycif to translate both *talentum* and *drachma*’—Murray.
 Besene, *adj.* clad, furnished, 119, 680.
 Bet, *pt.* beat, hammered, 86.
 Borow, *sb.* town, borough, 336. [A.S. *burh*.]
 Bountye, *sb.* goodness, generosity, 146. [Fr. *bonté*.]
 Brast, *pt.* broke, burst, 103. [A.S. *brestan*.]
 Brent, *pp.* burnt, 192. [brennen, Chaucer, C.T., 2333. A.S. *byrnan*.]
 Brest, *vb.* burst, 117. [A.S. *berstan*.] ‘So wolde God myn herte wolde brest.’—Chaucer, C. T., 6685.
 Bresten, *pp.* burst, bursten, 69.
 Bretherne, *sb.* pl. brethren, 56.
 Brochyd, *pt.* spurred, 22. [O.F. *brocher*, to spur.] ‘Ther lances alle forth laid and ilk man broched his stede.’—Robert of Brunne, p. 305.
 Brother-germeyn, a full brother; *i.e.* with same father and mother, 511. [O.Fr. *germaine*.]
 Brunt, *sb.* attack, onset, 305. [Icel. *bruna*.]
 Brute, *sb.* tumult, noise, 181. [Fr. *bruit*.]
 Brydale, *sb.* bridal, wedding, 613. [M.E. *bride ale*, bride feast.]
 Brydes, *sb.* pl. newly married couple, 217. [Here *bryde* = spouse.]

- Brynyng, *prp.* burning, 103.
 Burden, *sb.* bundle, 760. [*I.e.* as much as can be borne.]
 Bushment, *sb.* ambuscade, ambush, 14.
 By cause, *conj.* because, 19.
- Camesyd, *adj.* flattened, 103; *camesyd* nose = a pug-nose. [Fr. *camus*. Ital. *camuso*.] ‘And though my nose be *camised*, my lips thick.’ — *Ben Jonson, Sad Shep.*, ii. 1. ‘Round was his face & *camis* was his nose.’ — *Chaucer, C. T.*, 3932.
- Carnall, *adj.* pertaining to the flesh, hence related, connected by birth, 333. ‘Thei were noble knyghtes . . . and many of hem *carcell* frendes.’ — *Merlin*, I. ii. 117.
- Caryag, *sb.* [carriage], things carried, baggage, accoutrements, 498. [O. Fr. *cariage*.] ‘*cariage* . . . all the necessary provision of an army, baggage.’ — *Cotgrave*.
- Cassydony, *sb.* chalcedony, 440. [Low Lat. *cæciliomius*.]
- Caytyfe, *sb.* [caitiff], prisoner, mean person, 645. [O. Fr. *caatif*.]
- Chameney, *sb.* [chiunney], fire-place, 383. [O. Fr. *cheminée*.]
- Chatelyne, *sb.* castellan, governor of a castle or town, 493. [Fr. *châtelain*.]
- Chaumberer, *sb.* maid-servant, 623. [O. Fr. *chambrière*.]
- Chere, *sb.* face, countenance, 57. [O. Fr. *chere*.] ‘The lady is rody in the *chere*.’ — *Alisaunder*.
- Chorlysshely, *adv.* churlishly, 757.
- Chyualrey, *sb.* collective for a body or number of knights, 2.
- Claine, *pt.* of climb, 652.
- Clees, *sb.* *pl.* claws, 430. [A. S. *clá*.]
- Clene, *adv.* completely, 197.
- Clerke, *sb.* scholar, man of letters, 274.
- Clocher, *sb.* belfry, 68. [Fr. *clocher*.]
- Clypped, *pt.* embraced, 635. [A. S. *clippian*.] ‘. . . then again worries he his daughter, with *clipping* her.’ — *Shakspere, Winter's T.*, V. ii.
- Colyke, *sb.* colic, 194.
- Comoned, *pt.* [communed], conversed, 135. [O. Fr. *communier*.]
- Companye, *vb.* associate, consort, 17. [O. Fr. *compaigner*.]
- Comunalte, *sb.* common people, 401. [O. Fr. *communauté*.]
- Condempne, *pr.* condemn, 167.
- Condute, *vb.* conduct, 18.
- Connynge, *adj.* skilful, 172. [A. S. *cunnan*.]
- Contynew, *sb.* contents, 57. [Fr. *contenu*.]
- Conuersante, *adj.* resident, having one's abode, 592.
- Conynge, *sb.* skill, dexterity, 730.
- Corante, *adj.* current, in circulation, 364. [O. Fr. *curant*.]
- Coraunt, 52; v. CORANTE.
- Cordiners, *sb.* *pl.* shoemakers [= cordwainers, from *cordwain*, a kind of Spanish leather made at *Cardova*], 764.
- Cordyall, *adj.* affectionate, cordial, 721.
- Cosyn, *sb.* kinsman, cousin, 52.
- Coude, *vb.* could, 499.
- Couerte, *sb.* a covered place, hiding place, 636; by *couerte* = under cover, hiding. [O. Fr. *covert*.]
- Couetys, *sb.* covetousness, 251. [O. Fr. *coveitise*.]
- Counsell, *vb.* to take counsel, consult, 3.
- Courteys, *adj.* courteous, 171. [O. Fr. *curteis*.]
- Couyn, *sb.* trick, artifice, 50. [O. Fr. *covine*.] ‘They ne knewe his sleight and his *covyne*.’ — *Chaucer, C. T.*, 605.
- Couytes, 320; v. COUETYS.
- Coyfe, *sb.* [coif], a cap worn under the helmet, 715; a close fitting helmet, 24. [O. Fr. *coiffe*.]
- Creature, *sb.* creator, 436.
- Credens, *sb.* credit, 609. Cf. ‘letters of credence.’ [O. Fr. *credence*.]
- Crope, *sb.* [crop], back, lit. top, or that which sticks out, 169. [A. S. *croppa*. Cf. Icel. *krroppr*, a hump. Dan. *krop*, the trunk of the body.]
- Crye, *sb.* proclamation, 296.
- Crysten, *adj.* Christian, 83.

- Damoselles, *sb. pl.* maids, 540. [O. Fr. *damoisele*.]
- Dampned, *pp.* damned, 283; v. CONDEMPNED.
- Decessyd, *pp.* [deceased], dead, 54. [O. Fr. *deces*.]
- Dedes, *sb. pl.* deeds, 171.
- Defende, *vb.* forbid, 46. [Fr. *défendre*.]
- Defowlyd, *pt.* [defiled], trod under foot, trampled on, 433. [O. Fr. *defouler*, to trample under foot.] ‘... defouled hym under hym myd honde and myd fote.’—*Rob. of Glouc.*
- Dele, *sb. part*, portion, 554. [A.S. *dæl*.]
- Denyd, *pp.* dined, 190. [Fr. *diner*.]
- Departed, *pp.* separated, 336. [O. Fr. *departir*, to distribute, separate.]
- Deuore, *sb.* duty, 46. [Fr. *devoir*.]
- Deuyses, *sb. pl.* conversation, 58. [Fr. *deviser*, to converse, chat.]
- Deuysyd, *pp.* proposed, planned, 7; conversed, 273.
- Deuysyng, *prp.* conversing, communing, 13; v. DEUYES.
- Devours, *sb. pl.* duties, 300. [Fr. *devoirs*.]
- Dismay, *vb. reflex.* to be dismayed, 17; dismay you not = be not dismayed.
- Dolent, *adj.* sorrowful, 356. [Fr. *dolent*, doleful.]
- Dolour, *sb.* pain, suffering, 23. [O. Fr. *doleur*.]
- Damage, *sb.* misfortune, injury, 146. [Fr. *dommage*.]
- Doubled, *sb.* doublet, 757.
- Dought, *sb.* [doubt], fear, 9; v. DOUGHTED.
- Doubted, *sb.* [doubted], feared, 197. [In M.E. usually spelt *douted*, from Lat. *dubitare*. Not connected with *doughty*, which is from A.S. *dyhtig*, valiant.]
- Douted, 335; v. DOUGHTED.
- Drams, *sb. pl.* drachmæ, 142.
- Dressed up, erected, set up, 744. [Fr. *dresser*, to erect, set up.]
- Durynge, *prp.* [during], enduring, 232. [Fr. *durer*, to endure, suffer.]
- Dymes, *sb. pl.* [dimes], tithes, i.e. offerings, 485. [O. Fr. *disme*; Lat. *decimus*.] ‘He gaue hym dynes of alle thingis.’—*Wycliffe*, Gen. xiv. 20.
- Dyn, *pp.* [done], used for, 502; past tense, = did.
- Dysces, *sb.* decease, death, 603.
- Dysconfyt, *vb.* [discomfit], vanquish, 47. [O. Fr. *desconfire*.]
- Dysconfyture, *sb.* discomfiture, defeat, 2. [O. Fr. *desconfiture*.]
- Dyscryue, *vb.* [describe], describe, 140. [O. Fr. *descrire*.]
- Dyhordenate, *adj.* [disordinate], unlawful, intemperate, 700. [Fr. *désordonné*.]
- Dysordynate, 696; v. DYSHORDE-NATE.
- Dysparasyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 364.
- Dyspence, *sb.* expense, 718. [O. Fr. *despence*.]
- Dyssayue, *vb.* deceive, 69. [O. Fr. *decever*.]
- Dysspyse, *vb.* [despise], to make despicable, i.e. to curse, 42.
- Dyssymell, *vb.* [dissimile], to disguise, conceal, 254. [Fr. *dis-simuler*.]
- Dystroyed, *pp.* killed, 46.
- Enbassed, *sb.* [embassade], embassy, 740.
- Enbassetours, *sb. pl.* ambassadors, 740.
- Enbusshid, *pp.* ambushed, 222.
- Endroctryned, *pp.* [endoctrined], educated, taught, 576.
- Enheritor, *sb.* [enheritor], heir, 4. [Fr. *héritier*.]
- Ensample, *sb.* example, 12. [O. Fr. *ensample*.]
- Entermedled, *pt.* mingled, 337. [O. Fr. *entremedler*.] ‘Entremedled with tydynge.’—*Chaucer*, *House of Fame*, iii. 1031.
- Entraylyd, *pp.* interwoven, variegated, 384. [O. Fr. *entreiller*.]
- Entreated, *pp.* used, treated, 642. [O. Fr. *entraiter*.]
- Erytage, *sb.* heritage, inheritance, 143.
- Escreyd, *pt.* cried out, called, 185. [O. Fr. *escrier*, to exclaim, call out.]
- Excusyd, *pp.* accused, 26.

- E**xtorsyon, *sb.* [extortion], forcible exaction, 47.
Eyen, *sb. pl.* eyes, 13.
- F**al, *vb.* [fall], to become, to happen ; fal aquaynted = become acquainted, 629.
- Falshede**, *sb.* falsehood, 253. [O.Fr. *fals*.]
- Fardell**, *sb.* bundle, 172. [O.Fr. *fardel*; Low Lat. *fardellus*.] ‘... sittynge with hisc fardels in the street.’—*Wycliffe, Judges xix.* 17.
- Fause**, *adj.* forced [of a gallop], 335.
- Faye**, *sb.* fairy, 536 ; the Fr. *le* is here used for *the*. [O.Fr. *fae*.]
- Fayrye**, *sb.* the nation of Fairies ; Fairyland, also magic, enchantment, 305. [O.Fr. *faerie*.] ‘The contree of *Faerie*.—Chaucer, C. T., 13731.
- Faysable**, *adj.* feasible, possible, 731. [O.Fr. *faisable*.]
- Feeactes**, *sb. pl.* [feats], deeds, actions, 15. [O.Fr. *faictes*.]
- Fell**, *adj.* fierce, 120. [A.S. *fel*.]
- Fellest**, *adj. superl.* cruellest, 210. [A.S. *fel*, fierce.]
- Felon**, *adj.* malicious, wicked, 5. [O.Fr. *felon*; Low Lat. *felo*, a traitor.]
- Felony**, *sb.* treachery, perfidy, 4; v. **FELON**.
- Fersly**, *adv.* fiercely, 23. [O.Fr. *fers*.]
- Fleynge**, *pp.* fleeing, 181.
- Florence**, *sb.* a gold coin, value 6s., 276.
- Folye**, *pp.* foiled, defeated, 302. [O.Fr. *fouler*, to trample on.]
- Fordo**, *vb.* undo, 487. [A.S. *fordon*.]
- Fournyshe**, *vb.* [furnish], perform, 51. [Fr. *fournir*; O.H.G. *frumjan*, to perform.]
- Fre**, *adj.* [free], noble, 273.
- Frendis**, *sb. pl.* friends, 37.
- Fresshyng**, *sb.* relief, 488.
- Fret**, *adj.* adorned, ornamented, 259. [A.S. *fretwan*, to adorn.] ‘Alle hir fyue fyngres were fretted with rynges.’—P. *Plowman*, A. ii. 11.
- Frusshe**, *sb.* encounter, 474. [O.Fr. *fruisse*.] ‘Felle was the *frusche*, fey were there mony.’—*Destr. of Troy*, 5931.
- Funt**, *sb.* font, 216.
- Fyaunce**, *vb.* [fiance], betrothe, alliance, 50. [O.Fr. *fauncer*.]
- Gables**, *sb. pl.* imposts, customs, 210. [O.Fr. *gabelle*.] ‘*gabelle*, (any kind of) impost, imposition, custom.’—*Cotgrave*.
- Gader**, *vb.* gather, 305. [A.S. *gaderian*.]
- Gambaud**, *vb.* gambol, 187. [Fr. *gambaud*.]
- Goodes**, *sb. pl.* services, good deeds, 752.
- Goth**, *vb.* goeth, 83. [3rd sing. prec. of *go*.]
- Grees**, *sb. pl.* [degrees], steps, stairs, 373. [O.Fr. *gré*; Lat. *gradus*.]
- Grese**, *sb. pl.* 119 ; v. **GREES**.
- Gruged**, *pt.* [grudged], angered, 374. [O.Fr. *gruger*, to murmur.]
- Habandon**, *vb.* abandon, give up, 190.
- Hache**, *sb.* axe, 510. [Fr. *hache*.]
- Hast**, *vb.* ask, 222.
- Haunt**, *vb.* frequent, 10. [O.Fr. *hauter*.]
- Hayers**, *sb. pl.* heirs, 720.
- Herber**, *sb.* an arbour, a retreat formed by the branches of trees, 704. [There is some doubt whether this word is a corruption of *harbour*, O.E. *herberge*, O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging (Skeat), or of M.E. *herbere*, O.Fr. *herbier*, a garden of herbs (Stratman).]
- Herbyger**, *sb.* [harbinger], one who looks out for a lodging for another, 504. [O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging.]
- Herytes**, *sb.* heiress, 642.
- Heuynes**, *sb.* heaviness, 544.
- Hole**, *adj.* [whole], healthy, well, 28. [A.S. *hælan*.]
- Honoste**, *sb.* chastity, 624. [O.Fr. *honestet*.]
- Hore**, *adj.* [hoar], white, 224. [A.S. *hár*.]
- Hostrye**, *sb.* hostelry, 235.
- Howdeous**, *adj.* hideous, 489.
- Hyely**, *adv.* nobly, 684.

- Hyssed, *pt.* hoisted, 478. [Fr. *hausser.*] hinder, 37. [A.S. *læt*, slow, whence *late* is also derived.]
- Ianglers, *sb. pl.* quarrelsome fellows, 10. [O.F. *jangler*, to talk loudly, to quarrel.] Leuys, *sb. pl.* levers, bars, 380. [O. Fr. *levier.*]
- Iapery, *sb.* jesting, 85; in iapery = in jest. [Fr. *gaber.*] Loge, *sb.* lodge, 56. [Fr. *loge*; It. *loggia.*]
- Ientylmen, *sb. pl.* gentlemen, 247. Logynge, *sb.* [lodging], dwelling-place, 31.
- Ill, *adj.* evil, wicked, 4. Longed, *vb.* belonged, 155. [A.S. *lengian.*] ‘That aþ perteineth and longeth all only to the judges.’—Chaucer, *Tale of Melibeuſ.*
- Imagenyd, *pt.* devised, 221. Lotheſy, *adj.* loathſome, 533. [A.S. *laſ.*]
- Inape, *sb.* a graft or shoot, 12. [Low Lat. *impotus*, a graft.] ‘Of feble trees ther comen wretched imps.’ Chaucer, *C. T.*, 13962.
- Inbushyd, *pp.* ambushed, 25. Lowe, *vb.* lower, abase, 628.
- Incombraunce, *sb.* trouble, 23. Lybardes, *sb. pl.* [libbards], leopards, 16.
- Incontynent, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, 7. [Fr. *incontinent.*] Lyege, *adj.* bound by feudal tenure, 236. [Etym. doubtful] lyege man, [liegeman] = ſubject, vassal. ‘... liegemen to the Dane.’—Shaks., *Hamlet.*
- In portables, *adj. pl.* intolerable, 544. [O.Fr. *importable.*] ‘im-portable, intollerable, insupportable, not to be borne.’—Cotgrave. The *s* is added by anal. with tr. pl.
- Inpoſſeſſyons, *sb. pl.* impositions, taxes, 210. Lyger, *adj.* nimble, 382. [O.Fr. *legier.*] ‘legier, quick, nimble, active.’—Cotgrave.
- Intreated, *pp.* treated, used, 365; yll intreated = ill used. [O.Fr. *entraite.*] Male, *sb.* bag, wallet, 170. [O.Fr. *male*; mod. Fr. *malle.*] This word still survives in the word *mail*, in the sense of letters, &c., carried by post, from the bag (*mail-bag*) in which they are carried.
- Jurnay, *sb.* journey, 275. [Fr. *journée.*] Malle, *sb.* mallet, hammer, 484. [O.Fr. *mail*; Lat. *malleus.*]
- Justed, *pp.* jousted, fought, 186. [O.Fr. *jouster.*] Mantell tree, *sb.* the shelf over a fire-place, 383. [O.Fr. *mantel*, and *tree*, prob. in sense of a piece of wood, a beam.] ‘Upon the mantle tree . . . stood a pot of lambative electuary.’—Tatler, No. 266.
- Knowlege, *vb.* confess, acknowledge, 44. Mastres, *sb.* mistress, governess, 696. [O.Fr. *maistresse.*]
- Knowlegyng, *ppr.* 504; v. KNOWLEGE. Medelyd, *pp.* [meddled], mixed, mingled, 442. [O.Fr. *medler*, to mix, jumble.]
- Kyne, *sb.* king, 692. Meny, *sb.* retinue, company, 499. [O.Fr. *mesnie.*] ‘The kyng and his meyne went to burgh Konan.’—Robert of Brunne, p. 15.
- Kyrtyl, *sb.* kirtle, 520. [A.S. *cyrtel.*] Meruayll, *sb.* wonder, astonishment, 321. [O.Fr. *merveille.*]
- Langusshe, *vb.* linger in pain, languish, 408. [O.Fr. *languir.*] Mew, a sparhawk, 177. (1) moult
- Large, *adj.* liberal, generous, 546. [Fr. *large*; Lat. *largus*, liberal.]
- Larges, *sb.* [largess], liberality, 496. [Fr. *largesse.*]
- Larum, *sb.* noise, abbrev. for alarum, 472. [Fr. *alarme*, to call to arms.]
- Lenger, *adv.* longer, 48.
- Lesynge, *sb.* [loosing], forfeit, 37.
- Let, *vb.* to delay, be slow, also to

- a sparhawk, (2) cage a sparhawk.
- Mew, *vb.* to confine, to keep in a cage, a term in falconry, 177. Cf. Baret's *Alvearie*: 'A mue for haukes, cauea vel eauceola accipitrum; tomuen a hauke, in eaueam, &c., compingere accipitrem.' — *Baret.*
- Minysshed, *vb.* diminished, 341. [O. Fr. *menuisier*, to lessen.]
- Mo, *adj.* and *adv.* more, 64. [A.S. *mái*.]
- Monysyons, *sb. pl.* munitions, 58.
- Moo, *adv.* [mo], more, 36.
- Mossell, *sb.* muzzle, snout, 140. [O. Fr. *museل*.]
- Motons, *sb. pl.* sheep. [Fr. *moutons*.]
- Moyte, *sb.* half, 467. [Fr. *moitié*.]
- Mulet, *sb.* mule, 52.
- Muryed, *pp.* immured, 650. [Fr. *murer*.]
- Mygh, *vb.* [might], could, 67. [A.S. *mugan*, to be able.]
- Nerehand, *adv.* nearly, almost, 40.
- Noblesse, *sb.* nobles collectively, company of lords and ladies, 314. [Fr. *noblesse*.]
- Nones, [nonce], for the nones, 133; [= orig. for then *anes*] = for the once, for the occasion or purpose.
- Nother, *conj.* neither, 5.
- Nowell, *sb.* [noel]. a cry of joy, orig. a Christmas carol, 578. [Fr. *noël*, Christmas.]
- Noyfull, *adj.* irksome, painful, 440. [O.Fr. *ausi*, mod. Fr. *ennui*, annoyance.]
- Oboute, *prep.* about, 13.
- Or, *adv.* ere, before, 11. [A.S. *ær*.]
- Or it be longe, before long, 273.
- Orpheline, *sb.* orphan, 695. [Fr. *orpheline*.]
- Orphelyns, *sb. pl.* orphans, 210.
- Orrour, *sb.* horror, 122.
- Orryble, *adj.* horrible, 101.
- Oueragis, *sb. pl.* works, ornaments, 380. [Fr. *ouvrage*.]
- Pagany, *sb.* heathendom, country of the pagans, 170.
- Parage, *sb.* lineage, birth, 693. [Fr. *parage*.] 'Ye are a man in this town of greate parage.' — *Berners, Froiss.*, ii. 52.
- Parelles, *sb. pl.* perils, 56.
- Parentes, *sb. pl.* cousins, kindred, 2. [Fr. *parent*, a cousin or kinsman.]
- Parfayte, *adj.* complete, 66. [O.Fr. *parfaict*.]
- Parforce, *adv.* by force, 275. [Fr. *par-* and *force*.]
- Parfyte, *adj.* perfect, complete, 294.
- Pariuryd, *pp.* perjured, 487.
- Parteynyng, *pr. p.* belonging, 8. [O.Fr. *partenir*.]
- Pastours = pastures, 477.
- Patrone, *sb.* captain, 212. 'Patrone of a galley, *patro de galee*.' — *Palsgrave*.
- Paynyme, *sb. pl.* pagans, heathens, 81. [Fr. *paienisme*.]
- Pelot, *sb.* pilot, 358. [O.Fr. *pilot*.]
- Persuaut, *vb.* pursue, 81.
- Perteysse, *sb. pl.* parties, 507.
- Petuously, *adv.* piteously, 35, 715. [O.Fr. *piteus*.]
- Playse, *vb.* please, 36. [O.Fr. *plaisir*, to please.]
- Plee, *sb.* a suit, trial, 26. [O.Fr. *plai*.]
- Portables; v. IN PORTABLES.
- Porte, *sb.* gate, 56. [Fr. *porte*.]
- Poynt, *sb.* condition in good point = in good condition, trans. of Fr. *embonpoint* [*en bon point*], 307.
- Praysyd, *vb.* esteemed, valued, 39. [O.Fr. *preiser*.] 'She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.' — *Chaucer, C. T.*, 9728.
- Proutes, *sb.* prowess, valour, 1. [O. Fr. *prouesse*.]
- Pryce, to 'blow the pryce' means to 'blow a blast to celebrate the capture of an animal.' The phrase occurs several times in Middle English; v. *Sir Gawayn*, 1362, also *Bk. of St. Albans*, and *MS. Cotton Vesp. B. xii.*, quoted by the editors of *Sir Tristrem*. 'The pryce' was blown when the hunting party arrived at the door of the hall on their return. In *Sir Tristrem* the same thing is called the 'okenging' in l. 518, but in

- 2749/50 we have, 'He blewe priis as he can þre mot oþer mare.' The word is probably to be identified with Fr. *prise*.
- Pryuey, *adj.* privy, intimately conversant with, 13. [O.Fr. *privé*.]
- Purchace, *vb.* procure, 12. [O.Fr. *purchacer*.]
- Purcoloys, *sb.* portcullis, 335. [O.Fr. *porte coulisse*.]
- Puruey, *vb.* provide, 599. [O.Fr. *porvoir*.]
- Pusant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 47. [Fr. *puissant*.]
- Puyssance, *sb.* puissance, might, 39.
- Pyght, *pp.* pitched, 285. 'the kynge then pyght his paulylions.' —*Sabyan*, ii. ann. 1272.
- Pylled, *pp.* hairless, bald. [Lat. *pilo*, to make bald.] Cf. *pillate*, a shaven head.
- Pyllinge, [pilling], pillaging, 401. [Fr. *piler*, to pillage.]
- Pyraottes, *sb. pl.* pirates, 375.
- Quarter, *sb.* portion, 13.
- Queyntance, *sb.* acquaintance, 92. [O.Fr. *coint*.]
- Rased, *pp.* torn, lit. scraped, 145. [Fr. *raser*, to scrape.]
- Recountre, blow, attack, 431. [Fr. *rencontre*.]
- Reculyd, *pt.* recoiled, 42. [Fr. *reculer*.]
- Reculynge, *pr. p.* recoiling, retreating, 317.
- Regardyd, *pp.* looked, 17. [Fr. *regarder*, to look.]
- Releue, *vb.* a feudal term, signifying to recognise with the usual formalities that a fief is held from the feudal lord, 5. [Fr. *relever*.] In 511/4, *releue* = to rise up again.
- Releuyd, *pt.* rose up, 147. [Fr. *relever*.]
- Rengyd, *pp.* ranged, 494. [O.Fr. *renger*.]
- Renoume, *sb.* renown, fame, 2. [Fr. *renom*, *renommée*.] '... O thou far renowned sonne.'—*Spenser*, *F. Q.*, i. 6.
- Renyed, *pp.* denied, 89. [Fr. *renier*, to deny.]
- Renynsyd, *pt.* renounced, 81. [Fr. *renoncer*.]
- Repenished, for replenished = filled again, 430.
- Requere, *vb.* require, ask, 3. [O.Fr. *requerir*.]
- Requyre, *vb.* require, ask, 264; requyre me of = ask me for, prob. for Fr. *requerir de*.
- Resorte, *sb.* refuge, resource, 752. [Fr. *ressort*.]
- Retourned, turned, 637.
- Rude, *adj.* coarse, rough, 300. [Fr. *rude*.]
- Rybault, *sb.* [ribald], a low fellow, 55. [O.Fr. *ribauld*.]
- Rybawdis, *sb. pl.* [ribalds], brutal wretches, 538. [O.Fr. *ribaud*, *ribaud*.]
- Ryghtwysly, *adv.* righteously, 251. [A.S. *rihtwis*, wise as to what is right.]
- Ryuyled, riveled, *pp.* wrinkled, shrunk, 568. 'I'll give thee tackling made of riveld gold, Wound on the barks of odoriferous trees.' —Marlowe's *Dido*, 1594.
- Sage, *adj.* wise, discerning, 214. [Fr. *sage*.]
- Saruae, *sb.* [serfage], slavery, servitude, 468. '... Doth in lordship and servage.'—*Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 11106.
- Saue coundyte, *sb.* safe conduct, 719.
- Sawyde, *pp.* saved, 477. [M.E. *sauuen* for *sauven*, Fr. *sauver*.]
- Sclae, *sb.* slave, 161. [Fr. *esclave*.]
- Scole, *sb.* school, 419. [A.S. *scolu*.]
- Scot, *sb.* share, a contribution towards the general fund, 704. [O.Fr. *escot*.] This is the original meaning, but here it seems to mean rather that for which the share is paid, not the share itself. Cf. '... we may fortune to mete with suche that shall pay for our scotte.'—*Berners, Froiss.*, i. 207.
- Sease, *vb.* cease, 14.
- Seen, *conj.* since, 26.
- Semblant, *sb.* [semblance], appearance, 26. [O.Fr. *semblance*.]
- Semblaunt, made semblaunt = pretended, 205; v. SEMBLANT.

- Semylitude**, *sb.* [similitude], likelihood, 41.
- Sennys**, *conj.* since, 71.
- Sercles**, *sb. pl.* [circles], 715; *v. SERKELL.*
- Serkell**, *sb.* [circle], a band worn round the helmet, 24. [O.Fr. *serele*.]
- Seretes**, *sb. pl.* servants, 138.
- Set**, *pp.* put, placed, 189.
- Sew**, *conj.* since, 49.
- Seygnories**, *sb. pl.* [seignories], domains, 140. [O.F. *seigneurié*.]
- Sher thursdaye**, Shrove thursday, 560.
- Sirode**, *sb.* sea-road, 359.
- Skapyd**, *pt.* escaped, 16.
- Skaut**, *adv.* [seaut], scarcely, 559. [Heel. *skampt*.]
- Sle**, *vb.* slew, 40.
- Slee**, *vb.* shay, 43.
- Sleuers**, *sb. pl.* slivers, fragments, 42. [A.S. *slyan*, to cleave.]
- Smoke**, *sb.* smock, 699. [A.S. *smoc*.]
- Solas**, *sb.* [solace], comfort, 606. [O.Fr. *solaz*.]
- Solempne**, *adj.* solemn, 36.
- Somer**, *sb.* pack-horse, sumpter horse, 144. [O.Fr. *somier*, a pack-horse.] *v. SOMPTERH. HS.*
- Sommer**, *sb.* 52; *v. SOMER.*
- Sompterhors**, *sb.* [sumpterhorse], pack-horse, 702. [O.Fr. *sommelier*, from O.Fr. *somme*, a pack, burden.]
- Soort**, *sb.* [sort], lot, company, 38. [Fr. *sorte*.]
- Soppe**, *sb.* sup, drink, 38. [Fr. *souper*; A.S. *sípan*.]
- Sot**, *sb.* fool, 47. [Fr. *sot*, a fool.]
- Sowdeours**, *sb. pl.* soldiers, 314. ‘... he had of suchē swardyours to defende hym.’—*Fabyan, Chron.* c. 82.
- Sowned**, *pt.* [sound], swooned, 300. ‘Sound’ is common in Shakspere in this sense.
- Sparhawkē**, *sb.* sparrowhawk, 7.
- Sperclyd**, *pt.* spread, scattered, 476.
- Sporres**, *sb. pl.* spurs, 291; on the sporres = in great haste; equiv. to modern phr. ‘with whip and spur.’
- Spryngynge tyme**, spring time, 525.
- Stalle**, *pt.* stole, 310.
- Stethy**, *sb.* anvil, 380. [Icel. *steði*, an anvil.]
- Stradiot**, *sb.* a kind of soldier, 761. [O.Fr. *estradiot*.] ‘Among the Frenchmen were certaine light horsmen called stradiots.’—*Hall, Henry VIII*, f. 28.
- Stuyd**, *pp.* [stewed], bathed, washed, 543. [O.Fr. *estuver*, to bathe.] ‘*estuver*, to stue, soake, bathe.’—*Cotgrave*.
- Swerde**, *sb.* sword, 182. [A.S. *sword*.]
- Swounyd**, *pt.* swooned, fainted, 24.
- Sygned**, *pp.* assigned, appointed, 473. [O.Fr. *signer*.] *Chaucer, Ct. of Love*, l. 642.
- Syn**, *conj.* since, 5. [A.S. *sithen*.]
- Syngny**, *sb.* seignory, kingdom, dominion, 4. [Fr. *seigneurie*.]
- Synse**, *conj.* since, as, 36.
- Syt**, *vb.* to lean on, rest on, 43.
- Tale**, *sb.* number, 328. [A.S. *talu*.]
- Taylles**, *sb. pl.* tolls, taxes, 210. [O.Fr. *tailles*.]
- Temperours**, for themperours, the emperor’s, 13.
- Than**, then, 15. [A.S. *thænne*.]
- Thedryr**, *adv.* thither, 60. [A.S. *þider*.]
- Thentent**, for ‘the entent’ = the intent, ‘for thentent’ = with the intention, 60.
- Thougft**, *sb.* [thought], care, trouble, 3. ‘... the old man for very thought and grief of heart pined away.’—*Holland*.
- Thrusty**, *adj.* thirsty, 66. [A.S. *þurst*.]
- Tonne**, *sb.* tun, barrel, 484. [A.S. *tunne*, a barrel.]
- Tornoys**, *sb. pl.* tourneys, tournaments, 62. [O.Fr. *tournei*.]
- Tournyd**, *pt.* returned, 210. ‘Ere from this war thou turn a conqueror.’—*Shakspere*.
- Traytour**, *adj.* faithless, traitorous, 41. [O.Fr. *traiteur*.]
- Treason**, *sb.* treachery, 44.
- Trepasyd**, *pt.* [trespassed], departed, 17. [O.Fr. *trespasser*, to go beyond, depart.] ‘Robert de Bruce

- ... trespassed out of this uncertain world.'—*Berners, Froiss.*
- Trewes, *sb.* truce, 304. [O.Fr. *trues*.]
- Trone, *sb.* throne, 216. [O.Fr. *throne*.]
- Trought, *pt.* believed, 44. [From M.E. *trowen*, mod. E. *trow*, A.S. *treowian*.]
- Truage, *sb.* orig. meaning is homage, fealty, 334. Here it seems to be collective for those who do homage, *i.e.* prisoners.
- Truss, *vb.* to pack, bind up, 173. [O.Fr. *trusser*.]
- Trybutayr, *adj.* tributary, subject, 105. [O.Fr. *tributaire*.]
- Tryumphe, *sb.* glory, 41.
- Tuo, *num.* two, 252.
- Vance, a vance for avaunt, *q.v.*, 69.
- Vauerynge, *sb.* wavering, 712.
- Vaylable, *adj.* [valuable], profitable, 12. [O.Fr. *valer*, to be of use.]
- Vayleth, *vb.* availeth, 254.
- Veleny, *sb.* villainy, 20.
- Vertu, *sb.* strength, 24. [Fr. *vertu*; Lat. *virtus*.]
- Very, *adj.* true, 168. [O.Fr. *verai*.]
- Ungarcyous, *adj.* ungracious, 631.
- Vttranse, *sb.* [utterance], extremity, 47. [O.Fr. *oultrance*; mod. Fr. *outrance*: in phrase *à outrance*.] 'to the utterance.'—*Macb.*, III. i. 72.
- Vtraunce, 196; v. VTTRANSE.
- Wan, *vb.* won, 184.
- Wanhope, *sb.* delusion, false hope, 364. [A.S. *wan*, deficient.] 'The foolish wanhope of some usurer.'—*Chaloner*.
- Warde, to her warde = toward her, 254. Cf. 'to you ward.'—*2 Cor.* xiii. 12.
- Wassale, *sb.* [vassal], wretch, villain, 23. 'O, vassal! miscreant!'—*K. Lear*, I. i.
- Wayter, *sb.* boarhound, 50. [Fr. *vautre*. Ital. *veltro*.]
- Went, *pp.* thought, 233. [pt. of *wenen*, to suppose, ween. A.S. *wénen*.] 'She had went it had bene hir husbande.'—*Chaucer, The Mylner of Abingdon*.
- Wenyng, *pr. p.* [weening], thinking, 21; v. WENT.
- Wesshyde, *pp.* washed, 537. [M.E. *weschen*.]
- Wheareas, *adv.* where, 744.
- Whereas, *adv.* where.
- Wight, *adj.* [wight], stout, strong, 96. [Icel. *vigr*, serviceable for war.]
- Witsonday, *sb.* Whit-Sunday, 731. [White Sunday, perhaps from white garments worn on that day. *Vigfusson*.]
- Wode, *adj.* violent, raging, 479. [A.S. *wód*, mad, raging.] 'What shulde he studie and make himselfen wood.'—*Chaucer, C.T.*, 184. '... wode within this wood.'—*Shakspere, Mid. N. Dr.*, II. i. 192.
- Wold, *pp.* willed, wished, 304. [A.S. *wilien*, pt. l. *wolde*.]
- Woll, *vb.* wishes to, would, 87.
- Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 16. [O.Fr. *veiage*.]
- Wynyng, *sb.* [winning], gain, 13. [A.S. *winnan*.]
- Yentyll, *adj.* [gentle], noble, gallant, 20. [O.Fr. *gentil*.] 'gentil, ... gallant, noble.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Yll, *adj.* [ill], wicked, 37.
- Ylnes, *sb.* [illness], wickedness, 43. 'She that is vnchaste is a sea and treasure of all *ilnesse*.'—*Vives*.
- Ymagenyde, *pp.* imagined, planned, 2.
- Know, *adj. pl.* enough, 84. [A.S. *genōh*.]
- Yode, *pt.* rode, 636.
- Yought, *sb.* youth, 65. [A.S. *geōgnōð*.]

PR
1119
E5
no.41,
etc.

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series. no.41,43,50

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



A standard linear barcode is positioned vertically on the right side of the label.

D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 15 14 14 05 004 3